JAENISCH'S

CHESS PRECEPTOR:

A NEW ANALYSIS OF

THE OPENINGS OF GAMES.

BY

C. F. DE JAENISCH,

OF PETERSBURGH.

TRANSLATED FROM THE FRENCH, WITH NOTES,

BY

GEORGE WALKER,

AUTHOR OF VARIOUS WORKS ON CHESS.

LONDON:

PRINTED FOR

LONGMAN, BROWN, GREEN, AND LONGMANS,

PATERNOSTER-ROW.

1847.

Digitized by Google

SG3656.465.3

B

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY
BEQUEST OF
SILAS W. HOWLAND
NOVEMBER 8, 1938

LONDON:
SPOTTISWOODE and SHAW,
New-street-Square.

Digitized by Google

TO

FREDERICK L. SELOUS, ESQ^RE

THIS EDITION OF

JAENISCH'S

ANALYSIS OF CHESS OPENINGS

IS

Dedicated,

BY

HIS FRIEND,

THE TRANSLATOR.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

TRANSLATOR'S PREFACE.

On the first arrival here, from its northern birth-place, of Jaenisch's Chess Preceptor, its striking merits, coupled with the wish of several brother Chess-players, determined me at once to undertake this translation; and the work would accordingly have appeared some two years since, in its present English garb, had I not been called on, rather unexpectedly, to supply a new and enlarged edition of my "Art of Chess Play." That task performed, I have now the pleasure of presenting Jaenisch: and heartily trust that a book, the reproduction of which in Great Britain has been so generally "moved for," by our Chess "lords and commons," may fully realise their anticipations, thus "laid on the table."*

To save space, I have on the present occasion carried compression of matter unusually far, but have yet stopped short of obscurity; and while Jaenisch herein is largely condensed in shape, I have carefully preserved him intact in substance. Every opening, game, move, note, and remark of our Russian author is strictly preserved, with the single exception of a dis-

* Jaenisch's original edition is entitled "Analyse Nouvelle des Ouvertures du Jeu des Echecs, par le Major C. F. de Jaenisch. Vol. I., Paris, 1842, 12mo, pp. 204, and Vol. II., Petersburgh, 1843, 12mo, pp. 310. The two volumes are both written in French, and sell for twenty-eight francs. Jaenisch is an officer of engineers in the Russian army.

Digitized by Google

sertation upon three of the elements of Chess (see foot note on page 3), viz. the method of castling now in vogue, the practice of capturing pawns "en passant," and the equity of demanding queens for pawns attaining their eighth squares. Arguments upon similar themes may for another century be interesting in Russia or New Zealand, but would be about as profitable subjects of debate in England as alchemy, palmistry, or Cleopatra's needle (and thread-paper).

In appending notes to a work of this great scope and labour, the result, JAENISCH tells us, of some years' devoted study, I have been naturally fearful of overlaying the subject by a too frequent expression of my own assent or dissent. The difficulty constantly before me has not been to criticize, but to be silent, lest I should fall into the too frequently practised custom of going through an author merely to accuse him of faults. It must not therefore be supposed by the reader that I always acquiesce in JAENISCH'S theories when presented by me commentless, nor that I have been blind to his beauties because I applaud them not in detail. To test the real merits of an author, we should compare him simply with preceding writers. Viewed thus, every real judge will admit that JAENISCH'S New Analysis is the best, the largest, and most comprehensive Preceptor of Openings, ever yet published in this country.

A great feature of excellence in JAENISCH is his untiring patience. He thoroughly exhausts his theme, and heaps moves upon moves in elucidation of his views, until no one train of play appears to be left unnoticed. The beginner may even fancy the variations too numerous, but he will remember that nothing easy of acquirement can be of considerable value. JAENISCH'S Analysis is rather a work of reference, than a task-book to be played day by day regularly all through — a library of Openings, to be examined and patiently digested in detail; when, after real play, the student's aim is to discover how he might have improved his tactics in some particular début. In reproducing these numerous back-games,

Digitized by Google

the main branches become proportionally tangible, and the pervading spirit of the whole rests bright and clear upon memory accordingly. JAENISCH'S plan of notation, embodying all ramifications in his text, is preferable to any system involving numerous notes. His leading moves in large type are presented as models, and the strongest for both parties; all variations appearing within brackets of two descriptions, as fresh divergences arise. The translator is responsible for all foot-notes, excepting two or three signed "JAENISCH."

In dismissing this volume, I would call the attention of our higher class of players to JAENISCH'S preference at times of a close game to an open position. We frequently find that when the one army is encamped solely on its three home lines, while their adversary ranges absolutely over the rest of the field, no disparity existing in power, our author takes for choice the array closely entrenched; hardly estimating sufficiently (it would seem to many of us) the value of commanding five-eighths of the whole board, and the probability of such command leading to the acquirement of certain delicate shades of advantage, during the coming manœuvres of battle. Which is correct in this one respect, on general grounds, English or Russian theory?

G. W.

London, March, 1847.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

SIGNS AND ABBREVIATIONS.

For the sake of brevity, certain characters and contractions have been used by the translator; too simple to demand more than this passing notice. The signs × denoting "takes," and + representing "check" or "checks," are already familiar to students, as existing in "Chess Studies," and "Art of Chess-Play." To these have been added the following abbreviations, it is hoped with much advantage as to gain of space and clearness of signification. The colours "White" and "Black" are never alluded to; the mode of notation adopted rendering their specification needless. The sign + is equally applied to simple check, double check, or check by discovery.

b g - signifies "better game," "has better game of the two."

bd g - - - "bad game," "has bad game;" made use of like the last phrase, in dismissing that particular analysis.

bst - - - "best," "best move" or "correct move;" applied uniformly to the one particular move, and not to the state of the game.

Cas - - - "Castles;" the particular Rook being specified only where both are free to act.

dr - - - "draw" or "drawn."

en p - - - "en passant," used when a Pawn takes adverse Pawn "en passant."

ev - - - "even," "the game is even, or equal." "Neither party has the advantage."

gam - - - "Gambit."

gam p - - "Gambit Pawn."

gd g - - - "good game," "has good game;" applied like "bd g" or "ev," solely to dismissal of the variation under examination.

Digitized by Google

if - -	- the party might do otherwise, but "if he should do so and so." This word must not be confounded with "inf," "inferior."
in - -	- "interposes."
inf - .	- "inferior," "not his best move;" applied only to the individual move to which it is attached, and not to the state of game.
m - -	- "mate," or "checkmate."
m in two, &c.	- "mates by force in two moves, &c."
perp - -	- "perpetual," "gives perpetual check."
Q or q -	- the letter "Q" besides denoting "Queen," occasionally marks the conversion of a Pawn to Queen on reaching eighth square.
sq - -	- "square" or "squares."
Var or var -	- "Variation."
w - -	- "wins," "will win," "ought to win," &c.
wk - -	- "weak move."

Digitized by Google

CONTENTS OF THIS VOLUME.

PART I.

	Page
Preface by the Author	1
Introduction by do.	3

BOOK I.

Openings on Queen's side, incorrect and irregular Openings, &c.	19
King's Pawn One Opening	19
Queen's Gambit	29
On the Fianchetto	36
Centre Pawn's Opening, or Queen's Bishop's Pawn's Opening	47

BOOK II.

King's Bishop's Opening	51, 106, &c.
King's Bishop's Counter Gambit	54
Lopez Gambit	74
M'Donnell's Double Gambit	79
Petroff's New King's Bishop's Opening	95

PART II.

Introduction by the Author	119

BOOK III.

King's Knight's Opening	122, 148, 180, &c.
Two Kings' Knights' Opening	127

Digitized by Google

Page

Philidor's Counter Gambit - - - - - - 150
Queen's Pawn Two Opening; known also as Scottish Opening - 167
Evans Gambit - - - - - - - 182
Giuoco Piano (II) - - - - - - - 185

BOOK IV.

King's Gambit - - - - - - - 208
King's Gambit refused - - - - - 209, 274, &c.
King's Gambit accepted. Irregular King's Gambits - - - 220
King's Bishop's Gambit - - - - - - 223
King's Knight's Gambit - - - - - - 257
Allgaier Gambit - - - - - - - 259
Muzio Gambit - - - - - - - 264
Salvio Gambit - - - - - - - 270
Cochrane Gambit - - - - - - - 271
Evading King's Knight's Gambit - - - - - 274
Concluding Theses founded on Analysis of Openings - - 277
Appendix by Jaenisch, on the exact defence of the Giuoco Piano, &c. - 284

Digitized by Google

GENERAL TABLE OF OPENINGS.

We consider it unnecessary to give a complete index of all the Openings contained in our work, but simply denote the place and page where each may be found: confining this moreover to our leading moves, without describing the variations in detail.—JAENISCH.

PART I. BOOK I.

	Page
1 $\frac{\text{QBP2}}{}$ (Opening 11) - - - -	34
1 $\frac{\text{QBP2}}{}$ (Opening 6) - - - -	28
1 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{QBP2}}$ (Opening 14) and 1 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{KKtB3}}$ (Opening 15)	37
1 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{KBP2}}$ (Opening 12) - - - -	35
1 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{QP2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{QBP2}}{\text{KP1}}$ (Opening 7) - - -	29
1 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{QP2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{QBP2}}{\text{P}\times\text{P}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{KP1}}{}$ (Opening 8) - -	31
1 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{QP2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{QBP2}}{\text{P}\times\text{P}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{KP2}}{}$ (Opening 9) - -	32
1 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{QP2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{QBP2}}{\text{P}\times\text{P}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{QKtB3}}{}$ (Opening 10) - -	33
1 $\frac{\text{KP2}}{\text{QBP2}}$ (Opening 5) - - - -	25
1 $\frac{\text{KP2}}{\text{KP1}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{KBP2}}{\text{QP2}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{P}\times\text{P}}{}$ (Opening 3) - -	22
1 $\frac{\text{KP2}}{\text{KP1}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{KBP2}}{\text{QP2}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{KP1}}{}$ (Opening 4) - -	23

Digitized by Google

		Page
1 $\frac{KP2}{KP1}$	2 $\frac{KKtB3}{}$ and 2 $\frac{KP1}{}$ - - -	20
1 $\frac{KP2}{KP1}$	2 $\frac{QP2}{QP2}$ 3 $\frac{KP1}{}$ (Opening 2) - -	21
1 $\frac{KP2}{KP1}$	2 $\frac{QP2}{QP2}$ 3 $\frac{P \times P}{}$ (Opening 1) - -	18
1 $\frac{KP2}{QKtP1}$	(Opening 13) - - - -	36
1 $\frac{KP2}{QKtB3}$	(Opening 16) - - - -	38
1 $\frac{KP2}{KBP2}$	(Opening 17) - - - -	39
1 $\frac{KP2}{QP2}$	(Opening 18) - - - - -	40
1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$	2 $\frac{QP2}{}$ (Opening 19) - - - -	41
1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$	2 $\frac{QKtB3}{}$ (Opening 20) - - -	44
1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$	2 $\frac{QBP1}{}$ (Opening 21) - - -	47

Book II.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$	2 $\frac{KBQB4}{QKtB3}$ (Opening 1) - -	51
1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$	2 $\frac{KBQB4}{QBP1}$ (Opening 2) - - -	53
1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$	3 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBP2}$ (Opening 3) - - -	54
1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$	2 $\frac{KBQB4}{QP2}$ (Opening 4) - - -	62
1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$	2 $\frac{KBQB4}{QKtP2}$ (Opening 5) - - -	63
1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$	2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{QP1}{}$ (Opening 6) - -	64
1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$	2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{KKtB3}{}$ (Opening 7) - -	66
1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$	2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{QP2}{}$ (Opening 8) - -	69

Digitized by Google

	Page
1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 3 $\frac{QKR5}{}$ (Opening 9) - -	73
1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 3 $\frac{QK2}{}$ (Opening 10) - -	74
1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 3 $\frac{QP2}{}$ (Opening 11) - -	77
1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 3 $\frac{KBP2}{}$ (Opening 12) - -	77
1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 3 $\frac{QKtP2}{B\times KtP}$ 4 $\frac{KKtB3 \text{ or } QBP1}{}$ (Opening 13) - - - - -	78
1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 3 $\frac{QKtP2}{B\times QKtP}$ 4 $\frac{KBP2}{}$ (Opening 14) - - - - -	79
1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 3 $\frac{QBP1}{QP2}$ (Opening 15) - -	81
1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 3 $\frac{QBP1}{QP1}$ (Opening 16) -	86
1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 3 $\frac{QBP1}{KKtB3}$ (Opening 17) -	86
1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 3 $\frac{QBP1}{QKR5}$ (Opening 18) - -	90
1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 3 $\frac{QBP1}{QKB3}$ (Opening 19) - -	91
1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 3 $\frac{QBP1}{QKKt4}$ 4 $\frac{QKB3}{}$ (Opening 20)	92
1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 3 $\frac{QBP1}{QKKt4}$ 4 $\frac{KKB}{QKKt3}$ 5 $\frac{QP2}{KP\times QP}$ (Opening 21) - - - - -	93
1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 3 $\frac{QBP1}{QKKt4}$ 4 $\frac{KKB}{QKKt3}$ 5 $\frac{QP2}{BQKt3 \text{ or } BK2}$ (Opening 22) - -	99
1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 3 $\frac{QBP1}{QKKt4}$ 4 $\frac{KKB}{QKKt3}$ 5 $\frac{KKtB3}{}$ (Opening 23) - - - - -	102
1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 3 $\frac{QBP1}{QKKt4}$ 4 $\frac{KKB}{QKB3}$ (Opening 24)	104

Digitized by Google

Page

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 3 $\frac{QBP1}{QKKt4}$ 4 $\frac{KKB}{QK2}$ - - 105

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 3 $\frac{QBP1}{QK2 \text{ or } KBQKt3}$ (Opening 25) 106

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 3 $\frac{QBP1}{QK2}$ 4 $\frac{KKtB3}{QP1}$ 5 $\frac{QP2}{}$

(Opening 26) - - - - - 112

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 3 $\frac{KKtB3}{}$ (Opening 27) - - 114

Part II. Book III. Section I.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{QBP1}$ (Opening 1) - - - 122

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{KBQB4}$ (Opening 2) - - - 122

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{KBP2}$ (Opening 3) - - - 123

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{QP2}$ (Opening 4) - - - 124

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{KKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{KKt \times P}{Kt \times P \text{ or } QK2}$ (Opening 5) - 127

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{KKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{Kt \times P}{QP1}$ 4 $\frac{KtKB3}{Kt \times P}$ 5 $\frac{QP1}{}$

(Opening 6) - - - - - - 129

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{KKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{Kt \times P}{QP1}$ 4 $\frac{KtKB3}{Kt \times P}$ 5 $\frac{QP2}{QP1}$

6 $\frac{KBQ3}{QBP2}$ (Opening 7) - - - - 130

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{KKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{Kt \times P}{QP1}$ 4 $\frac{KtKB3}{Kt \times P}$ 5 $\frac{QP2}{QP1}$

6 $\frac{KBQ3}{KBQ3}$ (Opening 8) - - - - 131

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{KKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{Kt \times P}{QP1}$ 4 $\frac{KKtB3}{Kt \times P}$ 5 $\frac{QP2}{QP1}$

6 $\frac{KBQ3}{QKtB3}$ (Opening 9) - - - - 136

Digitized by Google

Page

1 KP2/KP2 2 KKtB3/KKtB3 3 Kt×P/QP1 4 KKtB3/Kt×P 5 QP2/QP1
6 KBQ3/KKtQ3 (Opening 10) - - - - 138

1 KP2/KP2 2 KKtB3/KKtB3 3 KKt×P/QP1 4 KKtB3/Kt×P 5 QP2/QP1
6 KBQ3/KBK2 (Opening 11) - - - - 139

1 KP2/KP2 2 KKtB3/KKtB3 3 QP2/KP×P (Opening 12) - - 140

1 KP2/KP2 2 KKtB3/KKtB3 3 QP2/Kt×KP (Opening 13) - - 143

Section II.

1 KP2/KP2 2 KKtB3/KBP1 or QKB3 - - - - 149

1 KP2/KP2 2 KKtB3/QP1 3 QP2/KBP2 (Opening 14) - 150

1 KP2/KP2 2 KKtB3/QP1 3 QP2/KP×P or KKtB3 (Opening 15) 154

1 KP2/KP2 2 KKtB3/QP1 3 KBQB4/QBP1 or QBK3 (Opening 16) 155

1 KP2/KP2 2 KKtB3/QP1 3 KBQB4/KBP2 (Opening 17) - 157

Section III.

1 KP2/KP2 2 KKtB3/QKtB3 3 QBP1 (Opening 18) - - 163

1 KP2/KP2 2 KKtB3/QKtB3 3 KBQKt5 (Opening 19) - 165

1 KP2/KP2 2 KKtB3/QKtB3 3 QP2/QKt×P (Opening 20) - 168

1 KP2/KP2 2 KKtB3/QKtB3 3 QP2/KP×P 4 KBQB4/QKB3 (Opening 21) 171

1 KP2/KP2 2 KKtB3/QKtB3 3 QP2/KP×P 4 KBQB4/B+ (Opening 22) 174

Digitized by Google

Page

1 KP2/KP2 2 KKtB3/QKtB3 3 QP2/KP×P 4 KBQB4/KBQB4 (Opening 23) 177

1 KP2/KP2 2 KKtB3/QKtB3 3 QP2/KP×P 4 KBQB4/KKtB3 (Supplementary Var. to Opening 23) - - - - 179

1 KP2/KP2 2 KKtB3/QKtB3 3 KBQB4/KBP2 (Opening 24) - - 180

1 KP2/KP2 2 KKtB3/QKtB3 3 KBQB4/KBQB4 4 QKtP2/— (Opening 25) 182

1 KP2/KP2 2 KKtB3/QKtB3 3 KBQB4/KBQB4 4 QBP1/QKB3 (Opening 26) 185

1 KP2/KP2 2 KKtB3/QKtB3 3 KBQB4/KBQB4 4 QBP1/KKtK2 (Opening 27) 186

1 KP2/KP2 2 KKtB3/QKtB3 3 KBQB4/KBQB4 4 QBP1/QP1 (Opening 28) 188

1 KP2/KP2 2 KKtB3/QKtB3 3 KBQB4/KBQB4 4 QBP1/QK2 (Opening 29) 193

1 KP2/KP2 2 KKtB3/QKtB3 3 KBQB4/KBQB4 4 QBP1/KKtB3 5 QP2/KP×P 6 KP1/QP2 (Opening 30) - - - - 195

1 KP2/KP2 2 KKtB3/QKtB3 3 KBQB4/KBQB4 4 QBP1/KKtB3 5 QP2/KP×P 6 KP1/KKtK5 7 QK2/— (Opening 31) - - 197

1 KP2/KP2 2 KKtB3/QKtB3 3 KBQB4/KBQB4 4 QBP1/KKtB3 5 QP2/KP×P 6 KP1/KtK5 7 KBQ5/Kt×KBP 8 K×Kt/P×P+ 9 KK/— (Opening 32) - - - - - 201

Same moves up to Move 9 KKB/— (Opening 33) - - 204

Same moves up to Move 9 KKKt3/— (Opening 34) - 206

Digitized by Google

Book IV. Section I.

				Page
1 KP2 / KP2	2 KBP2 / QP1	(Opening 1)	- - -	209
1 KP2 / KP2	2 KBP2 / QKtB3	(Opening 2)	- - -	210
1 KP2 / KP2	2 KBP2 / QBP1	(Opening 3)	- - -	211
1 KP2 / KP2	2 KBP2 / KKtB3	(Opening 4)	- - -	212
1 KP2 / KP2	2 KBP2 / QP2	(Opening 5)	- - -	213
1 KP2 / KP2	2 KBP2 / QKR5+	(Opening 6)	- - -	214
1 KP2 / KP2	2 KBP2 / QKB3	(Opening 7)	- - -	214
1 KP2 / KP2	2 KBP2 / KBQB4	(Opening 8)	- - -	216
1 KP2 / KP2	2 KBP2 / KP×P	KRP2 (Opening 9)	- -	221

Section II.

				Page
1 KP2 / KP2	2 KBP2 / KP×P	3 KBQB4 / KKtP2	(Opening 10) -	224
1 KP2 / KP2	2 KBP2 / P×P	3 KBQB4 / QKR5+	4 KKB / KKtB3 (Opening 11)	225
1 KP2 / KP2	2 KBP2 / KP×P	3 KBQB4 / QKR5+	4 KKB / QKB3 (Opening 12)	226
1 KP2 / KP2	2 KBP2 / KP×P	3 KBQB4 / Q+	4 KKB / QP1 (Opening 13)	229
1 KP2 / KP2	2 KBP2 / P×P	3 KBQB4 / Q+	4 KKB / KKtP2	5 QKB3
(Opening 14) - - - - -				234
1 KP2 / KP2	2 KBP2 / P×P	3 KBQB4 / Q+	4 KKB / KKtP2	5 KKtB3
(Opening 15) - - - - -				236

Digitized by Google

Page

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBP2}{KP\times P}$ 3 $\frac{KBQB4}{Q+}$ 4 $\frac{KKB}{KKtP2}$ 5 $\frac{QKtB3}{\quad}$

(Opening 16) - - - - - 246

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBP2}{P\times P}$ 3 $\frac{KBQB4}{Q+}$ 4 $\frac{KKB}{KKtP2}$ 5 $\frac{QKtB3}{KBKt2}$

6 $\frac{QP2}{QP1}$ 7 $\frac{KBK2}{\quad}$ (Opening 17) - - 254

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBP2}{KP\times P}$ 3 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBP2}$ (Opening 18) 256

Section III..

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBP2}{KP\times P}$ 3 $\frac{KKtB3}{KKtP2}$ 4 $\frac{KRP2}{\quad}$ (Opening 19) 258

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBP2}{KP\times P}$ 3 $\frac{KKtB3}{KKtP2}$ 4 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBKt2}$ (Opening 20) 260

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBP2}{KP\times P}$ 3 $\frac{KKtB3}{KKtP2}$ 4 $\frac{KBQB4}{KKtP1}$ (Opening 21) 264

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBP2}{P\times P}$ 3 $\frac{KKtB3}{KKtP2}$ 4 $\frac{KBQB4}{KKtP1}$ 5 $\frac{KKtK5}{\quad}$

(Opening 22) - - - - - 269

Digitized by Google

JAENISCH

ON

CHESS OPENINGS.

PART I.

PREFACE BY THE AUTHOR.

THE title of this work sufficiently indicates that it relates to a Treatise of pure Science. The analysis of the game of Chess, like that of other games of calculation, has a considerable degree of analogy with mathematical analysis generally, which treats equally of combinations, whatever may be the quality of the powers, great or small, of which those combinations consist. The essential difference is, that this latter only takes into consideration the number of the different combinations, while the other form of analysis treats specially of their intrinsic quality. To speak here of nothing beyond the theory of Chess, its combinations are so profound and complicated, that it is, without a doubt, more difficult than the integral calculus.

The author is but too well aware of the dilemma with which he is menaced. The great majority of Chess-players will not study his work, finding it alike arid and difficult. On the other hand, mere men of the world, taking upon themselves to play the part of echo to certain "savans," will ridicule so much time having been devoted to a game; these same men speaking at the same time with admiration of professors of geometry, whose labours may be classed as sterile speculations upon the theory of numbers, or upon the application of the doctrine of probabilities to games of chance. It suffices, indeed, to have but very little knowledge of the history of Chess to perceive the absurdity of similar criticisms. Be it generally known, then, that notwithstanding the labours of the most skilful amateurs throughout the past ages of every nation since the sixteenth century, the Rui Lopezes, the Salvios, the Ponzianis, the Philidors, it was reserved for our own times to make discoveries the most surprising and valuable in the theory of Chess,

Digitized by Google

without even setting up the remotest idea that the subject can ever be exhausted. Let us reflect on this fact, that since the epoch of renewing the cultivation of the arts and sciences, the brain of man, as regards games of combination, has as yet invented nothing which comes even at all near to the Royal Game (the game of the Schâh).* Amid objects purely conventional, the game of Chess, then, has acquired that degree of tried stability which renders it every way worthy of becoming an object of scientific study. The art of war, which, like that of Chess, is in some measure the Science of Position, has undergone through lapse of time many considerable modifications, and has yet probably to experience many further changes and improvements. As reasonably, then, blame those who attempt to submit the science of war to theories.

Having thus replied to the objections of men foreign to the use of the Chess-board, it remains to justify our publication in the eyes of connoisseurs. If we have at length decided upon printing this work, it is that a favourable combination of circumstances has enabled us to make a profound Study of all the Openings of the Game, and that having largely cultivated the mathematics, we have been enabled to apply to our labours, a logic more severe than that in general use among Chess-writers. We believe that up to the present moment none have attempted to offer a Study so complete as ours, upon Chess Openings, both regular and irregular. There does not exist one opening on which we have not some novelties to present; and by the title of New Openings we only define such moves of attack and defence as conduce to real progress in the theory at large; and not merely brilliant and curious combinations, such being really false or inapplicable. We are not of those who take to themselves the labours of others; and where past moves, &c. are quoted, have scrupulously indicated the various sources from which they were derived.

We cannot conclude our task without offering, in the face of the world, our thanks to M. Von Heydebrand und der Lasa, for the many important suggestions respecting this work due to his kindness. During our last visit to Berlin, we worked hard, personally, with M. der Lasa, in analysing several openings of the game, which appear as well in our Treatise as in the great work even now printing by M. Heydebrand

* We do not pretend to carry the origin of Chess, that is, with its present constitution and moves of the pieces, farther back than the fifteenth or fourteenth centuries. We now know that it is of Indian-Persian origin, that the Arabs communicated it to the Spaniards, through whom it was transmitted to the Italians, the French, and all the other nations of Western Europe. A curious *criterium* of this origin is afforded us by Russia, who alone received the game of Chess direct from the East; probably through her ancient conquerors, the Moguls. Accordingly we find, in Russia, the names of two pieces, discarded from the vocabulary of Western Europe, preserved there yet in their Oriental dialect. These are, first, the General of the army, or Vizir, called in Russian as in Persian, "Ferz," from which the Western Europeans derived "fierche," "vierge," and finally "Dame, or Queen;" and, secondly, the Elephant, named in Russia "Slone," in Arabia "Al Fil," of which the Italians made "Alfiero," and the French "Le Fil," and then "Le Fou." As to the War Chariots of India, the Castles, the ancient Russians by a confusion of ideas, somewhat bizarre, have taken them for ships (Ladïi.)

JAENISCH.

Digitized by Google

in the German language.* We are equally indebted to Dr. Bledow, of Berlin†, for allowing us, in so liberal and friendly a manner, constant access, during the composition of these sheets, to the real treasures of his very valuable Chess library.

C. F. De Jaenisch,
Major in the Russian Army, Knight of the Orders of St. Anne, St. Stanislaus, &c.

Dresden, August 10. 1842.

INTRODUCTION.

GENERAL THEORY AND CLASSIFICATION OF CHESS OPENINGS.

1. The great number of works published upon Chess, prove the general belief in a complete theoretical system. But what is the theory of Chess? or, in other words, what does there exist in this game susceptible of an investigation and theoretical development; and what branch thereof will ever remain, properly speaking, PLAY? It becomes us to resolve this question, before entering into matters of detail.

2. In the first place, the nature itself of the game and of the various pieces, has permitted us to establish certain precepts, general and particular, relating severally to each piece.‡ Of the precepts alluded to, is that of gaining a move or time, of avoiding loss of the same, of guarding against check by discovery; the necessity of placing our men where they can occupy the largest sphere of action, and the like. There have been also laid down particular rules for the best mode of manœuvring the Rooks, the Bishops, the Pawns, and other pieces. We do not dwell upon these directions, long since unfolded as far as they possibly could be, at fitting length, in the best elementary volumes on the subject.

3. The Chess-pieces may be respectively considered under another point of view; that is, as to their aptitude for conducting Pawns to Queen towards the close of the party, or of giving Mate. From this have resulted many principles, or theorems, of the game of Chess, highly important, and equally to be found in the best works. This branch of the theory leaves even yet much room for supply, but it is doubtful

* Von Der Lasa's valuable Chess Treatise first made its appearance, Berlin, Veit and Co., 1843, royal 8vo.; same year as Jaenisch published his second part, which is incorporated with his first in the present volume. Jaenisch dates his second volume, Petersburg, April, 1843.

† Unfortunately for the cause of Chess, in which he shone as an ardent enthusiast, Dr. Bledow died August 6th, 1846.

‡ A note relating merely to the laws of the game follows this introduction, which I omit as useless to British Amateurs.

Digitized by Google

whether its advance can ever materially improve the practice of the sport. Authors have, indeed, tolerably well analysed endings of games composed of Pawns only, as well as certain simple cases of Pawns combined with pieces.* But the infinity of variations springing from the latter species of endings of games, the analytical examination of which is altogether exhaustless, hardly admit of any other guide than experience.

4. There being given a certain determined situation of the pieces on the board, one may propose conditions to be fulfilled in its resolution. The position may even be chosen expressly so as to require a certain series of moves, more or less subtle and unexpected, in order to satisfy the conditions exacted. The most ingenious and difficult class of Problems of all, is that which turns on forcing your adversary to give Mate. In this category, we know of none which will bear comparison with the positions invented by M. Pétroff, and published in the Chess Player's Chronicle, and Le Palamède.

5. The situation of the men, the analysis of which forms the last and the most important division of the theory of Chess, is the commonly known position of the pieces at the beginning of the game. This analysis constitutes the THEORY OF THE OPENINGS founded by Damiano and Ruy Lopez; developed for the greater part by the renowned Italian masters; and latterly augmented chiefly by the labours of English amateurs. It is, however, far as yet from having attained the desired degree of perfection, and that by reason of the extreme — the incalculable —variety of its combinations. It has been with the intention of supplying important omissions, and of rectifying numerous errors, that we have undertaken the present work. In it we propose to ourselves to treat in detail, and under the exposition of new lights, all the openings extant of any consequence, and we hope the student will often here meet with results altogether unexpected. We shall chiefly bear in mind the necessity of pointing out the real spirit—the links which absolutely connect all the classical débuts; of proving their necessary dependence on each other — their really deserving the character of "classical," on comparing them with all other imaginable openings; and of developing with mathematical severity the consequences of the first fault in the game, committed either on the attacking or defending side of the force. To arrive at this, we shall be compelled to take up from its beginning the theory of the various openings of the game, and to dwell more than has been hitherto done upon their philosophical principles, which have ever been indeed much neglected by Chess authors.

6. The theory of the openings teaches the art of getting the various pieces into action, in the quickest and most advantageous manner. To understand the true sense of this theory, it is necessary first to reflect upon the advantage consequent upon having the first move. The advantage of the move consists in obliging one's adversary to follow cer-

* The author of this work, in 1837, augmented the number of these cases by the discovery of a new system of situations in which King and Knight alone force Mate against King and several Pawns. See "Discoveries relative to the Chess-Knight, by C. F. J. St. Petersburgh, Graeff, 1837. (This scientific analysis is largely quoted from in my "Art of Chess Play." G. W.)

Digitized by Google

tain moves in order, so as to leave him but the choice of few defensive operations. It is this advantage which is termed THE ATTACK. It very rarely lasts beyond the commencement of the game, unless the adversary commits some error in the defence. This beginning may, however, endure for a longer or shorter space of time, according to the mode of defence adopted by one's opponent; and the duration of the attack may thus serve to measure the worth of the defence. A mode of defence which shall have suffered the attack to last longer than another must be necessarily worse, and vice-versa. It is a remarkable fact that, in the game of Chess, those lines of defence which are the weakest, and therefore worst, almost always give rise to more varied and interesting combinations than more perfect systems of defence; for this reason, scientific players frequently adopt them in preference, to insure a longer and more animated contest. There are, moreover, certain attacks, or hazardous systems of defence, of such character as to give necessarily a worse game, or even the infallible loss of the game, if the adversary play all the moves rightly, and which may yet cause him to lose the game himself, if he neglect to play the correct moves. Of this genus are, for example, the greater number of the gambits (though all the gambits, as the Queen's gambit for instance, must not be termed hazardous), or openings in which a Pawn is sacrificed to confound the adversary, and overturn his attack or defence. The class of hazardous openings, although strictly speaking to be condemned, cannot be omitted in any treatise, by reason of their frequent use, and the difficulties they ordinarily present. To avoid being misunderstood, we here distinctly state, that in discussing the various forms of openings, we style better or superior such "coups d'attaque" as shall enable the attack to last the longest; and less good, or inferior, such as lead earlier to its termination. On the other hand, in treating of the defence, we shall term such moves "superior" as abridge the attack, and "inferior" such as permit its prolongation.

7. In every game in which no odds are given, in which both parties have played all the correct moves, the advantage of the move ought to cease sooner or later, and, dating from that instant, neither the one nor the other should be able to characterise their game as having the attack, or being under defence. The game carried out strictly correct from that point, ought to be drawn, there being an equality of force; or in the event of one of the player's having sacrificed something, as in the gambits, ought necessarily to be lost. But this continuation, or state of things, termed THE MIDDLE OF THE GAME, no longer ranges within the theory of the openings. The situation of the pieces therein having the property of all but infinite variety, it can no longer, generally speaking, be submitted to or tested by any scheme of theory, and we must therefore then content ourselves with general principles, illustrated by actual games played by celebrated players.

Here then is where, strictly speaking, commences the domain of Practical Play, — a region which extends to the finish of the game; for if we except the cases, or simple theorems, just mentioned in 3, it is only experience which in the remaining descriptions of game-ends can teach us the difficult art of conducting the Pawns to Queen; or

Digitized by Google

guide us in the application of such general rules as exist on this subject. All that can be done to lay down a theory respecting ends of games, is to analyse, in all their details, as large a number of simple cases as possible.

The point of time at which the advantage of the move should cease is sometimes fixed at about the fourteenth move; but this is erroneous, for, as we have already said, such period is advanced or retarded, according to the system of defence chosen. There are modes of defence so protracted — so long-winded — that they linger on even up to twenty moves, and there exist others which disarm the attack on the leading moves.

8. To gain a clear comprehension of the entire theory of the openings, it is necessary to understand and digest first the two following fundamental principles: —

First. The weakest point of the adverse force, in their primitive position, is evidently that square occupied by the King's Bishop's Pawn. This point should then be regarded as the key to the whole position; and it is upon that square the leading attacks should be directed and concentrated. From this principle there necessarily must arise a great number of rules recognised as fundamentally applicable to the openings. For example: —

1. The best place for the King's Bishop at the beginning of the game is the Q B 4th, by reason of the line of attack connecting that square with the weak point occupied by the adverse K B P*. The K B should therefore take up that position as soon, and retain it as long, as possible. The adversary, on the other hand, should in such case as quickly as possible intercept the action of your K B upon his K B P, by opposing his Q B to your's upon his K 3.†

2. It follows, as a general rule, that you should not play your Q P 1, before the K B, that important attacking piece, has deployed. The exceptions to this case are rare, and can only present themselves on the side of the defence.

3. The best place for your K Kt at the beginning of the game is your K B 3; since he there occupies a wider range of attack than he would do seated upon K 2, or K R 3. (Respecting the difficulties presented by this rule, see presently 9.) The Kt placed on K B 3, has the capability of advancing to K 5, or to K Kt 5, there commanding the radical weak point of the adverse power; namely, that occupied by his K B P. Moreover, looking at the defence, your Kt on K B 3, operates as a powerful guard upon your K B P, particularly against the attacks of adverse Queen; and that not only by serving as a direct shield to the Pawn, through filling the fronting square, but by preventing Q

* This rule is only applicable when the adversary plays his K P 2. In the close game, when he moves K P only 1, your K B is generally much stronger when placed on your Q 3, than at Q B 4.

† I differ here from Jaenisch, so far as considering the move of Q B to K 3, in similar cases, the exception and not the general. The adversary either retreats K B from Q B 4 to Q Kt 3, retaking with Q R P advantageously, should you take B, or leaving your Q B in a weak position; or else he at once takes Q B with K B, injuring your situation by thus taking K B P from his own file, to encumber your camp by getting upon K file.

Digitized by Google

from coming to your K R 4; a square so desirable to seize for attack, especially if his K B bears upon your K B P. From this very cause arises the danger, frequently so serious, of fixing your K Kt at K 2, for besides that such position leaves your K R 4 open to the range of adverse Queen (and yields you none of the numerous advantages of subsequent capabilities arising from the former-named situation of Kt at K B 3), your Kt at K 2 intercepts your Q from supporting K B P should the latter require her assistance. Should the attack upon this point, indeed, be very formidable, the move of K Kt to K 2 frequently induces the total loss of the game.

As we advance, other consequences from this principle will develope themselves. We here add that next to the square on which stands K B P originally, the weakest point of the position is Q B P, above all if the Queen is not at hand.* This latter point may frequently be attacked with advantage by the Q Kt, as, for example, in the King's Bishop's Gambit.

Second. Another leading aim which should ever be present on beginning the game, is to centralise your Pawns upon the front of your line. The centre of the board once occupied this way, and the position well sustained, you are sure of gaining the advantage; through the constrained situation in which sooner or later the adverse pieces will find themselves. It follows that one of the leading branches of the defence consists in preventing the establishment in the centre of two adverse Pawns.

When you have once succeeded in establishing two front Pawns at the King's and Queen's fourth, you should for the moment renounce indirectly all sorts of attack, and confine your exertions to supporting these two pawns, taking care to keep them still abreast as long as they are attacked only by pieces. But should they be attacked by a Pawn, you must not take that Pawn with yours, but advance the Pawn so attacked, sustaining it subsequently with the Bishop's Pawn adjoining.† It is in this manner that you succeed, after a certain time, either in obtaining a passed Pawn, which decides the winning of the game, or else in being in a position to crowd your adversary more and more stringently. To understand this description of pressing together, or crowding one's opponent, pay attention to these three kinds of advantage more

* Is it certain that the Q B P is as weak as the Q Kt P, and is it not generally recognised that the K Kt P is the weakest of the three?

† This doctrine of advancing the Pawns must be received with great caution; being by no means of general application. In many cases, the game becomes compromised, solely because the King's Pawn is advanced to K 5, however well and permanently he may be there supported. A strong instance of this occurs in what is commonly termed the King's Pawn One Opening; in which first player, having begun with K P 2, and his adversary replying with K P 1, gets K P to K 5, and loses the game frequently through the weakness of the position. The reason of this feebleness of situation is only visible at the close of the game; when it is found that the more advanced Pawns having a wider space in their rear, which their forward mode of march prevents their guarding, are more accessible to attack of every sort than Pawns less advanced. Jaenisch follows Philidor in this maxim. There is good in it, but there is also much of evil; as proved by the games of M'Donnell and De la Bourdonnais, the finest series of games really played extant.

Digitized by Google

or less consequent upon your establishing your two centre Pawns in the front as above.

1st. The adverse KB, his chief piece of attack in the beginning of the game, will find his action intercepted, and his command of your KBP cut off. 2d. The adverse QP being enabled to advance but one square, will considerably restrain the powers of his Queen, and should the adversary succeed in advancing it a second square, your King's Pawn moved on to K5, where its force is much greater, will heavily embarrass the opposite game. 3d. The player who has the centre Pawns will have his game disposed upon four parallel ranges, while the adversary's force can only take up three such ranges, or dispositions.

9. All the openings will be found to furnish us with continual applications of this principle of the Pawns. This it is which elucidates the vast importance of exchanging the Bishops' Pawns for those of King and Queen, by reason of the origin and importance of the Gambits of King and Queen.

From this it is that the celebrated Philidor derives the rule, that "the Knights must not without necessity be placed before the Bishops' Pawns." This rule, which the Anglo-Italian school most erroneously rejects as unsound, is nevertheless, strictly speaking, quite correct. We must only add to it, that from the nature of things it is only applicable for practical purposes, where there is good opportunity to advance the two Bishops' Pawns, as in the "King's Pawn One Game," and certain analogous openings, as peculiar Gambits, &c. The same holds good in regard to the openings vulgarly termed "regular," where it is so essential to support QP by moving QBP1, and thus cut off the attacks of adverse KB, and in which it is thence certain that the QKt should never without strong necessity be placed before the QBP. But the great danger of pushing the KBP in the opening of the game, standing forth in strong evidence in the commencement of the "regular" games, it is clear that we should deprive ourselves in these games of a large class of advantages, were we not to play KKt before KBP; the KB3 being the strongest square on which in such openings to seat him. Thus Philidor's rule, viewed as a deduction from the principle of the Pawns, is in reality exact and fundamental, but is nevertheless ordinarily restrained in its application by considerations arising from the other principle, viz. the attack upon the adverse Bishops' Pawns.*

There exist yet in favour of this rule two other important reasons, neglected by past authors, which are, that the central Pawns may often be pushed with advantage upon the Knights thus placed at their Bishops' 3d (which much strengthens the opponent's attack), and that the adverse Bishops are enabled to pin them, and thus menace us with doubled Pawns.† This latter inconvenience is much greater for the

* It appears to me that our author here unconsciously verges in his arguments upon self-contradiction, in his anxiety to support his idol Philidor upon every occasion. In regular openings, and all other openings, it is frequently better play to move QKt to B3, than QBP1; and one great objection to the latter move is generally allowed to be that of restraining the QKt from coming forth early into action.

† Our author here greatly dreads a doubled Pawn, but seems less to regard

Digitized by Google

Q Kt which covers K, than for K Kt which covers only the Q. If to this be added the much greater importance of K Kt thus placed, we shall see that the latter ought generally to prefer the B 3 (when, and how, we shall find in our detailed analysis of the openings), while the Q Kt ought not to be thus brought out, except to acquire an immediate attack, whether upon the adverse Queen, or upon the Q B 7th. In the course of this work, we shall have occasion again to consider this much-controverted topic.

Wanting two pawns in the front, a single centre pawn well supported, above all on Q 4th, where it prevents the attack of adverse K B, may render the greatest service (as will be strikingly evidenced in "The Two Knights' Opening" and "the Queen's Gambit"). Sometimes, also, advanced to K 5, before the adverse Q P has yet moved at all, the K P, though isolated, may cruelly compress one's opponent's game. On the other hand, generally speaking, Pawns lose force by being too far advanced early in the game, since it is at the close of the party that being pushed on they carry the day.*

The discovery, or at least the full development, of the principle of the Pawns, stands out as the brightest of Philidor's titles of fame. The continued application of the same principle by the successors of Philidor of the French school, has been the cause of the superiority of that school over the English school. This latter, chiefly formed upon a study of the great Italian masters, had almost exclusively directed its attention to the development of the first principle, that of the attack of the pieces upon the adverse Bishop's Pawn; it was thereby exposed, by persisting in a series of brilliant but fruitless attacks, to concede to the enemy really solid advantages for the middle and end of the game. For in vain will you have concentrated your pieces to bear upon adverse King, if you neglect to play your Pawns properly, since your opponent will be enabled to get one or more passed Pawns, and go to Queen towards the close of the game. The first rank, then, and the major degree of importance, belong incontestably to the principle of the Pawns, which ought to guide our conduct during the entire game, while the other principle relates specially but to the openings. ("*It is generally advantageous "for your Pawns to occupy the centre of the board, because they "impede the progress of your adversary's pieces; the K and Q p. "at their 4th, are generally well placed, but it is difficult to maintain "them in that position; and if you are forced to advance one of them, "their power considerably diminishes: be not therefore over anxious "to establish two Pawns abreast in the centre." See Lewis on Chess.*

—— "*Move your pieces out before your Pawns, or you will pro-*

---

it when he proposes to play Q B to K 3 to exchange it with adverse K B. The K Kt P thus doubled is doubtless, generally speaking, a grave disadvantage; but the Q Kt P doubled on to Q B P file is constantly just the reverse; and we frequently find it good play to move Q Kt to B 3, on purpose to tempt the enemy to pin it with B, which we then attack with Q R P, and are glad of his taking Kt, that we may retake with Q Kt P.

* Is this reconcileable with what Jaenisch has but just laid down as the correct principle of Pawn-play, for the centre Pawns, at the beginning of the game?

Digitized by Google

" bably be prevented from framing a strong attack, by the intervention " of your own pawns." See GEORGE WALKER ON CHESS. These principles, thus laid down by Mr. Walker, are characteristic of the English school; fruitful source of its defeats!*

11. The two great principles, then, we have laid down form the base of all theory upon Chess openings. We are immediately about to apply them towards tracing out a first general system of this theory, which will conduct us to the sole regular and legitimate classification of the openings. We shall not deem it necessary ever to specify the colours of the men, and shall throughout address the player moving first as " you," speaking of the adversary who moves second as " he." Our notation is absolutely independent of colours of the pieces.†

12. The question which first of all presents itself, is to know which is the best move with which the first player should begin the game. It is not 1 $\frac{QP2}{\quad}$, for your K B would then remain shut up: and besides, by moving 1 $\frac{\quad}{QP2}$ likewise, they would prevent your Bishop from occupying Q B 4.‡ Your best move is 1 $\frac{KP2}{\quad}$, which at once unmasks your K B, and prevents their playing 1 $\frac{\quad}{QP2}$, which, after changing off Pawns, would too much expose their Queen. (See Book I., Opening XIX.)

Your adversary has against 1 $\frac{KP2}{\quad}$ the choice of three good moves of

---

* Upon this I make simply two observations: — *First.* Jaenisch himself recommends bringing out the pieces before the Pawns, when he directs you to play K Kt to B3, and K B to Q B4, as leading moves. *Second.* The English school has beaten all others; Labourdonnais, Des Chapelles, and M'Donnell being its three chief pupils. Philidor's theory of pushing on the Pawns first, was successful only in his own hands. He was the first player of his day, and in my belief the greatest player the world ever saw; but he won through his immense talent for the game, and in spite of his system. Had he encountered a player of the Anglo-Italian school, like Labourdonnais, and been defeated, Philidor would in all probability have thrown overboard his peculiar theories; and conquered his adversary, by turning his own weapons upon him. It is incorrect to say that any of Philidor's successors adopted his principles: specimens of their play are extant, and speak for themselves. Jaenisch's whole treatise is Anglo-Italian, and not Philidorian; though he is unconscious that such is the case!

† Jaenisch here describes his mode of notation at great length; which is that of M. Alexandre, in his Chess Cyclopedia and Beauties of Chess. I have herein unhesitatingly preferred the English method of describing the moves, and have therefore adopted it throughout. Jaenisch appends different words or signs of approbation or disapproval to particular moves, as occasion arises; and in which I of course strictly follow him. His method of placing a short line between the couplet of moves is a great improvement upon us, as to a work embodying so many variations, but less suited to a record of actual games.

‡ It is playing with words to say Q P 2 is not, in logic, quite as good as K P 2, as your first move.

Digitized by Google

defence: a, 1 $\frac{}{KP2}$, which renounces all attempt to prevent your KB battering his KBP, but which leads to the most interesting combinations, and forms what is vulgarly called The Regular Opening, but which we shall term The Royal Opening. b, 1 $\frac{}{KP1}$ and c, 1 $\frac{}{QBP2}$ to prevent in the first place your immediately advancing QP2, and reserving to himself the subsequent move of KP1, to cover the line of your Bishop's attack on his KBP. These two latter openings, ordinarily termed "irregular," or "The King's Pawn One Début," we prefer styling "The French Openings," as distinguished in Russia and Germany, since up to the present time it is to French amateurs that we have been almost exclusively indebted for their theoretical examination. Far from being "irregular," they afford a line of defence more secure than 1 $\frac{}{KP2}$, but the Kings being severally less exposed, the game becomes much more tedious.*

All other moves of defence against 1 $\frac{KP2}{}$ as 1 $\frac{}{QKtP1}$ or 1 $\frac{}{KKtP1}$ to place afterwards the Bishops at KKt2, and QKt2 (the "fianchetto" of Italy), 1 $\frac{}{QP2}$ 1 $\frac{}{KBP2}$ 1 $\frac{}{QKtB3}$ are equally defective. We shall prove this assertion in the first Book of our work. As to the move 1 $\frac{}{QP1}$, we pass it over at once, for it would mask uselessly his KB, and so of 1 $\frac{}{QBP1}$ and 1 $\frac{}{KBP1}$, which would shut up the knights, or 1 $\frac{}{KKtB3}$, which would lose several moves on account of 2 $\frac{KP1}{}$†; and finally 1 $\frac{}{QRP1}$ or 1 $\frac{}{KRP1}$, which would constitute an absolute loss of time.

13. Against the opening 1 $\frac{QP2}{}$ there exist two sound defences: the first 1 $\frac{}{QP2}$, the second 1 $\frac{}{KP1}$; as a preparatory move towards advancing subsequently 2 $\frac{}{QP2}$; but this second defence enters into one

* Does not Jaenisch here discard the Philidor theory, and unhesitatingly prefer the Anglo-Italian system?

† I believe, on the contrary, second player may safely for fancy's sake answer 1 $\frac{KP2}{KKtB3}$ since if 2 $\frac{KP1}{}$ KKt returns home; and your KP is weakened through being too far advanced.

Digitized by Google

of the French openings, as hereinafter shown. The moves 1 $\frac{\text{QBP1}}{\text{——}}$ 1 $\frac{\text{QP1}}{\text{——}}$ 1 $\frac{\text{KBP1}}{\text{——}}$ shut up the pieces: 1 $\frac{\text{QKt to B3}}{\text{——}}$ would lose time through 2 $\frac{\text{QP1}}{\text{——}}$; also 1 $\frac{\text{QRP1}}{\text{——}}$ 1 $\frac{\text{KRP1}}{\text{——}}$ 1 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{\text{——}}$ and 1 $\frac{\text{QBP2}}{\text{——}}$ are all equally weak, as will be proved in our Book I. Respecting the first of the two moves we characterise as sound, 1 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{——}}$, as it is a general rule, on the one hand, to try to have the centre pawns in front, and on the other, to place KB at QB4 — it follows that the advantage of the first move here consists in the being now able to offer the Queen's Gambit by advancing 2 $\frac{\text{QBP2}}{\text{——}}$. All this will be more amply treated upon hereafter.

In beginning with 1 $\frac{\text{KP1}}{\text{——}}$ you voluntarily abandon the advantage of the first move, for the continuation would be 1 $\frac{\text{KP1}}{\text{QP2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{QBP2}}$; second player thus offering first the attack of Queen's Gambit and regaining the move. The game would be then strictly even. The move 1 $\frac{\text{QBP2}}{\text{——}}$ in order to follow it with $\frac{\text{KP1}}{\text{——}}$ is good, but exclusively defensive; thereby renouncing the attack of KB on KBP. This besides enters upon one of the French Openings.

We do not think it worth while to speak of 1 $\frac{\text{QP1}}{\text{——}}$, a gross fault; as breaking in upon the rule of never masking the KB unless absolutely necessary. He would answer with 1 $\frac{\text{——}}{\text{KP2}}$.

To 1 $\frac{\text{QKtB3}}{\text{——}}$ or 1 $\frac{\text{QBP1}}{\text{——}}$ he should reply 1 $\frac{\text{——}}{\text{QP2}}$; and as you could no longer then offer Queen's Gambit, you would have lost the move. Besides 1 $\frac{\text{QBP1}}{\text{——}}$ shuts up a Knight, as well as 1 $\frac{\text{KBP1}}{\text{——}}$; and 1 $\frac{\text{QRP1}}{\text{——}}$ and 1 $\frac{\text{KRP1}}{\text{——}}$ would equally be lost moves. To 1 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{\text{——}}$ he answers 1 $\frac{\text{——}}{\text{QP2}}$, and is thus enabled first to offer the Queen's Gambit.

The opening 1 $\frac{\text{KBP2}}{\text{——}}$, used by some amateurs, seems to us at least irregular; for this Pawn is altogether useless on this square, especially as your intention can only be thereafter to deploy your forces on Queen's

Digitized by Google

side, through advancing Q P and Q B P. So that your K P will thus remain behind, isolated and defenceless. The same remark applies to $1\ \frac{QP2}{KBP2}$.

14. To commence $1\ \frac{QKtP1}{\quad}$ and $1\ \frac{KKtP1}{\quad}$ in order to place Bishops on Q Kt 2 and K Kt 2, is to weaken dangerously your wings; and then your adversary, gaining time, may take up the centre with his Pawns, and crowd your game. We shall develop this in the first Book. The same remark is equally applicable to the "Fianchetto" played by the defence; but the error is the greater of the two when this system is taken up by the first player. In general, if the adversary begin by moving Rook's or Knight's Pawns, you should profit by his loss of time, to fix your Royal Pawns in the centre, and your Bishops' Pawns as well, if practicable.

We must observe, en passant, that the Italians in general designate by the term "fianchetto" a game in which one or both players, instead of opening with their centre pawns, first move the pawns on their wings. To play the "fianchetto" (the "flank," or "wing" opening) of the king, would be then to commence by the King's wing pawns; and so of the Queen and her "fianchetto." However, the "fianchetto" of the King only extends, properly speaking, to beginning with K B P, and the "fianchetto" of the Queen to commencing with Q B P. This latter falls into a regular French opening, while the King's "fianchetto" classes as an irregular.

As, however, the term "fianchetto" is exclusively used in Italy, we shall, to avoid confusion, only apply it here to games begun by the Knights' Pawns moved one square, to place Bishops on Knights' second squares. You may, indeed, try to advance, from the very beginning of the game, the Rooks' Pawns two squares, and more, to attempt getting Rooks instantly into play. But these débuts are disadvantageous, since the premature sortie of the Rooks loses precious time, while it confuses their own game, and weakens the wings.

15. Let us here consider the most ordinary opening, or Royal Début; $1\ \frac{KP2}{KP2}$, the question naturally arises, what is the best second move for the attack? The first which, pursuant to the general rule, presents itself, is $2\ \frac{KBQB4}{\quad}$ known as the King's Bishop's opening. But you may also play $2\ \frac{KKtB3}{\quad}$, or King's Knight's Opening, at once attacking K P, and appearing thereby to gain a move; as nothing can prevent your subsequently placing K B on Q B 4. Of these two moves, then, the last is the better, inasmuch as it prolongs the attack more than the other, even against the best moves. Moreover, its true defence is more hidden and difficult than the other. Yet in spite of these advantages of $2\ \frac{KKtB3}{\quad}$, the move $2\ \frac{KBQB4}{\quad}$ is not the

Digitized by Google

less worthy of the deepest attention, on account of the numerous and important variations to which it gives birth.

Besides these two moves 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{}$ and 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{}$, you might alr adopt one of the following: 2 $\frac{QBP1}{}$, which we name the opening of the Centre Pawns — 2 $\frac{QKtB3}{}$ or QKt's opening — 2 $\frac{QP2}{}$ Central Gambit played on the second move — and lastly 2 $\frac{KBP2}{}$ King's Gambit. We shall analyse all these in detail, and it will be found that the two last are justly termed "hazardous." As for 2 $\frac{QBP2}{}$ it takes up a place your KB ought legitimately to fill; and both 2 $\frac{KRP1}{}$ and 2 $\frac{QRP1}{}$ produce a certain loss of time.

16. The majority of Chess authors have divided all the openings into "Regular Openings" and "Irregular Openings." According to them the former are: — The King's Bishop's opening, the King's Kt's opening, and the Gambits of King and Queen. All the other openings are termed "irregular." As this distinction is purely arbitrary, and unfounded on principle, we cannot ourselves adopt it. We distinguish all the openings as "correct," or else as "incorrect" or "hazardous." You have correctly opened your game, when the adversary, playing all the right moves of routine, has not after a certain number of moves gained the slightest advantage: — such as a Pawn isolated or improperly doubled on your part; your Queen too much exposed, the loss of the privilege of Castling, a crowded position, &c. — without speaking of the actual loss of a Piece or Pawn. When you have had the move, you have not, then, correctly opened, if at the end of a certain number of moves, the attack has passed over to your adversary; or if you have what is termed "lost the move;" however equal in other respects may be the game. In every correct opening, after a number of moves, more or less long (or an opening more or less actually good), the attack and defence ought to be strictly in equilibrium; that is to say, the advantage of the first move ought to have ceased as regards the first player; without any advantage having gone over to the opponent.

17. We afterwards class all the correct openings in two grand divisions: *First*, the Openings from the King's Side, or Royal Openings; and *Secondly*, the Openings from the Queen's Side. The first division includes all those débuts in which both players adopt King's Pawn two squares as their first move; while the second comprises the different descriptions of Queen's Gambits and French Openings; all of which latter reduce themselves at a certain epoch of the commencement of the game, into either Queen's Gambits, or Queen's Counter-gambits. All other openings enumerated at length in this introduction are, as we have said, and shall presently prove, "incorrect" and "unsound."

Digitized by Google

The openings from Queen's side are exclusively defensive; the weakest point of the position, the K B P, being covered and shielded on both sides, and the attack being altogether carried on remote from the Kings. The mode of play which results from this may be styled "The game of defence." The royal début, on the other hand, presents uniformly considerable resources for the attack, which may last a long time; which may be varied — be multiplied upon different points — and may frequently pass over, through a fault on the part of first player, to the antagonist. This manner of play, thus singularly favourable to the attack, may then be styled "The game of attack."

We shall examine, in detail, in Book I., the different subdivisions of the openings on Queen's side, of which we have already presented some idea.

As to the Royal openings, a rigorous analysis, the sketch of which we have briefly indicated, demonstrates satisfactorily their constant reduction to two principal débuts; viz. The King's Bishop's opening, and King's Knight's opening. There remain yet two other openings, less sound, and of less general importance; the opening of the Centre Pawns, and the Queen's Knight's opening.

18. It must be clearly understood that all these openings may have, and do actually include, many variations correctly described as "extremely faulty," which, however, must not be passed over without examination, and of which we shall fully develope the most important, in due time and place. We will only here observe that, nevertheless, it is these openings alone (apart from the aforesaid incorrect variations) which are capable of bringing on games "purely and perfectly correct." All others are faulty or hazardous. Among the latter there is especially one worthy the attention of amateurs, The King's Gambit; the favourite study of the great masters ever since the origin of Chess down to the present day. Therefore, we propose to devote Book IV. exclusively to the King's Gambit; reserving the King's Knight's opening for Book III., that of King's Bishop for Book II., and finally all the others, as well correct as faulty, to be included in Book I. One of the chief tendencies of our Treatise will be to perfect as far as possible the theory of "Correct Openings;" hitherto much neglected by authors, as compared with the Gambits.

19. We have defined the Gambit as an opening in which a Pawn is sacrificed, in order to strengthen either the attack or defence. The Gambits employed on the part of the defence are styled "Counter-gambits" to distinguish them from attacking Gambits. The end of the Counter-gambit consists chiefly, not only in defending, but in passing suddenly from the defence to the attack; so that in all such cases we use the word "defence of the Counter-gambit," in speaking of the player who has had the move, but is now in his turn compelled to fight upon the defensive.

In another point of view, all the Gambits and Counter-gambits hitherto discovered, may be divided into four principal classes; distinguished severally, according to the particular Pawn sacrificed. The following are the four classes in question: —

Digitized by Google

1st The Gambit, or Counter-gambit, of the King, in which the particular Pawn sacrificed is the K B P.

2d. The Gambit, or Counter-gambit, of the Queen, in which the Pawn sacrificed is Q B P.

3d. The Gambit, or Counter-gambit, of the centre, in which it is the Q P almost universally abandoned; though occasionally it is the K P, as in the Queen's Gambit accepted, when the defence shapes itself into a central Counter-gambit, in which the K P is abandoned, in order to break up the enemy's centre.

4th. The Gambit, or Counter-gambit of the wing, in which it is the Q Kt P abandoned. (The sacrifice of K Kt P to be available, only occurs occasionally in the course of a game, in order to disengage more quickly K B and K R. To make it a *regular* sacrifice would be perfectly useless. For example: suppose each player has begun 1 $\frac{\text{K B P 2}}{\text{K B P 2}}$ you may then sacrifice K Kt P, 2 $\frac{\text{K Kt P 2}}{\text{———}}$, or even 2 $\frac{\text{K P 2}}{\text{———}}$; but a Gambit so framed must be essentially too weak to be worth examination. As to the sacrifice of the Rooks' Pawns, frequently seen in the King's and Queen's Gambits, to break up the position of adverse Knights' Pawns, it would be, we think, altogether useless to form a particular class of wing Gambits in its favour.)

The two last classes, which have only of late been examined with any degree of attention, may frequently be combined together; and the opening then arising from such union will be a Gambit both of the centre and the wing. The uniting a wing Gambit with an ordinary King's Gambit forms what is denominated a Double Gambit.

Each one of the four classes admits, besides, of a great variety of subdivisions, distinguished by the names of their inventors. A Gambit in which the offered Pawn is not taken, becomes a Refused Gambit.

20. In order to constitute a good Gambit, the sacrifice must be well founded; for there exist bad Gambits, in which the Pawn is altogether thrown away, without reasonable chance of remuneration. This we shall demonstrate, when we treat of each one of the known Gambits individually; that which we have here alone to indicate, although but briefly, is the character, general and several, of each one of the four classes cited, as follows: —

First. — The aim and end of the King's Gambit is to acquire an advantage of position, by drawing on one side the adverse K P, and planting thus K P and Q P in the centre of the field. The attack will, moreover, be necessarily strong, as being directed upon the flank of adverse King. Through the sacrifice of your K B P, your K R will be enabled, after castling, to occupy a very strong line of attack, directed upon opposed K B P.

Second. — The object of the Queen's Gambit is equally to establish in the van, your K P and Q P, by abstracting adverse Q P. The attack of this Gambit is certain, but neither very powerful nor interesting; since it is exclusively directed upon the side of the board

Digitized by Google

not occupied by the Kings. The advance of QBP opens two highly attacking squares to the range of Queen; QKt 3, and QR4.

Third. — The end of all the Central Gambits, understanding by that term those openings alone in which QP is sacrificed (Queen's Pawn two, or Scottish opening, &c.), is two-fold: 1. To be enabled through displacing opposed KP, to advance your own KP to K 5, thereby dislodging at times KKt, or preventing his *sortie*, and also preventing the advance of adverse QP, by menacing it with capture *en passant*, while, as long as such QP is unmoved, the hostile force cannot be properly deployed. 2. To open your Queen's file, which gives almost always a superiority of position.

Fourth. — The intention of the Wing Gambit is threefold: 1. to establish front Pawns in the centre, by getting rid of adverse QBP, or by drawing KP from centre, thus causing him to abandon his legitimate line of attack, and gaining time; 2. to open to the occupation of the QB the two finest attacking squares he can possibly take possession of, QKt2 and QR3; from which he batters "en brêche" the retreat of opposed King; 3. to open QKt file to the range of QR.

From this may be estimated the relative advantages presented by a judicious union of the central with the Wing Gambits; all which we intend to illustrate by a great number of examples.

The Counter-gambits of each class have respectively the same intentions, only that they are much more hazardous, since the adversary, having the move, is enabled to wield more powerful resources of defence against them. A Counter-gambit is frequently set up in order to annul the attack of an opponent's Gambit. The two finest Counter-gambits we know are, *First*, $1\ \frac{KP2}{KP2}\ 2\ \frac{KBQB4}{KBP2}$, and *Second*, $1\ \frac{KP2}{KP2}\ 2\ \frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}\ 3\ \frac{QBP1}{QP2}$, since neither of these are considered even as hazardous by the majority of amateurs. In the course of this work we shall, however, correct this error, and prove the real unsoundness of both these fine openings.

Digitized by Google

BOOK I.

SECTION I.

OPENINGS ON QUEEN'S SIDE.

THE openings on Queen's side hold the first rank among all openings, strictly speaking; since they are those which for both parties are the most rigidly correct when each side plays the best moves. The advantage, indeed, of first move may cease immediately. Accordingly we invite amateurs to pay these débuts particular attention.

FIRST OPENING.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP1}$ (We find it equally strong to play this, as 1 $\frac{QBP2}{}$ Both these moves present a more secure defence than 1 $\frac{}{KP2}$) 2 $\frac{QP2}{QP2}$ 3 $\frac{P \times P}{}$ It would have been weak to advance K P instead of taking, as will be seen in next opening. 3 $\frac{}{P \times P}$ 4 $\frac{QBP2}{}$ This we formerly considered the best move for the attack; but now prefer $\frac{KKtB3}{}$ as will be given in a Variation. 4 $\frac{}{P \times P}$ a weak defence. (4 $\frac{}{KKtB3}$ would equally be feeble. The correct move is 4 $\frac{}{B+}$ as in Variation. If 4 $\frac{}{QBK3}$ 5 $\frac{QQKt3}{}$ would give you the advantage) 5 $\frac{KB \times P}{KBQ3}$ (5 $\frac{}{KKtB3}$ as was played eleven different times by M'Donnell against De la Bourdonnais, without the latter taking due advantage of the fault, is wrong, through 6 $\frac{QQKt3}{}$ of which the continuation would be 6 $\frac{}{Q+bst}$ 7 $\frac{KKtK2}{QQKt5+}$ 8 $\frac{QKtB3}{Q \times Q}$ 9 $\frac{B \times Q}{KBK2}$ you have gained time) 6 $\frac{QQKt3}{QK2+}$ (If 6 $\frac{}{QKB3}$ 7 $\frac{KKtB3}{KKtK2}$ 8 $\frac{Cas}{Cas}$ [8 $\frac{}{QKtB3}$ equally 9 $\frac{QBKt5}{}$] 9 $\frac{QBKt5}{}$ then $\frac{B \times KKt}{}$ $\frac{KRK}{}$ and $\frac{KBQ3}{}$ His Queen will be compromised, and you will have the better position. If 9 $\frac{QKtB3}{QKtB3}$ he menaces playing $\frac{}{QKtR4}$. But if at move 6 $\frac{KKtB3}{}$ then 6 $\frac{}{KKtB3}$ and would equalise

Digitized by Google

the position) 7 $\frac{KKtK2}{KKtB3}$ 8 $\frac{Cas}{Cas}$ 9 $\frac{QKtB3}{QKtB3}$ 10 $\frac{KBQ3}{\quad}$ and you have rather the better game, through his premature acceptance of the Gambit 4 $\frac{\quad}{QP\times P}$. If 9 $\frac{QBKt5bd}{KB\times P+}$

Variation on Move 4 of Second Player.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP1}$ 2 $\frac{QP2}{QP2}$ 3 $\frac{KP\times P}{KP\times P}$ 4 $\frac{QBP2}{KB+bst}$ (If 4 $\frac{QKtB3}{\quad}$ 5 $\frac{KKtB3}{QBK3}$ 6 $\frac{QQKt3bg}{\quad}$) 5 $\frac{QKtB3}{KKtK2bst}$ 6 $\frac{KKtB3}{Cas}$ 7 $\frac{KBK2}{QP\times P}$ 8 $\frac{KB\times P}{QBKt5}$ then $\frac{\quad}{KKtKB4}$ and regains the move. 6 $\frac{QQR4+}{QKtB3}$ would be still worse for you. If 4 $\frac{\quad}{KB+}$ 5 $\frac{QBQ2}{B\times B+}$ 6 $\frac{Kt\times B}{QP\times P}$ (6 $\frac{Q\times B}{KKtB3gdg}$) 7 $\frac{QKt\times P}{KKtB3gdg}$

Another Variation on Move 4 of Second Player.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP1}$ 2 $\frac{QP2}{QP2}$ 3 $\frac{KP\times P}{P\times P}$ 4 $\frac{QBP2}{QBP2wk}$ 5 $\frac{QP\times P}{QP1}$ (5 $\frac{QBP\times P}{Q\times Pgdg}$) 6 $\frac{QKtP2}{QRP2}$ 7 $\frac{KKtB3}{RP\times P}$ (7 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKtB3}$ 8 $\frac{QKtP1}{QKtKt5if}$ 9 $\frac{QRP1bg}{\quad}$) 8 $\frac{Q\times P}{Q\times Q}$ 9 $\frac{Kt\times Q}{KB\times P}$ 10 $\frac{KKtKt5}{QKtR3}$ 11 $\frac{QBKt2}{KBP1}$ 12 $\frac{KBQ3}{KKtK2}$ 13 $\frac{Cas}{Cas}$ we prefer your game. But if 5 $\frac{QP\times P}{QQR4+}$ 6 $\frac{QBQ2bst}{Q\times P}$ 7 $\frac{P\times P}{KKtB3}$ (7 $\frac{P\times P}{Q\times P}$ 8 $\frac{QKtB3bg}{\quad}$) 8 $\frac{QKtB3}{Kt\times P}$ 9 $\frac{QRQBbg}{\quad}$

Another Variation.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP1}$ 2 $\frac{QP2}{QP2}$ 3 $\frac{P\times P}{P\times P}$ 4 $\frac{QBP2}{KKtB3}$ 5 $\frac{QKtB3}{QBP2}$ This Counter-gambit is rather hazardous. 6 $\frac{QP\times QBPbst}{QPon}$ (If 6 $\frac{\quad}{QBtoK3}$ 7 $\frac{QBK3}{QKtB3}$ 8 $\frac{QBP\times P}{Kt\times P}$ 9 $\frac{Kt\times Kt}{Q\times Kt}$ 10 $\frac{QRP1}{\quad}$ you preserve your pawn, and if at 7 $\frac{\quad}{QP\times P}$ 8 $\frac{Q\times Q+}{K\times Q}$ 9 $\frac{QRQ+bg}{\quad}$) 7 $\frac{QKtR4}{KB\times P}$ 8 $\frac{Kt\times B}{QQR4+}$ 9 $\frac{QBQ2}{Q\times Kt}$ 10 $\frac{QKtP2}{QQKt3}$ The isolated Pawn is so far advanced as to

Digitized by Google

be difficult to maintain, and you have therefore the better game. If now 11 $\frac{QBP1}{QK3+}$ Had he retreated Queen 10 $\frac{\quad}{QQB2}$ 11 $\frac{KKtB3}{QBKt5}$ 12 $\frac{QQR4+}{QBQ2}$ 13 $\frac{QQB2bg}{\quad}$

Variation, embodying your best Fourth Move.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP1}$ 2 $\frac{QP2}{QP2}$ 3 $\frac{P\times P}{P\times P}$ 4 $\frac{KKtB3}{KKtB3}$ 5 $\frac{KBQ3}{QBP2\,bst}$ 6 $\frac{Cas}{P\times P}$ 7 $\frac{KB+}{QKtB3}$ 8 $\frac{Kt\times P}{QBQ2}$ 9 $\frac{KR+}{KBK2\,ev}$

Variation on Second Move of First Player.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP1}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{QP2}$ 3 $\frac{KP\times P}{\quad}$ (It were weak to push K P, for if 3 $\frac{KP1}{QBP2}$ 4 $\frac{QP2}{\quad}$ falling into the feeble opening presently developed.) 3 $\frac{\quad}{KP\times P}$ 4 $\frac{QP2}{KKtB3}$ (4 $\frac{\quad}{QBP2}$ 5 $\frac{KB+}{QKtB3}$ 6 $\frac{Cas\,bg}{\quad}$) 5 $\frac{KBQ3}{KBQ3}$ 6 $\frac{Cas}{Cas}$ 7 $\frac{QBP2}{QBP2\,ev}$ (If 5 $\frac{QBP2}{KBKt5+}$ 6 $\frac{QKtB3}{Cas}$ and he regains move; and might also 5 $\frac{QBP2}{QBK3}$ 6 $\frac{QBP\times QP}{KKt\times P}$)

Another Variation on First Player's Second Move.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP1}$ 2 $\frac{KP1\,bd}{\quad}$ This move is Cozio's, but he has not given the true counter attack. 2 $\frac{\quad}{QP1\,wk}$ (If 2 $\frac{\quad}{QP2}$ it would come to the same thing, as you would take *en passant*; unless you preferred 3 $\frac{QP2}{\quad}$ or 3 $\frac{KBP2}{\quad}$ thus forming openings hereinafter developed. If 2 $\frac{\quad}{KBP1}$ 3 $\frac{QP2}{QP1}$ if 4 $\frac{KP\times QP\,gd}{\quad}$, but if 3 $\frac{\quad}{KBP\times P}$ 4 $\frac{QP\times KP}{QP1}$ 5 $\frac{KBQ3}{\quad}$ and against 4 $\frac{QP\times KP}{QKtB3}$ 5 $\frac{QBKB4}{\quad}$ and then $\frac{KBQ3}{\quad}$ with a strong attack upon his weakened wing)

3 $\frac{KP\times P}{QBP\times P}$ (It were better to retake with B as in Var. A) 4 $\frac{QP2}{QP1}$ 5 $\frac{QBP2}{QKtB3}$ 6 $\frac{KKtB3}{KBQ3}$ 7 $\frac{QKtB3}{KKtK2}$ 8 $\frac{KBK2}{Cas}$ 9 $\frac{Cas}{\quad}$ ev; but you have preserved the move.

Digitized by Google

Variation A.

3 $\frac{P \times P}{KB \times P}$ 4 $\frac{QP2}{QBP2}$ 5 $\frac{QP \times P}{}$ (If 5 $\frac{KKtB3}{QBQ2}$ better than $\frac{}{QKtB3}$ 6 $\frac{QP \times QBP}{QQR4+}$ [if 6 $\frac{QBK3}{QQKt3}$] 7 $\frac{QBP1}{Q \times P}$ 8 $\frac{QBK3}{QQB2}$ 9 $\frac{KBQ3}{KKtK2}$ 10 $\frac{Cas}{KP1}$ 11 $\frac{QKtQ2}{Cas}$. He has a good situation, but has lost two moves with Queen) 5 $\frac{}{QQR4+}$ 6 $\frac{QBP1}{Q \times P}$ 7 $\frac{QBK3}{QQB2}$ 8 $\frac{KKtB3}{KKtK2}$ 9 $\frac{KBQ3}{KP1}$ 10 $\frac{Cas}{QBKt5}$ 11 $\frac{QKtQ2}{Cas}$, He has a well-disposed game; but has lost two moves with Queen.*

Another Variation.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP1}$. 2 $\frac{KP1}{QBP2\ bst}$ 3 $\frac{KKtB3}{KBP1}$ (If 3 $\frac{QBP1}{QP2}$ 4 $\frac{P \times Pen\ p}{KB \times P}$ 5 $\frac{QP2}{QBQ2}$ 6 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKtB3\ b\ g}$ 7 $\frac{QBK3\ if}{QQKt3}$) [If 3 $\frac{QKtB3}{KBP1}$ equally] (Playing 3 $\frac{KKtB3}{QP2}$ he would fall into a bygone variation; for if then 4 $\frac{P \times Pen\ p}{Q \times QP}$ 5 $\frac{QKtB3}{}$ not 5 $\frac{QP2}{}$) 4 $\frac{QBP1}{}$ (if 4 $\frac{KP \times BP}{KKt \times P\ b\ g}$) 4 $\frac{}{KBP \times P}$ 5 $\frac{Kt \times P}{KKtB3}$ 6 $\frac{QP2}{QP2}$ (if 6 $\frac{}{QP1}$ 7 $\frac{KB+}{}$) 7 $\frac{QBK3}{QQKt3}$ (7 $\frac{KB+}{QBQ2}$) (7 $\frac{KBQ3}{QQKt3}$ then $\frac{}{QKtB3}$) 8 $\frac{QKtP1}{QKtB3}$ 9 $\frac{KBK2}{KBQ3\ b\ g}$

SECOND OPENING.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP1}$ 2 $\frac{QP2}{QP2}$ 3 $\frac{KP1}{}$ By advancing instead of taking, you lose the advantage of the move and position.† 3 $\frac{}{QBP2}$ This gives him a fine game. (If 4 $\frac{KB+}{QKtB3}$ 5 $\frac{QBP1}{QQKt3}$ 6 $\frac{B \times Kt+}{P \times B}$ strengthening his centre Pawns, and opening well Q B. In general this check of Bishop is bad; placing him out of play) 4 $\frac{QBP1}{QKtB3}$ 5 $\frac{KKtB3\ bst}{QQKt3}$

---

* But suppose you now disturb this "well-disposed" game by 12 $\frac{B \times KRP+}{}$?

† Quite true, and therefore showing the fallacy of Philidor's doctrine as to advancing Centre Pawns.

Digitized by Google

(5 $\frac{\text{KBP2 bd}}{}$ See Var) 6 $\frac{\text{KBQ3}}{\text{QBQ2}}$ They cannot gain Pawn, without loss of Piece. 7 $\frac{\text{KBQB2}}{\text{P}\times\text{P}}$ (He takes to prepare for $\frac{}{\text{KBP1}}$ If 7 $\frac{}{\text{QRQB}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{}$) 8 $\frac{\text{P}\times\text{P}}{\text{KBP1}}$ This move decides the opening on his side as the better. (8 $\frac{}{\text{QKtKt5}}$ or 8 $\frac{}{\text{KB+}}$ lead to nothing) If now 9 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{\text{KBP}\times\text{P}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{P}\times\text{P}}{\text{KBQB4}}$ he has a passed Pawn, and the larger command of board. Your best play is 9 $\frac{\text{P}\times\text{P}}{\text{KKt}\times\text{P}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{\text{KBQ3}}$ and then castling with KR, he has the better game; since your Queen's wing remains inactive and embarrassed; and your isolated Centre Pawn cannot eventually oppose with success the two adverse united Pawns. If 9 $\frac{\text{KKtR4}}{\text{QKt}\times\text{QP w}}$

Variation.

1 $\frac{\text{KP2}}{\text{KP1}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{QP2}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{KP1}}{\text{QBP2}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{QBP1}}{\text{QKtB3}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{KBP2}}{\text{QQKt3}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{\text{QBQ2}}$ (This prevents 7 $\frac{\text{KBQ3}}{}$ He might also play advantageously 6 $\frac{}{\text{KKtR3}}$) 7 $\frac{\text{QKtP1}}{\text{KKtR3}}$ (8 $\frac{\text{QBK3 or KBK2}}{\text{P}\times\text{P}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{QBP}\times\text{P}}{\text{KB+bg}}$) 8 $\frac{\text{QBK3}}{\text{P}\times\text{P}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{B}\times\text{P}}{\text{KBQB4}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{B}\times\text{B}}{\text{Q}\times\text{B bg}}$

THIRD OPENING.

1 $\frac{\text{KP2}}{\text{KP1}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{KBP2}}{}$ This move is only preferable to 2 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{}$ if you resolve to advance KP next move; otherwise, it may be played with equal safety.* 2 $\frac{}{\text{QP2}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{KP}\times\text{P}}{\text{P}\times\text{P}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{\text{QBP2}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{}$ (The check 5 $\frac{\text{KB+}}{}$ would be covered with KtQB3, and if you capture Kt, P would retake with gd g) 5 $\frac{}{\text{QKtB3}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{QBP1}}{}$ (If 6 $\frac{\text{QBK3}}{\text{QQKt3}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{QKtP1}}{\text{QBK3 bg}}$) 6 $\frac{}{\text{KKtB3}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{QBK3}}{\text{QQKt3}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{QKtP1}}{}$ (If 8 $\frac{\text{QQ2}}{\text{QBKB4}}$) 8 $\frac{}{\text{QBK3}}$

* I differ from Jaenisch, and think this a weak move, whether you subsequently take QP with KP, or advance KP.

Digitized by Google

9 $\frac{KBQ3}{QRQB}$ He has the better game. The same situation might thus arise: — 7 $\frac{KBQ3}{QQKt3}$ 8 $\frac{QKtP1}{QBK3}$ 9 $\frac{QBK3}{QRQB}$

Variation on your Eighth Move.

8 $\frac{QQKt3}{KtQR4}$ 9 $\frac{Q\times Q}{RP\times Q}$ (10 $\frac{QKtQ2}{KBQ3\,b\,g}$) 10 $\frac{KB+}{QBQ2}$ 11 $\frac{B\times B+}{K\,Kt\times B\,bst}$ (11 $\frac{}{K\times B}$ 12 $\frac{K\,Kt+}{K\,K}$ 13 $\frac{QKtQ2}{}$) and if 9 $\frac{KB+}{KQ}$ 10 $\frac{QQR4}{QRP1}$ 11 $\frac{KBK2}{Q\times P}$ (11 $\frac{KBQ3}{QBP1}$ and $\frac{}{Q\times P}$) 12 $\frac{Q\times Kt+}{QKtP1}$ 13 $\frac{QQR3}{Q\times R\,w}$

FOURTH OPENING.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP1}$ 2 $\frac{KBP2}{QP2}$ 3 $\frac{KP1}{}$ This mode of play is recommended in most works, but is disadvantageous for you. The attack and defence change sides. To sustain your centre pawns, too much advanced, you are forced to remain on the defensive during the greater part of the game, without the right of reckoning upon ultimate compensation.* Still, as this curious struggle presents much originality, and as the opening is particularly a favourite with the best players, we shall develope its details with our utmost care. We think, moreover, that the predilection in question, has arisen from the fact that the best manner of attack, that of our First Opening, has never before been pointed out.

3 $\frac{}{QBP2}$ 4 $\frac{QBP1}{QKtB3}$ they might also play $\frac{}{KBP1}$ (and if then 5 $\frac{KP\times KBP}{Kt\times P\;\;b\,g}$) which would yield a similar situation to that which we presently arrive at. 5 $\frac{KKtB3}{KBP1}$ (If 5 $\frac{KBKt5}{QQKt3}$ 6 $\frac{B\times Kt+}{P\times B\,b\,g}$) (If 5 $\frac{QP2}{QQKt3}$) This move is indispensable to disengage their wing force. (If you now 6 $\frac{KP\times P}{}$ 6 $\frac{}{K\,Kt\times P\,bst}$ and if then 7 $\frac{QP2}{QQKt3}$ 8 $\frac{KBQ3}{QBQ2}$ 9 $\frac{KBQB2}{KBQ3}$ 10 $\frac{Cas}{Cas}$ your Queen's side is shut up, while adverse pieces are all well out. And if again 7 $\frac{QKtR3}{KBQ3}$ 8 $\frac{QP1}{QQKt3}$ 9 $\frac{QKtQB2}{Cas}$ 10 $\frac{KBK2}{QBQ2\,b\,g}$ Therefore in taking KBP

* And yet you have only followed out the Philidor principle, so warmly advocated elsewhere by Jaenisch, of placing two Pawns in the centre, and advancing the Pawn attacked!

Digitized by Google

with K P at Move 6, you only bring out a hostile piece, and weaken your centre) 6 $\frac{\text{KBQ3}}{\text{——}}$ This move is weak. You should play Q Kt R 3 as in Variation. 6 $\frac{\text{——}}{\text{K Kt R 3}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{KBQB2}}{\text{K Kt B 2}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{——}}$ (If 8 $\frac{\text{K P} \times \text{P}}{\text{——}}$ he retakes with P and plays Q Q Kt 3, embarrassing your Queen's side; or might retake P with Q) 8 $\frac{\text{——}}{\text{Q Q Kt 3}}$ if you now castle you lose P. 9 $\frac{\text{Q Kt P 1}}{\text{Q B Q 2}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Q R P 1}}{\text{Q R Q B}}$ (You could not 10 $\frac{\text{Q B K 3}}{\text{——}}$ for then 10 $\frac{\text{——}}{\text{Q B P} \times \text{P}}$ winning a Pawn if you retake with P or Kt, by 11 $\frac{\text{——}}{\text{K Kt} \times \text{P}}$ and moving K B B 4 if you retake with Q B)

Your situation is now much cramped, without reckoning that you have also lost the move from the very commencement. If 11 $\frac{\text{Q Q 3}}{\text{Q B P} \times \text{P}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{Q B P} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q Kt R 4 b g}}$

Variation on your Sixth Move.

1 $\frac{\text{K P 2}}{\text{K P 1}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{K B P 2}}{\text{Q P 2}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{K P 1}}{\text{Q B P 2}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{Q B P 1}}{\text{Q Kt B 3}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{K Kt B 3}}{\text{K B P 1}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{Q Kt R 3 bst}}{\text{K Kt R 3}}$ (If now 7 $\frac{\text{K P} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q} \times \text{P bst}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Q P 1}}{\text{K B Q 3}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Q Q 2}}{\text{Cas}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{K Kt P 1}}{\text{Q B Q 2}}$ with fine game. And if 7 $\frac{\text{K P} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q} \times \text{P}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{K Kt P 1}}{\text{Q B Q 2}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Q Kt Q B 2}}{\text{K B Q 3}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Q P 2}}{\text{Cas K R b g}}$) 7 $\frac{\text{Q Kt Q B 2}}{\text{Q B Q 2}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Q P 2}}{\text{Q Q Kt 3}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Q Kt P 1}}{\text{——}}$ (Here, if 9 $\frac{\text{K P} \times \text{P}}{\text{K Kt P} \times \text{P}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{K Kt R 4}}{\text{Q B P} \times \text{P}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{Q Kt} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q Kt} \times \text{Kt}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{Q} \times \text{Q}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{Q B P} \times \text{Q}}{\text{K B Q 3}}$ and has best game, by reason of his Centre Pawns. And if 11 $\frac{\text{Q B P} \times \text{P}}{\text{B +}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{K K B 2}}{\text{K P 1}}$ or if King do not move he wins a Pawn) 9 $\frac{\text{——}}{\text{Q R Q B}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{K B Q 3}}{\text{——}}$ (For if 10 $\frac{\text{Q B K 3}}{\text{K Kt K B 4}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{B K B 2}}{\text{Q B P} \times \text{P}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{Q B P} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q Kt Q Kt 5 b g}}$) 10 $\frac{\text{——}}{\text{K Kt B 2}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{Q B K 3}}{\text{Q B P} \times \text{P}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{Q B P} \times \text{P}}{\text{K B P} \times \text{P}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{K B P} \times \text{P}}{\text{K B +}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{Q B Q 2}}{\text{Cas}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{B}}{\text{Q Kt} \times \text{B}}$ 16 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{Q} \times \text{Kt +}}$ 17 $\frac{\text{Q Q 2}}{\text{Q Q Kt 3}}$ 18 $\frac{\text{K K 2}}{\text{——}}$ Even, or thereabouts.* You could not have castled; ex.

* I dissent from Jaenisch's theory in this particular opening, believing second player has throughout a game lost by its nature, though the matured fruits of the evil may not be developed until a later season.

Digitized by Google

18 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{\text{K Kt} \times \text{K P}}$ 19 $\frac{\text{K Kt} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{Q} \times \text{Q P}+}$ &c. And if at move 14 $\frac{\text{K K B 2}}{\text{Cas}}$ (Had you taken B with Kt, he retakes with Kt) 15 $\frac{\text{K R K B}}{\text{K B Q B 6}}$ 16 $\frac{\text{Q R Q B}}{\text{K B Q Kt 7}}$ If he retreats B to Kt 5, you take with Kt, and on Q retaking, move K to Kt with even game. 17 $\frac{\text{Q R Q Kt}}{\text{B} \times \text{Q P bst}}$ 18 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{B}}{\text{Q Kt} \times \text{B}}$ ($18\ \frac{\text{Q Kt} \times \text{B}}{\text{K Kt} \times \text{K P}}$ 19 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{K P}}{\text{Kt Kt 5} + \text{b g}}$) 19 $\frac{\text{Q Kt} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{K Kt} \times \text{K P}}$ 20 $\frac{\text{K K 2}}{\text{K Kt} \times \text{Kt}}$ (if 20 $\frac{\text{K K}}{\text{Q Q R 4} + \text{b g}}$ and if 20 $\frac{\text{K K Kt 3}}{\text{Q Q 3 b g}}$) Here, whether you retake with R, Kt, or P, he equally wins by advancing K P K 4, and then to K 5.

FIFTH OPENING.

1 $\frac{\text{K P 2}}{\text{Q B P 2}}$ (1 $\frac{\text{K P 2}}{\text{Q B P 2}}$ is the best possible move to play against 1 $\frac{\text{K P 2}}{\text{}}$)

2 $\frac{\text{K Kt B 3}}{\text{}}$ We formerly thought this your best move, but now pronounce in favour of 2 $\frac{\text{Q P 2}}{\text{}}$ as will be developed in a Variation.* If you play K B P 2, or Q B P 1, he moves K P 1, and resolves the game presently into some one of the positions lately developed as disadvantageous for you. Playing 2 $\frac{\text{Q B P 2}}{\text{}}$ leaves Q P isolated and in the rear.† (If 2 $\frac{\text{K B Q B 4}}{\text{K P 1}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{Q Kt B 3}}{\text{K Kt K 2}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{Q K 2}}{\text{Q Kt B 3 b g}}$) 2 $\frac{\text{}}{\text{Q Kt B 3}}$ (Weak. The correct play is 2 $\frac{\text{}}{\text{K P 1}}$ as in Variation) 3 $\frac{\text{Q P 2}}{\text{Q B P} \times \text{P}}$ (If 3 $\frac{\text{Q B P 1}}{\text{K P 1}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{Q P 2}}{\text{Q P 2}}$ in favour of second player) 4 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{P}}{\text{K P 2}}$ (If 4 $\frac{\text{}}{\text{Kt} \times \text{Kt}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{K P 1}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{K B Q B 4 b g}}{\text{}}$) 5 $\frac{\text{Kt K B 3}}{\text{}}$ (To capture Kt were bad 5 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{Q Kt P} \times \text{Kt}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{K B Q B 4}}{\text{K Kt B 3}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Q Kt B 3}}{\text{K B Q Kt 5}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Q B Q 2}}{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{B}}{\text{Kt} \times \text{K P b g}}$ for if 10 $\frac{\text{Q B} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q} + \text{\&c}}$) 5 $\frac{\text{}}{\text{K Kt B 3}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{K B Q 3}}{\text{}}$ (If 6 $\frac{\text{Q B Kt 5}}{\text{Q Q R 4} +}$ and will win a Pawn, for if 7 $\frac{\text{Q B Q 2}}{\text{Q Q Kt 3}}$) (If 6 $\frac{\text{Q Kt B 3}}{\text{K B Kt 5}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Q B Q 2}}{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}$

* Your second move, I hold, should be Q B P 2, locking up the game; though Q P 2 may, nevertheless, be played with safety.

† I am content to receive the judgment of the experienced player upon our difference here of opinion.

Digitized by Google

8 $\frac{B \times B}{Kt \times KP}$ 9 $\frac{KKt \times KP}{QKt \times Kt}$ 10 $\frac{B \times Kt}{Q+bg}$) 6 $\frac{}{KBQB4}$ 7 $\frac{Cas}{Cas}$ 8 $\frac{QBKt5}{}$
The game is equal; only your Queen's file is open, while his Queen's Pawn rests in the rear, unable to receive the support of another Pawn. If, to avoid this inconvenience, he plays at Move 6 $\frac{}{QP2}$ then 7 $\frac{KP \times QP}{KKt \times P}$ 8 $\frac{Cas}{}$ and the position is in your favour.

Variation on Second Player's Second Move.

1 $\frac{KP2}{QBP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{KP1\ bst}$ 3 $\frac{QP2}{QP2}$ (If 3 $\frac{}{QBP \times P}$ 4 $\frac{Kt \times P}{}$ and if then 4 $\frac{}{QKtB3}$ 5 $\frac{QBK3}{}$ to prevent $\frac{}{KBQB4}$ Then against 4 $\frac{}{QKB3}$ 5 $\frac{KBP2}{}$ and against 4 $\frac{}{QP2}$ 5 $\frac{KB+}{}$) 4 $\frac{KP \times P}{KP \times P}$ 5 $\frac{QBP2}{}$ This is your best move. (If 5 $\frac{}{QBK3}$ 6 $\frac{QQKt3}{QP \times P}$ 7 $\frac{KB \times P\ bst}{B \times B}$ 8 $\frac{Q \times B\ bg}{}$)
(If 5 $\frac{}{KKtB3}$ 6 $\frac{QBP \times P}{}$ and you may lead him into some disagreeable complexities) 5 $\frac{}{QBP \times P\ bst}$ (You may now take 6 $\frac{Q \times P}{}$ on which 6 $\frac{}{QBK3}$, for if 6 $\frac{}{KKtB3}$ 7 $\frac{QBKt5}{}$, then after 6 $\frac{}{QBK3}$ 7 $\frac{QBP \times P}{Q \times P\ ev}$
If 6 $\frac{Kt \times P}{QKtB3\ bst}$ 7 $\frac{QBK3}{KKtB3}$ 8 $\frac{QKtB3}{QBK3}$ [8 $\frac{QBP \times P}{Q \times P\ bst}$ 9 $\frac{QKtB3}{KBKt5}$]
and if 9 $\frac{QBP \times P}{QB \times P}$ as best, and his defence is good) Suppose 6 $\frac{QBP \times P}{Q \times P\ bst}$
(6 $\frac{}{KBQB4}$ were not good; then 7 $\frac{KBQB4}{}$ and if 7 $\frac{}{KKtB3}$ 8 $\frac{Cas}{Cas}$
9 $\frac{KKt \times P}{KKt \times P}$ 10 $\frac{KKtQKt3}{KKtQKt3}$ 11 $\frac{B \times KBP+bg}{}$) 7 $\frac{Q \times P\ bst}{}$ (If
7 $\frac{QKtB3}{KBKt5\,bg}$ and if 7 $\frac{KKt \times P}{QKtB3}$ 8 $\frac{QBK3}{KB+}$ 9 $\frac{QKtB3}{KKtB3\,gd\,g}$) 7 $\frac{}{Q \times Q}$
8 $\frac{Kt \times Q}{KBQB4}$ 9 $\frac{KKtQKt3}{KBQKt3}$ 10 $\frac{KBQB4}{KKtB3}$ 11 $\frac{Cas}{Cas}$ ev

Variation on First Player's Second Move.

1 $\frac{KP2}{QBP2}$ 2 $\frac{QP2}{}$ At present we consider this your best move; and we find it first indicated in the Chess Player's Chronicle. 2 $\frac{}{QBP \times P}$

Digitized by Google

(If 2 $\frac{\text{K P 1}}{}$ 3 $\frac{\text{Q P 1 b g}}{}$ If 2 $\frac{\text{Q P 2}}{}$ 3 $\frac{\text{Q P} \times \text{Q B P}}{\text{Q P} \times \text{P}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{Q} + \text{b g}}{}$ and if instead 3 $\frac{\text{K P 1}}{}$ 4 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{Q B K 3 b g}}{}$) 3 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{P}}{}$ (If, instead of retaking, you play 3 $\frac{\text{K Kt B 3}}{}$ he will not answer with 3 $\frac{}{\text{K P 2}}$ because of 4 $\frac{\text{K B Q B 4}}{\text{Q Kt B 3}}$ [4 $\frac{}{\text{K B} +}$ 5 $\frac{\text{Q B P 1}}{\text{Q P} \times \text{P}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{Q Kt P} \times \text{P b g}}{}$] 5 $\frac{\text{Q B P 1}}{}$ let him now play 5 $\frac{}{\text{Q K B 3}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{}$ [5 $\frac{}{\text{K B Q B 4}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{Q Kt P 2}}{\text{B Q Kt 3}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Q Kt P 1}}{}$ &c] or 5 $\frac{}{\text{Q P Q 6}}$ still will he find himself engaged in an unproductive Centre Gambit. His strictly correct defence is 3 $\frac{\text{K Kt B 3}}{\text{Q P 2}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{K P} \times \text{Q P}}{\text{Q} \times \text{P}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{Q Kt B 3}}{\text{Q Q}}$ even game; and observe that 3 $\frac{\text{K B Q B 4}}{}$ is still less profitable; for then 3 $\frac{}{\text{Q Kt B 3 bst}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{K Kt B 3}}{\text{K P 1}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{K Kt} + \text{P}}{\text{Q P 2}}$ and we prefer his game) 3 $\frac{}{\text{Q Kt B 3}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{Q Q}}{}$ (You aim at cramping his situation, by preventing his advancing Q P 2; for example, if 4 $\frac{}{\text{K P 1}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{Q B P 2}}{\text{K Kt B 3}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{Q Kt B 3}}{}$ &c. Still, we think he will enforce this advance, and equalize game, as follows) 4 $\frac{}{\text{K Kt B 3}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{Q Kt B 3}}{\text{K P 1}}$ (6 $\frac{\text{K B Q B 4}}{\text{K B Kt 5 or K Kt} \times \text{P}}$) 6 $\frac{\text{Q B Kt 5}}{\text{K B K 2 bst ev}}$ You cannot now, it seems to us, prevent $\frac{}{\text{Q P 2}}$ for suppose 7 $\frac{\text{Q K B 3}}{\text{Q P 2}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Cas Q R}}{\text{Q P 1}}$ (8 $\frac{\text{K P} \times \text{P}}{\text{Kt} \times \text{P}}$) 9 $\frac{\text{Q Kt Q Kt 5}}{\text{Q Q R 4}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{K Kt}}{\text{B} \times \text{B}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{Kt Q 6} +}{\text{K K 2}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{Q B} +}{\text{Q R} \times \text{Kt b g}}$ And observe 6 $\frac{\text{B K Kt 5}}{\text{K B Kt 5}}$ would be a fault on his part; for then 7 $\frac{\text{Q K B 3}}{\text{B} \times \text{Kt} + \text{bst}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{B bst}}{\text{K Kt} \times \text{P}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{K Kt P}}{\text{Q} \times \text{B}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{R} +}{\text{K K 2}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{K Kt B 3 bst}}{\text{Q Q B 4}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{Cas Q R}}{\text{Kt} + \text{K B P}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{K B Q 3}}{\text{Kt} \times \text{K R}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{Q R} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{Q Kt P 1}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{K R P}}{\text{B Q Kt 2}}$ You have preserved the move and position.

Wing Gambit at Second Move.

1 $\frac{\text{K P 2}}{\text{Q B P 2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{Q Kt P 2}}{}$ This gambit may be risked; but perhaps if all the best moves are played, leaves off slightly in favour of second player.

Digitized by Google

The best defence consists in not accepting Gambit, but playing 2 ——— 3 $\frac{P \times P}{P \times P}$ (if 3 $\frac{QRP1}{QRP2\,bg}$) the game is nearly equal; but we prefer his side, because he can place QB on QKt2, battering your KP and KKtP, while he himself will only advance KP1.

To accept the gambit is dangerous. In such case the following are his best moves 1 $\frac{KP2}{QBP2}$ 2 $\frac{QKtP2}{P \times P}$ 3 $\frac{QRP1}{KP1\,bst}$ 4 $\frac{P \times P}{KB \times P}$ 5 $\frac{QBP1}{KBQR4}$ you have a fine attacking position.

Variation.

1 $\frac{KP2}{QBP2}$ 2 $\frac{QKtP2}{P \times P}$ 3 $\frac{QRP1}{KP2}$ (3 ——— 4 $\frac{QB \times Pbg}{}$) 4 $\frac{P \times P}{KB \times P}$ 5 $\frac{QBP1}{BQR4}$ 6 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKtB3}$ 7 $\frac{KBQB4}{}$ you arrive at a species of Evans Gambit, but much more in your favour than in the ordinary Evans game.

SIXTH OPENING.

1 $\frac{QBP2}{}$ Against this move, he has the choice of three distinct systems of defence.

The first consists in pushing also 1 ——— and then, unless you choose to risk a sort of Gambit by Salvio, (1 $\frac{QBP2}{QBP2}$ 2 $\frac{QKtP2}{}$) you have nothing better for both sides than 2 $\frac{QKtB3}{QKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 4 $\frac{QP1}{QP1}$ 5 $\frac{KBP2}{KBP2}$ 6 $\frac{KKtB3}{KKtB3}$ even, but wanting in interest through the two Kings' Bishops — the life of the attack — being both shut out from the combination. At move 3 it would have been useless to play 3 $\frac{KP1}{}$ because then 3 $\frac{KP1}{KP2}$ 4 $\frac{KKtB3}{KBP2}$

The second line of defence is 1 $\frac{QP2}{KP1}$ Then if 2 $\frac{QP2}{QP2}$ forming the legitimate Queen's Gambit. And if 2 $\frac{KP2}{QBP1}$ 3 $\frac{QP2}{}$ (3 $\frac{KP1}{KBP1bg}$) 3 ——— 4 $\frac{KP \times QP}{QBP \times Pev}$ (If 4 $\frac{KP1}{QBP1gdg}$)

The third description of defence is perhaps bolder than the previous two

Digitized by Google

1 $\frac{QBP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KP1}{KKtB3}$ (2 $\frac{}{KBP2}$ would be bad; leading to positions highly dangerous for him) 3 $\frac{QKtB3bst}{QP2bst}$ (If 3 $\frac{QP2}{KP\times P}$ 4 $\frac{KP\times QP}{KB+}$ and then $\frac{}{Cas}$ gaining a move) 4 $\frac{QP2}{KP\times P}$ 5 $\frac{KP\times P}{KBK2}$ resolving the game into the chief variation of our first opening. (And if 4 $\frac{QBP\times QP}{KKt\times P}$ 5 $\frac{KBQB4}{KtQKt3ev}$ and if now 6 $\frac{KBQKt3}{KBQB4gdg}$)

We must yet remark on this opening that 1 $\frac{QBP2}{QKtP2}$ constitutes the Counter Wing Gambit; a pretty-enough opening, which you may either refuse, playing 2 $\frac{QKtP1}{}$ or accept thus: 2 $\frac{P\times P}{QRP1}$ 3 $\frac{KP1bst}{QRP\times P}$ 4 $\frac{B\times P}{QBP1}$ 5 $\frac{BQR4}{KP2}$ (5 $\frac{KBK2}{KP2}$) 6 $\frac{QKtB3bst}{}$ You have an attack to sustain, but will be able, we think, to preserve the Pawn.* Finally, if 1 $\frac{QBP2}{QP2}$ 2 $\frac{P\times P}{KKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{KP2bg}{}$ for if 3 $\frac{}{KKt\times KP}$ 4 $\frac{QQR4+}{}$

SEVENTH OPENING.

On the Queen's Gambit, as commonly defined.

1 $\frac{QP2}{QP2}$ 2 $\frac{QBP2bst}{}$ (The two moves 2 $\frac{KP1}{}$ and 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{}$ have the sole fault of being too defensive. [If 2 $\frac{KP1}{QBP2}$ 3 $\frac{QBP2}{KP1ev}$ and if 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{QBP2}$ 3 $\frac{QBP2}{KP1}$ 4 $\frac{KP1}{KKtB3ev}$ You might also accept the Counter-gambit, thus: 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{QBP2}$ 3 $\frac{QP\times P}{KP1}$ 4 $\frac{KP2bst}{KB\times P}$ 5 $\frac{KP\times P}{KP\times P}$ 6 $\frac{KBQ3}{KKtB3}$ 7 $\frac{Cas}{Cas}$ ev. And if at move 4 $\frac{}{QP\times P}$ 5 $\frac{Q\times Q+}{K\times Q}$ 6 $\frac{KKtKt5bg}{}$] A superficial observation might at first lead you to suppose that your second move should be expended in QBKB4; and, in effect, we find this opening occasionally adopted. It is however weak, since your QB acting on QB7 bears no comparison with your KB when directed on KB7, and in fact so far from 2 $\frac{QBKB4}{}$ being useful, the B there is rather prejudicial than otherwise. Ex. 2 $\frac{QBKB4}{QBP2}$ if you take QKt you

* To me, on the contrary, this appears to be a game lost for you, by its nature; the field being so well opened for the Queen's pieces of your opponent.

Digitized by Google

only bring his Q R into play; and if you accept the Gambit you get a bad game; for 3 $\frac{\text{Q P} \times \text{Q B P}}{\text{Q Kt B 3}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{K Kt B 3}}{\text{K B P 1}}$ he will seize possession of the centre, driving away your Bishop. Lastly, if 2 $\frac{\text{Q B K B 4}}{\text{Q B P 2}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{K P 1 or K Kt B 3}}{\text{Q Q Kt 3}}$ and it is clear your Q B were better now at home)

2 $\frac{}{\text{K P 1}}$ (This is his best. It is disadvantageous to accept the Gambit by taking Q B P, since in so doing he gives up the centre of the field, and will not be able to keep the acquired Pawn as in King's Gambit. However simple this doctrine, it is of novel origin, and we have seen authors during past centuries of time constantly labouring to form the correct defence of the Queen's Gambit, invariably taking the Pawn, not with a view of keeping it, for that they acknowledge to be impossible to do safely; but in order to produce ultimately an equality of position. Now the fault lay in the accepting the Gambit at all, as will be proved in our next opening. Salvio, one of the oldest and most scientific illustrators of the chess-board, stands forth, indeed, an honourable exception to his brethren, since he counsels the not capturing Gambit Pawn. But the Counter-gambit 2 $\frac{\text{Q B P 2}}{\text{Q B P 2}}$ by which he as well as Cozio attempts to replace 2 $\frac{}{\text{Q P} \times \text{P}}$ is premature, as our Variation shows. As to the best defence 2 $\frac{}{\text{K P 1}}$, it has never before been recommended by any author*, probably because they objected to curb the Q B's march. Instead of 2 $\frac{}{\text{K P 1}}$ some writers propose 2 $\frac{}{\text{Q B P 1}}$ They do not reflect that Q B P should be reserved for the Counter-gambit, the only method by which the attack of Queen's Gambit can be totally paralysed; that by pushing Q B P only one square they adopt a feeble and incomplete defence, shutting up Q Kt for a time, from the square Q B 3 from which he batters K 4, and Q 5, while the Q B in the opening could not be brought to bear with effect, either on K B 4 or K Kt 5. Here is, moreover, a direct proof of what we advance 1 $\frac{\text{Q P 2}}{\text{Q P 2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{Q B P 2}}{\text{Q B P 1}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{Q Kt B 3}}{\text{K P 1 or K Kt B 3}}$ [3 $\frac{}{\text{K B P 1}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{K Kt B 3}}{\text{Q B Kt 5}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{Q Q Kt 3}}{}$] [3 $\frac{}{\text{Q B Kt 5}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{Q Q Kt 3}}{}$] 4 $\frac{\text{K P 1}}{\text{K P 1 or Kt B 3}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{K B P 1}}{}$ then $\frac{\text{K Kt R 3}}{\text{Q Q Kt 3}}$ $\frac{\text{K Kt B 2}}{}$ and the opening resolves itself into the French opening; the second player being compelled, presently, to correct the fault of his position by advancing Q B P another sq. If 4 $\frac{}{\text{K B P 1}}$ then $\frac{\text{Q B P 1}}{}$)

---

* Jaenisch here mistakes. Ex. — "I consider it the safer course not to make the capture at all, but to evade the Gambit altogether." — G. WALKER'S *Treatise on Chess*, edit. 1841, p. 99. Again, at p. 105. of same :—"2 $\frac{\text{Q B P 2}}{\text{Q B P 1}}$, he may also move $\frac{}{\text{K P 1}}$." My book was out before Jaenisch's.

Digitized by Google

3 $\frac{\text{QKtB3}}{\text{KKtB3}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{KP1}}{\text{QBP2}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{\text{QKtB3 ev}}$ A similar result would be produced by commencing 1 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{KP1}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{QBP2}}{\text{QP2}}$ &c

Variation on Second Move of Second Player.

1 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{QP2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{QBP2}}{\text{QBP2}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{QBP} \times \text{P bst}}{}$ If you take QBP with QP, he advances QP. 3 $\frac{}{\text{Q} \times \text{P}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{KP1}*}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{QKtB3}}{}$ This move is overlooked by all previous writers. 5 $\frac{}{\text{QQ bst}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{KP1}}$ Second player has lost time.

EIGHTH OPENING.

Queen's Gambit accepted.

1 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{QP2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{QBP2}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{KP1}}{}$ (This is your best move; but you may also play KP2, or QKtB3, as in the following openings) 3 $\frac{}{\text{KP2}}$ (This is his best; as to play KP1, or KKtB3, would abandon the middle of the board to you. To defend the Gambit Pawn were manifestly bad 3 $\frac{}{\text{QKtP2}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{QRP2}}{\text{QBP1}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{QRP} \times \text{P}}{\text{QBP} \times \text{P}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{QKB3 bg}}{}$ or 4 $\frac{\text{QRP2}}{\text{QBR3}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{QRP} \times \text{P}}{\text{B} \times \text{P}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{KB} \times \text{P}}{}$ then $\frac{\text{QQR4+}}{}$ and he remains with his right flank broken up) 4 $\frac{\text{KB} \times \text{P}}{}$ (By taking 4 $\frac{\text{QP} \times \text{KP}}{}$ you would give him a strong attack, without gaining P at his QB5. See Variation) 4 $\frac{}{\text{KP} \times \text{P}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{KP} \times \text{P}}{\text{KBQ3}}$ We now find ourselves in that Variation of our First Opening, in which you retain the advantage of position. This is a proof of the strict analogy between the Queen's Gambits and the French Openings, and warrants our regarding them all as branches of one single method of play, styled by us in our Introduction as "Openings on Queen's Side," or "The Game of Defence."

Variation on your Fourth Move.

1 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{QP2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{QBP2}}{\text{QP} \times \text{P}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{KP1}}{\text{KP2}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{QP} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q} \times \text{Q+}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{K} \times \text{Q}}{\text{QKtB3}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{}$

(6 $\frac{\text{KBP2}}{}$ supplies less resource, the defence remaining in effect the same)

* It appears to me better to play QKtB3, and if his Q × QP, you change Q, and advance QKtQKt5.

Digitized by Google

(If 6 $\frac{KB\times P}{QKt\times P}$ 7 $\frac{QKtQ2}{Kt\times B}$ and gets a good game; playing QBK3, and castling QR. And if 7 $\frac{KBK2}{QBKB4}$ then castles QR, and we prefer his game) 6 $\frac{}{QBK3}$ 7 $\frac{QKtQ2}{Cas}$ 8 $\frac{KQB2}{KtKt5+}$ (8 $\frac{KK}{KBKt5\&c}$) 9 $\frac{KQB3 \text{ or } KQKt}{KtQ6}$ 10 $\frac{B\times Kt}{R\times B}$ he then brings out his forces, and has a good game.

NINTH OPENING.

1 $\frac{QP2}{QP2}$ 2 $\frac{QBP2}{P\times P}$ 3 $\frac{KP2}{KP2 \text{ bst}}$ (If 3 $\frac{}{KKtB3}$ 4 $\frac{QKtB3}{}$ after which he cannot push 4 $\frac{}{KP2}$ without losing a P. If, again, 3 $\frac{}{QKtB3}$ 4 $\frac{QP1}{QKtR4}$ 5 $\frac{Q \text{ to } R4+}{QBP1}$ 6 $\frac{QBQ2}{}$ If, also, 3 $\frac{}{KP1}$ 4 $\frac{KB\times P}{QKtB3}$ 5 $\frac{QBK3}{}$ your Centre Pawns give you an immense advantage of position. Finally, to defend the Gambit Pawn at Move 3 is fruitless and dangerous, as will be found demonstrated in all existing authors. For example, 3 $\frac{}{QKtP2}$ 4 $\frac{QRP2}{QBP1}$ 5 $\frac{RP\times P}{BP\times P}$ 6 $\frac{QKtP1}{}$ if 6 $\frac{}{P\times QKtP}$ 7 $\frac{KB\times P+}{}$ and then $\frac{Q\times P}{}$ If, also, 6 $\frac{}{QBR3}$ 7 $\frac{QKtP\times P}{QKtP\times P}$ 8 $\frac{QR\times QB}{}$ then wins Kt by checking with Q. Again, if 6 $\frac{}{QKtB3}$ 7 $\frac{QBK3}{}$ and if then 7 $\frac{}{QKtR4}$ 8 $\frac{P\times P}{Kt\times P}$ 9 $\frac{KB\times Kt}{P\times B}$ 10 $\frac{QQR4+}{}$ regaining Pawn with a superb game) 4 $\frac{QP\times KP}{}$ (You may also advance Q P, as in Variation) 4 $\frac{}{Q\times Q+}$ 5 $\frac{K\times Q}{QKtQ2}$ The correct move, as given by Ponziani (5 $\frac{}{QBK3}$ is weak) of which we here simply reproduce the demonstration, repeated by authors even to satiety.* 6 $\frac{KBP2}{QKtB4}$ 7 $\frac{QKtB3}{QBP1}$ (He threatens advancing Q Kt P upon your Kt) 8 $\frac{QRP2}{QB+}$ 9 $\frac{KKtB3}{QR+}$ 10 $\frac{KK}{B\times Kt}$ 11 $\frac{P\times B}{KtKt6}$ 12 $\frac{QRQKt}{Kt\times B}$ 13 $\frac{R\times Kt}{KBQB4}$ 14 $\frac{PKB5}{KBQ5}$ 15 $\frac{KP1}{KBP\times P}$ 16 $\frac{P\times P}{KKtK2}$

* No work would be complete, not even Jaenisch's, wanting the moves in question.

Digitized by Google

17 $\frac{B \times P}{K\,Kt\,K\,Kt\,3}$ He must regain his Pawn in a few moves; but still we give the preference to your game.*

Variation on your Fourth Move.

1 $\frac{Q\,P\,2}{Q\,P\,2}$ 2 $\frac{Q\,B\,P\,2}{Q\,P \times P}$ 3 $\frac{K\,P\,2}{K\,P\,2}$ 4 $\frac{Q\,P\,1}{K\,B\,P\,2\ bst}$ 5 $\frac{K\,B \times P}{}$ (Philidor directs 5 $\frac{Q\,Kt\,B\,3}{}$ We do not see the necessity of this move, since the K P cannot be taken on the instant; and we cannot forget the grave difficulties into which Philidor subsequently precipitates your game by advancing $\frac{K\,B\,P\,1}{}$ These difficulties may, however, be avoided by carrying out Philidor's move thus: 5 $\frac{Q\,Kt\,B\,3}{K\,Kt\,B\,3}$ 6 $\frac{K\,Kt\,B\,3}{}$ [here Philidor advances 6 $\frac{K\,B\,P\,1}{}$ which brings on situations of dangerous complexity] 6 $\frac{}{K\,B\,Q\,3}$ [$\frac{}{K\,B\,P \times P}$ 7 $\frac{K\,K\,t \times P}{}$] 7 $\frac{K\,P \times P}{Q\,B \times P}$ 8 $\frac{K\,B \times P}{Cas}$ 9 $\frac{Cas}{Q\,Kt\,Q\,2\ ev}$; and similar in position to that at which we presently arrive) 5 $\frac{K\,B \times P}{K\,Kt\,B\,3}$ 6 $\frac{K\,Kt\,B\,3}{K\,B\,Q\,3}$ (We do not think he would do well to take K P thus: 6 $\frac{}{K\,B\,P \times P}$ 7 $\frac{K\,Kt \times P}{K\,B\,Q\,3}$ 8 $\frac{Q\,B\,K\,B\,4}{}$ he cannot attack Kt without getting in some degree embarrassed) 7 $\frac{P \times P}{Q\,B \times P}$ 8 $\frac{Cas}{Cas}$ 9 $\frac{Q\,Kt\,B\,3}{Q\,Kt\,Q\,2}$ ev† Suppose you continue 10 $\frac{K\,Kt\,Kt\,5}{K\,R\,K}$‡ (to prevent $\frac{Kt\,K\,6}{}$) and then $\frac{}{K\,R\,P\,1}$ Moreover, against 10 $\frac{Q\,B\,K\,Kt\,5}{Q\,K}$ 11 $\frac{K\,Kt\,R\,4}{B\,K\,Kt\,5}$

TENTH OPENING.

1 $\frac{Q\,P\,2}{Q\,P\,2}$ 2 $\frac{Q\,B\,P\,2}{Q\,P \times P}$ 3 $\frac{Q\,Kt\,B\,3}{K\,P\,2\ bst}$ 4 $\frac{Q\,P \times P}{Q \times Q +}$ 5 $\frac{Kt \times Q}{Q\,Kt\,B\,3}$ (In taking Q with K, you would lose the faculty of castling, as well as all chance of gaining a Pawn; 5 $\frac{K \times Q}{Q\,B\,K\,3}$ 6 $\frac{K\,P\,2}{Q\,Kt\,B\,3}$ 7 $\frac{K\,B\,P\,2}{Cas +}$ 8 $\frac{Q\,B\,Q\,2}{K\,Kt\,P\,1}$) 6 $\frac{K\,P\,2}{Kt \times P}$

* It would be difficult to prove superiority either way. Second player moves K to K 2, and his game is fully equal to yours. In fact, your position is more open to attack than his.

† We should take second player's game for choice. Your Q P obstructs your way, and his K P is much stronger, because not so far advanced.

‡ Can this be really necessary?

Digitized by Google

(If you defend K P, you expose yourself to the advance of Q Kt) 7 $\frac{\text{QBKB4}}{\text{KBQ3}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{B} \times \text{B}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{P}}{\text{KKtK2 ev}}$ *

Variation on your Fourth Move.

1 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{QP2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{QBP2}}{\text{QP} \times \text{P}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{QKtB3}}{\text{KP2}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{QP1}}{\text{KBP2}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{KP2}}{\text{KKtB3}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{KP} \times \text{KBP}}{\text{QB} \times \text{P}}$

(Your 6th move may also be 6. $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{\text{KBQ3}}$ better than his taking P with P, 7 $\frac{\text{KP} \times \text{KBP}}{\text{QB} \times \text{P}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{KB} \times \text{P}}{\phantom{\text{KB} \times \text{P}}}$ reducing the game to a var. of last opening)

7 $\frac{\text{KB} \times \text{P}}{\text{KBQ3}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{\text{Cas}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{\text{QKtQ2}}$ and the situation is the same as that at the close of a previous Variation.

ELEVENTH OPENING.

1 $\frac{\text{KBP2}}{\phantom{\text{KBP2}}}$ We have, in our Introduction, declared our opinion of this move, which we now proceed to elucidate. Although but little hazardous (rather to be styled dull), this opening appears to us to be incorrect, because, not having pushed 1 $\frac{\text{KP2}}{\phantom{\text{KP2}}}$ there remains for you no good method of playing, except to open on Queen's side. Consequently, the move 1 $\frac{\text{KBP2}}{\phantom{\text{KBP2}}}$ may be characterised thus:—

First, as a loss of time.

Second, as depriving of an essential support your K P, which will rest isolated in the rear.

The following is our analysis:—

1 $\frac{\text{KBP2}}{\text{QP2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{KP1}}{\text{QBP2}}$ (Against 2 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{\phantom{\text{KKtB3}}}$ or 2 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\phantom{\text{QP2}}}$ he equally plays 2 $\frac{\phantom{\text{QBP2}}}{\text{QBP2}}$) 3 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{\text{QKtB3}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\phantom{\text{QP2}}}$ (It is not upon this move that the friends of the present opening can cast the blame of its subsequent disadvantage for first player. Does there exist a better? 4 $\frac{\text{KBQKt5}}{\phantom{\text{KBQKt5}}}$ would be an error already sufficiently stigmatised by us; the answer being first $\frac{\phantom{\text{KP1}}}{\text{KP1}}$ If, again, 4 $\frac{\text{QBP2}}{\text{QP1}}$ with good game. If 4 $\frac{\text{QP1}}{\phantom{\text{QP1}}}$ it cannot be with the intention

---

* Your game appears to me to be the better.

Digitized by Google

of subsequently moving Q P another sq, as in such case you would have committed a flagrant loss of time; but we presume it is with the view to push K P another sq. But he answers 4 $\frac{QP1}{KP1}$ and how can you carry out your object? Will it be by playing 5 $\frac{QBQ2}{\quad}$ he answers with 5 $\frac{\quad}{QQKt3}$ Will it be 5 $\frac{QKtQ2}{\quad}$ he plays 5 $\frac{\quad}{KBQ3}$ and if then 6 $\frac{QKtQKt3}{KKtB3}$ and you cannot well advance K P. And all this time you have shut up your K B! It appears then to us incontestable that your best move is Q P 2 at move 4) 4 $\frac{QP2}{KP1}$ 5 $\frac{QBP2}{KKtB3}$ 6 $\frac{QKtB3}{KBK2}$ 7 $\frac{KBK2}{Cas}$ The game will be carried on, as in the ordinary openings on Queen's side; only your K P, resting behind without support, causes a defect in your opening consequent upon your original move 1 $\frac{KBP2}{\quad}$ while further examination will convince you equally that 1 $\frac{KBP2}{\quad}$ has fulfilled no end, and has but expended a time uselessly.

TWELFTH OPENING.

1 $\frac{QP2}{KBP2}$ If we disapprove of 1 $\frac{KBP2}{\quad}$ still worse do we find 1 $\frac{\quad}{KBP2}$ in answer to 1 $\frac{QP2}{\quad}$ Its continuation runs thus:—
2 $\frac{QBP2}{KKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{QKtB3}{KP1}$ 4 $\frac{KP1}{QP2}$ &c*

Section II.

ON SEVERAL INCORRECT OPENINGS.

In this section we propose to examine the chief inaccuracies, or irregularities, which may be committed by both the attack and defence on the very first move; as well as at the second move of the attack in the Royal début. We do not however here include the most gross faults (already treated on in our Introduction), or the King's Gambit; to

* It appears to me that upon many occasions Jaenisch refines his theory too much, and rates as palpable advantages, points too minute to be worthy of notice. One would suppose, from our author's words, that first player had here a won game; but his K P not being advanced 2 squares, all that can reasonably be said is, that he has the more crowded position.

Digitized by Google

which, on account of its importance, we shall consecrate Book IV. of our Treatise. Our present analysis mainly tends, by narrowing certain limits, to discover what are the only chess openings which can be termed "strictly correct;" and thereby to demonstrate that which we could only designate by name in our Introduction.

ON THE FIANCHETTO. (THIRTEENTH OPENING.)

1 $\frac{KP2}{QKtP1}$ (It is, in general, dangerous to advance the Knights' Pawns one before the close of the game; for the wings become necessarily weakened, and castling is thereby rendered dangerous. Moreover, two squares are opened to attack, which the Bishops cannot always continue to defend by occupying the intervals, as surely as even the Pawns themselves. The move 1 $\frac{}{QKtP1}$ is less to be condemned than $\frac{}{KKtP1}$ because it is on Queen's flank; and because the B placed on QKt2 batters the adverse royal wing; while the move $\frac{}{KKtP1}$ weakens the royal flank; and only yields KB an attacking range upon adverse Queen's side) 2 $\frac{QP2}{QBQKt2}$ 3 $\frac{KBQ3}{KP1}$ (for the move 3 $\frac{}{KKtP1}$ see Variation) (If 3 $\frac{}{KBP2bd}$ 4 $\frac{KP\times P}{B\times KtP}$ 5 $\frac{Q+}{KKtP1}$ 6 $\frac{P\times P}{KBKt2}$ for if 6 $\frac{}{KKtB3}$ your mate in 2; 7 $\frac{P\times P+}{KKB}$ 8 $\frac{P\times KtQ+}{K\times Q}$ 9 $\frac{QKKt4}{B\times R}$ 10 $\frac{KRP2}{KP1}$ 11 $\frac{KRP1}{}$ you have the advantage. This Var. is Lolli's) (He plays at move 3 $\frac{}{KP1}$ in order to push subsequently $\frac{}{QP2}$ and $\frac{}{QBP2}$ as in the ordinary French openings, without at the same time displacing his KB This mode of playing *Il Fianchetto* is the least condemnable*) 4 $\frac{KBP2}{}$ in order to sustain your KP when advanced to K5. (You may equally play 4 $\frac{KKtB3}{}$ and on the following move push $\frac{KPK5}{}$ or even take $\frac{KP\times QP}{}$ but we prefer the former course of action) 4 $\frac{}{QP2}$ (If 4 $\frac{}{KBP2}$ 5 $\frac{QK2}{KBP\times P}$ 6 $\frac{KB\times P}{QB\times B}$ 7 $\frac{Q\times B}{QBP1}$ 8 $\frac{KKtB3}{KKtB3}$ 9 $\frac{QK2}{}$ he has a bad game) 5 $\frac{KP1}{QBP2}$ 6 $\frac{QBP1}{KKtK2}$ (As he cannot here immediately move 6 $\frac{}{KBP1}$ to disengage his

* As a purely defensive game, it is in truth as good as any other on the board.

Digitized by Google

royal division of force, the best thing he can do is to carry K Kt over to Q side) 7 $\frac{\text{QBK3}}{\text{KKtQB3}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{\text{KBK2}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{QRP1}}{\text{Cas}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{QQB2}}{\text{KRP1}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{\text{QKtQ2}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{QKtP2}}{\text{}}$ The game is tolerably even; only that on comparing it with the regular Opening IV., we find that the second player, through adopting "Il Fianchetto," has lost time; and neither brought out his Q, nor deployed his King's flank, which you will be enabled therefore to attack with vigour.

Variation on Second Player's Third Move.

1 $\frac{\text{KP2}}{\text{QKtP1}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{QBKt2}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{KBQ3}}{\text{KKtP1}}$ (to form the "Fianchetto" equally on King's side; a bad move) 4 $\frac{\text{KBP2 bst}}{\text{KBKt2}}$ (If 4 $\frac{}{\text{KBP2}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{QK2}}{}$ for 5 $\frac{\text{KP} \times \text{P}}{}$ is dangerous; 5 $\frac{\text{QK2}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{P}}{\text{B} \times \text{B}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{B}}{\text{QP2}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{QK2}}{\text{KKtB3}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{}$ your game is the better one) 5 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{\text{KP1}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{QBP1}}{}$ (better than 6 $\frac{\text{QBP2}}{}$) 6 $\frac{}{\text{QBP2}}$ (against 6 $\frac{}{\text{QP2}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{KP1gdg}}{}$) 7 $\frac{\text{QBK3}}{\text{QP1}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{QKtQ2}}{\text{KKtK2}}$ (against 8 $\frac{}{\text{KBP2}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{KP1gdg}}{}$) 9 $\frac{\text{Cas gd g}}{}$ The same observations apply to the "Fianchetto" adopted by first player; a course of action still less advisable; as being so exclusively defensive.

FOURTEENTH OPENING.

Queen's Counter-gambit played on First Move.

1 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{QBP2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{QP} \times \text{P}}{}$ (see Variation) It is bad to accept the Counter-gambit. You cannot maintain the Pawn, and you give your adversary an early sortie for K B under favourable circumstances. In order to equalise the game, you must now proceed 2 $\frac{}{\text{KP1}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{KP2}}{\text{B} \times \text{P}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{KBQB4}}{}$ This move is essential; not only to prevent $\frac{}{\text{QP2}}$ but also not to be forced in answer to 4 $\frac{}{\text{QQKt3}}$ to play forth Q or K Kt disadvantageously. (4 $\frac{\text{KBP2bd}}{\text{QQKt3bg}}$) 4 $\frac{}{\text{KKtK2}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{QKtB3}}{\text{QKtB3}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{\text{Cas}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{\text{QP1ev}}$

Digitized by Google

Variation on your Second Move.

1 $\frac{QP2}{QBP2}$ 2 $\frac{QP1}{}$ The correct move, and ought to give you the better position 2 $\frac{}{KP1}$ 3 $\frac{KP2}{QP1}$ 4 $\frac{QBP2}{KKtB3}$ 5 $\frac{QKtB3}{}$ You have a fine game.

FIFTEENTH OPENING.

1 $\frac{QP2}{KKtB3\,wk}$ 2 $\frac{QBP2}{KP1}$ (2 $\frac{}{QP2}$ were bad, by reason of 3 $\frac{QBP\times P}{}$) 3 $\frac{QP1}{}$ (If 3 $\frac{QKtB3}{QP2}$ 4 $\frac{KP1 \text{ or } QBKt5}{QBP2}$ ev) 3 $\frac{}{B+}$ 4 $\frac{QBQ2}{B\times B+}$ (if 4 $\frac{QKtB3}{B\times Kt+}$) 5 $\frac{Q\times B}{P\times P}$ (5 $\frac{}{Cas}$ 6 $\frac{QKtB3}{QP1}$ 7 $\frac{Cas\,gd\,g}{}$) 6 $\frac{P\times P}{QP1}$ 7 $\frac{QKtB3}{Cas}$ 8 $\frac{Cas}{}$ You will have a good game. If 8 $\frac{}{QBKB4}$ 9 $\frac{KBP1}{}$ or if 8 $\frac{}{QBP1}$ 9 $\frac{P\times P}{}$

SIXTEENTH OPENING.

1 $\frac{KP2}{QKtB3}$ Only advisable against weak players. 2 $\frac{QP2}{QP2}$ (For 2 $\frac{}{KP2}$ see Variation) 3 $\frac{KP\times P}{}$ (You may also advance K P as in Variation, but it is not so good for you as taking P) 3 $\frac{}{Q\times P}$ 4 $\frac{QBK3}{}$ (against 4 $\frac{KKtB3}{QBKt5\,gd}$) 4 $\frac{}{KP1}$ 5 $\frac{QBP2}{QQR4+}$ 6 $\frac{QKtB3\,bg}{}$ And if 4 $\frac{}{KP2}$ 5 $\frac{QBP2}{QQR4+}$ 6 $\frac{QBQ2}{KBKt5}$ 7 $\frac{QP1}{KtQ5}$ 8 $\frac{QRP1}{}$ His Queen will be much crowded.

Variation.

1 $\frac{KP2}{QKtB3}$ 2 $\frac{QP2}{QP2}$ 3 $\frac{KP1\,inf}{QBKB4}$ 4 $\frac{QBK3}{KP1}$ 5 $\frac{KBKt5}{QQ2}$ and then, if requisite $\frac{}{QRP1}$ and his game, although irregular, cannot be exactly pronounced bad. The fault of the QKt being so early placed on QB3 is, that by preventing the advance of his QBP, he retards the bringing out his force as in the regular French Class openings.

Digitized by Google

Variation on Second Player's Second Move.

1 $\frac{KP2}{QKtB3}$ 2 $\frac{QP2}{KP2}$ 3 $\frac{QP1}{\quad}$ (It would be hardly so good for you to play 3 $\frac{P \times P}{Kt \times P}$ 4 $\frac{KBP2}{KtKt3}$ 5 $\frac{QBK3}{KKtB3}$ 6 $\frac{KBQ3}{\quad}$) 3 $\frac{\quad}{QKtK2}$ 4 $\frac{KBQ3}{QKtKt3}$ (If 4 $\frac{KBP2}{QKtKt3}$) 5 $\frac{QBK3}{\quad}$ and his situation is cramped. We must observe also that if at move 3 you had taken $\frac{QP \times KP}{\quad}$ he has another resource, excellent against a weak player, for such in this opening we assume you to be, or he would not adopt 1 $\frac{\quad}{QKtB3}$ This resource consists in not retaking 3 $\frac{\quad}{Kt \times P}$ but in playing 3 $\frac{\quad}{QKR5}$ Your best move then would be 4 $\frac{KBQ3}{\quad}$ and he might continue the attack by 4 $\frac{\quad}{KBQB4}$ or to preserve his Pawn 4 $\frac{\quad}{Kt \times P}$ It is true that against an experienced practitioner, his Queen, being for a time out of place, would necessarily give him some disadvantage.

SEVENTEENTH OPENING.

King's Counter-gambit on First Move.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KBP2}$ This Counter-gambit is extremely hazardous. The second player does not regain his Pawn, neither has he that immense advantage of position in exchange for Pawn, consequent upon the ordinary King's Gambit. 2 $\frac{KP \times P}{KKtB3}$ (He would do, perhaps, better to play 2 $\frac{\quad}{KRP2}$ as in Variation. 2 $\frac{\quad}{QP2}$ is impossible on account of 3 $\frac{QKR5+}{\quad}$) 3 $\frac{KKtP2 \text{ bst}}{KKtP1}$ (If 3 $\frac{\quad}{QP2}$ or 3 $\frac{\quad}{KP1}$ 4 $\frac{KKtP1}{\quad}$ then $\frac{QKR5+}{\quad}$ ruining opponent's game. If 3 $\frac{\quad}{KRP2}$ 4 $\frac{KKtP1}{\quad}$ and then against 4 $\frac{\quad}{KKtKt}$ 5 $\frac{KBK2}{\quad}$ and against 4 $\frac{\quad}{KKtQ4}$ 5 $\frac{QBP2}{KtQKt3}$ 6 $\frac{KBK2}{\quad}$ or if at 5 $\frac{\quad}{KtKB5}$ 6 $\frac{QP2}{\quad}$; again, against 4 $\frac{\quad}{KtK5}$ 5 $\frac{QP1}{\quad}$ and on next move $\frac{KBK2}{\quad}$; finally, against 4 $\frac{\quad}{KtKKt5}$ 5 $\frac{KRP1}{\quad}$ and then also KBK2 as

Digitized by Google

before ; in all these cases you win a second Pawn, which must assure you of game. Lastly, if on Move 3 he plays $\frac{}{KRP1}$ then 4 $\frac{KBKt2}{QP2}$ 5 $\frac{KRP2}{KP1}$ 6 $\frac{KKtP1\,bg}{}$) 4 $\frac{P\times P}{P\times P}$ 5 $\frac{KBQ3}{KRKt}$ (If 5 $\frac{}{KKB2}$ 6 $\frac{KKtP1}{}$ then 7 $\frac{QKB3}{}$ and if 7 $\frac{}{KKKt2}$ 8 $\frac{QK4\,w}{}$) 6 $\frac{KKtP1}{KtQ4}$ (If 6 $\frac{}{KtR4\text{ or }R2}$ 7 $\frac{B\times P+}{}$ then $\frac{QKR5\,w}{}$) 7 $\frac{KBQB4}{KP1}$ 8 $\frac{B\times Kt}{P\times B}$ 9 $\frac{QP2}{QP1}$ 10 $\frac{KRP2}{QBKB4}$ 11 $\frac{QKtB3}{QBP1}$ 12 $\frac{QBKB4\,bg}{}$

Variation on Second Move of Second Player.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KBP2}$ 2 $\frac{P\times P}{KRP2}$ 3 $\frac{KBK2}{KKtB3}$ 4 $\frac{KKtB3}{QP2}$ 5 $\frac{KKtR4}{KP1}$ (His last move is essential, towards liberating his Pieces and bringing out K B Against 5 $\frac{}{QBP2}$ 6 $\frac{QP1}{}$ and you would gain a move to play Q B Kt 5) 6 $\frac{KtK\,Kt6}{KRR2}$ 7 $\frac{Kt\times B}{K\times Kt}$ 8 $\frac{P\times P}{B\times P}$ 9 $\frac{QP2}{}$ you have Pawn and good game.

EIGHTEENTH OPENING.

Centre Counter-gambit on First Move.

1 $\frac{KP2}{QP2}$ 2 $\frac{P\times P\text{ bst}}{KKtB3}$ (He would do better to take with Q 2 $\frac{}{Q\times P}$ but you would still get the better game by 3 $\frac{QKtB3}{Q\text{ to }Q\text{ bst}}$ 4 $\frac{QP2}{QBKB4}$ 5 $\frac{KKtB3}{KP1}$ 6 $\frac{KBQB4}{}$ you have gained moves on your adversary. The move 2 $\frac{}{KKtB3}$ constitutes an interesting Counter-gambit) 3 $\frac{QBP2\,bd}{}$ (You should check, as in Variation ; though it appears but natural to defend Pawn) 3 $\frac{}{QBP1}$ 4 $\frac{P\times P}{QKt\times P}$ 5 $\frac{KKtB3}{KP2}$ 6 $\frac{QP1}{QBKB4}$ 7 $\frac{QBKt5}{}$ (If 7 $\frac{KKtR4}{QQ2}$ 8 $\frac{Kt\times B}{Q\times Kt}$ 9 $\frac{QKtB3}{Cas}$ and the loss of your Q P is inevitable ; both through $\frac{}{KP1}$ and $\frac{}{QKtKt5}$ If 7 $\frac{QKtB3}{QQ2}$ 8 $\frac{KKtR4}{Cas}$) 7 $\frac{}{QQKt3}$ 8 $\frac{QKtP1}{Cas}$ 9 $\frac{KKtR4}{KB+}$ and if you move K, you lose the game ; and

Digitized by Google

if you cover check at Q2, you lose QP. After your 4th move, there arise several variations; but in no one case is your Pawn sustainable; and he will, besides, exclusive of the Pawn, infallibly acquire the better game.

Variation on your Third Move.

1 $\frac{KP2}{QP2}$ 2 $\frac{P\times P}{KKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{B+bst}{QBQ2}$ 4 $\frac{KBQB4}{QBKB4}$ 5 $\frac{QKtB3}{QBP1}$ 6 $\frac{P\times P}{QKtB3}$ 7 $\frac{QP1}{\quad}$ you maintain your Pawn.

NINETEENTH OPENING.

Centre or Central Gambit.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{QP2}{\quad}$ (As we have already observed, this move loses you at least "a time" 2 $\frac{}{KP\times QP}$ 3 $\frac{Q\times P}{QKtB3\ bst}$ 4 $\frac{QQ}{\quad}$ all other squares of retreat for Queen are inferior; as causing the loss of other moves, exposing Queen to attack, or blocking up your pieces. 4 $\frac{}{KBQB4}$ he has two pieces out, while yours are all at home) 2 $\frac{}{P\times P}$ 3 $\frac{KKtB3}{\quad}$ you thus create a very ingenious Gambit, and may also vary it as shown hereinafter. 3 $\frac{}{QBP2\ bd}$ (He should check as in Variation) 4 $\frac{QBP1}{P\times P}$ (If 4 $\frac{}{QK2}$ 5 $\frac{KBQ3}{QP2}$ 6 $\frac{Cas}{QP\times P}$ 7 $\frac{KB\times P\ bg}{\quad}$) 5 $\frac{QKt\times P}{QP1}$ (If 5 $\frac{}{QKtB3}$ 6 $\frac{QBKB4}{QP1}$ 7 $\frac{QKtKt5}{QQR4+}$ for if $\frac{}{KKtB3}$ you take QP with KB. 8 $\frac{QQ2}{Q\times Q+}$ 9 $\frac{KKt\times Q}{KQ2}$ 10 $\frac{KKtQB4}{\quad}$ regaining Pawn with fine game) 6 $\frac{QBKB4}{QBKt5}$ 7 $\frac{QQ2}{QKtB3}$ 8 $\frac{KBKt5}{KKtB3}$ 9 $\frac{Cas\,QR}{B\times Kt}$ 10 $\frac{P\times B}{\quad}$ you will take QP and have a fine game.

Variation on Third Move of Second Player.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{QP2}{P\times P}$ 3 $\frac{KKtB3}{B+bst}$ 4 $\frac{QBQ2}{\quad}$ (If you move 4 $\frac{QBP1}{P\times P}$ 5 $\frac{P\times P}{BQB4}$ 6 $\frac{KBQB4}{QP1}$ 7 $\frac{QQKt3}{QKB3}$ a variation is formed at which we presently arrive in

Digitized by Google

another course of moves) 4 KBQB4 / 5 QBKB4 / QKtB3 (if 5 KBQB4 / QP1 6 QBKB4 / QBKt5 if 5 QBP1 / QKtB3 6 QBKB4 / P×QBP as we have presently before us. If, again, 5 QBKB4 / QK2 you do not play 6 KBQ3 because of 6 ... / QP1 7 Cas / QBKt5 but rather 6 KP1 / QP1 7 KBK2 / QKtB3 8 Cas / QP×KP 9 KKt×KP If at move 6 KP1 / B+ 7 QBP1 / P×QBP 8 QKtP×P / KBQB4 9 KBQB4gdg The system of defence hingeing on 5 ... / QK2 is not to be recommended, since it seats Queen before King, in presence of an approaching castling on your part.) 6 KBQB4 (If 6 QBP1 / P×P not ... / QKB3 7 QKt×P / QP1 8 KtQ5 / KKtK2 he keeps surplus Pawn. If, again, 6 KBKt5 / KKtK2 7 QBP1 / P×QBP 8 QKt×P / Cas) 6 ... / QP1 7 QBP1 / P×QBP 8 QKt×P / QBK3 9 B×B / P×B (If 9 QQKt3 / QKtR4 10 QQR4+ / QBP1 If 9 KBQKt5 / KKtK2) 10 QQKt3 / QQB 11 KKtKt5 / QKtQ5bg)

Another Opening of the Central Gambit.

1 KP2 / KP2 2 QP2 / P×P 3 KBQB4 / QBP2 (His third move is bad, and ought to cost him the game. He should check with Bishop, instead, as in Variation. If 3 ... / QKtB3 4 KKtB3 resolving the game into the Scotch Opening, or Queen's Pawn Two Game) 4 QBP1 bst / QKtB3 * (If 4 ... / QP×QBP 5 QQKt3 bst / QKB3 6 QKt×P / KKtK2 7 KBP2 / QP1 8 KKtB3 bg) 5 KKtB3 / P×QBP (5 ... / QKB3 bd 6 Cas / QP1 7 QBP×P / P×P 8 KBKt5, and you regain Pawn; and

* In Jaenisch's first volume, printed in 1842, he gives certain variations on the game before us, in which he aims chiefly at showing you how to regain Pawn. In a note appended to his second volume, published 1843, he rescinds these variations, and demonstrates that you ought to win the game, through the advantageous position acquirable through second player's third move. Of course I omit his more imperfect analysis; which, in his own words, "aims at regaining immediately the Gambit Pawn, but may lead to your losing the superiority of position."

Digitized by Google

if, instead, 7 $\frac{}{\text{QKt} \times \text{P}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{Q} \times \text{Kt}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{Q}}{}$, then $\frac{\text{KRQ}}{}$ and against 8 $\frac{}{\text{P} \times \text{Kt}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{QQR4}+}{}$ regaining Pawn speedily) 6 $\frac{\text{QKt} \times \text{P}}{\text{QP1}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{QQKt3 bst}}{\text{QK2}}$ (7 $\frac{}{\text{QKB3}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{QKtKt5}}{}$) 8 $\frac{\text{QBKt5}}{\text{KKtB3}}$ (8 $\frac{}{\text{KBP1}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{QBKB4 b g}}{}$) 9 $\frac{\text{Cas QR}}{\text{QBK3 or KRP1}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{QKtQ5w}}{}$

Variation on Third Move of Second Player.

1 $\frac{\text{KP2}}{\text{KP2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{KBQB4}}{\text{B}+\text{ bst}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{QBP1}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ (If 4 $\frac{\text{QBQ2}}{\text{QK2}}$ If 4 $\frac{\text{KKB}}{\text{QK2 b g}}$) 5 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{KBP}+}{}$ It were better simply to retake P with P, as in Var.

5 $\frac{}{\text{K} \times \text{B}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{QQKt3}+}{\text{QP2}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{B}}{\text{P} \times \text{QKtP}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{QB} \times \text{P}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ (If 8 $\frac{}{\text{KKtB3}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{KP1}}{\text{KR to K \&c}}$) (If 8 $\frac{\text{QB} \times \text{P}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{KP}}{\text{KKtB3}}$) 9 $\frac{\text{QQKt3}+}{\text{QBK3}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{QKtP}}{\text{BQ4}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{QQKt4}}{\text{QKtB3 gd g}}$ (11 $\frac{\text{QQKt5}}{\text{QBP1}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{QK2}}{\text{KKtB3 b g}}$)

Variation.

1 $\frac{\text{KP2}}{\text{KP2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{KBQB4}}{\text{B}+}$ 4 $\frac{\text{QBP1}}{\text{P} \times \text{QBP}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P bst}}{\text{QKB3 bst}}$ (If he retreat B to QB4 or QR4 he loses a Pawn) 6 $\frac{\text{QQKt3}}{}$ (If 6 $\frac{\text{KB} \times \text{P}+}{\text{Q} \times \text{B}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{B}}{\text{QQB5 b g}}$) 6 $\frac{}{\text{BQB4}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{\text{QP1}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{\text{KRP1}}$ (If 8 $\frac{\text{QBKt5}}{\text{QKKt3}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{\text{KRP1}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{QBKB4}}{\text{KKtK2}}$ he will castle, and maintain surplus Pawn) 9 $\frac{\text{KRK}}{}$ (If 9 $\frac{\text{KP1}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{QQKt5}+ \text{ or } \text{KRK}}{\text{QKtQ2}}$) 9 $\frac{}{\text{KKtK2}}$ His position is secure, and he keeps Pawn. If you continue 10 $\frac{\text{KP1}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{QQKt5}+}{\text{QQB3}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q} \times \text{Q}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{Q}+}{\text{QBP1}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{BQB4}}{\text{Cas}}$ &c. (If at Move 11 or Move 12 $\frac{\text{R} \times \text{P}}{\text{KBQ3}}$ then $\frac{}{\text{Cas}}$)

Digitized by Google

SECTION III.

We devote this Section to the examination of Two Variations, strictly speaking, correct, but of minor importance; springing from the Royal Opening; which two are "The Queen's Kt's Opening, and "The Centre Pawn's Opening.

TWENTIETH OPENING. (QUEEN'S KNIGHT'S OPENING.)

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{QKtB3}{\quad}$ It is not advisable, having first move, to commence the game thus; since this Kt attacks nothing, and by its position prevents the move $\frac{QBP1}{\quad}$ which is desirable to be advanced, as preparatory to occupying the centre of the board with your Pawns. Hence, between good players, the opening before us is never adopted; but still, it were ill advised to assume that it necessarily led to a lost game, or even induced to an inferior position. Likewise, your adversary may easily err in the correct defence. These considerations have induced us to undertake for the first time an analysis of this bizarre début, which, in a point of view purely theoretical, will be found equally instructive as important. Here, the first player renounces all idea of regular or legitimate attack; and prefers waiting for the faults his adversary may commit; and in this point of view the opening is much more dangerous and animated for second player than the Centre Pawn's Opening. Moreover several Variations herein arising, coincident with certain others necessarily springing from the King's Bishop's and King's Knight's Openings, we shall be spared the task of treating upon them at a future time. 2 $\frac{\quad}{KBKt5}$* 3 $\frac{KtQ5\ wk}{KBQB4}$ 4 $\frac{KKtB3}{QBP1}$ (4 $\frac{QKtP2}{\quad}$ would be weak. He could not indeed retire B upon QKt3, by reason of 4 $\frac{\quad}{BQKt3}$ 5 $\frac{Kt \times B}{QRP \times Kt}$ 6 $\frac{QBQKt2}{QP1}$ 7 $\frac{KBQB4}{\quad}$ and you have a good game; but he would play 4 $\frac{\quad}{KBK2}$ 5 $\frac{QBKt2}{QBP1}$ 6 $\frac{Kt \times B}{Q \times Kt}$ [6 $\frac{QB \times KP}{P \times Kt}$ 7 $\frac{B \times KtP\ bd}{KBB3}$.] 7 $\frac{QRP1}{QRP2}$ 8 $\frac{QBP1}{QP2}$ And if at your 5th Move 5 $\frac{QBP1}{QBP1}$ 6 $\frac{Kt \times B}{Q \times Kt}$ 7 $\frac{KBQB4}{KKtB3}$ 8 $\frac{QP1}{QP2\ bg}$) 5 $\frac{QKtB3}{\quad}$ (for the retreat of QKt to K3 see

* This is certainly weak play; since if he take off Kt, he strengthens your game, and facilitates your debouching with your pieces.

Digitized by Google

Variation) 5 $\frac{}{QP1}$ (If 5 $\frac{}{QP2}$ 6 $\frac{KKt \times KP}{QP \times KP}$ [against 6 $\frac{KKt \times P}{QK2}$ 7 $\frac{KKtQ3}{}$ you win a Pawn] 7 $\frac{QKt \times P}{QQ5}$ 8 $\frac{QKt \times B\,bg}{}$) 6 $\frac{KBQB4}{KKtB3}$ 7 $\frac{KBQKt3}{QBKt5}$ 8 $\frac{Cas}{Cas}$ 9 $\frac{QP1}{}$ ev; and if now 9 $\frac{QP1}{QP1}$ 10 $\frac{QBKt5}{}$ We may here remark that in this opening, each time your adversary causes you to double a Pawn, he weakens his own game; for example, at Move 7 $\frac{KBQKt3}{KBQKt5}$ 8 $\frac{QK2}{B \times Kt}$ 9 $\frac{QP \times B}{Cas}$ 10 $\frac{QBKt5}{QBKt5}$ 11 $\frac{QRQ\,bg}{}$

Variation at Fifth Move of First Player.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{QKtB3}{KBQKt5}$ 3 $\frac{QKtQ5}{KBQB4}$ 4 $\frac{KKtB3}{QBP1}$ 5 $\frac{QKtK3}{QP2\,bst}$ (Against 5 $\frac{}{QP1}$ 6 $\frac{QBP1}{}$ and then $\frac{QP2}{}$ yours is the preferable game) 6 $\frac{KKt \times P}{B \times Kt\,bst}$ (If 6 $\frac{KKt \times P}{QP \times KP}$ 7 $\frac{KBQB4\,gd\,g}{}$) (If 6 $\frac{KKt \times P}{QP1}$ 7 $\frac{KtKB5}{QB \times Kt}$ 8 $\frac{P \times B}{QKB3}$ 9 $\frac{QK2\,gd\,g}{}$) 7 $\frac{BP \times B}{Q + bst}$ (If 7 $\frac{QP \times B}{QK2}$) (If 7 $\frac{KBP \times B}{QP \times KP}$ 8 $\frac{KBQB4\,gd\,g}{}$) 8 $\frac{KKtP1}{Q \times KP}$ 9 $\frac{KKtB3}{QBKt5}$ 10 $\frac{KBKt2}{QKKt3}$ 11 $\frac{KKtK5}{B \times Q}$ 12 $\frac{Kt \times Q}{KRP \times Kt}$ 13 $\frac{K \times B}{}$ ev

Variation on Third Move of First Player.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{QKtB3}{KBKt5}$ 3 $\frac{KKtB3\,bst}{B \times Kt}$ As before remarked, he does wrong to double your Pawns in this manner. (He should play 3 $\frac{}{QKtB3}$ as in Var) (If 3 $\frac{KKtB3}{QP1}$ 4 $\frac{QKtQ5}{BQB4}$ 5 $\frac{QKtP2}{KBQKt3}$ 6 $\frac{Kt \times B}{QRP \times Kt}$ 7 $\frac{QBKt2\,gd\,g}{}$ and if at Move 5 $\frac{QKtP2}{KBQ5}$ 6 $\frac{QBP1}{BQKt3}$ 7 $\frac{Kt \times B}{QRP \times Kt}$ 8 $\frac{QP2\,gd\,g}{}$) 4 $\frac{QP \times B}{QP1}$ 5 $\frac{KBQB4}{KKtB3}$ (If 5 $\frac{}{QBKt5}$ 6 $\frac{QQ5\,bg}{}$) 6 $\frac{QBKt5}{QBKt5}$ 7 $\frac{QQ3}{Cas}$ 8 $\frac{QRQ\,gd\,g}{}$

Digitized by Google

Variation on Third Move of Second Player.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{QKtB3}{KBKt5}$ 3 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKtB3\ bst}$ 4 $\frac{KBQB4}{KKtB3}$ 5 $\frac{Cas}{Cas}$ (If 5 $\frac{}{B\times Kt}$ 6 $\frac{QP\times B}{Kt\times KP}$ 7 $\frac{QQ5\ b\ g}{}$) 6 $\frac{QK2}{QP1}$ (6 $\frac{}{B\times QKt\ bd}$) 7 $\frac{QKtQ5}{}$ ev

SAME OPENING VARIED.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{QKtB3}{KBQB4}$ 3 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKtB3}$ (If 3 $\frac{QKtR4}{KB\times P+}$ 4 $\frac{K\times B}{QKR5+}$) (If 3 $\frac{}{QP1}$ 4 $\frac{QKtR4}{}$ good; getting rid of his KB) 4 $\frac{KBQB4}{KKtB3}$ 5 $\frac{QP1}{QP1}$ 6 $\frac{Cas}{Cas}$ ev (Or you may continue thus: 4 $\frac{KBKt5}{KKtB3}$ 5 $\frac{QP1}{Cas}$ 6 $\frac{Cas}{QK2}$ 7 $\frac{QBKt5}{QKtQ5}$ ev; or 7 $\frac{B\times QKt}{QP\times B}$ 8 $\frac{QBKt5}{QBKt5}$ 9 $\frac{QK2}{QRQ}$ 10 $\frac{KtQR4}{KBQ3}$ 11 $\frac{QRQ}{PQB4}$ ev)

SAME OPENING AGAIN VARIED.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{QKtB3}{KKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{KKtB3}{KBKt5}$ 4 $\frac{KKt\times Pbd}{KB\times Kt}$ (By this last move he nullifies your error. His correct play is 4 $\frac{}{QK2}$ 5 $\frac{KKtB3}{B\times Kt}$ [5 $\frac{KBP2}{QP1}$] 6 $\frac{QP\times B}{Kt\times KP}$ 7 $\frac{QBK3}{Cas}$ 8 $\frac{KBQB4}{QBP1}$ 9 $\frac{Cas}{QP2\ b\ g}$) 5 $\frac{QP\times B}{QK2}$ (If 5 $\frac{}{KKt\times P}$ 6 $\frac{QQ5}{QK2}$ [against 6 $\frac{Kt\times KBP}{QK2\ gd}$] 7 $\frac{Q\times Kt}{QP1}$ 8 $\frac{KBP2}{KBP1}$ 9 $\frac{KBQB4}{}$ and castling presently, you will have a good game) (If, again, 5 $\frac{}{QP1}$ 6 $\frac{KKtB3}{Kt\times P}$ 7 $\frac{QQ4}{KtKB3}$ 8 $\frac{QBKt5\ gd\ g}{}$; and if, instead 7 $\frac{QQ4}{QK2}$ 8 $\frac{Q\times KKtP}{}$) 6 $\frac{QQ4}{QP1}$* 7 $\frac{KKtB3}{Q\times KP+}$ (7 $\frac{}{Kt\times P}$ 8 $\frac{Q\times KtP\ b\ g}{}$) (7 $\frac{}{QKtB3}$ 8 $\frac{KBKt5}{QBQ2}$ 9 $\frac{QQ3}{Kt\times KP}$ 10 $\frac{Cas\ gd\ g}{}$) 8 $\frac{QBK3}{Cas}$ 9 $\frac{Cas}{QKtB3}$ 10 $\frac{Q\times Q}{Kt\times Q}$ ev

---

* Suppose we here substitute 6 $\frac{}{QBP2}$?

Digitized by Google

AGAIN, SAME OPENING.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{QKtB3}{KKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{KKtB3}{KBKt5}$ 4 $\frac{QKtQ5}{Kt \times Kt}$ (If 4 $\frac{}{KBQB4}$
5 $\frac{KKt \times P}{QP1}$ 6 $\frac{KKtB3}{KKt \times P}$ 7 $\frac{QP2}{KBQKt3}$ 8 $\frac{KBQ3}{KKtB3}$ 9 $\frac{QBKt5\ bg}{}$)

5 $\frac{P \times Kt}{KP1}$ 6 $\frac{KKtQ4}{KBQB4}$ 7 $\frac{KtQKt3}{KBQKt3}$. 8 $\frac{QP1}{KP \times P}$ 9 $\frac{KB \times P}{Cas}$

10 $\frac{Cas}{QP1}$ 11 $\frac{QBK3}{QBP1}$ 12 $\frac{QBP2\ gd\ g}{}$

SAME OPENING VARIED.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{QKtB3}{KKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKtB3}$ 4 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ (If 4 $\frac{KB\ Kt5}{KBQB4}$)

(If 4 $\frac{QP2\ bd}{KBQKt5}$) 5 $\frac{Cas}{Cas}$ 6 $\frac{QP1}{QP1\ ev}$

ONCE MORE, SAME OPENING.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{QKtB3}{KBP2}$ 3 $\frac{P \times P}{}$ We formerly preferred moving KB to QB4, but are now of opinion that your best move is to take Pawn. Your adversary may then adopt either Bishop's Gambit or King's Knight's Gambit, and you will defend it in the usual way, according to the rules we have laid down respecting Gambits. Your QKt being out, adds rather to your means of defence, compared with the ordinary Gambit; and we therefore dismiss this species of Gambit, as altogether unsound for second player.

CENTRE PAWN'S OPENING. (TWENTY-FIRST OPENING.)

We name the following the Centre Pawn's Opening, because in lieu of bringing out an attacking piece, you here prefer making preparations for establishing your Pawns in the centre. This mode of opening the game appears to have been very favourite in the olden time; since it is the chief début examined by Ruy Lopez in his celebrated work of the sixteenth century. Philidor condemns it, rather hastily, as losing the advantage of the move. The anonymous Modonese, at the head of the Italian school, endeavours to refute Philidor; but his demonstration contains a flaw, discovered by recent writers. We here present the analysis of the Italian players in question, augmented by a most important variation, which will prove that Philidor was not altogether in error. The definitive result of all these researches appears to be that the Centre Pawn's Opening, although perfectly correct, and therefore

Digitized by Google

orthodox, yields but a weak attack to the first player; and offers but few interesting or difficult combinations, whether as resources for the attack or defence. For this reason, the Centre Pawn's Opening is rarely adopted.*

1 $\frac{\text{K P 2}}{\text{K P 2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{Q B P 1}}{\text{Q P 2}}$ This is the correct move for second player, as pointed out by Philidor, to prevent your Pawns taking up the centre. (Writers of the ancient times played 2 $\frac{}{\text{K Kt B 3}}$ as in our Variation. 2 $\frac{}{\text{K B P 2}}$ would be wrong, as opening up a Gambit in which his K B could not occupy Q B 4 on account of $\frac{\text{Q P 2}}{}$) 3 $\frac{\text{K Kt B 3 bst}}{}$ (If 3 $\frac{\text{K P} \times \text{P}}{}$ as advised by Philidor he retakes with Q, 3 $\frac{}{\text{Q} \times \text{P}}$ and to disengage your men you can only play 4 $\frac{\text{Q P 2}}{}$ the consequences of which are 4 $\frac{}{\text{K P} \times \text{P}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{Q B P} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q B P 2}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{Q B K 3}}{\text{Q B P} \times \text{P}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q} \times \text{Q}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{Q}}{\text{Q Kt B 3}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Q B K 3}}{}$ the game is strictly even, and your opening yields no combination of attack. For the far more ingenious move 3 $\frac{\text{K Kt B 3}}{}$ we are indebted to the anonymous Modonese. If at Move 6 you prefer 6 $\frac{\text{Q Kt B 3}}{\text{Q} \times \text{P}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{Q}}{\text{P} \times \text{Q}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Q Kt Kt 5}}{\text{Q Kt R 3}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{Q P}}{\text{Q Kt Q B 2 ev}}$) 3 $\frac{}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ (If 3 $\frac{}{\text{Q B Kt 5}}$ you would win a Pawn by 4 $\frac{\text{Q Q Kt 3}}{}$ or 4 $\frac{\text{Q Q R 4 +}}{\text{Q B Q 2 or Q Q 2}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{Q Q Kt 3}}{}$ The student will readily supply the details. The Move 3 $\frac{}{\text{K Kt B 3}}$ is appended in a Variation) 4 $\frac{\text{Q Q R 4 +}}{}$ This Move is by the Modonese, who considers it gives you the advantage; but is mistaken in his supposition. (The correct moves for both are 4 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{P}}{\text{K B Q 3}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{Kt Q B 4}}{\text{K Kt B 3}}$ [5 $\frac{}{\text{Q B K 3}}$ is not advisable, on account of 6 $\frac{\text{Q Q Kt 3}}{}$ nor 5 $\frac{}{\text{K B P 2}}$ by reason of 6 $\frac{\text{Q P 1}}{}$] 6 $\frac{\text{Q P 2}}{\text{Cas ev}}$) 4 $\frac{}{\text{Q B P 1 bst}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{K P}\dagger}{\text{K B Q 3}}$

---

* This Opening is termed by English writers "The Queen's Bishop's Pawn's Opening."

† Jaenisch here takes doubled Pawn with Q, and you get the worser situation, through Q being driven in with loss of time. Instead of Jaenisch's move, substitute 5 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{P}}{}$ and the game is even.

Digitized by Google

(His best move, 5 $\frac{}{\text{KBP1}}$ would derange his game) 6 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{}$ (If 6 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{P bd}}{\text{QK2}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{QP2 or KBP2}}{\text{KBP1}}$) 6 $\frac{}{\text{KBP2}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{QQB2}}{\text{KP1}}$ and he has the better situation. If you now play KKtK5, he takes Kt, and wins a P by moving QK2 and QKtQ2.

Variation on Third Move of Second Player.

1 $\frac{\text{KP2}}{\text{KP2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{QBP1}}{\text{QP2}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{\text{KKtB3}}$ (This move for second player, now first given, supplies much more resource for the defence than 3 $\frac{}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$* It completely destroys the effects of 3 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{}$ and thus in some measure justifies the opinion of Philidor) 4 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{}$ (4 $\frac{\text{KP} \times \text{P}}{}$ would be bad by reason of 4 $\frac{}{\text{KP1}}$ If 4 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{P}}{\text{KBQ3}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{QP} \times \text{P}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{KtQB4}}{\text{Cas}}$ and we reach an even position. And if 4 $\frac{\text{KKt} \times \text{P}}{\text{KBQ3}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{Kt} \times \text{KP}}$ we produce the same situation as one about to come under our notice) 4 $\frac{}{\text{KKt} \times \text{P}}$ (4 $\frac{}{\text{KP} \times \text{QP}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{KP1bg}}{}$ If 4 $\frac{}{\text{QP} \times \text{KP}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{P}}{\text{KBQ3}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{KKtQB4}}{\text{Cas}}$ ev) 5 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{P}}{}$ (5 $\frac{\text{QP} \times \text{KP bd}}{\text{KBQB4}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{KtQ4}}{\text{QK2}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{QBKB4}}{\text{QKtQ2}}$ winning P) 5 $\frac{}{\text{KBQ3}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{KKtQ3 bst}}{}$ (If 6 $\frac{\text{QBP1}}{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{B}}{\text{QP1}}$ he acquires a magnificent passed Pawn, and your game is decidedly compromised. You arrive at a Variation of our Thirteenth Opening in Book III., the sides being only reversed, and the second player having the attack on account of your lost move 6 $\frac{\text{QBP1}}{}$ If, again, 6 $\frac{\text{KBQ3}}{\text{Cas}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{\text{QBP2}}$ this Counter-gambit could not fail to give him the advantage, the following moves being probably 8 $\frac{\text{KBP2}}{\text{KBP2}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{QBK3}}{\text{QQKt3}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{QQB2 or QKtP1}}{\text{QKtB3}}$ You are now in the situation of another Variation of Thirteenth Opening, Book III., in which you are on the worst side, that of the defence; with this difference, however, that you have in advance the move $\frac{\text{QBP1}}{}$ But this difference does not, in our judgment, fully equalise the game; and every way you should bear in mind to shun

* In my opinion 3 $\frac{}{\text{KKtB3}}$ and 3 $\frac{}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ are equally good.

Digitized by Google

the shoal, and not to play 6 $\frac{KBQ3}{\ }$) 6 $\frac{\ }{QBP2}$ 7 $\frac{P\times P}{Kt\times P}$ 8 $\frac{QBK3}{Kt\times Kt+}$ 9 $\frac{B\times Kt}{QKtB3}$ 10 $\frac{Cas}{Cas}$ ev You are playing the defence, it is true, but with the advantage of $\frac{QBP1}{\ }$ which opens up good *sorties* for your Queen; prevents the advance of adverse Knight, and is in readiness to prop your own Knight played at a future time to Q4. The full weight of our remarks on this opening will only be duly appreciated by the learner, after studying in Book III., our theory on the Two Kings' Knights' Opening.

Variation on Second Move of Second Player.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{QBP1}{KKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{QP2}{\ }$ Your best move (For 3 $\frac{QQB2}{\ }$ see Variation) 3 $\frac{\ }{Kt\times P}$ (3 $\frac{\ }{KP\times P}$ is disadvantageous through 4 $\frac{KP1}{\ }$) 4 $\frac{P\times P}{QP2}$ (If 4 $\frac{\ }{KBQB4}$ you would get the advantage by moving 5 $\frac{QKKt4}{\ }$ as fully analysed in Lewis's Chess Treatise*, and therefore unnecessary to be here repeated) 5 $\frac{QBK3}{\ }$ (If 5 $\frac{KBQ3}{QKtB3}$ 6 $\frac{KKtB3}{KBQB4}$) 5 $\frac{\ }{QBP2}$ 6 $\frac{KBQ3}{QKtB3}$ 7 $\frac{B\times Kt}{P\times B}$ 8 $\frac{Q\times Q+}{Kt\times Q}$ 9 $\frac{QKtQ2}{QKtB3}$ 10 $\frac{KBP2}{QBKB4}$ ev

Variation on Third Move of preceding Variation.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{QBP1}{KKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{QQB2}{\ }$ this move, introduced by Ruy Lopez, to set up a certain sort of Gambit, appears but weak. (If, however, second player answers by 3 $\frac{\ }{KBQB4}$ then 4 $\frac{KBP2}{QP2bst}$ 5 $\frac{KP\times P}{Q\times P}$ 6 $\frac{KBP\times P}{Q\times P+}$ 7 $\frac{KBK2}{\ }$ and you have a fine game. But if at move 4, instead of 4 $\frac{KBP2}{\ }$ you had played 4 $\frac{KKtB3}{\ }$ then 4 $\frac{\ }{QP2}$ [and not 4 $\frac{\ }{QK2}$ as taught by Lopez] 5 $\frac{KKt\times P}{QP\times KP}$ 6 $\frac{KBQB4}{Cas}$ and he has a good game) 3 $\frac{\ }{QP2bst}$ 4 $\frac{KKtB3bst}{QP\times P}$ 5 $\frac{KKt\times P}{KBQ3}$ 6 $\frac{QP2}{P\times Penp}$ 7 $\frac{Kt\times P}{Cas}$ and he has a good-enough game.

---

* The whole of the Variations in question are by Ponziani, and stand as that author's in my own Chess Treatise. They are given as original by Mr. Lewis.

Digitized by Google

BOOK II.

KING'S BISHOP'S OPENING.

THIS Opening is placed by Philidor at the head of all others; doubtless from that great Master's having considered the King's Knight's Opening defective by its nature. In the present day, Chess-players hold a different opinion upon this point; and agree in pronouncing the Knight's Opening to be even stronger than that of the Bishop. Still, in order to vary the game, the latter may be occasionally adopted, although presenting certain grave theoretical difficulties. The chief ground of these difficulties consists in the fact that the Bishop's Opening being less attacking than that of the Knight, its defence has larger scope, and its counter attacks are proportionally strong and dangerous. Moreover, this début is complicated with a prodigious number of relative Gambits and Counter-gambits of all sorts; the analysis of which is harsh and difficult.

We divide the present book into Two Sections; the latter of which is exclusively devoted to the "Opening of the two Kings' Bishops;" to which our first Section, including all the variations of the opening, naturally opens up the way.

SECTION I.

FIRST OPENING.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{QKtB3}$ (This defence is weak, inasmuch as it allows you to form certain variations of Il Giuoco Piano, much more difficult to defend than the ordinary branches of the Bishop's début. The Move 2 $\frac{}{QKtB3}$ has besides at the moment no one specific aim) 3 $\frac{QBP1 \text{ bst}}{}$ You might also introduce the King's Gambit, as in Variation. (If 3 $\frac{KBQ5}{KKtB3}$ 4 $\frac{B \times Kt}{QP \times B}$ gaining a move, and doubling a Pawn advantageously for him. If 3 $\frac{KKtB3}{KBQB4}$ and the Giuoco Piano is created, for which see Book III.) 3 $\frac{}{KBQB4}$ (If 3 $\frac{}{KKtB3}$ 4 $\frac{QQKt3}{}$ and he is forced to seat Q at

Digitized by Google

K 2, which blocks up his K B) 4 $\frac{\text{Q P 2}}{}$ (If 4 $\frac{\text{K Kt B 3}}{}$ he answers with 4 $\frac{\text{K Kt B 3}}{}$ 4 $\frac{\text{Q K 2}}{}$ or 4 $\frac{\text{Q P 1}}{}$ reducing the opening to the Giuoco Piano) 4 $\frac{\text{K B Q Kt 3}}{}$ (If 4 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{}$ 5 $\frac{\text{K B} \times \text{P} +\text{ bst}}{\text{K} \times \text{B if}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{Q K R 5} +}{}$) 5 $\frac{\text{K Kt B 3 bst}}{}$ (If 5 $\frac{\text{K Kt K 2}}{\text{Q P 1}}$ and he has a good defence. By taking 5 $\frac{\text{Q P} \times \text{P}}{}$ or by advancing Q P, you give your adversary the advantage. 5 $\frac{\text{Q P 1}}{\text{Q Kt Q Kt bst}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{K Kt B 3}}{\text{Q P 1}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{K B Q 3}}{\text{Q B P 1}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Q B P 1}}{\text{Q B Kt 5}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Q Kt B 3}}{\text{Q Kt R 3}}$ his game is preferable to yours. If 6 $\frac{\text{Q P Q 6}}{\text{Q K B 3}}$ and he gains a Pawn) 5 $\frac{}{\text{Q K 2}}$ He has resolved the Opening into the Giuoco Piano, and we shall treat of the position accordingly hereinafter. If 5 $\frac{}{\text{K P} \times \text{P}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{Q B P} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q P 1}}$ a variation of the Giuoco Piano is formed, in which you keep the advantage of the Centre Pawns.

Variation on Third Move of First Player.

1 $\frac{\text{K P 2}}{\text{K P 2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{K B Q B 4}}{\text{Q Kt B 3}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{K B P 2}}{\text{K B Q B 4}}$ His best move. If he accepts the Gambit, he gives you an immense advantage of position, without being able to defend Pawn. (3 $\frac{}{\text{K Kt B 3}}$ is weak 4 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q Kt} \times \text{P}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{K B Q Kt 3}}{\text{K Kt} \times \text{P}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{Q K 2}}{}$ and you get the better game, pushing presently $\frac{\text{Q P 2}}{}$ If, again, at Move 4 $\frac{}{\text{K Kt} \times \text{P}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{K Kt B 3}}{\text{Q P 2}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{K B Kt 5}}{\text{Q B Q 2}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Q P 1}}{}$ and next move again $\frac{\text{Q P 1}}{}$ gaining moves upon him) 4 $\frac{\text{K Kt B 3}}{\text{Q P 1}}$ (4 $\frac{}{\text{K Kt B 3 wk}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{K B P} \times \text{P}}{\text{K Kt} \times \text{K P}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{Q P 2}}{\text{K B Q Kt 3}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{K B Q 5}}{\text{K B P 2}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Q Kt Q 2 bst}}{\text{Kt} \times \text{Kt}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{Kt bg}}{}$ and if at 8 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{}$ or 8 $\frac{\text{Q B P 1}}{}$ 8 $\frac{}{\text{Q P 1 g g}}$) 5 $\frac{\text{Q P 1}}{\text{K Kt B 3}}$ and we dismiss the opening; being one of those non-accepted Gambits in which he has a good defence. (If at Move 5 $\frac{\text{Q B P 1 wk}}{\text{Q K 2}}$ you cannot now with-

Digitized by Google

out loss immediately advance QP2; and if 6 $\frac{KBQKt5}{QBQ2}$ 7 $\frac{QP2}{P\times P}$ 8 $\frac{B\times Kt}{B\times B}$ 9 $\frac{QBP\times P}{KBQKt3\ bg}$)

SECOND OPENING.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{QBP1}$ (This defence is weak) 3 $\frac{QP2}{}$ (This move is Philidor's. We consider it better to play QK2, and then $\frac{KBP2}{}$ as in Variation; resolving the game into a species of Lopez Gambit) 3 $\frac{}{KKtB3}$ (This is his best move, and is given by the Modonese in his critique upon Philidor. Still, we hold that it does not altogether equalise the game [If 3 $\frac{}{QP2}$ 4 $\frac{KP\times P}{BP\times P}$ 5 $\frac{BQKt5+}{QBQ2}$ 6 $\frac{B\times B+}{QKt\times B}$ 7 $\frac{QP\times KP}{QKt\times P}$ 8 $\frac{QK2}{QK2}$ 9 $\frac{QKtB3}{}$ he has an isolated Pawn, and an inferior position generally] If 3 $\frac{}{P\times P}$ 4 $\frac{Q\times P}{QKB3}$ 5 $\frac{KP1}{QKKt3}$ 6 $\frac{QKB4}{KBQB4}$ 7 $\frac{QKtB3}{}$ and he cannot push QP without loss of a Pawn. If in this Variation 4 $\frac{}{QP1}$ 5 $\frac{KBP2}{QBK3}$ 7 $\frac{KP1}{QBP1}$ 8 $\frac{QKB2}{QKtB3}$ 9 $\frac{QBP1\ bg}{}$) 4 $\frac{P\times P\ bst}{}$ (If 4 $\frac{KKtB3}{QP2}$) (If 4 $\frac{QBKt5}{QQKt3}$ and he wins a Pawn) 4 $\frac{}{QQR4+\ bst}$ 5 $\frac{QBP1\ bst}{}$ (If 5 $\frac{QKtB3}{KKt\times P\ bg}$) 5 $\frac{}{Q\times P}$ 6 $\frac{KBQ3\ bst}{QP2}$ (If 6 $\frac{}{Kt\times P}$ 7 $\frac{QK2\ bg}{}$) 7 $\frac{KBP2}{QQB2}$ 8 $\frac{KP1}{}$ You have now the better game; for if 8 $\frac{}{KtK5}$ 9 $\frac{B\times Kt}{P\times B}$ 10 $\frac{QK2}{QBKB4}$ 11 $\frac{QKtQ2}{}$ you win a Pawn. And if he replies to your fourth Move thus — 4 $\frac{P\times P}{Kt\times P}$ 5 $\frac{QK2}{KtQB4}$ 6 $\frac{QBK3}{}$ if he answer 6 $\frac{}{KBK2}$ 7 $\frac{QKtB3}{}$ &c and if 6 $\frac{}{KKtK3}$ 7 $\frac{KBP2}{}$ and you acquire the better opening.

Digitized by Google

Variation at your Third Move.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{QBP1}$ 3 $\frac{QK2}{}$ This is your best attack. We only give an outline of its general results. 3 $\frac{}{KKtB3}$ (If 3 $\frac{}{KBQB4}$ 4 $\frac{B\times KBP+}{}$) (If 3 $\frac{}{QKKt4}$ 4 $\frac{KKtB3}{Q\times KKtP}$ 5 $\frac{B\times KBP+}{KK2\,bst}$ 6 $\frac{KRKt}{QKR6}$ 7 $\frac{QP2}{QP1}$ 8 $\frac{P\times P}{P\times P}$ 9 $\frac{KRKt3}{QQ2}$ 10 $\frac{Kt\times P}{QQ5}$ 11 $\frac{KBP2}{KKtB3}$ 12 $\frac{QKtB3bg}{}$) 4 $\frac{KBP2}{QP1}$ (4 $\frac{}{KP\times P}$ 5 $\frac{KP1}{KKtQ4}$ 6 $\frac{KKtB3bg}{}$) 5 $\frac{P\times P}{P\times P}$ 6 $\frac{KKtB3}{KBQ3}$ (6 $\frac{}{QBKt5}$ 7 $\frac{KB\times P+}{}$) 7 $\frac{QP2}{P\times P}$ 8 $\frac{KP1}{Cas}$ 9 $\frac{Cas}{KBQB4}$ 10 $\frac{QQ3}{KKtQ4}$ 11 $\frac{KKtKt5}{KKtP1}$ 12 $\frac{KtK4}{KBK2}$ 13 $\frac{B\times Kt}{P\times B}$ 14 $\frac{KtKB6+}{B\times Kt}$ 15 $\frac{P\times B\,bg}{}$

THIRD OPENING.

Bishop's Counter Gambit.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBP2}$ (This Counter-gambit is equally profound as ingenious. Originally presented by Greco, it was revived and brought into modern vogue by Allgaier. The strong attack it yields second player fully proves the weakness of your second move 2 $\frac{KBQB4*}{}$ Its combinations are so varied and numerous, that every existing analysis thereof, even that of its second inventor, Allgaier, is incomplete and faulty. The majority of amateurs, indeed, we find seek but to draw the game for the first player. Mr. George Walker, in the third edition of his Treatise, does not even think this Counter-gambit hazardous, and places it seriously parallel with the classic defence of 2 $\frac{}{KBQB4}$ in point of merit and solidity.† We ourselves have bestowed infinite pains upon the study of this début, and have succeeded in discovering combinations altogether novel. The definitive result is, that we pronounce the game reprehensible and hazardous for second player. But, nevertheless, its theory is so complicated, that, in order to display it in a manner perfectly clear, we shall be compelled to examine individually, under so many different leading heads, the

---

* It is impossible to hear the sortie of King's Bishop on Move 2 so directly stigmatised as "weak," without protesting against a judgment unwarranted by proof.

† I do not now think this Counter-gambit good for second player.

Digitized by Google

several systems of defence which may be adopted by the first player, who here changes sides with his adversary. These systems are five in number. You may, *Firstly*, take K Kt with K B, and on his retaking with R, take Gambit Pawn; then check with Q, and try to preserve your numerical advantage. This system may be termed the most tempting. *Secondly*, Capture K Kt, and also Gambit P; but then, instead of checking with Q, defend Pawn as in the ordinary Gambits. *Thirdly*, You may decline taking K Kt, but yet take Gambit Pawn, and defend it as in King's Gambit. This is the system of defence to which Allgaier himself gives the preference. *Fourthly*, Take the Kt, but refuse subsequently the capture of P; and, *Fifthly*, Refuse the Gambit, without even taking K Kt. The last of these systems of defence is, in our present judgment, the only one which is sound*, but this has never been hitherto exactly developed, any more than the errors of the four other systems. In our research we must not lose sight of this truth, as do many amateurs, that a system is faulty, and to be condemned, from the moment it permits second player to produce a drawn game, or a strictly even disposition of the forces without numerical loss. For were there only found to exist similar systems of defence, it would necessarily follow that the move 2 $\frac{\text{KBP2}}{}$ would be not only as good, but infinitely better than the classic moves 2 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{}$ and 2 $\frac{\text{KBQB4}}{}$ by reason of the formidable counter-attack it certainly furnishes; so that these two latter-named moves would be thenceforth rejected as weak and feeble, a formula which cannot indeed be readily admitted, since it would shatter the whole theory of the Bishop's Opening. Such is, then, the one point of view under which we proceed to treat severally the five systems in question)

FIRST SYSTEM.

1 $\frac{\text{KP2}}{\text{KP2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{KBQB4}}{\text{KBP2}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{B}\times\text{Kt}}{\text{R}\times\text{B}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{KP}\times\text{KBP}}{\text{QP2}}$ (Instead of this last move, which is decidedly his best, Cozio proposes to prevent the check of your Q by moving 4 $\frac{\text{QKKt4}}{}$ But you would reply with 5 $\frac{\text{KKtP2}}{}$ and he would never regain P, besides his losing moves. We cannot therefore dwell upon a Variation so palpably defective) 5 $\frac{\text{QKR5+}}{\text{KKtP1}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{P}\times\text{P}}{\text{KR}\times\text{P}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Q}\times\text{KRP}}{}$

(There is here another move demanding our special attention 7 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{}$ which we examine in a separate Variation. But we have not space to treat of the evidently weak move 7 $\frac{\text{KRP1}}{}$ analysed by Allgaier and Silberschmidt; which yet we do not deny may yield a draw. If 7 $\frac{\text{Q}\times\text{KP+}}{\text{R covers, w}}$) 7 $\frac{}{\text{QKB3}}$

---

* Jaenisch originally considered both his Fourth and Fifth Systems as equally sound, and advisable for first player; but in his Appendix records the alteration of his views as to System IV., and condemns it justly and unreservedly.

Digitized by Google

8 $\frac{\text{QKtB3}}{}$ (If 8 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{QBPbd}}{\text{QKtB3}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{QKR7}}{}$ to prevent loss of Q from $\frac{}{\text{RKKt2}}$ 9 $\frac{}{\text{QKtQ5bst}}$ In this position you have no better move than 10 $\frac{\text{KKtP1}}{}$ restoring all you have gained, and yet not clearing yourself from embarrassment. If 10 $\frac{\text{K to Q}}{}$ 10 $\frac{\text{QKtR3}}{}$ 10 $\frac{\text{QQB7}}{}$ 10 $\frac{\text{QBP1}}{}$ 10 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{}$ 10 $\frac{\text{KKtK2}}{}$ he takes KKtP with R, and mate or loss of your Queen are unavoidable. If 10 $\frac{\text{K to B}}{\text{QQR3+}}$ and if then 11 $\frac{\text{QP1}}{\text{Kt} \times \text{QBP}}$ winning; and if instead 11 $\frac{\text{KK}}{}$ he gives mate in four moves. We leave the demonstration of these several cases of loss on your part to the student, as a species of problem. If, again, at move 8, 8 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{\text{KP1}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{KKtR4}}{\text{KRR3}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{QBP}}{\text{QKtB3}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{QKKt3}}{}$ You must lose. Once more, if, 8 $\frac{\text{QP1}}{\text{KBQB4bst}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{QBK3}}{\text{B} \times \text{B}}$ [If 9 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{\text{KP1}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{QP1}}{\text{KP} \times \text{Kt}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{B}}{\text{P} \times \text{KtP}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{KRKt}}{\text{QK4+}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{QBK3}}{\text{QBKB4}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{QBP1}}{\text{QKtQ2w}}$] 10 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{B}}{\text{R} \times \text{P}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{QKR5+}}{\text{K to Q}}$ You have lost; for if 12 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{\text{QBKt5}}$ and if 12 $\frac{\text{QKB3}}{\text{R} \times \text{Kt+}}$) 8 $\frac{}{\text{R} \times \text{P}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{QKR5+}}{\text{KQ}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{QK2}}{\text{KBQB4}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{QKtQ}}{}$ (if 11 $\frac{\text{QKt} \times \text{P}}{\text{B} \times \text{KBP+}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{KQ}}{\text{QKB2w}}$ or if 12 $\frac{\text{K to B}}{\text{QKKt2}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{\text{QBR6w}}$) 11 $\frac{}{\text{QKKt2}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{QKB}}{\text{QKtB3}}$ (12 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{\text{KP1}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{KtKR4}}{\text{QKKt4w}}$) 13 $\frac{\text{QBP1}}{\text{KP1}}$ (13 $\frac{\text{KtK3}}{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{QP} \times \text{B}}{\text{KtKt5}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{KQ}}{\text{QBKB4bg}}$) 14 $\frac{\text{KKtK2}}{\text{KtK4}}$ (14 $\frac{\text{KtK3}}{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{QP} \times \text{B}}{\text{KtK4 bg}}$) 15 $\frac{\text{KtKB4}}{\text{KtKB6+}}$ 16 $\frac{\text{KK2}}{\text{QBKt5w}}$

Variation on Seventh Move of First Player.

1 $\frac{\text{KP2}}{\text{KP2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{KBQB4}}{\text{KBP2}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{R} \times \text{B}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{QP2}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{Q+}}{\text{KKtP1}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{R} \times \text{P}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{KKtB3bst}}{\text{QBKt5}}$ (His seventh move is given as best by Allgaier, and has served that author as the basis of several very beautiful Variations. Still, we shall prove presently that it is unsound, and ought to be replaced by 7 $\frac{}{\text{QKtB3}}$

Digitized by Google

the probable continuation would then be 8 $\frac{Q \times KRP}{QKB3}$ 9 $\frac{QP1}{QBKB4}$ [if 9 $\frac{QKtB3}{QKtKt5}$ &c. He might also play 9 $\frac{QP1}{KBQB4}$ and then if 10 $\frac{QBK3}{B \times B}$ 11 $\frac{KBP \times B}{R \times KtPev}$] 10 $\frac{QKR4}{QKKt2}$ 11 $\frac{KKtP1}{KBK2}$ 12 $\frac{QQR4}{Cas\,QR}$ In this situation it is certainly possible for you to preserve your advantage, but it were difficult to prove how this may be done) 8 $\frac{Q \times KRP}{RKKt2}$ (Instead of this Allgaier makes him play 8 $\frac{}{QKB3}$ but in that case 9 $\frac{QKtB3bst}{KRKt2}$ 10 $\frac{Kt \times QP}{QQ3}$ 11 $\frac{QK4}{}$ you have two Pawns majority, and the better game. It is right to add that any other move than 9 $\frac{QKtB3}{}$ gives him the advantage; and this it is which appears to have misled Allgaier. If, moreover, 8 $\frac{}{KRKR3}$ 9 $\frac{QKKt8}{B \times Kt}$ 10 $\frac{P \times Bbg}{}$ and if, here, 9 $\frac{}{BK3}$ 10 $\frac{QKKt5bg}{}$) 9 $\frac{QKR4}{QQ3}$ 10 $\frac{QP1bst}{}$ (If 10 $\frac{QKKt3}{QKtB3}$ or if 10 $\frac{QP2}{B \times KKt}$ 11 $\frac{P \times B}{KRKB2gdg}$) 10 $\frac{}{B \times Kt}$. 11 $\frac{P \times B}{KRKB2}$ (his two last moves are necessary to prevent $\frac{QBKR6}{}$ which would so promptly develope your force) 12 $\frac{KRKKtbst}{}$ The only wise course you have to adopt in a position momentarily inferior is to give up the doubled Pawn, in order to gain the necessary time to deploy your troops. 12 $\frac{}{QKtB3bst}$ (if 12 $\frac{}{R \times P}$ 13 $\frac{RKKt8}{QK3\text{ or }QKtB3}$ 14 $\frac{QKR5+}{RKB2}$ 15 $\frac{QBR6bg}{}$) 13 $\frac{QBP1}{}$ necessary to avoid the advance of QKt (You might play 13 $\frac{QBK3}{}$ but then 14 $\frac{QP1bg}{}$ for you must retire B to QB, and not to Q2, where he would restrain your QKt, in order to be able in case of $\frac{}{KR \times P}$ to play $\frac{QKtQ2}{}$ and thereby gain time. But all this would lead to complications too entangled to be here profitably unravelled) 13 $\frac{}{R \times P}$ 14 $\frac{QBK3}{QKtK2}$ 15 $\frac{QKtQ2}{KRKB2bst}$ 16 $\frac{Cas}{Cas}$ your position is secure and you have a Pawn surplus. (If 14 $\frac{QKtQ2bd}{R \times QP^*}$) (If 14 $\frac{KRKKt8}{QK3}$

* Instead of 14 $\frac{}{R \times P}$ it seems rather more forcible to retreat 14 $\frac{}{RKB2}$ as suggested by Von Der Lasa.

Digitized by Google

15 $\frac{QKR5+}{RKB2}$ 16 $\frac{QBR6}{Cas}$ 17 $\frac{R\times B}{QR\times R}$ 18 $\frac{B\times R}{R\times B}$ 19 $\frac{QKtQ2}{QKB3}$ 20 $\frac{QK2}{QKB5}$ Your best move now is to castle, on which he takes KRP and the liquidation of the position should be a draw; but if 21 $\frac{KtKBwk}{KP1}$ 22 $\frac{QP\times P}{P\times P}$ 23 $\frac{QK3}{QKtK4bg}$) We have bestowed extreme care upon the development of this our first system; but not having discovered any satisfactory path by which you can preserve with certainty your advantage, we conclude that the system itself is faulty, since it offers more chances for the second than for the first player.

We close this our first system with a fine game, by way of example, played in the Berlin Chess Club by M. Von Der Lasa and M***t; the latter having first move.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBP2}$ 3 $\frac{B\times Kt}{R\times B}$ 4 $\frac{P\times P}{QP2}$ 5 $\frac{Q+}{KtP1}$ 6 $\frac{P\times P}{R\times P}$ 7 $\frac{KRP1}{QKB3}$ 8 $\frac{KKtB}{QKtB3}$ 9 $\frac{QKtB3}{QBK3}$ 10 $\frac{KKtR4}{QKtQ5}$ 11 $\frac{Kt\times R}{Kt\times QBP+}$ 12 $\frac{KQ}{P\times Kt}$ 13 $\frac{QKR7}{Kt\times QR}$ 14 $\frac{Q\times QBP}{QKB4}$ 15 $\frac{Q\times QKtP}{RQ}$ 16 $\frac{KtQKt5}{QQB7+}$ 17 $\frac{KK2}{QK5+}$ 18 $\frac{KQ}{RQ2}$ 19 $\frac{QQB6}{QBB4}$ 20 $\frac{KtB7+}{KKB2}$ 21 $\frac{KtQKt5}{Q\times KKtP}$ 22 $\frac{RK}{QBB7+}$ 23 $\frac{KK2}{QK5+}$ 24 $\frac{KKB}{B+w}$ (This game stands No. 752 in Mr. Walker's "Chess Studies.")

SECOND SYSTEM.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBP2}$ 3 $\frac{B\times Kt}{R\times B}$ 4 $\frac{KP\times P}{QP2}$ 5 $\frac{KKtP2}{\quad}$ (If 5 $\frac{KKtB3}{\quad}$ his most simple defence were 5 $\frac{\quad}{QKB3}$ then against 6 $\frac{QKtB3}{QBP1}$ and against 6 $\frac{QK2}{KBQ3}$ also, against 6 $\frac{KKtP2}{KKtP1}$ 7 $\frac{P\times KKtP}{QB\times KtP}$) 5 $\frac{\quad}{KRP2\ bst}$ (5 $\frac{\quad}{KKtP1\ bd}$ 6 $\frac{P\times P}{R\times P}$ 7 $\frac{KRP1}{KBQB4}$ 8 $\frac{KKtB3\ bst}{KP1}$ 9 $\frac{QP2}{P\times Kt}$ 10 $\frac{P\times B}{RK3+}$ 11 $\frac{K\ to\ B\ bg}{\quad}$ and if at Move 8 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKB3}$ 9 $\frac{QK2}{\quad}$ and you will keep Gambit Pawn. If again at Move 8 you play 8 $\frac{QP1\ bd}{QKR5}$ should you reply 9 $\frac{QKB3}{\quad}$ he wins by 9 $\frac{\quad}{KRKB3}$ and if instead 9 $\frac{QK2}{QB\times KtP\ w}$)

Digitized by Google

6 $\frac{KRP1}{}$ (If 6 $\frac{P\times P}{QB\times P\,b\,g}$) 6 $\frac{}{P\times P}$ 7 $\frac{P\times P}{KKtP1}$ 8 $\frac{P\times P}{}$ (If 8 $\frac{QKB3}{P\times P}$ 9 $\frac{P\times P}{KRKt4\,b\,g}$) (If again, 8 $\frac{KKtB3}{KP1}$ 9 $\frac{KKtQ4}{QBP2}$ [9 $\frac{KKtR4\,bd}{KRKR}$] 10 $\frac{KKtK6}{QB\times Kt}$ 11 $\frac{P\times B}{QKB3\,b\,g}$) 8 $\frac{}{R\times P}$ 9 $\frac{K\,5P1}{KP1\,b\,g}$

The second system of defence on your part is therefore reprehensible.

THIRD SYSTEM.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBP2}$ 3 $\frac{P\times P}{KKtB3}$ This defence of yours is not advisable, since you incur all the hazards of the King's Gambit, without being able either to maintain the Pawn, or even to acquire an equal game. 4 $\frac{KKtP2}{QP2}$ (He might also push K R P2 as in Var) 5 $\frac{KBK2}{}$ (If you move 5 $\frac{KBQKt3}{KRP2}$ you lose the Pawn; for if 6 $\frac{KKtP1}{KKtK5}$ and if 6 $\frac{KBP1}{P\times P}$ 7 $\frac{P\times P}{KRR5}$ 8 $\frac{KRP1}{KKt\times KtP}$ or playing on your part 8 $\frac{KKtP1}{KKtKR2\,b\,g}$) 5 $\frac{}{KBQB4}$ 6 $\frac{QP1}{}$ (Should you push K Kt P on Kt, you permit him to frame a Muzio Gambit here perfectly irresistible. 6 $\frac{KKtP1}{Cas}$ 7 $\frac{P\times Kt}{Q\times P}$) 6 $\frac{}{KRP2}$ 7 $\frac{KKtP1}{KKtKt5}$ 8 $\frac{B\times Kt}{P\times B}$ 9 $\frac{Q\times P}{Cas}$ 10 $\frac{QBK3}{QP1\,bst*}$ (Allgaier makes him here take B, which is inferior play. 10 $\frac{}{B+B}$ 11 $\frac{P\times B}{KR\times P}$ 12 $\frac{KKtB3\,b\,g}{}$) (If you play on Move 10 $\frac{KKtP1}{QB\times P}$ 11 $\frac{QKR5}{KB\times P+}$ and you retreating K, he moves Q K R 5) 11 $\frac{QBQ2}{QB\times P}$ 12 $\frac{QKKt2}{KP1}$ Although *minus* a Pawn, he has an excellent game. If, now, 13 $\frac{KKtK2}{P\times QP}$ 14 $\frac{QBP\times P}{QB\times P}$ 15 $\frac{Q\times QKtP\,bd}{QK2\,w}$

---

* Although described by our author as "best," I here prefer to 10 $\frac{}{QP1}$, 10 $\frac{}{QB\times P}$ 11 $\frac{QKKt3}{QP1\,b\,g}$.

Digitized by Google

Variation on Second Player's Fourth Move.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBP2}$ 3 $\frac{P\times P}{KKtB3}$ 4 $\frac{KKtP2}{KRP2}$ 5 $\frac{KKtP1}{}$ (If 5 $\frac{KBK2}{RP\times P}$ 6 $\frac{B\times P}{QP2}$ then 7 $\frac{}{KKtP1}$ and regains his Pawn. If 5 $\frac{KBP1}{P\times P}$ 6 $\frac{P\times P}{QP2}$ 7 $\frac{KBK2}{KBQB4}$ [7 $\frac{KBQKt3}{KRR5\ \&c.}$] 8 $\frac{K\text{ to }KB}{KKtK5\ bg}$) 5 $\frac{}{KKtK5}$ (By playing instead 5 $\frac{}{KKtKt5}$ he would create a certain description of Allgaier Gambit, which you might defend as taught in Book IV.; suppose, then, 5 $\frac{}{KKtKt5}$ 6 $\frac{KRP1}{Kt\times KBP}$ 7 $\frac{K\times Kt}{Q\times P}$ 8 $\frac{KKtB3}{Q\times P}$ 9 $\frac{KBQ3}{QKB2}$ 10 $\frac{QK2}{}$. Nor can he evade this Gambit, disadvantageous for him as it may be, by playing it thus:—5 $\frac{}{KKtKt5}$ 6 $\frac{KRP1}{QP2}$ 7 $\frac{P\times Kt}{P\times B}$ 8 $\frac{QP1}{P\times QP}$ [If 8 $\frac{}{KKtP1}$ 9 $\frac{QP\times P\ bg}{}$] 9 $\frac{Q\times P}{Q\times Q}$ 10 $\frac{QBP\times Q}{KKtP1}$ 11 $\frac{P\times KRP}{P\times KRP}$ 12 $\frac{PKB6\ bg}{}$) 6 $\frac{QK2}{Kt\times KtP}$ (If 6 $\frac{}{QP2}$ 7 $\frac{QP1\ bg}{}$) 7 $\frac{Q\times KP+}{QK2}$ 8 $\frac{QP2}{KtKB2}$ (If 8 $\frac{}{QP1}$ 9 $\frac{QB\times Kt}{QP\times Q}$ 10 $\frac{B\times Q}{KB\times B}$ 11 $\frac{QP\times P}{QB\times P}$ 12 $\frac{QBP1\ bg}{}$) 9 $\frac{B\times Kt+}{K\times B}$ Play as you may, you cannot maintain Pawn. If 10 $\frac{KKtK2}{QP1}$ 11 $\frac{QQ5+}{KK}$ 12 $\frac{QBK3}{QKB3}$ &c. And if on your last move 12 $\frac{KRP2}{QKB3}$ 13 $\frac{KKtKt3}{QKtB3}$ 14 $\frac{QBP1}{QKtK2\ gd\ g}$

FOURTH SYSTEM.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBP2}$ 3 $\frac{B\times Kt}{R\times B}$ Here you may try several moves, under the Fourth System. (If 4 $\frac{Q+bd}{KKtP1}$ 5 $\frac{Q\times RP}{KRKt2}$ 6 $\frac{QKR8}{KBP\times P\ bg}$) (If 4 $\frac{KKtB3}{P\times P}$ 5 $\frac{Kt\times P}{QKKt4}$ 6 $\frac{KtKKt4}{QP2}$ 7 $\frac{KRP1}{KRP2}$ 8 $\frac{QP2}{B\times Kt}$ 9 $\frac{B\times Q}{B\times Q}$ 10 $\frac{K\times B}{QKtB3}$ you have lost the power of castling; but otherwise the game is equal) (If 4 $\frac{QKtB3}{}$ We once considered this gave you forcedly the better game, but have seen cause to change our opinion 4 $\frac{}{QKKt4\ bst}$

Digitized by Google

5 $\frac{\text{QKB3}}{\text{QP1 bst}}$ If now 6 $\frac{\text{QP2 or QP1}}{\text{QKKt3}}$ and if instead 6 $\frac{\text{KtQ5}}{\text{QKtR3}}$ and will get an equal game; his advanced KBP compensating for the restrained condition of KB) (If 4 $\frac{\text{QP1}}{\text{QKB3}}$ and the game is even; for if now 5 $\frac{\text{QKR5+wk}}{\text{KKtP1 bst}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{Q}\times\text{KRP}}{\text{KRKR}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{QBKt5}}{\text{Q}\times\text{B}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Q}\times\text{R}}{\text{QQB8+}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{KK2}}{\text{Q}\times\text{QKtP w}}$) 4 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{QKB3 bst}}$ this move conduces to form a strictly equal game. and the game is equal. (If 5 $\frac{\text{KP}\times\text{KBP}}{\text{KP}\times\text{QP}}$) (If 5 $\frac{\text{QP}\times\text{KP}}{\text{Q}\times\text{P}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{QKR5+}}{\text{KKtP1 bg}}$) (if 5 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{\text{KBP}\times\text{P}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{Kt}\times\text{P}}{\text{QP1}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{KtQB4}}{\text{QKB2}}$ and then $\frac{}{\text{QP1}}$) (if he answer your fourth Move thus: 4 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{KP}\times\text{P}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{Q}\times\text{P}}{\text{QK2}}$ [If 5 $\frac{}{\text{QP1}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{KtK2 bg}}{}$] [or if 5 $\frac{}{\text{BP}\times\text{KP}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{QQ5 bst}}{\text{KRR}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{QKR5+}}{\text{KKtP1}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{QK5+}}{\text{KtoB2}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{QKtB3}}{\text{KBKt2}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{QQ5+}}{\text{KtoB}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{QKt}\times\text{P bg}}{}$] 6 $\frac{\text{QKtB3}}{\text{QP1 bst}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{KKtK2}}{\text{QKtB3}}$ [7 $\frac{\text{QKtQ5}}{\text{QKB2}}$] 8 $\frac{\text{QQB4}}{\text{QBK3}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{QKtQ5}}{\text{B}\times\text{Kt}}$ [9 $\frac{}{\text{QKB2}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Kt}\times\text{QBP+ w}}{}$] 10 $\frac{\text{P}\times\text{B bg}}{}$)

FIFTH SYSTEM.

1 $\frac{\text{KP2}}{\text{KP2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{KBQB4}}{\text{KBP2}}$ In the Fifth System you refuse the Gambit, and thus, we hold, get the better Opening. How you will refuse it, now becomes the question. The following, we advise, as the strongest series of moves. 3 $\frac{\text{QP1 bst}}{\text{KKtB3}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{KBP2 bst}}{\text{QP1}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{}$ and the situation is the same as one which occurs in the First Opening of Book IV. (You have another mode of play: 1 $\frac{\text{KP2}}{\text{KP2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{KBQB4}}{\text{KBP2}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{}$ if now 3 $\frac{}{\text{KBP}\times\text{P}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{Kt}\times\text{P}}{}$ and if, instead, 3 $\frac{}{\text{QP1 or QKtB3}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{}$ forcing him into the seventeenth and twenty-fourth Openings of our Book III., or Lopez's Counter-gambit, favourable to your side) Variation 1 $\frac{\text{KP2}}{\text{KP2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{KBQB4}}{\text{KBP2}}$ by playing now 3 $\frac{\text{QKtB3}}{}$ you attain a Variation of twentieth Opening, Book I.

Digitized by Google

Variations springing from Fifth System.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBP2}$ 3 $\frac{QP2\ inf}{QKB3\ bst}$ If instead 3 $\frac{}{KP\times QP}$ 4 $\frac{B\times Kt}{R\times B}$ 5 $\frac{Q\times P\ bg}{}$ On your third Move you may risk 3 $\frac{KKtB3}{}$ a move which brings on long and very difficult combinations; a great number of which are favourable to your adversary. For this reason you do better to avoid this attack, although definitively it may yield you the advantage. We shall be content to give you here an outline of the branches from the move we indicate. 3 $\frac{KKtB3}{BP\times KP}$ (His best move were 3 $\frac{}{QP1}$ or 3 $\frac{}{QKtB3}$ which would conduct you to certain well-known Variations of the K Kt Opening) 4 $\frac{Kt\times P}{QKKt4}$ (4 $\frac{}{QP2}$ is probably stronger: then if 5 $\frac{QKR5+}{KKtP1}$ 6 $\frac{Kt\times KKtP}{KKtB3}$ 7 $\frac{QK5+}{KBK2}$ 8 $\frac{Kt\times B}{Q\times Kt}$ 9 $\frac{Q\times Q+}{K\times Q}$ you have a Pawn more, but he has a fine situation) 5 $\frac{KtKB7}{Q\times KKtP}$ 6 $\frac{KRKB}{QP2}$ (If 6 $\frac{}{KKtB3}$ 7 $\frac{Kt\times R}{QP2}$ 8 $\frac{B\times QP}{KKt\times B}$ 9 $\frac{QKR5+\ bg}{}$) 7 $\frac{Kt\times R\ bst}{}$ (If 7 $\frac{B\times QP}{QBKt5}$ he might equalise) 7 $\frac{}{P\times KB}$ 8 $\frac{QKR5+}{KKtP1}$ 9 $\frac{Q\times KRP}{QBK3}$ 10 $\frac{Q\times KKtP+bst}{Q\times Q}$ 11 $\frac{Kt\times Q}{}$ you ought to win from superiority in weight of force; and yet his game still possesses much resource.

FOURTH OPENING.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{QP2}$ This is a bad opening for him, and we only introduce it as one of the Counter-gambits which your opponent may essay. You do better to take P with B than with P (3 $\frac{P\times P}{KKtB3}$ he may also play $\frac{}{KBQB4}$ 4 $\frac{QKtB3}{KBQB4}$ and then $\frac{}{QBP1}$ with the chance of acquiring one of certain strong lines of attack) 3 $\frac{KB\times P}{KKtB3}$ 4 $\frac{QKtB3}{KBKt5}$ 5 $\frac{KKtK2}{QBP1}$ 6 $\frac{KBQKt3}{QBKt5}$ 7 $\frac{Cas}{KB\times QKt}$ 8 $\frac{QKtP\times B}{QBR4}$ 9 $\frac{QP1}{}$ you

Digitized by Google

keep Pawn and have a good game. At Move 4, instead of 4 $\frac{\text{Q Kt B3}}{}$ you may play 4 $\frac{\text{Q K B3}}{}$ but you are thereby exposed to more attack.

FIFTH OPENING.

1 $\frac{\text{K P2}}{\text{K P2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{K B Q B4}}{\text{Q Kt P2}}$ This Counter-gambit yields him but a poor attack. 3 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{Kt P bst}}{}$ (3 $\frac{\text{B Q Kt3}}{\text{Q B Kt2}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{Q P1}}{\text{K B Q B4}}$ [4 $\frac{}{\text{K B P2}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{K P} \times \text{K B P}}{}$] 5 $\frac{\text{K Kt B3}}{\text{Q P1 ev}}$) 3 $\frac{}{\text{Q B P1}}$ (He might here form a sort of double Gambit thus: 3 $\frac{}{\text{K B P2}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{Q P2}}{\text{K P} \times \text{Q P}}$ [4 $\frac{}{\text{Q B P1}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{B Q B4}}{}$] 5 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q B P1}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{K B Q B4}}{\text{K B P} \times \text{P}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}{}$ The sacrifice of his Pawn has returned him no attack. You would be wrong to accept the second Gambit by taking 4 $\frac{\text{K P} \times \text{P}}{}$ as he replies 4 $\frac{}{\text{K Kt B3}}$ and through the position of your KB you will be exposed to strong attack, without being able to maintain Gambit Pawn) 4 $\frac{\text{B Q R4}}{}$ (This retreat of B here is wrong; as you expose yourself thereby needlessly to certain attacks. You should play 4 $\frac{\text{K B Q B4}}{}$ then if 4 $\frac{}{\text{K B Q B4}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{K Kt B3 bst}}{\text{Q P2}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{K P1}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Q P2 bg}}{}$ If at Move 4 $\frac{\text{K B Q B4}}{\text{Q P2}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{B+}}{\text{Q B Q2}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Q K2}}{\text{B} \times \text{B}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{B+}}{\text{Q Q2}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Q Kt B3}}{\text{Q} \times \text{Q}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{Q}}{\text{Q'Kt R3}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{K Kt B3}}{}$ You have a Pawn more, and better game) 4 $\frac{}{\text{K Kt B3}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{Q Kt B3}}{}$ (If 5 $\frac{\text{Q P1}}{\text{Q Q R4+}}$ then 6 $\frac{}{\text{K B Q Kt5}}$ if it accord with your reply, and he has the better game* If 5 $\frac{\text{Q K2}}{\text{K B Q B4}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{K Kt B3}}{\text{Cas}}$ and he has a pretty good game on account of the situation of your Queen) 5 $\frac{}{\text{K B Q Kt5}}$ (If 5 $\frac{}{\text{K B Q B4}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{K Kt B3}}{\text{Q P1}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{\text{Cas}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{K R P1 bg}}{}$) 6 $\frac{\text{K Kt K2 bst}}{}$ (See Variation for the Move 6 $\frac{\text{Q R P1}}{}$ If 6 $\frac{\text{K Kt B3}}{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}$ then if you retake 7 $\frac{\text{Q P} \times \text{B}}{\text{Kt} \times \text{P}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Q K2}}{\text{Q P2}}$ [8 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{K P bd}}{\text{Q K2}}$] 9 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{K P}}{\text{Q B R3}}$

---

* It appears somewhat strong of Jaenisch to describe Second Player, minus a Pawn, as having here the better game.

Digitized by Google

10 $\frac{QK3}{Cas\,bg}$ [10 $\frac{QQbd}{QK2}$] Again, if at Move 7 you retake 7 $\frac{QKtP \times B}{Kt \times P}$ 8 $\frac{QK2}{QP2}$ 9 $\frac{KKt \times P}{QBR3}$ [9 $\frac{QP1}{QQR4\,bg}$] 10 $\frac{QK3}{Cas\,bg}$ or if 10 $\frac{QP1}{Kt \times QBP}$) 6 $\frac{}{Cas}$ 7 $\frac{Cas}{QP2}$ 8 $\frac{QP1}{QBKt5}$ 9 $\frac{QBQ2}{}$ You have Pawn, and better game. If at Move 8 $\frac{}{QBR3}$ 9 $\frac{QBKt5}{QQR4}$ 10 $\frac{B \times Kt\,b\,g}{}$

Variation at your Sixth Move.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{QKtP2}$ 3 $\frac{B \times KtP}{QBP1}$ 4 $\frac{BQR4}{KKtB3}$ 5 $\frac{QKtB3}{KBKt5}$ 6 $\frac{QRP1\,wk}{B \times QKt}$ 7 $\frac{QP \times B\,bst}{}$ (if 7 $\frac{QKtP \times B}{Kt \times P}$ 8 $\frac{QK2}{QP2}$ 9 $\frac{KBP1}{QBR3}$ [9 $\frac{QP1\,bd}{QQR4}$] 10 $\frac{QK3}{QKR5+}$ 11 $\frac{KKtP1}{QKB3}$ 12 $\frac{KKtK2}{KtQ3\,bg}$ exactly as we shall attain presently) 7 $\frac{}{Kt \times P}$ 8 $\frac{QK2}{QP2}$ 9 $\frac{KBP1}{QBR3}$ 10 $\frac{QK3}{QKR5+}$ 11 $\frac{KKtP1}{Kt \times KtP\,bd}$ (he should play as above 11 $\frac{}{QKB3}$ 12 $\frac{KKtK2}{KtQ3\,bg}$) 12 $\frac{Q \times KP+}{KQ2}$ (if 12 $\frac{}{KQ}$ 13 $\frac{QBKt5+w}{}$) 13 $\frac{Q \times K\,Kt}{}$ (if 13 $\frac{Q \times QP+bd}{KQB}$) (if 13 $\frac{B \times QBP+}{QKt \times B}$ 14 $\frac{Q \times K\,Kt}{KR+}$ 15 $\frac{KQ}{QQB5}$ 16 $\frac{QK\,Kt2}{KRK3\,bg}$) 13 $\frac{}{R+}$ 14 $\frac{KQ}{Q \times KB}$ 15 $\frac{Q \times K\,KtP\,bg}{}$

ON THE BEST DEFENCE AGAINST THE KING'S BISHOP'S OPENING.

SIXTH OPENING.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KKtB3}$ (This sally of Kt is the best move he can play, and proves at the same time the relative weakness of your second move $\frac{KBQB4}{}$ * Here your adversary not only acts upon the defensive, but sets up a counter-attack; which may cost you the game, should you persist in

* Here we differ; I prefer the Move 2 $\frac{}{KBQB4}$ to 2 $\frac{}{KKtB3}$

Digitized by Google

your own attack. Here, too, the advantage of the move ceases directly. It is difficult for us to conceive how all preceding authors have, without exception, dismissed $2\ \frac{\text{K Kt B 3}}{}$ as inferior to $2\ \frac{\text{K B Q B 4}}{}$, which latter move so decidedly yields a vast field of attack for first player) $3\ \frac{\text{Q P 1}}{}$ This move, although already defensive, is the best you can make. ($3\ \frac{\text{Q Kt B 3}}{}$ This resolves the opening into one of the variations of the Q Kt opening. Without its compromising your game in any way, this move is still weaker than Q P 1 His best answer is $3\ \frac{\text{K B Q B 4}}{}$ [if $3\ \frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{P}}{}$ $4\ \frac{\text{B} \times \text{B P} +}{}$] $4\ \frac{\text{K Kt B 3}}{\text{Q P 1}}$ and as you cannot fail to push $\frac{\text{Q P 1}}{}$ the sortie of Kt $3\ \frac{\text{Q Kt B 3}}{}$ presents itself as a gratuitous deviation from the principles laid down in our Introduction. If at Move 3 he answers $3\ \frac{\text{Q Kt B 3}}{\text{Q B P 1}}$ $4\ \frac{\text{Q K 2 wk}}{\text{K B Q B 4}}$ [$4\ \frac{\text{Q P 2}}{\text{K B Kt 5 bg}}$] [$4\ \frac{\text{K Kt B 3}}{\text{Q P 2 gd g}}$] [$4\ \frac{\text{K B P 2 bst}}{\text{Q P 2}}$ $5\ \frac{\text{K P} \times \text{Q P}}{\text{K Kt} \times \text{P}}$ $6\ \frac{\text{K B} \times \text{Kt bg}}{}$] $5\ \frac{\text{B} \times \text{K B P} +}{\text{K} \times \text{B}}$ [$5\ \frac{\text{K Kt B 3}}{\text{Q P 1}}$] $6\ \frac{\text{Q Q B 4} +}{\text{Q P 2}}$ $7\ \frac{\text{Q} \times \text{B}}{\text{Q Kt R 3}}$ $8\ \frac{\text{Q Q R 3}}{\text{Q P 1}}$ $9\ \frac{\text{Q Q Kt 3} +}{\text{K K}}$ $10\ \frac{\text{Q Kt K 2}}{\text{K Kt} \times \text{P gd g}}$) (Instead of $3\ \frac{\text{Q P 1}}{}$ authors generally agree in recommending as the best moves $3\ \frac{\text{K Kt B 3}}{}$ or else $3\ \frac{\text{Q P 2}}{}$ In our two next openings we shall strictly prove the fallacy of both these moves. We may here note that if $3\ \frac{\text{Q P 1}}{\text{Q B P 1}}$ $4\ \frac{\text{K B P 2}}{\text{Q P 2}}$ $5\ \frac{\text{K P} \times \text{P gd g}}{}$) $3\ \frac{}{\text{K B Q B 4}}$ $4\ \frac{\text{Q B P 1}}{}$ (if $4\ \frac{\text{K Kt B 3}}{\text{Q P 1}}$ and the game is even) $4\ \frac{}{\text{B Q Kt 3}}$ $5\ \frac{\text{K Kt B 3}}{\text{Q P 1}}$ (if $5\ \frac{\text{Q B K 3}}{\text{B} \times \text{B}}$ $6\ \frac{\text{P} \times \text{B}}{\text{Q B P 1}}$ threatening to play $\frac{}{\text{Q Q Kt 3}}$ $7\ \frac{\text{Q Q Kt 3}}{\text{Cas}}$ and he will subsequently attack P at your K 3 with K Kt. You have not therefore done well to play $5\ \frac{\text{Q B K 3}}{}$) $6\ \frac{\text{Q B K 3}}{\text{Cas bst}}$ $7\ \frac{\text{Cas}}{\text{Q B K 3}}$ ev

Variation on your Third Move.

$1\ \frac{\text{K P 2}}{\text{K P 2}}$ $2\ \frac{\text{K B Q B 4}}{\text{K Kt B 3}}$ $3\ \frac{\text{K B P 2}}{}$ (This Gambit, says the Calabrois, is very hazardous. He would do wrong to accept it $3\ \frac{}{\text{K P} \times \text{K B P}}$ for you

Digitized by Google

would push Pawn on Kt) 3 $\frac{}{\text{Kt} \times \text{KP}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{QKB3}}{}$ (If 4 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{}$ he would take the other Pawn, and if then you castle he pushes $\frac{}{\text{QP2}}$) 4 $\frac{}{\text{QP2}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{QP1}}{}$ (if you had retired Bishop, or taken $\frac{\text{KBP} \times \text{KP}}{}$ he would get the advantage, by playing $\frac{}{\text{KBQB4}}$) 5 $\frac{}{\text{P} \times \text{B}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{Kt}}{}$ (by taking Kt with Pawn you would lose a Pawn) 6 $\frac{}{\text{P} \times \text{QP}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{P} + \text{bd}}{\text{KBK2}}$ you cannot take 8 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{KKtP}}{}$ without exposing yourself to 8 $\frac{}{\text{KBB3}}$ and 9 $\frac{}{\text{P} \times \text{QBP}}$

SEVENTH OPENING.

1 $\frac{\text{KP2}}{\text{KP2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{KBQB4}}{\text{KKtB3}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{}$ (This has been recommended as the best possible move, and as being necessarily advantageous to the first player, by Allgaier, Lewis, Walker*, and others. If, as we hope, our analysis contains no flaw, it will be seen that 3 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{}$ is bad, since the best moves subsequently being allowed you, yet your adversary comes off with the better game. His exact defence consists in not defending KP, but in taking at once 3 $\frac{}{\text{Kt} \times \text{KP}}$ Moreover 3 $\frac{}{\text{QP1}}$ or 3 $\frac{}{\text{QK2}}$ are evidently weak, and as to 3 $\frac{}{\text{QKtB3bd}}$) This variation has been given by the late M. Bilguer at such length, in his pamphlet published at Berlin in 1839, under the title of "Das Zweispringerspiel im Nachzuge," that we shall content ourselves here with giving a succinct outline of the analysis, in order that no one important opening may be wanting to our work. 3 $\frac{}{\text{QKtB3}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{KKtKt5}}{\text{QP2}}$ (if 4 $\frac{}{\text{KKt} \times \text{P}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{KB} \times \text{KBP} +}{\text{KK2}}$ [5 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{KBP}}{\text{QKR5bg}}$] 6 $\frac{\text{QP1bst}}{\text{KtKB3}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{KBQKt3}}{\text{QP2}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{KBP2}}{\text{QBKt5}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{QQ2bg}}{}$) 5 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{KKt} \times \text{P}}$ (Instead of retaking P he may establish an ingenious variety of Centre Gambit 5 $\frac{}{\text{QKtR4}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{BKt5} +}{\text{QBQ2}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{QK2}}{\text{KBQ3}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{B} +}{\text{Q} \times \text{B}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{QBP2}}{}$ and you maintain Pawn, although his situation rests tolerably favourable for attack) 6 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{KBP}}{\text{K} \times \text{Kt}}$ This sacrifice is the correct move, and is not

* I have long since changed my opinion, and do not approve of 3 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{}$

Digitized by Google

hazardous. 7 $\frac{QKB3+}{KK3}$ 8 $\frac{QKtB3}{QKtK2}$ (This is better than 8 $\frac{}{QKtKt5}$ to which your reply is 9 $\frac{QK4}{}$ gaining two moves) 9 $\frac{QP2}{}$ (This is more attacking than 9 $\frac{QK4}{}$ He now has the choice of two moves 9 $\frac{}{KRP1}$ to prevent $\frac{QBKt5}{}$ and 9 $\frac{}{QBP1}$ The combinations present infinite variety, the game of second player being always radically lost by its nature. This début having become in some degree exhausted by the authors, we shall not dwell long about it, but give at random two main Variations 9 $\frac{}{QBP1}$ 10 $\frac{QBKt5}{KRP1}$ 11 $\frac{QB\times Kt}{B\times B}$ 12 $\frac{Cas\ QR}{KRKB}$ 13 $\frac{QK4}{QQ3}$ 14 $\frac{KRK}{B+}$ 15 $\frac{K\ to\ Kt}{RKB5}$ 16 $\frac{QKR7\ w}{}$) 9 $\frac{}{KRP1}$ 10 $\frac{Cas}{QBP1}$ (if 10 $\frac{}{KKtP2}$ 11 $\frac{QK4}{}$ then $\frac{KBP2}{}$) 11 $\frac{KRK}{KtKKt3}$ 12 $\frac{QKR5}{QKB3}$ 13 $\frac{P\times P}{QKB2}$ 14 $\frac{Kt\times Kt}{P\times Kt}$ 15 $\frac{B\times P+}{K\times B}$ 16 $\frac{KP1+w}{}$

EXACT DEFENCE OF THIS OPENING.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{KKtB3}{Kt\times P\ bst}$ 4 $\frac{Kt\times P}{}$ This is the move usually played. (4 $\frac{QK2}{}$ or 4 $\frac{QP1}{}$ would both be better. See the Variations. As for 4 $\frac{Cas}{}$ it is hazardous, on account of 4 $\frac{Cas}{QP2}$ 5 $\frac{KBQKt3}{QBKt5}$ then against 6 $\frac{QP1}{KtQB4}$ and against 6 $\frac{KRK}{KBQB4}$) 4 $\frac{}{QP2}$ (he might have played 4 $\frac{}{QK2}$ then 5 $\frac{QP2}{QP1}$ 6 $\frac{KB\times P+}{KQ}$ 7 $\frac{Cas}{P\times Kt}$ 8 $\frac{P\times P+}{QBQ2\ bst}$ 9 $\frac{KBQ5}{KtQB4}$ 10 $\frac{QKtP2}{QBP1}$ [if 10 $\frac{KP1}{QBP1}$ 11 $\frac{KBQB4}{QKtP2}$] 11 $\frac{P\times Kt}{P\times B}$ 12 $\frac{Q\times P}{Q\times QBP}$ 13 $\frac{Q\times QKtP}{QQB3}$ he keeps piece for three Pawns. He would do wrong on Move 13, to play 13 $\frac{}{BQB3}$ as 14 $\frac{R+}{}$) 5 $\frac{QK2}{}$ This move is forced, since if BQKt3, as advised by Allgaier, your adversary playing 5 $\frac{}{QKKt4}$ wins a Pawn and the game. (if 5 $\frac{QP1}{Kt\times KBP}$ or 5 $\frac{}{P\times B}$ if again 5 $\frac{Kt\times KBP}{QK2}$ 6 $\frac{QK2}{Q\times Kt}$ 7 $\frac{KB\times P}{Q\times B}$ 8 $\frac{QP1\ or\ QKtB3}{}$

Digitized by Google

he has won a piece. Allgaier here plays 5 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{KBP}}{\text{K} \times \text{Kt}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{QKR}5+}{\text{KK}3}$ 7 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{P}+}{\text{Q} \times \text{B}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{QK}8+}{\text{KKB}3}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{QB}}{\text{QK}3}$ he ought to win this way; but exposes himself needlessly to attacks, which might have been avoided as before shown) 5 $\frac{}{\text{KBQB}4}$ 6 $\frac{\text{QP}1 \text{ bst}}{}$ (If 6 $\frac{\text{KKt KB}3 \text{ or Q}3}{\text{Cas b g}}$) (If 6 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{}$ as advised by Lewis, 6 $\frac{}{\text{Cas}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{BKt}3}{}$ without this, he would take KBP and have the advantage, and if instead you retreat KKt he moves KRK 7 $\frac{}{\text{KRK}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{QP}1 \text{ bst}}{\text{KKt} \times \text{KBP}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{R} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{B} \times \text{R}+}$ 10 $\frac{\text{K} \times \text{B}}{\text{QKB}3+\text{w}}$; or he may play at Move 8 $\frac{}{\text{R} \times \text{Kt}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{R} \times \text{Pw}}$) 6 $\frac{}{\text{B} \times \text{BP}+}$ (If 6 $\frac{}{\text{P} \times \text{B}}$ or 6 $\frac{}{\text{Cas}}$ he loses a Pawn. If 6 $\frac{}{\text{Kt} \times \text{KBP}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{KtQB}6+}{\text{KQ}2}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{Q}}{\text{KRK}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{R}+}{\text{K} \times \text{Q}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{QP}}{\text{Kt} \times \text{R}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{KBP bst}}{\text{KtKB}7}$ 12 $\frac{\text{KRP}1 \text{ b g}}{}$) 7 $\frac{\text{K to B}}{}$ (If 7 $\frac{\text{KQ}}{\text{Cas bs}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{BQKt}3}{\text{BQ}5 \text{ bst}}$ [8 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{P} \times \text{B}+\text{b g}}$] 9 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{KRK b g}}$ and if, here, 9 $\frac{\text{KtKB}3}{\text{KtKB}7+}$ 10 $\frac{\text{KQ}2}{\text{KRK}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{QKB}}{\text{BK}6+\text{b g}}$ Should your 7th Move be met thus: 7 $\frac{\text{KQ}}{\text{BQKt}3 \text{ inf}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{KBP bst}}{\text{BKKt}5 \text{ bst}}$ [if 8 $\frac{}{\text{K} \times \text{Kt}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{Kt}}{}$ threatening R+] 9 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{Q}}{\text{B} \times \text{Q}+}$ [9 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{B}}{\text{Kt}+}$] 10 $\frac{\text{K} \times \text{B}}{\text{P} \times \text{B}}$ [10 $\frac{}{\text{K} \times \text{Kt}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{QP}}{}$] 11 $\frac{\text{KtK}6}{\text{P} \times \text{P}+}$ 12 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{KKB}2}$ 13 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{QBP}}{}$ you win P) 7 $\frac{}{\text{BQKt}3}$ 8 $\frac{\text{BQKt}3}{}$ (If 7 $\frac{}{\text{QKB}3}$ or 7 $\frac{}{\text{BQ}5}$ 8 $\frac{\text{KtKB}3}{}$ you win a piece. If 7 $\frac{}{\text{BQKt}3}$ 8 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{Kt},}{\text{P} \times \text{B}}$ or if 8 $\frac{\text{KtKB}3}{\text{Cas b g}}$ If 7 $\frac{}{\text{BQKt}3}$ 8 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{QP}}{\text{Q} \times \text{B}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{Q} \times \text{Q}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{Q}}{\text{Cas b g}}$) 8 $\frac{}{\text{QK}2}$ 9 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q} \times \text{Kt}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{Q} \times \text{Q}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{Q}}{\text{Cas}}$ he has better game, by reason of the bad situation of your K.

Variation on your Fourth Move.

1 $\frac{\text{KP}2}{\text{KP}2}$ 2 $\frac{\text{KBQB}4}{\text{KKtB}3}$ 3 $\frac{\text{KKtB}3}{\text{Kt} \times \text{P}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{QK}2}{\text{QP}2}$ 5 $\frac{\text{QP}1}{\text{P} \times \text{B bst}}$ (he might also play 5 $\frac{}{\text{KtKB}3}$ then $\frac{}{\text{KBK}2}$ and $\frac{}{\text{Cas}}$) 6 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{Kt}}{}$ (if you take with P, he pins Kt with Q B) 6 $\frac{}{\text{KBQ}3}$ (6 $\frac{}{\text{P} \times \text{QP}}$

Digitized by Google

7 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{P}}{}$) 7 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{QBP}}{}$ (7 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{KBP2bg}}$) 7 he Cas, then $\frac{}{\text{QBK3}}$ and he has better situation, on account of your Queen's exposed condition.

Another Variation on your Fourth Move.

1 $\frac{\text{KP2}}{\text{KP2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{KBQB4}}{\text{KKtB3}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{\text{Kt} \times \text{P}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{QP1}}{}$ This is, perhaps, your best move. 4 $\frac{}{\text{KtKB3}}$ (By retiring with Kt thus, his game is compromised. He should rather play 4 $\frac{}{\text{KtQB4}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{P}}{\text{QP2}}$ [if 5 $\frac{\text{QKtP2}}{\text{QP2bg}}$] 6 $\frac{\text{BQKt3}}{\text{Kt} \times \text{B}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{QRP} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{QBP2bg}}$) 5 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{P}}{\text{QP2}}$ (if 5 $\frac{}{\text{QP1}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{KBP}}{\text{QK2}+}$ 7 $\frac{\text{KQ2bg}}{}$) 6 $\frac{\text{KBQKt3}}{\text{QBP2}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{QBP1 bst}}{\text{KBQ3}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{QP1}}{\text{Cas}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{\text{QKtB3}}$ (9 $\frac{}{\text{QBKB4}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{QBKt5}}{}$) 10 $\frac{\text{KBP2}}{\text{QBKB4}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{QBK3}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P bg}}{}$

EIGHTH OPENING. (THE PONZIANI CENTRE GAMBIT.)

1 $\frac{\text{KP2}}{\text{KP2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{KBQB4}}{\text{KKtB3}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{}$ This Gambit has been propounded as a safe attack by Ponziani; and both Lewis and Walker equally pronounce it advantageous for first player*; followed in this doctrine by Calvi in the Palamede of 1842. The present analysis will, we trust, however, prove our conviction that your Gambit is unsound, and can only yield you a bad game. Its examination is highly important, for in default of 3 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{}$ a move we have clearly demonstrated to be weak, the majority of amateurs still persist in clinging to 3 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{}$ as an advantageous attack, which, according to their assertion, would prove the weakness of 2 $\frac{}{\text{KKtB3}}$ Assuming

* There is some little error here, as, in my own Treatise, 3d edit., p. 85., which dates prior to Jaenisch, I say to White respecting this very move,—"Your game is, perhaps, not quite so strong, as if at Move 3 you brought KKt to B3;" nor do I any where speak in favour of the Move 3 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{}$ but simply quote it as recommended by Ponziani. In my 4th edition (Art of Chess Play, 1846, p. 111.) I mark the Move 3 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{}$ inferior.

Digitized by Google

the truth, then, of this theory, no move would remain for second player but 2 $\frac{\text{KBQB4}}{\text{KBQB4}}$ which, as we shall prove, would expose him to attacks beyond number. We now proceed in demonstration of our views.

1 $\frac{\text{KP2}}{\text{KP2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{KBQB4}}{\text{KKtB3}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{KP}\times\text{P}}$ (if 3 $\frac{}{\text{Kt}\times\text{KP}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{P}\times\text{P}}{}$ obliging them to avoid 5 $\frac{\text{B}\times\text{KBP}+}{}$ by retiring Kt to QB4, which grants you the better position; and if 4 $\frac{}{\text{KBQB4}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{QQ5}}{}$) 4 $\frac{\text{KP1}}{\text{QP2 bst}}$ (See Variation for 4 $\frac{}{\text{QK2}}$) (Ponziani, Walker*, and Calvi make him play 4 $\frac{}{\text{KtK5}}$) on which you can equalise the game by continuing 5 $\frac{\text{KBQ5}}{\text{KtQB4}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{Q}\times\text{P}}{\text{QBP1}}$ [6 $\frac{}{\text{QP1}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{}$] 7 $\frac{\text{KBQB4}}{\text{QP2}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{P}\times\text{P en p}}{\text{Q}\times\text{P}}$ or you may play 5 $\frac{\text{B}\times\text{KBP}+}{\text{K}\times\text{B}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{QKB3}+}{\text{KtKB3}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{KKtR3}}{\text{KRP1}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{}$) 5 $\frac{\text{BQKt3 bst}}{}$ (If 5 $\frac{\text{Q}\times\text{P}}{\text{P}\times\text{B}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{Q}\times\text{Q}+}{\text{K}\times\text{Q}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{P}\times\text{Kt}}{\text{P}\times\text{P}}$ he wins P If 5 $\frac{\text{B}+}{\text{QBP1}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{P}\times\text{Kt}}{\text{QQR4}+}$ 7 $\frac{\text{QBP1}}{\text{Q}\times\text{B}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Q}\times\text{P}}{\text{KKtP1}}$ and if you prefer 6 $\frac{\text{Q}\times\text{P}}{\text{QQR4}+}$ 7 $\frac{\text{QBQ2}}{\text{Q}\times\text{B}}$ [7 $\frac{\text{QKtB3}}{\text{KKtK5}}$] 8 $\frac{\text{P}\times\text{Kt}}{\text{KKtP1}}$ in both cases he has better position) 5 $\frac{}{\text{KKtK5}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{KKtK2 bst}}{\text{QBP2 bst}}$ (if 6 $\frac{\text{Q}\times\text{P}}{\text{KBQB4}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Q}\times\text{P}}{\text{Q}\times\text{Q}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{B}\times\text{Q}}{\text{Kt}\times\text{KBP bg}}$ If 6 $\frac{\text{KKtK2}}{\text{QKtB3 wk}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{BQR4}}{\text{QBQ2}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{B}\times\text{Kt}}{\text{B}\times\text{B}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{KKt}\times\text{P}}{\text{QBQ2}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{KKtK2}}{\text{BQKt4}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{QKtB3}}{\text{B}\times\text{Kt}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{Kt}\times\text{B}}{\text{QBP2}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{Cas ev}}{}$) 7 $\frac{\text{KBP1}}{\text{KtKt4}}$ (if 7 $\frac{\text{KtKB4}}{\text{QBP1}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{B}+}{\text{QKtB3}}$ keeping P, for if 9 $\frac{\text{B}\times\text{Kt}+}{\text{P}\times\text{B}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Q}\times\text{P}}{\text{KBQB4}}$ If 7 $\frac{\text{QBP1}}{}$ see Var) 8 $\frac{\text{KtKB4}}{\text{QBP1}}$ (he could not well play 8 $\frac{}{\text{QBK3}}$ on account of 9 $\frac{\text{KRP2}}{}$ nor 8 $\frac{}{\text{QKtB3}}$ by reason of 9 $\frac{\text{Kt}\times\text{QP}}{\text{QKt}\times\text{P}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{KBP1}}{}$) 9 $\frac{\text{B}+}{\text{QKtB3}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{B}\times\text{Kt}+}{\text{P}\times\text{B}}$ (If you had taken P with Q you lose a piece) 11 $\frac{\text{Q}\times\text{P}}{\text{KtK3}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{Kt}\times\text{Kt}}{\text{P}\times\text{Kt}}$ (better than retreating Q)

* *Nous avons changé tout cela.*

Digitized by Google

13 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{\text{QBP1}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{QKB2}}{\text{QP1}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{KBP1}}{\text{QQ4 bg}}$ We are indebted for the chief points of this defence to M. Petroff, the celebrated Russian amateur.

Variation on your Seventh Move.

1 $\frac{\text{KP2}}{\text{KP2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{KBQB4}}{\text{KKtB3}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{P}\times\text{P}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{KP1}}{\text{QP2}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{BQKt3}}{\text{KKtK5}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{KKtK2}}{\text{QBP2}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{QBP1}}{\text{P}\times\text{P}}$ (if 7 $\frac{}{\text{QKtB3 bd}}$ for then 8 $\frac{\text{KBP1}}{\text{KKtKt4}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{P}\times\text{P}}{\text{P}\times\text{P}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Kt}\times\text{P}}{\text{QKt}\times\text{P}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{QK2}}{}$ or 11 $\frac{\text{KtK2}}{}$ regaining P. Should you adopt as last move 11 $\frac{\text{KBP1}}{\text{KtK3}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{P}\times\text{Kt}}{\text{QKR5+}}$) 8 $\frac{\text{Q}\times\text{QP}}{\text{Q}\times\text{Q}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{B}\times\text{Q}}{\text{P}\times\text{P}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{QB}\times\text{P}}{\text{KKtKt4}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{KBP2}}{\text{KKtK3}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{KBP1}}{\text{KKtQB2}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{KBK4}}{\text{QKtB3 bst}}$ (13 $\frac{}{\text{KKtP1 wk}}$ for then 14 $\frac{\text{KP1}}{\text{KRKKt}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{P}\times\text{KBP+}}{\text{K}\times\text{P}}$ 16 $\frac{\text{P}\times\text{P+}}{\text{RP}\times\text{P}}$ 17 $\frac{\text{Cas+}}{}$ and you have an immense field of attack) 14 $\frac{\text{B}\times\text{QKt+}}{\text{P}\times\text{B}}$ if 15 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{\text{QBR3}}$ then 16 $\frac{}{\text{KtQ4}}$ and $\frac{}{\text{QRQKt}}$ when his surplus P, though doubled, ought finally to win.

Variation on his Fourth Move.

1 $\frac{\text{KP2}}{\text{KP2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{KBQB4}}{\text{KKtB3}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{P}\times\text{P}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{KP1}}{\text{QK2bd}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{QK2}}{\text{KKt Kt}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{\text{QBP2}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{QBP1}}{\text{QKtB3}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{QBKB4}}{}$ you have a fine game. At Move 6 he would do worse to play 6 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{\text{QKtB3}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{QBP1}}{\text{PQ6}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{KB}\times\text{P}}{\text{QP1}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{QBKB4}}{\text{QKt}\times\text{P}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Kt}\times\text{Kt}}{\text{P}\times\text{Kt}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{B}\times\text{P}}{\text{QBP1}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{Cas bg}}{}$

SECTION II.

THE TWO KINGS' BISHOPS' OPENING.

1 $\frac{\text{KP2}}{\text{KP2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{KBQB4}}{\text{KBQB4}}$ We have already remarked that this defence, far from being, as pronounced by the almost unanimous opinion of the

Digitized by Google

authors, the best possible, is inferior to 2 $\frac{}{\text{K Kt B 3}}$ since it permits first player to exercise greater latitude, and hold the attack much longer. This defence has nevertheless the advantage, while strictly sound as regards loss, of leading to the establishment of the most brilliant varieties of the Kings' Bishops' Opening. The following analysis will prove the truth of what we here advance.

The first question which presents itself is, what is the strongest attack you can attempt at Move 3? Both 3 $\frac{\text{Q Kt B 3}}{}$ and 3 $\frac{\text{Q P 1}}{}$ lose you the move, as he replies by 3 $\frac{}{\text{Q B P 1}}$ preparing to establish his Pawns in the centre. The three Gambits open for your adoption 3 $\frac{\text{Q Kt P 2}}{}$ 3 $\frac{\text{Q P 2}}{}$ 3 $\frac{\text{K B P 2}}{}$ are all hazardous. Your best possible moves are 3 $\frac{\text{Q B P 1}}{}$ menacing the fixing your Pawns in the centre, or 3 $\frac{\text{K Kt B 3}}{}$ reserving $\frac{\text{Q B P 1}}{}$ for the following move. We shall examine both these forms of attack hereinafter. 3 $\frac{\text{K Kt K 2}}{}$ would be bad; as the K Kt in the attack should so rarely be placed on this square, since his powers become there so comparatively restricted; and your opponent would answer with 3 $\frac{}{\text{Q K R 5}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{K Kt Kt 3}}{\text{K Kt B 3}}$ your game being thus changed into one of defence.

We shall begin by examining the four sorties you may make with Queen 3 $\frac{\text{Q K 2}}{}$ 3 $\frac{\text{Q K B 3}}{}$ 3 $\frac{\text{Q K Kt 4}}{}$ 3 $\frac{\text{Q K R 5}}{}$ It is mostly disadvantageous to play forth Q in beginning the game; not only as leading to loss of time, but also as Q sq is the best she can at first occupy. She there sustains the centre Pawns, preserving, if need be, the two very important sorties of QQR 4 and QKR 5 The four attacks named, then, are assuredly not the best your third move offers; still, having the move, they may be risked without compromising your game. In the first place to 3 $\frac{\text{Q K Kt 4}}{}$ he answers with 3 $\frac{}{\text{Q K B 3}}$ on which you withdraw your Q 4 $\frac{\text{Q K Kt 3}}{}$ and the game is equal. But the attack having been so speedily nullified, and the chief weight of your forces opposed so early in the battle without result, was the move 3 $\frac{\text{Q K Kt 4}}{}$ a very wise one?

Digitized by Google

Respecting the sortie of Q we may here point out that if 3 $\frac{\text{K B} \times \text{P}+ \text{ bd}}{\text{K} \times \text{B}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{Q K R } 5+}{\text{K K B bst}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{K P}}{\text{Q P 1}}$ if now 6 $\frac{\text{Q K B 4} + \text{ or Q Q B 3}}{\text{Q K B 3}}$

The worst sally of Q is 3 $\frac{\text{Q K B 3}}{}$ for here she has not only quitted a stronger square for her primary occupation, Q sq, but fills up the post which should be legitimately occupied by K Kt. Notwithstanding, here are the means of carrying out the game without a forced disadvantage. 3 $\frac{\text{Q K B 3}}{\text{K Kt B 3}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{Q K Kt 3}}{\text{Cas}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{Q P 1}}{}$ (You cannot now take K P with Q as 5 $\frac{}{\text{B} \times \text{P}+}$ and if 6 $\frac{\text{K} \times \text{B}}{\text{Kt}+}$) 5 $\frac{}{\text{Q P 1}}$ (if 5 $\frac{}{\text{K Kt R 4}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{Q K Kt 5}}{}$ and after the exchange of Queens the party becomes even) 6 $\frac{\text{Q B R 6}}{\text{K Kt R 4}}$ (Your sixth move may also be 6 $\frac{\text{Q B K 3}}{}$) 7 $\frac{\text{Q K Kt 5}}{\text{Q} \times \text{Q}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{Q}}{}$ ev; and if now 8 $\frac{}{\text{K R P 1}}$ you retreat B K 3 This example tends to prove that 3 $\frac{\text{Q K B 3}}{}$ without actually compromising your game, suffers your adversary to gain valuable time; and must hence be regarded as a bad system of attack.

NINTH OPENING.

1 $\frac{\text{K P 2}}{\text{K P 2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{K B Q B 4}}{\text{K B Q B 4}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{Q K R 5}}{}$ This attack is far preferable to 3 $\frac{\text{Q K B 3}}{}$ but still incurs justly the same reproaches as 3 $\frac{\text{Q K Kt 4}}{}$ It has been much analysed by authors, who prescribe as the best defence 3 $\frac{}{\text{Q K 2}}$ as given in our Var; but he may also move 3 $\frac{}{\text{Q K B 3}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{K Kt B 3}}{\text{Q P 1}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{Q P 1}}{}$ (These two Pawns, each advanced one sq, are here ordinarily stronger than $\frac{}{\text{Q Kt B 3}}$ and $\frac{\text{Q Kt B 3}}{}$ because they open the game, and because the Knights on these squares may be attacked by Bishops. 5 $\frac{\text{K Kt Kt 5}}{}$ is hazardous. See First Var.) 5 $\frac{}{\text{Q K Kt 3}}$ The Queen finds herself out of place if left permanently at K B 3. Besides, the advance of K Kt P 1 would not be good, and is indeed rarely correct at the commencement. 6 $\frac{\text{Q K Kt 5}}{}$ you do not take, because that would open his K R file. 6 $\frac{}{\text{Q} \times \text{Q}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{Q}}{\text{K Kt R 3}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{\text{Cas}}$ ev

Digitized by Google

Variation on your Fifth Move.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 3 $\frac{QKR5}{QKB3}$ 4 $\frac{KKtB3}{QP1}$ 5 $\frac{KKtKt5}{Q\times KBP+}$ 6 $\frac{KQ}{KKtP1}$ 7 $\frac{B\times KBP+}{KK2}$ 8 $\frac{QK2}{}$ (if 8 $\frac{QKB3}{Q\times Q+}$ 9 $\frac{P\times Q}{KRP1}$ 10 $\frac{B\times Kt}{R\times B}$ and wins a piece) 8 $\frac{}{Q\times Q+}$ 9 $\frac{K\times Q}{QB+}$ 10 $\frac{KK}{KKtB3 \text{ wins P.}}$

Variation on Second Player's Third Move.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 3 $\frac{QKR5}{QK2}$ 4 $\frac{KKtB3}{QP1}$ (His best move here is 4 $\frac{}{KKtB3}$ 5 $\frac{Q\times KP}{KB\times P+}$ 6 $\frac{KK2}{Q\times Q}$ 7 $\frac{KKt\times Q}{KBQKt3}$ 8 $\frac{KB\times P+}{KK2}$ 9 $\frac{KBQKt3}{QP1}$ and then $\frac{}{KKt\times KP \text{ ev}}$) 5 $\frac{KKtKt5}{KKtB3}$ (This defence is incorrectly given as soundest by the authors. 5 $\frac{}{KKtR3}$ were surer, but the Kt would be much cramped on that sq. 5 $\frac{}{KKtP1}$ is weak, for, as we have recently observed, the early advance of the Kt's Pawns is not to be recommended, as weakening the flanks. You would, against 5 $\frac{}{KKtP1}$ retire Q, for if 6 $\frac{KB\times P+}{Q\times B}$*) 6 $\frac{Q\times KBP+}{}$ (If 6 $\frac{B\times P+ \text{ bd}}{KQ}$ 7 $\frac{QKR4}{KRKB}$ 8 $\frac{BQKt3}{KtKKt5\,bg}$ if 8 $\frac{}{KKt\times KP}$ 9 $\frac{QP2\,bg}{}$) 6 $\frac{}{Q\times Q}$ 7 $\frac{B\times Q+}{KK2}$ 8 $\frac{BQKt3}{KRP1}$ 9 $\frac{KKtB3}{Kt\times KP}$ 10 $\frac{Cas}{KQ}$ 11 $\frac{QP1}{KtKB3\,bg}$ If at Move 10, he should move 10 $\frac{}{KKtP2}$ 11 $\frac{QP2\,bg}{}$ or if instead 10 $\frac{}{KRKB}$ 11 $\frac{QP1}{KKtB3}$ 12 $\frac{KKtR4\,bg}{}$

LOPEZ GAMBIT. (TENTH OPENING.)

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 3 $\frac{QK2}{}$ Of all the sallies of Q at Move 3, this is undoubtedly the best; being a move preparatory to offering with increased safety the King's Gambit, which under this form is styled the Lopez Gambit, after its inventor. (You now threaten

---

* To me it seems strong for second player 5 $\frac{}{KKtP1}$; nor do I find you have then in answer so good a move as 6 $\frac{KB\times BP+}{}$.

Digitized by Google

4 $\frac{B \times KBP+}{}$ and to parry this attack, he must play 3 $\frac{}{QP1}$ 3 $\frac{}{QK2}$ or 3 $\frac{}{KKtB3}$ This last move we shall not here enter upon, because the continuation will be 4 $\frac{KBP2}{QP1}$ and it will thus merge into a Var of 3 $\frac{}{QP1}$)

3 $\frac{}{QP1}$ 4 $\frac{KBP2}{}$ (To introduce the flank Gambit on Q's side at this move would be to compromise Q 4 $\frac{QKtP2}{B+KtP}$ 5 $\frac{B \times KBP+}{K \times B}$ 6 $\frac{QQB4+}{QBK3}$ 7 $\frac{Q \times B}{QKtR3}$ 8 $\frac{Q \times QKtP}{QKtQB4}$ 9 $\frac{QQKt4}{QRP2}$ 10 $\frac{QQB3}{Kt+KP}$ 11 $\frac{QK3}{KKtB3}$ 12 $\frac{QP1}{KtQB4\,bg}$) 4 $\frac{}{B \times Kt}$ (He would do wrong to accept Gambit 4 $\frac{}{KP \times P}$ as you would answer 5 $\frac{KKtB3}{}$ and would secure the fixing your Pawns in the centre, while he could not permanently defend Gambit P. But still the capture of your Kt is not solid, for the K B ought not lightly to be exchanged; and especially here, where the capture brings your K R into strong play. His correct move is 4 $\frac{}{KKtB3}$ after which 5 $\frac{QP1}{QBKt5}$ [if he had castled here, you would advance K B P, forming a dangerous assault with your wing Pawns] 6 $\frac{KKtB3}{QK2}$ 7 $\frac{P \times P}{P \times P}$ 8 $\frac{QBK3}{QKtQ2}$ 9 $\frac{QKtQ2}{Cas\,K\,R}$ 10 $\frac{Cas\,K\,Rev}{}$)

5 $\frac{R \times B}{P \times P}$ (Instead of taking P he ought to bring out 5 $\frac{}{KKtB3}$ which move without altogether repairing his fault 4 $\frac{}{B \times Kt}$ would yet avoid disaster. See Var) 6 $\frac{QP2}{}$ (You may also move 6 $\frac{QP1}{}$ but in neither case can he ultimately defend Gambit P. If 6 $\frac{QP1}{KKtP2}$ 7 $\frac{QKR5}{QKB3}$ 8 $\frac{KKtP1}{}$ regaining Pawn. If at Move 6 $\frac{QP1}{QKR5+}$ 7 $\frac{KtP1}{P \times P}$ 8 $\frac{R \times P}{}$ then against 8 $\frac{}{KRP1}$ 9 $\frac{QKB2}{}$ and against 8 $\frac{}{KKtB3}$ or 8 $\frac{}{KKtP1}$ 9 $\frac{QBKt5}{}$ regaining P after the exchanges) 6 $\frac{}{KKtP2}$ (if 6 $\frac{}{QKR5+}$ 7 $\frac{KKtP1}{P \times P}$ 8 $\frac{R \times P\,gd\,g}{}$) 7 $\frac{KKtP1\,bst}{P \times P}$ 8 $\frac{B \times KBP+bst}{K \times B}$ 9 $\frac{QKR5+w}{}$

Variation on his Fifth Move.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 3 $\frac{QK2}{QP1}$ 4 $\frac{KBP2}{B \times Kt}$ 5 $\frac{R \times B}{KKtB3}$ 6 $\frac{QP1}{QK2}$

Digitized by Google

(6 $\frac{}{\text{QBKt5}}$ is dangerous, for if he does not then instantly change off $\frac{\text{KP}\times\text{P}}{}$ which is disadvantageous for him, you shut up B by pushing $\frac{\text{KBP1}}{}$)

7 $\frac{\text{QKtB3}}{\text{QKtB3}}$ (if 7 $\frac{\text{QKtB3}}{\text{QBK3}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{B}\times\text{B}}{\text{Q}\times\text{B}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{KBP1}}{\text{QK2}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{QBKt5}}{\text{QBP1}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{\text{QKtQ2}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{QKB2}}{\text{QKtQKt3}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{QRP2 b g}}{}$) 8 $\frac{\text{KBQKt5}}{\text{QBQ2}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{QBK3}}{\text{QRP1}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{KBQR4}}{\text{CasQR}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{}$ ev.

Another form of Lopez Gambit.

1 $\frac{\text{KP2}}{\text{KP2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{KBQB4}}{\text{KBQB4}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{QK2}}{\text{QK2}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{KBP2}}{\text{KKtB3}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{\text{QP1}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{QP1}}{\text{QBKt5}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{KBP}\times\text{P}}{\text{QP}\times\text{P}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{QBKt5}}{\text{QKtQ2}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{QKtQ2}}{\text{CasQR}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{}$ ev.

While printing this sheet of our work, the Palamede of June 1842 offers another defence to the Lopez Gambit, which turns on playing 3 $\frac{}{\text{QKtB3}}$ instead of 3 $\frac{}{\text{QP1}}$ or 3 $\frac{}{\text{QK2}}$; in such case 4 $\frac{\text{KBP2}}{}$ would become hazardous, as well as 4 $\frac{\text{KB}\times\text{P+}}{}$ which would give adversary much time towards bringing out his force. But after having pushed 4 $\frac{\text{QP1}}{}$ whether he reply by 4 $\frac{}{\text{QP1}}$ or 4 $\frac{}{\text{KKtB3}}$ you may always at Move 5 advance $\frac{\text{KBP2}}{}$ and thus re-enter the habitual combinations of the Lopez Gambit; which, on the whole, are nowise disadvantageous to the second player; provided only that he never takes Gambit P with KP, nor your KKt with KB.*

---

* The move for defence 3 $\frac{}{\text{QKtB3}}$ was given even previously, with its probable consequences, and characterised as a "good" defence, in my Treatise (edit. 1841, p. 94.). Lewis, in his Treatise, 1844, like Jaenisch, quotes the move 3 $\frac{}{\text{QKtB3}}$ as having appeared in Palamede of 1842; silent also, like Jaenisch, as to the move having been given by me in 1841. In truth, second player's best third move is $\frac{}{\text{QKtB3}}$.

Digitized by Google

ELEVENTH OPENING.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 3 $\frac{QP2}{B\times P}$ This form of Centre Gambit loses you a Pawn without equivalent. (If 3 $\frac{}{P\times P}$ 4 $\frac{B\times P+}{K\times B}$ 5 $\frac{Q+}{}$) 4 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKtB3}$ (4 $\frac{}{QKB3}$ would equally guard P, but would expose him to certain forcible attacks, similar to those of Lewis's Counter Gambit. We omit this Variation to abridge our labours) 5 $\frac{KBQ5}{}$ (If 5 $\frac{QBP1}{BQKt3}$ 6 $\frac{KKtKt5}{KKtR3}$ [6 $\frac{QQ5}{QK2\,bst}$ 7 $\frac{QBKt5}{KKtB3}$] 7 $\frac{QKR5}{Cas}$ and if now 8 $\frac{KKtP2}{QKB3\,bg}$) 5 $\frac{}{KKtK2\,bst}$ 6 $\frac{QBP1}{BQKt3}$ 7 $\frac{QBKt5}{Cas\text{ or }QP1}$ 8 $\frac{KB\times QKt}{QKtP\times B}$ you have lost a Pawn, and have no remunerative gain of position.

TWELFTH OPENING.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 3 $\frac{KBP2}{}$ This Gambit yields you a bad game, without compensation. Lewis does not consider it to be very dangerous for you, but that is because his defence is weak; and we hope here to give the correct moves. (Second player would be wrong to take immediately 3 $\frac{}{P\times P}$ for playing 4 $\frac{QP2}{Q+}$ 5 $\frac{K\text{ to }B}{}$ you produce a Var of Bishop's Gambit much in your favour. Although enticing, the moves 4 $\frac{KB\times P+}{}$ or 4 $\frac{QKR5}{}$ [after 3 $\frac{}{P\times P}$] could not be so strong, by reason of 4 $\frac{B\times P+}{K\text{ to }B}$ 5 $\frac{QP2}{QKR5+}$ 6 $\frac{KKB}{K\times B}$ &c; and if 4 $\frac{QKR5}{QK2}$ 5 $\frac{QP1}{KKtB3}$ Should second player, in lieu of 3 $\frac{}{P\times P}$ move 3 $\frac{}{QP1}$ the game resolves itself into a Var of our Eighth Opening, Book IV.) 3 $\frac{}{B\times Ktbst}$ 4 $\frac{QKR5}{}$ (You cannot retake Bishop immediately 4 $\frac{R\times B}{Q+bg}$) 4 $\frac{}{QK2}$ (better than 4 $\frac{}{QKB3}$) 5 $\frac{R\times B}{QKtB3}$ (This is his best move. Lewis makes him play 5 $\frac{}{QP1}$ then your reply should be 6 $\frac{QP1}{KKtB3}$ 7 $\frac{QK2}{}$ ev; but Mr

Digitized by Google

L. continues thus instead 6 $\frac{\text{K B P 1 why this?}}{\text{K Kt B 3}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Q K Kt 5}}{\text{K Kt} \times \text{K P}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{K Kt P}}{\text{Q K B 3}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{K B P} +}{\text{K K 2}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{Q} +}{\text{Kt} \times \text{Q}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{K B Q Kt 3}}{\text{Q B} \times \text{P}}$ ev. Mr. L. pronounces it to be "slightly" in favour of second player) 6 $\frac{\text{Q P 1 bst}}{}$ (if 6 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{Kt Q 5}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Q Kt R 3}}{\text{K Kt P 1}}$ [7 $\frac{\text{Q Q}}{\text{Q} \times \text{P b g}}$] 8 $\frac{\text{Q Q}}{\text{Q} \times \text{P}}$ he wins P. And if 6 $\frac{\text{K B P 1}}{\text{K Kt B 3}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Q K Kt 5}}{\text{Q Q B 4}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{K R K B}}{\text{Q} \times \text{B}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{Kt P}}{\text{Q} \times \text{K P} +}$ 10 $\frac{\text{K Q}}{\text{Q K Kt 5} + \text{w}}$ and if 10 $\frac{\text{K K B 2}}{\text{K R Kt w}}$) 6 $\frac{}{\text{K Kt B 3}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Q K 2}}{}$ (if 7 $\frac{\text{Q K Kt 5}}{\text{K R K Kt}}$ and 8 $\frac{}{\text{K R P 1 b g}}$ if 7 $\frac{\text{Q Q}}{\text{K P} \times \text{P}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Q B} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q P 2 b g}}$) 7 $\frac{}{\text{Q Kt Q 5}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Q Q}}{\text{Q P 2}}$ (if 8 $\frac{\text{Q K B 2}}{\text{K Kt Kt 5}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Q K Kt 3}}{\text{Q P 2 b g}}$) 9 $\frac{\text{Q B P 1}}{}$ (if 9 $\frac{\text{K P} \times \text{Q P}}{\text{K P} \times \text{P} + \text{b g}}$ if 9 $\frac{\text{K B} \times \text{P}}{\text{K Kt} \times \text{B b g}}$ if 9 $\frac{\text{K B P} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q} \times \text{P b g}}$) 9 $\frac{}{\text{K Kt Kt 5}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{K Kt P 1}}{\text{Q P} \times \text{K B}}$ (10 $\frac{\text{Q B P} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{Q K R 5} +}$ 11 $\frac{\text{K Q 2}}{\text{Q K B 7} +}$ 12 $\frac{\text{K Q B 3}}{\text{P} \times \text{P} + \text{w}}$) 11 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{Q Kt}}{\text{K P} \times \text{Q P}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{K R P 1}}{\text{K Kt B 3}}$ (12 $\frac{\text{Q Q R 4} +}{\text{Q B P 1}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{P}}{\text{K Kt} \times \text{R P b g}}$) 13 $\frac{\text{Q Q R 4} +}{\text{Q B P 1}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q B} \times \text{P}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{Q P}}{\text{Q R Q b g}}$ The idea of the move 5 $\frac{}{\text{Q Kt B 3}}$ originated with M. Petroff; its developments are our own.

THIRTEENTH OPENING. (WING GAMBIT.)

1 $\frac{\text{K P 2}}{\text{K P 2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{K B Q B 4}}{\text{K B Q B 4}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{Q Kt P 2}}{\text{B} \times \text{Kt P}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{K Kt B 3 wk}}{\text{Q P 1}}$ (He would do wrong to defend P with 4 $\frac{}{\text{Q Kt B 3}}$, reducing the game to an Evans Gambit; the attack of which is more tenacious than that which he is here called upon to face. Your correct 4th Move is 4 $\frac{\text{Q B P 1}}{}$) 5 $\frac{\text{Q B P 1}}{\text{K B Q B 4}}$ (He would act incorrectly to retreat 5 $\frac{}{\text{K B Q R 4}}$ as in the legitimate Evans Gambit; for then 6 $\frac{\text{Q Q Kt 3}}{}$ and he ought to reply as best 6 $\frac{}{\text{Q Q 2}}$ which gives him a bad opening. If he answer thus: 6 $\frac{\text{Q Q Kt 3}}{\text{K Kt R 3}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Q P 1 b g}}{}$ or if 6 $\frac{\text{Q Q Kt 3}}{\text{Q K 2}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Q Q R 4} +}{\text{Q Kt B 3}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{K B Q Kt 5 b g}}{}$) 6 $\frac{\text{Cas bst}}{\text{K Kt B 3}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Q P 2}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{B Q Kt 3}}$

Digitized by Google

9 $\frac{QBKt2}{}$ (You might also play BQR3) 9 $\frac{}{Cas}$ he keeps P and gd g If now 10 $\frac{QKtQ2}{QP1}$ (At Move 6 you would get an inferior game if 6 $\frac{QP2}{P\times P}$ 7 $\frac{P\times P}{B+}$ 8 $\frac{QBQ2\ bst}{B\times B+}$ If 8 $\frac{K\ to\ B}{BQR4}$ 9 $\frac{QQKt3}{QQ2}$ 10 $\frac{B\times KBP+}{Q\times B}$ 11 $\frac{QQR4+}{QBQ2}$ 12 $\frac{Q\times KB}{QQB5+w}$)

Variation on your Fourth Move.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 3 $\frac{QKtP2}{B\times KtP}$ (3 $\frac{}{KBQKt3}$ 4 $\frac{QBKt2}{}$) 4 $\frac{QBP1\ bst}{KBQR4}$ (if 4 $\frac{}{KBK2}$ 5 $\frac{QQKt3\ b\ g}{}$ if 4 $\frac{}{KBQB4}$ 5 $\frac{QP2}{P\times P}$ 6 $\frac{KB\times KBP+}{K\times B}$ 7 $\frac{QKR5+gd\ g}{}$) 5 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKtB3}$ you have now formed the Evans Gambit, for if 5 $\frac{}{QP1}$ 6 $\frac{QQKt3\ gd\ g}{QQ2}$ as before noted; and if 5 $\frac{}{QK2}$ 6 $\frac{QBR3\ b\ g}{}$ In the Two Bishops' Opening, then, we prove that Second Player cannot without disadvantage avoid the Evans attack; an additional reason for mistrusting the defence 2 $\frac{}{KBQB4}$

FOURTEENTH OPENING. (DOUBLE GAMBIT.)

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 3 $\frac{QKtP2}{B\times KtP}$ 4 $\frac{KBP2}{}$ This constitutes the Double Gambit, invented by M'Donnell. (See Walker's Treatise.) It is more attacking, but intrinsically weaker than the simple Wing Gambit. 4 $\frac{}{P\times P}$ It is at least doubtful whether he can preserve his advantage after capturing second P. He has, it is true, two Pawns, but must restore one of them directly, and your formidable Centre Pawns, as well as fine attacking position, appear fully to compensate for the one Pawn. La Bourdonnais has given the real defence to this brilliant opening, which turns upon a Centre Counter-gambit, as we shall presently show. 5 $\frac{QBP1}{}$ (A weak mode of pursuing attack; see Var. 5 $\frac{KKtB3}{}$ is the correct move. If now 5 $\frac{QBKt2}{KKtB3}$ 6 $\frac{KP1}{KKtK5}$ 7 $\frac{KKtB3}{QP2}$ the taking P en p, and then capturing K Kt P would

Digitized by Google

be fatal, through $\frac{\text{K R K Kt}}{}$) 5 $\frac{\text{Q K R 5+}}{}$ 6 $\frac{\text{K K B}}{\text{K B Q R 4 or Q B 4}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Q P 2}}{\text{K B Q Kt 3}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{K Kt B 3}}{\text{Q K R 4}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Q B} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q P 1}}$ You have a fine situation, and Central Pawns, but have abandoned the power of Castling; and we think his surplus P ought to yield him ultimately the victory.

Variation on your Fifth Move.

1 $\frac{\text{K P 2}}{\text{K P 2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{K B Q B 4}}{\text{K B Q B 4}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{Q Kt P 2}}{\text{B} \times \text{Kt P}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{K B P 2}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{K Kt B 3 bst}}{\text{Q K 2}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{Q K 2}}{\text{K Kt B 3}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{K P 1}}{\text{K Kt R 4}}$ ($7 \cdot \frac{\text{Q B Kt 2}}{\text{Q} \times \text{P}}$) 8 $\frac{\text{Q B P 1}}{\text{K B Q R 4}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Q P 2}}{\text{K B Kt 3}}$ (if 9 $\frac{\text{Q B R 3}}{\text{Q B P 2}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Q P 2}}{\text{B Q Kt 3}}$) 10 $\frac{\text{Q B R 3}}{\text{Q B P 2}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{Q P 1 bst}}{\text{Q P 1}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q} \times \text{Q+}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{K} \times \text{Q}}{\text{Cas}}$ (if 13 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{Q}}{\text{K Kt B 3}}$ then $\frac{}{\text{K Kt K 5 gd g}}$) 14 $\frac{\text{Q Kt Q 2}}{\text{Q B Kt 5}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{K K B 2}}{\text{Q Kt Q 2}}$ 16 $\frac{\text{K R K}}{\text{K R K}}$ 17 $\frac{\text{K R K 7 b g}}{}$

Best Defence of Double Gambit.

1 $\frac{\text{K P 2}}{\text{K P 2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{K B Q B 4}}{\text{K B Q B 4}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{Q Kt P 2}}{\text{B} \times \text{Kt P}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{K B P 2}}{\text{Q P 2}}$ (All other moves are inferior, as to evasions of Gambit. If 4 $\frac{}{\text{Q P 1}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{Q B P 1}}{}$ or if 4 $\frac{}{\text{K Kt B 3}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{K B P} \times \text{P}}{}$ then $\frac{\text{Q K Kt 4}}{}$) 5 $\frac{\text{K P} \times \text{Q P}}{}$ (if 5 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q B P 1}}$ and if then 6 $\frac{\text{K B Q Kt 3}}{\text{Q Q 5 b g}}$ or if 6 $\frac{\text{Q B P 1}}{\text{P} \times \text{B}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{B}}{\text{P} \times \text{K P}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{K B P} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q Q 5 b g}}$) 5 $\frac{}{\text{K P 1}}$ This Pawn thus advanced materially crowds your game. (The 4th and 5th moves of this defence were played by De la Bourdonnais in a game with M'Donnell *, which was continued 6 $\frac{\text{K Kt K 2}}{\text{K Kt B 3}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{\text{Cas}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Q Kt B 3}}{\text{Q B P 1}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{Q B P}}{\text{Q Kt} \times \text{P}}$ M'Donnell had here a bad game, and finished by losing a piece.

---

* This game, as all other games played by M'Donnell and La Bourdonnais, is recorded in my "Chess Studies."

Digitized by Google

At a later period, De la Bourdonnais gave a short analysis of this opening in the Palamede, and furnished the two following couplets of moves: — 6 $\frac{\text{K Kt K2}}{\text{Q K R5+}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{K Kt P1}}{\text{Q K R6 b g}}$ We must here observe that if 7 $\frac{\text{K Kt Kt3}}{\text{K Kt B3}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Q B P1}}{\text{K B Q B4}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Q P2}}{\text{K P x Q P en p}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Q x P}}{\text{K Kt Kt5 b g}}$) 6 $\frac{\text{Q B P1}}{}$ This we hold to be your best move. (If 6 $\frac{\text{Q B Kt2}}{\text{K Kt B3}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{B x K Kt}}{\text{Q x B}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Q B P1}}{\text{Cas}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{K Kt K2}}{\text{K B Q B4 gd g}}$ if now 10 $\frac{\text{Q P2}}{\text{K P x P en p}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{K B x P}}{\text{K R K gd g}}$) 6 $\frac{}{\text{K B Q B4}}$ (6 $\frac{}{\text{Q K B3}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Q Q R4+ w}}{}$) 7 $\frac{\text{Q P2}}{\text{K P x P en p}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Q x P}}{\text{K Kt B3}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Q B R3}}{\text{Q Q3}}$ (if 9 $\frac{}{\text{Q K 2+}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Q K2}}{}$) 10 $\frac{\text{B x B}}{\text{Q x B gd g}}$ If you go on with (11 $\frac{\text{K Kt K2}}{\text{K Kt Kt5}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{Q Kt Q2}}{\text{Kt K B7 bst, w}}$ if 11 $\frac{\text{Q K2+}}{\text{K Q b g}}$) 11 $\frac{\text{Q Kt Q2}}{\text{Cas}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{Q Kt Kt3}}{\text{Q Q Kt3}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{K Kt K2 or Q Q4}}{\text{K Kt Kt5}}$ and then $\frac{}{\text{K Kt K6 b g}}$

FIFTEENTH OPENING.

1 $\frac{\text{K P2}}{\text{K P2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{K B Q B4}}{\text{K B Q B4}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{Q B P1}}{}$ The classical attack of the Two Bishops' Opening, especially recommended by Philidor. You thereby threaten to acquire an immediate superiority of position by establishing your Pawns in the centre, and you open to the range of your Queen a most important line of operations, from Q sq. to Q R4. This attack 3 $\frac{\text{Q B P1}}{}$ is undeniably good; though we own we should prefer postponing it another move, and playing now 3 $\frac{\text{K Kt B3}}{}$ By the last-named move you prevent 3 $\frac{}{\text{Q K Kt4}}$ and 3 $\frac{}{\text{Q P2}}$ and thus restrict your opponent to one particular description of defence. We shall prove this at the close of the present Book.

As to the methods of defence to be set up against 3 $\frac{\text{Q B P1}}{}$ or the projected establishment of your Pawns in the centre, here is what we first point out. If 3 $\frac{}{\text{Q B P1}}$ or 3 $\frac{}{\text{K Kt K2}}$ or 3 $\frac{}{\text{Q Kt B3}}$ you equally advance 4 $\frac{\text{Q P2}}{}$ and then against 4 $\frac{}{\text{K P x P}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{K B x K B P+}}{\text{K x B}}$

Digitized by Google

6 $\frac{QKR5+}{}$ You thus change P for P, and B for B, but disarrange your opponent's array, in depriving him of the faculty of castling. Still, 3 $\frac{}{QKtB3}$ is very superior to 3 $\frac{}{KKtK2}$ and 3 $\frac{}{QBP1}$ because it leaves him the resource of 4 $\frac{QP2}{KBQKt3}$ which brings us to the first Opening of this Book, or to the Giuoco Piano, more difficult of defence than the simple Two Bishops' Opening.

We shall examine further on the various defences 3 $\frac{}{KBQKt3}$ 3 $\frac{}{QP1}$ and 3 $\frac{}{KKtB3}$ as well as the four possible sorties of Q, 3 $\frac{}{QKR5}$ 3 $\frac{}{QKKt4}$ 3 $\frac{}{QKB3}$ and 3 $\frac{}{QK2}$ We may here state that there are three Counter-gambits possible of introduction on this move, 3 $\frac{}{QKtP2}$ 3 $\frac{}{KBP2}$ and 3 $\frac{}{QP2}$ The two first cannot sustain a serious analysis, not being worth it. If 3 $\frac{}{QKtP2}$ 4 $\frac{KB\times KtP}{QBP1}$ 5 $\frac{KBQR4}{}$ and here is the second player, instead of fixing his Pawns in the centre, reduced to preventing the establishment there of your Pawns. The Counter-gambit has therefore failed of its aim, while yet costing a Pawn. We must observe, besides, that you would have played badly in retreating on Move 5 your B to QB4 instead of QR4; because then 5 $\frac{}{QP2}$ and you could not capture 6 $\frac{KP\times QP}{}$ without being open to 6 $\frac{}{KB\times KBP+}$

Respecting the Counter-gambit 3 $\frac{}{KBP2}$ you would be very ill-advised to accept it, on account of 3 $\frac{}{KBP2}$ 4 $\frac{P\times KBP}{QP2}$ (if 4 $\frac{}{KB\times BP+}$ 5 $\frac{K\text{ to }B\text{ gd }g}{}$) 5 $\frac{QKR5+}{KKB}$ and you are reduced to defend a dangerous Gambit, with a move lost and a Bishop put out of play. But your correct move is 4 $\frac{B\times KKt}{QKR5}$ (4 $\frac{}{R\times Kt}$ 5 $\frac{QKR5+\text{ w}}{}$) 5 $\frac{QP2}{Q\times KP+}$ 6 $\frac{QK2}{Q\times KKtP}$ 7 $\frac{Q\times KP+}{}$ then $\frac{KBQ5\text{ w}}{}$

Digitized by Google

CENTRE COUNTER GAMBIT.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 3 $\frac{QBP1}{QP2}$ (This gambit is ingenious, and gives second player a forcible attack. Its author, Lewis, even thought it invincible; that is to say, conducting, at least, to an even game. Were such really the case, the two classic moves 3 $\frac{}{QK2}$ 3 $\frac{}{QKKt4}$ must be henceforth rejected as feeble; for if this Counter-gambit may be safely essayed, it were better to hold the enemy in check by a violent attack, than to have oneself an attack to sustain. Unfortunately, such is not the fact; the first player being able to maintain, though with difficulty, his acquired Pawn; and thus to preserve sufficient advantage to win the game. Lewis has not the less the merit of having invented a fine opening, the powerful counter-attack of which confirms our opinion of the comparative feebleness of your third move 3 $\frac{QBP1}{}$) 4 $\frac{KB \times P}{KKtB3}$ (if 4 $\frac{P \times P}{KB \times P+}$) 5 $\frac{QQKt3}{}$ This move is natural, but decidedly weak (You should rather play 5 $\frac{QKB3}{}$ as we shall by-and-bye show) 5 $\frac{}{Kt \times B}$ (He may also Cas as in Var) 6 $\frac{Q \times Kt + bst}{}$ (For 6 $\frac{P \times Kt}{}$ see Var) 6 $\frac{}{Q \times Q}$ 7 $\frac{P \times Q}{QBKB4}$ 8 $\frac{KKtB3}{KBP1}$ (if 8 $\frac{QBP1}{}$ or 8 $\frac{KKtK2}{}$ 8 $\frac{}{QBQ6bg}$ if 8 $\frac{KKtB3}{KP1}$ 9 $\frac{KKtK5}{KBP1}$ if 10 $\frac{KtQB4}{}$ and then $\frac{KKtK3}{}$ and you succeed in developing your force and maintaining Pawn) 9 $\frac{QP2}{P \times P}$ (9 $\frac{Cas}{QBQ6bg}$) 10 $\frac{P \times P}{BQKt3}$ (if 10 $\frac{Kt \times P}{B \times Kt}$ 11 $\frac{P \times B}{QKtR3}$ 12 $\frac{QRP1}{QB \times Kt}$ 13 $\frac{R \times B}{QRQ}$ regaining P) 11 $\frac{Cas}{Cas}$ (if 11 $\frac{QKtB3}{QBKt5}$ or if 11 $\frac{QBK3}{QBK5}$) 12 $\frac{QKtB3}{QBKt5}$ 13 $\frac{BK3}{B \times Kt}$ 14 $\frac{P \times B}{QKtQ2}$ with Pawns so disconnected, you cannot maintain your advantage.*

Variation on your Sixth Move.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 3 $\frac{QBP1}{QP2}$ 4 $\frac{B \times P}{KKtB3}$ 5 $\frac{QQKt3}{Kt \times B}$ 6 $\frac{P \times Kt}{QKKt4}$

* Your Pawns certainly are broken; but the Queens being off the board, the game appears to me to be in your favour.

Digitized by Google

7 $\frac{QQR4+}{QBQ2}$ (if 7 $\frac{KKtP1}{QKB4}$ 8 $\frac{KBP1}{B\times Kt}$ [8 $\frac{QP2}{QK5+}$] 9 $\frac{R\times B}{Q\times P}$ regaining P with fine situation) 8 $\frac{QK4}{QBKB4}$ 9 $\frac{QKB3}{KP1}$ (if 9 $\frac{Q\times P+}{KQ}$ 10 $\frac{QKKt3}{R+}$ 11 $\frac{KQ}{QK2w}$) 10 $\frac{QKKt3}{Q\times Q}$ 11 $\frac{KRP\times Q}{QKtQ2}$ Now if 12 $\frac{KKtK2}{QKtQKt3}$ 13 $\frac{KKtB4}{CasQR}$ regaining P If 12 $\frac{QBP1}{KtK4}$ regaining P If 12 $\frac{KBP1}{QKtKt3}$ 13 $\frac{P\times P}{QB\times P}$ 14 $\frac{KKtB3}{QB\times P}$

Variation on Second Player's Fifth Move.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 3 $\frac{QBP1}{QP2}$ 4 $\frac{B\times P}{KKtB3}$ 5 $\frac{QQKt3}{Cas}$ 6 $\frac{B\times QKtP}{B\times B}$ (G. Walker here moves 6 $\frac{KKtB3}{}$ on which, as his best retort, he takes B with K Kt and carries on the game upon the principle developed in the preceding Variations*) 7 $\frac{Q\times B}{QQ6}$ 8 $\frac{Q\times R}{QBP1}$ (We here suppose him to play a bad move, purposely to introduce a Variation by Lewis; brilliant but vicious. His correct move is 8 $\frac{}{QQR3}$ and then 9 $\frac{}{QKtQ2}$ You would remain with two Rooks and two Pawns against Q; but your pieces would be still in home-quarters, and it would be difficult to plant them favourably abroad) 9 $\frac{QQKt7}{Q\times KP+}$ (9 $\frac{KBP1}{QQR3}$) 10 $\frac{KKtK2}{Q\times KKtP}$ 11 $\frac{KRKB}{KKtKt5}$ 12 $\frac{QP2}{KP\times P}$ 13 $\frac{P\times P}{Kt\times RP}$ Here Lewis considers the game as won for second player. Von Der Lasa corrects this by suggesting 14 $\frac{QKtQ2}{}$ which foils the attack, and you remain with the advantage of a piece. Any other move and you are lost. If 14 $\frac{KKtKt3}{R+}$ 15 $\frac{QBK3}{KB\times P}$

TRUE DEFENCE OF THIS COUNTER-GAMBIT.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 3 $\frac{QBP1}{QP2}$ 4 $\frac{B\times P}{KKtB3}$ 5 $\frac{QKB3}{Kt\times B}$ 6 $\frac{P\times Kt}{Cas}$

---

* Here Jaenisch is quite correct. If second player answer 6 $\frac{KKtB3}{QBP1}$ 7 $\frac{KB\times BP+}{}$ and you have a won game, as I have elsewhere shown to demonstration.

Digitized by Google

(6 $\frac{}{KBP2}$ were stronger. See Var) 7 $\frac{KKtK2\ bst}{}$ (if 7 $\frac{QP1}{KBP2}$ 8 $\frac{QBK3}{KP1}$ [8 $\frac{KKtK2}{KP1\ bg}$] 9 $\frac{QP\times P}{P\times P}$ 10 $\frac{Q\times P}{KRK}$ 11 $\frac{QKB3}{B\times B}$ 12 $\frac{KBP\times B}{QKKt4}$ regaining his Pawn with better position) 7 $\frac{}{KBP2}$ (if 7 $\frac{}{QBP1}$ 8 $\frac{P\times P}{QKt\times P}$ 9 $\frac{Cas}{KBP2}$ 10 $\frac{QP1}{}$ you preserve Pawn) 8 $\frac{QP2}{P\times P}$ (if 8 $\frac{}{KP1}$ 9 $\frac{QK3}{KBQKt3}$ [you may equally play 9 $\frac{QKKt3}{KBQ3}$ 10 $\frac{QBKB4}{B\times B}$ 11 $\frac{Kt\times B}{}$ and then $\frac{QBP1}{}$ Pawn more, and gd g] [if 9 $\frac{QK3}{KBQ3}$ 10 $\frac{Cas}{QBP1}$ 11 $\frac{P\times QBP}{QKt\times P}$ 12 $\frac{KBP1}{}$ keeping P] 10 $\frac{QBP1}{QBP1}$ 11 $\frac{QKtB3}{}$ surplus Pawn and fine g) 9 $\frac{KKt\times P}{B\times Kt}$ (you may also take 9 $\frac{P\times P}{KBQ3\ or\ QKt3}$ 10 $\frac{Cas}{QBP1}$ 11 $\frac{QKtB3}{}$ maintaining P) 10 $\frac{P\times B}{KR+}$ 11 $\frac{QBK3}{KKtP2}$ (if 11 $\frac{}{QBP1}$ 12 $\frac{QKtB3}{}$ or if 11 $\frac{}{KBP1}$ 12 $\frac{Q\times P}{Q\times P}$ 13 $\frac{Cas}{}$ you keep P, and good game both ways) 12 $\frac{Cas}{KKtP1}$ 13 $\frac{QKKt3}{Q\times P}$ 14 $\frac{Q\times QBP\ w}{}$

Variation on Sixth Move of Second Player.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 3 $\frac{QBP1}{QP2}$ 4 $\frac{B\times P}{KKtB3}$ 5 $\frac{QKB3}{Kt\times B}$ 6 $\frac{P\times Kt}{KBP2}$ 7 $\frac{KKtK2\ bst}{KP1}$ 8 $\frac{QKKt3}{Cas}$ (if 8 $\frac{}{Q\times P}$ 9 $\frac{Q\times KtP}{KRKt}$ 10 $\frac{Q\times KRP}{R\times KtP}$ 11 $\frac{KtKB4\ w}{}$) 9 $\frac{QP2}{KP\times P\ en\ p}$ 10 $\frac{Q\times P}{QBP1}$ 11 $\frac{QBP1}{QKtP2}$ 12 $\frac{BP\times P}{QBP\times QP}$ (if 12 $\frac{QKtB3}{QKR5\ gd\ g}$ or if 12 $\frac{QKtP1}{QKB3\ gd\ g}$) 13 $\frac{QKtB3}{}$ assuring the preservation of P. If at Move 12 he takes other P 12 $\frac{}{P\times QKtP}$ 13 $\frac{Q\times QKtP}{QK2}$ (13 if $\frac{}{Q\times P}$ 14 $\frac{QBK3\ bg}{}$) 14 $\frac{QKtB3}{QBR3}$ 15 $\frac{QQKt3}{KKR}$ 16 $\frac{QQB2}{KRK}$ 17 $\frac{Cas\ w}{}$

Variation on Fifth Move of Second Player.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 3 $\frac{QBP1}{QP2}$ 4 $\frac{B\times P}{KKtB3}$ 5 $\frac{QKB3}{}$ If he now castle

Digitized by Google

5 $\frac{}{\text{Cas}}$ your correct play is 6 $\frac{\text{KBQB4}}{}$ and if then 6 $\frac{}{\text{QBKKKt5}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{QQ3}}{\text{QKtB3 or QK2}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{KBP1}}{}$ you preserve Pawn. You would do wrong on his castling 5 $\frac{}{\text{Cas}}$ to play 6 $\frac{\text{KBQKt3}}{\text{QBKt5}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{QKKt3}}{\text{Kt} \times \text{P}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{B}}{\text{Kt} \times \text{KBP}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{QQB4}}{\text{KBQKt3}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{Kt} \times \text{R}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{QKtB3 b g}}$

The strength of second player's attack in this Counter-gambit proceeds from your $\frac{\text{QBP1}}{}$ restraining your QKt's sallying forth; and leaving a dangerous open square, your Q 3.

SIXTEENTH OPENING.

1 $\frac{\text{KP2}}{\text{KP2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{KBQB4}}{\text{KBQB4}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{QBP1}}{\text{QP1}}$ This defence is weak; suffering your Pawns to take up the centre of the field, with the erroneous expectation of breaking up their array at a future time. 4 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{KBQKt3}}$ (if 5 $\frac{}{\text{KB+}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{QKtB3 b g}}{}$ or 6 $\frac{\text{KKB}}{\text{QQ2 bst}}$ ev; for now if 7 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{KBP+}}{\text{K} \times \text{B}}$ [7 $\frac{}{\text{Q} \times \text{B}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{QQR4+}}{}$] 8 $\frac{\text{QQKt3+}}{\text{QK3}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{B}}{\text{Q} \times \text{KP}}$) 6 $\frac{\text{QKtB3}}{\text{KKtB3}}$ (if 6 $\frac{\text{QKtB3}}{\text{KRP1}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{KKtK2}}{\text{KKtB3}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{\text{Cas}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{QQ3 b g}}{}$ if on one of these moves he opposes B $\frac{}{\text{QBK3}}$ you push QP and play then QBKB4) 7 $\frac{\text{QBKt5}}{\text{QKtB3}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{KKtK2}}{\text{Cas}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{KtQ5 b g}}{}$ (Observe that against 7 or 8 $\frac{}{\text{KRP1}}$ you answer $\frac{\text{QBKR4}}{}$)

SEVENTEENTH OPENING.

1 $\frac{\text{KP2}}{\text{KP2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{KBQB4}}{\text{KBQB4}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{QBP1}}{\text{KKtB3}}$ This defence is not altogether correct; nevertheless, as it abounds in resource and leads to many brilliant combinations, theorists have ever made it a subject of special research. We here offer the latest conclusions of analysts upon this opening, augmented by many important variations. 4 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{KP1 bst}}{}$ (5 $\frac{\text{QBP} \times \text{P}}{}$ is weak, and suffers him to equalise the game thus: 5 $\frac{\text{QBP} \times \text{P}}{\text{B+}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{QBQ2}}{\text{B} \times \text{B+}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{QKt} \times \text{B}}{\text{QP2}}$ [not 7 $\frac{}{\text{KKt} \times \text{P}}$ on account of 8 $\frac{\text{KB} \times \text{KBP+ b g}}{}$]

Digitized by Google

8 $\frac{KP\times P}{KKt\times P}$ 9 $\frac{QQKt3}{QBP1}$ 10 $\frac{KKtB3}{Cas}$ 11 $\frac{Cas}{KKtQKt3\ ev}$) 5 $\frac{}{KtK5\ bd}$ (The move 5 $\frac{}{QP2}$ is examined in Var; if 5 $\frac{}{KKtKt}$ 6 $\frac{P\times P\ bg}{}$ if 5 $\frac{}{QK2\ wk}$ 6 $\frac{P\times P}{B+}$ 7 $\frac{KKB\ bst}{KtK5}$ [7 $\frac{}{KKtKt}$ 8 $\frac{KKtB3\ bg}{}$] 8 $\frac{QKKt4}{KBP2}$ 9 $\frac{QKR5+}{KKtP1}$ [9 $\frac{Q\times KBP}{KtQ3}$ 10 $\frac{QQ3}{Kt\times B}$ 11 $\frac{Q\times Kt}{QKtB3\ ev}$] 10 $\frac{QKR6}{KtQ3}$ [10 $\frac{}{QBP1}$ 11 $\frac{KBP1}{QP2}$ 12 $\frac{KBK2\ bg}{}$] 11 $\frac{QBKt5}{KKtKB2}$ 12 $\frac{B\times Q}{Kt\times Q}$ 13 $\frac{B\times B\ w}{}$) Against 5 $\frac{}{KKtK5}$ you have the choice of several modes of attack, which we consider in separate paragraphs.

6 $\frac{P\times P}{}$ would be weak, on account of 6 $\frac{}{B+}$ 7 $\frac{QBQ2}{B\times B+}$ 8 $\frac{Kt\times B}{Kt\times Kt}$ 9 $\frac{Q\times Kt}{QP2}$ you have a slight advantage of position, but not sufficiently marked.

6 $\frac{QKKt4}{}$ is not very good, by reason of 6 $\frac{}{QP2}$ 7 $\frac{Q\times KKtP}{KRKB}$ 8 $\frac{KBQ3}{QBKB4\ gd\ g}$ (if 8 $\frac{KBQ3}{P\times QBP}$ 9 $\frac{B\times Kt}{P\times QKtP}$ 10 $\frac{QB\times P}{QP\times B}$ 11 $\frac{Q\times KRP}{KBQKt5+}$ 12 $\frac{QBB3}{B\times B+}$ 13 $\frac{Kt\times B}{QQ5}$ 14 $\frac{}{KKtK2\ bg}$)

6 $\frac{KBQ5}{}$ is a good attack. 6 $\frac{KBQ5}{KtKKt4}$ (if 6 $\frac{}{Kt\times KBP}$ 7 $\frac{QKB3\ w}{}$ if 6 $\frac{}{KBP2}$ 7 $\frac{B\times Kt}{P\times B}$ 8 $\frac{QBP\times P\ bg}{}$ threatening $\frac{}{QKKt4}$) 7 $\frac{P\times P}{}$ (if 7 $\frac{QKKt4}{KtK3}$ 8 $\frac{B\times Kt}{QP\times B}$ 9 $\frac{Q\times KKtP}{KRKB}$ 10 $\frac{Q\times RP}{P\times P}$ 11 $\frac{}{KKtB3\ \&c}$ for 11 $\frac{QKt\times P}{QQ5\ bg}$) 7 $\frac{}{BQKt3}$ (if 7 $\frac{}{BK2}$ 8 $\frac{KBP2}{KtK3}$ 9 $\frac{}{KBP1\ bg}$) 8 $\frac{QKKt4}{KRP1}$ (if 8 $\frac{}{KtK3}$ 9 $\frac{B\times Kt}{QP\times B}$ 10 $\frac{Q\times KKtP}{KRKB}$ 11 $\frac{KKtB3\ bst}{KB\times P}$ 12 $\frac{Q\times RP}{}$ you have gained a Pawn) 9 $\frac{KBP2}{QP1}$ (9 if $\frac{}{KtK3}$ 10 $\frac{B\times Kt}{QP\times B}$ 11 $\frac{Q\times KtP}{KRKB}$ 12 $\frac{KKtB3\ bst}{KB\times P}$ 13 $\frac{Q\times RP}{}$ you have won a Pawn, but if 12 $\frac{Q\times RP}{Q\times QP\ gd\ g}$)

Digitized by Google

10 $\frac{QKKt3}{KKtK3}$ 11 $\frac{B\times Kt}{QB\times B}$ 12 $\frac{Q\times P}{KRKB}$ 13 $\frac{KKtB3}{}$ and you win a Pawn; but if 13 $\frac{Q\times KRP\ wk}{P\times P}$ 14 $\frac{QP\times P}{QQ5\ gd\ g}$

Your best attack on Move 6 is that composed by Allgaier.

6 $\frac{QK2}{KKtKt4*}$ 7 $\frac{KBP2}{KtK3}$ 8 $\frac{KBP1}{KKtKB}$ 9 $\frac{KKtB3}{}$ (to avoid $\frac{}{QKR5+}$) 9 $\frac{}{QP\times P}$ 10 $\frac{QKt\times P\ bg}{}$ (if 10 $\frac{BKKt5}{}$ this move is inferior, although recommended by Allgaier, 10 $\frac{}{P\times QKtP}$ 11 $\frac{Q\times P}{KBK2}$ 12 $\frac{PKB6}{P\times P}$ † 13 $\frac{P\times P}{KBQ3\ bst}$ and then $\frac{}{QBP1}$ preserving his advantage. ‡)

6 $\frac{KB\times KBP+}{}$ (This attack is good, though inferior to 6 $\frac{}{QK2}$)

6 $\frac{}{K\times B}$ 7 $\frac{QKB3+}{KtKB3}$ 8 $\frac{KP\times Kt}{KR+}$ (if 8 $\frac{}{QP1}$ 9 $\frac{P\times KtP+}{K\times P}$ 10 $\frac{KKtK2\ bg}{}$ if 8 $\frac{}{Q\times P}$ 9 $\frac{QKR5+}{QKKt3}$ 10 $\frac{Q\times B}{KR+}$ 11 $\frac{KQ}{Q\times KtP}$ [if 11 $\frac{KKtK2}{PQ6\ w}$] 12 $\frac{QKB5+}{KKKt}$ 13 $\frac{QKB3}{QKB8+}$ 14 $\frac{KQB2\ bg}{}$) 9 $\frac{KQ}{Q\times P}$ (if 9 $\frac{KKB\ bd}{Q\times P}$ 10 $\frac{QKR5+}{QKKt3}$ 11 $\frac{Q\times B}{QQ6+w}$ if 9 $\frac{KKtK2}{Q\times P}$ 10 $\frac{QKR5+}{QKKt3}$ 11 $\frac{Q\times B}{PQ6\ bg}$) 10 $\frac{QKR5+}{QKKt3}$ (if 10 $\frac{}{KKtP1}$ 11 $\frac{Q\times B}{Q\times KBP}$ 12 $\frac{QQ5+}{}$ then $\frac{QKB3+}{}$ or $\frac{Q\times P+}{}$ change Queens and win) 11 $\frac{Q\times B}{Q\times KKtP}$ 12 $\frac{QKB5+}{KKKt}$ 13 $\frac{QKB3}{QKB8+}$ 14 $\frac{KQB2\ w}{}$

---

* Jaenisch should have given us, in a Variation, the effects of 6 $\frac{}{QP2}$ 7 $\frac{KP\times P\ en\ p}{Cas}$ 8 $\frac{QP\times QBP}{}$ &c.

† Surely, taken from this point, you ought to have a winning game; to judge from the situation.

‡ The quality of Chess-play termed "judgment of position" must be altogether abandoned, if general opinion do not here pronounce against Jaenisch. Certainly, between first-rates, you would win this game ninety times out of the hundred, and nine to the ninety.

Digitized by Google

Variation on Second Player's Fifth Move.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 3 $\frac{QBP1}{KKtB3}$ 4 $\frac{QP2}{KP\times P}$ 5 $\frac{KP1}{QP2\ bst}$ 6 $\frac{KBKt3}{}$

Tolerably good, but it were better to check with B as in Var.

(Bad to take Kt 6 $\frac{P\times Kt}{P\times B}$ 7 $\frac{P\times KKtP}{KRKt}$ [if 7 $\frac{QKR5}{Cas\ bst}$ 8 $\frac{Q\times B}{KR+}$ 9 $\frac{KKB\ bst}{P\times QBP}$ 10 $\frac{QKt\times P}{QQ6+}$ 11 $\frac{KKtK2}{R\times Kt}$ 12 $\frac{QQ5}{RQB7+}$ 13 $\frac{Q\times Q}{P\times Q\ b\ g}$] 8 $\frac{QKR5}{}$ [if 8 $\frac{QQR4+}{QKtB3}$ 9 $\frac{Q\times P}{QK2+}$ 10 $\frac{KKtK2}{R\times P\ b\ g}$] 8 $\frac{}{QQ3\ bst}$ [if 8 $\frac{}{QK2+}$ 9 $\frac{KQ}{R\times P}$ 10 $\frac{KKtB3}{QBKt5}$ 11 $\frac{QQ5\ b\ g}{}$] 9 $\frac{Q\times RP}{QK4+}$ 10 $\frac{KQ}{Q\times P}$ 11 $\frac{Q\times Q}{R\times Q\ b\ g}$) 6 $\frac{}{KKtK5}$ 7 $\frac{QBP\times P}{QKR5}$ In the opinion of Calvi, published in Palamede, 1842, this move ought to turn the game for second player. To us, it seems that the attack thereby acquired is barren, and can only finally yield advantage to the first player.

(We believe he had better play 7 $\frac{}{KBKt5+}$ [7 $\frac{}{BQKt3\ wk}$ 8 $\frac{QKtB3}{}$] 8 $\frac{QBQ2}{B\times B+}$ [if 8 $\frac{}{Kt\times B}$ 9 $\frac{QKt\times Kt}{Cas}$ 10 $\frac{KKtK2\ bst}{QKtB3}$ 11 $\frac{Cas}{KBP1}$ 12 $\frac{KBP2\ b\ g}{}$] 9 $\frac{QKt\times B}{QKtB3}$ [9 $\frac{}{Kt\times KBP\ bd}$ 10 $\frac{K\times Kt}{QKR5+}$ 11 $\frac{KKB\ bst}{Q\times QP}$ 12 $\frac{KKtB3\ b\ g}{}$] 10 $\frac{KKtK2}{}$ [by playing 10 $\frac{KKtB3}{}$ you would have equalised the game by arresting the march of your KBP] 10 $\frac{}{Cas}$ 11 $\frac{Cas}{}$ you have the better position, but the adverse game is not thereby compromised) 8 $\frac{QBK3\ bst}{BQKt5+}$ (if 8 $\frac{QKB3}{KB\times}$ 9 $\frac{KB\times P}{Q\times P+}$ 10 $\frac{KQ}{B\times QKtP}$ 11 $\frac{QB\times B}{Q\times B\ b\ g}$ And if at Move 8 $\frac{KKtP1}{Kt\times KtP}$ 9 $\frac{BP\times Kt}{QK5+}$ 10 $\frac{KKB}{Q\times KR}$ 11 $\frac{P\times KB}{QBR6+}$ 12 $\frac{KKB2}{Q\times KRP+}$ 13 $\frac{KK3}{Q\times KKtP+}$ 14 $\frac{}{KKtB3\ bd\ g}$) 9 $\frac{KKB}{QBP1}$ 10 $\frac{KKtP1\ bst}{QBR6+}$ (if 10 $\frac{KKtB3}{QK2\ b\ g}$ if 10 $\frac{KKtP1}{QK2}$ 11 $\frac{QRP1}{KBQR4}$ 12 $\frac{KBQB2\ gd\ g}{}$) 11 $\frac{Kt\times B}{Q\times Kt+}$ 12 $\frac{KKKt}{KRP1}$ (if 12 $\frac{}{QK3}$ 13 $\frac{QK2}{KBP1}$ [13 $\frac{}{KRP1}$ 14 $\frac{KRP2\ gd\ g}{}$] 14 $\frac{KBP1}{KtKt4}$ 15 $\frac{B\times Kt\ b\ g}{}$) 13 $\frac{QRP1}{KBR4}$ 14 $\frac{KBQB2}{KtKKt4\ if}$ 15 $\frac{KBP2\ gd\ g}{}$ (but if at move 13 $\frac{KBP1}{KtKt4}$ 14 $\frac{KKB2}{Cas\ b\ g}$

Digitized by Google

and then against 15 $\frac{QKB}{QKR4}$) Notwithstanding the displacement of King, you have the better game; through the time your adversary must lose in retreating his men, compromised by a fruitless attack.

Variation on your Sixth Move.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 3 $\frac{QBP1}{KKtB3}$ 4 $\frac{QP2}{KP\times P}$ 5 $\frac{KP1}{QP2}$ 6 $\frac{BKt5+bst}{QBP1}$ (if 6 $\frac{}{QBQ2}$ 7 $\frac{B\times B+}{KKt\times B}$ 8 $\frac{QBP\times Pbg}{}$) 7 $\frac{P\times Kt}{P\times B}$ 8 $\frac{P\times KKtP}{KRKt}$ 9 $\frac{P\times P}{B+}$ 10 $\frac{QKtB3}{R\times P}$ 11 $\frac{QK2+}{QK2}$ 12 $\frac{Q\times Q+}{K\times Q}$ 13 $\frac{KKB\,bst}{B\times Kt}$ 14 $\frac{P\times B\,bg}{}$

EIGHTEENTH OPENING.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 3 $\frac{QBP1}{QKR5}$ This counter-attack is bad. It has been well analysed by the Italian masters, whose demonstration we here subjoin. 4 $\frac{QK2}{KKtB3}$ 5 $\frac{QP2}{P\times P}$ (If 5 $\frac{KKtB3}{Q\times KP}$ 6 $\frac{KB\times BP+}{KK2\,gd\,g}$) (if 5 $\frac{QP2}{KBQKt3}$ 6 $\frac{P\times P}{Kt\times P}$ [for 6 $\frac{}{KtKt5}$ the result would be the same, but he would come off with a Pawn less] 7 $\frac{KKtP1}{KB\times P+}$ 8 $\frac{Q\times B}{Kt\times Q}$ 9 $\frac{P\times Q}{Kt\times R}$ 10 $\frac{KBQ5}{QKtB3}$ 11 $\frac{QBKB4}{}$ you have two minor pieces for Rook and Pawn, which is slightly in your favour) 6 $\frac{KP1}{KKtKt}$ (if 6 $\frac{}{KtK5}$ or 6 $\frac{}{KtKR4}$ 7 $\frac{KKtP1}{}$ or if 6 $\frac{}{KtKt5}$ 7 $\frac{KKtP1}{QKR4}$ 8 $\frac{KRP1}{}$ you win the piece in each case) 7 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKKt5}$ (if 7 $\frac{}{QK2}$ or 7 $\frac{}{QKR4}$ 8 $\frac{QBP\times P\,gd\,g}{}$) 8 $\frac{KB\times BP+}{KKB}$ (he cannot retake on account of 9 $\frac{KtKt5+}{}$) 9 $\frac{KRP1}{QKB4}$ 10 $\frac{B\times Kt}{R\times B}$ 11 $\frac{P\times P\,gd\,g}{}$

Digitized by Google

NINETEENTH OPENING.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 3 $\frac{QBP1}{QKB3}$ Although Chess authors have not recommended this move, they have never proved critically its inaccuracy. We shall supply this deficiency by showing that this defence, like the preceding, cannot maintain its ground against the centre gambit properly applied. The motive of $\frac{}{QKB3}$ is to prevent your fixing your Pawns in the centre; but the attempt will be found on his side a failure. 4 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKKt3}$ (For 4 $\frac{}{QP1}$ see Var. 4 $\frac{}{QKtB3}$ would be equally favourable for you, as see in Book III., and all other moves, as, for instance, 4 $\frac{}{KRP1}$ would at once give up the centre to your Pawns) 5 $\frac{Cas\ bst}{}$ (if 5 $\frac{KKt \times P}{Q \times KKtP}$ 6 $\frac{KRB}{Q \times KP+}$ 7 $\frac{QK2}{KKtB3}$ 8 $\frac{Q \times Q}{Kt \times Q}$ 9 $\frac{QP2}{KBQKt3}$ 10 $\frac{KB \times P+}{KK2}$ 11 $\frac{KBQ5}{KKtB3}$ 12 $\frac{QBKt5}{QP1}$ 13 $\frac{KKtQ3}{QBP1}$ 14 $\frac{KBB3}{QBKB4}$ 15 $\frac{KQ2\ ev}{}$) 5 $\frac{}{QP1}$ (he could not judiciously take K P on account of 6 $\frac{KB \times P+}{}$ Likewise if 5 $\frac{}{QKtB3}$ 6 $\frac{QP2}{KP \times P}$ 7 $\frac{QBP \times P}{}$ and your Pawns occupy the centre. If, again, 5 $\frac{}{QKtB3}$ 6 $\frac{QP2}{KBKt3}$ 7 $\frac{QP \times KP}{Q \times KP}$ 8 $\frac{KB \times KBP+bg}{}$) 6 $\frac{QP2}{P \times P}$ 7 $\frac{P \times P}{KBQKt3}$ 8 $\frac{QKtB3}{QBKt5}$ 9 $\frac{QBK3}{}$ you have Centre Pawns, and your forces well posted. If at Move 8 $\frac{}{QBKR6}$ 9 $\frac{KKtKt5}{QBK3}$ 10 $\frac{B \times B}{P \times B}$ 11 $\frac{QKKt4w}{}$ and if 8 $\frac{}{KKtB3}$ 10 $\frac{KP1bg}{}$

Variation on Second Player's Fourth Move.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 3 $\frac{QBP1}{QKB3}$ 4 $\frac{KKtB3}{QP1}$ 5 $\frac{QP2\ bst}{KBQKt3}$ (against 5 $\frac{}{P \times P}$ 6 $\frac{P \times P}{BQKt3\ bst}$ 7 $\frac{QBK3}{QKKt3\ if}$ 8 $\frac{Cas}{}$ your Pawns

Digitized by Google

have the centre. If 7 $\frac{\text{QBKt5}}{}$ 8 $\frac{\text{QKtQ2}}{}$ and against 8 $\frac{\text{QKtB3}}{}$ 9 $\frac{\text{KBQKt5}}{}$ also, we believe, 8 $\frac{\text{QKtB3}}{}$ would be equally good, since the doubled Pawn would strengthen your centre) 6 $\frac{\text{P}\times\text{P}}{\text{P}\times\text{P}}$ (6 $\frac{\text{QKKt3}}{}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Cas gd g}}{}$) 7 $\frac{\text{QBKt5}}{\text{QQ3}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Kt}\times\text{P}}{\text{Q}\times\text{Q}+}$ (8 $\frac{}{\text{KBP1}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{QKR5}+\text{w}}{}$) 9 $\frac{\text{K}\times\text{Q}}{\text{KBP1}}$ (if 9 $\frac{}{\text{QBK3}}$ you maintain the acquired Pawn) 10 $\frac{\text{KtKB7}}{\text{P}\times\text{B}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{Kt}\times\text{R}}{\text{KKtR3}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{KP1}}{\text{QKtB3 or KK2}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{PK6}}{}$ you ought to win.

TWENTIETH OPENING.

1 $\frac{\text{KP2}}{\text{KP2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{KBQB4}}{\text{KBQB4}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{QBP1}}{}$ Of the four different sorties here of Q, to be essayed on his 3rd Move, there remain now for our examination only 3 $\frac{}{\text{QK2}}$ and 3 $\frac{}{\text{QKKt4}}$ The former, originally introduced by Ruy Lopez, and later again by Philidor, is at the present time generally adopted by writers as the best defence in the Two Bishops' opening. The other 3 $\frac{}{\text{QKKt4}}$ was given as the best play by the three great Italian masters, Del Rio, Lolli, and Ponziani, but is rejected, we know not well why, by the amateurs of our own time. (The move 3 $\frac{}{\text{QK2}}$ did not suit the Italians, on account of their laws of the game, which permitted you, in castling, to place R at once on K sq, thus increasing the perils of the centre gambit for second player. See Opening XXVI.) Four years back, M. Petroff communicated to us some new methods of attack extremely ingenious, directed against each of the two classic defences, and much stronger than those as yet known. (See Openings 21, 22, 23, 24, and 26) We have since bestowed great labour on the analysis of the different forms of attack, new as well as ancient, in order to establish what are really the best moves in this opening. The result of our researches is, that the French defence (we so term that of Lopez and Philidor, as being exactly conformable to the principles of the French School) may be adopted with perfect safety, although the Italian defence is on the whole preferable, as giving the attack less hold. However, the first is the more essential to study, because 3 $\frac{}{\text{QKKt4}}$ may be always eluded by the assailant's

Digitized by Google

playing 3 $\frac{\text{K Kt B 3}}{}$ and only at Move 4 $\frac{\text{Q B P 1}}{}$ (See Opening XXVII) 3 $\frac{}{\text{Q K Kt 4}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{Q K B 3}}{}$ This is the move given by Del Rio, and which we likewise pronounce to be the best. In the following début we shall analyse the extremely ingenious attack, by which Petroff replaces the classic game of the "Anonimo." (If 4 $\frac{\text{Q P 2}}{\text{Q} \times \text{K Kt P}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{Q K B 3}}{\text{Q} \times \text{Q}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{Q}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{B Q Kt 3}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Kt K 5}}{\text{K Kt B 3}}$ now if 9 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{K B P bd}}{\text{K R K B}}$ and if 9 $\frac{\text{K B} \times \text{P} + \text{bd}}{\text{K K 2}}$) (if 4 $\frac{\text{K Kt P 1}}{\text{Q K Kt 3 b g}}$) 4 $\frac{}{\text{Q K Kt 3 bst}}$ (4 $\frac{}{\text{K Kt B 3}}$ would give you some advantage. See Var) 5 $\frac{\text{K Kt Kt 2}}{\text{Q Kt B 3}}$ (The Italians play 5 $\frac{}{\text{Q P 1}}$ but there finish their analysis. Our contemporary authors, while they unreasonably reject the defence 3 $\frac{}{\text{Q K Kt 4}}$ have never justly continued the analysis of the Italians. We shall here try to fill up the blank; observing in the first place that 5 $\frac{}{\text{Q P 1}}$ is very well played. You would then be wrong to continue by pushing 6 $\frac{\text{Q P 2}}{}$ for 6 $\frac{}{\text{K B Kt 3}}$ and then if 7 $\frac{\text{Q B K 3}}{\text{K Kt B 3 bst}}$ [7 $\frac{}{\text{Q B Kt 5}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{K B} \times \text{K B P} + \text{w}}{}$] and on the following move $\frac{}{\text{Q B Kt 5 b g}}$ If 7 $\frac{\text{K B Q 3}}{\text{Q B Kt 5}}$ he wins a Pawn. If 7 $\frac{\text{K R P 1}}{\text{K Kt B 3}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{K B Q 3}}{\text{Q Kt B 3}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Q B K 3}}{\text{K P} \times \text{P}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Q B} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q Kt K 4 gd g}}$ [10 $\frac{\text{Q B P} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q Kt Kt 5 b g}}$] There only remains to you then 7 $\frac{\text{Q Kt Q 2}}{}$ or to take 7 $\frac{\text{Q P} \times \text{K P}}{}$ which is not advantageous. And if 5 $\frac{}{\text{Q P 1}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{Q P 1}}{\text{Q Kt B 3}}$ &c. as hereinafter. If 5 $\frac{}{\text{K Kt B 3}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{Q P 2}}{}$ as in Var) 6 $\frac{\text{Q P 1}}{\text{Q P 1}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Q B K 3}}{\text{K B Q Kt 3}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Q Kt Q 2}}{\text{K Kt K 2}}$ (His last move is very preferable to 8 $\frac{}{\text{K Kt B 3}}$ which would neither defend his brother Kt, nor free in its march his K B P, while it would cramp his Q. For instance, 8 $\frac{}{\text{K Kt B 3}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{K R P 1}}{\text{Q B Q 2}}$ [9 $\frac{}{\text{Q B K 3}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{K B Kt 5}}{}$] 10 $\frac{\text{Q P 1}}{\text{K P} \times \text{Q P}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{Q B P} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q Kt Kt 5}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{Cas K R b g}}{}$ If at Move 9 in this Var 9 $\frac{}{\text{Cas}}$ you are enabled to attack him to

Digitized by Google

great advantage on his Royal wing; castling, yourself, on Queen's side) (If at Move 7 or 8 $\frac{}{\text{QBKt5}}$ then $\frac{\text{KB} \times \text{KBP+ bg}}{}$) 9 $\frac{\text{KRP1}}{}$ (If 9 $\frac{\text{Cas KR}}{\text{Cas}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{KRP1}}{\text{QBK3}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{QP1 or KBQKt3}}{\text{B} \times \text{B}}$ then 12 $\frac{}{\text{KBP2bg}}$ If 9 $\frac{\text{QP1}}{\text{KP} \times \text{P}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{QKtKt5}}$ [Now, if 11 $\frac{\text{Cas QR}}{\text{QP1bg}}$] [if 11 $\frac{\text{KQ}}{\text{QP1}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{KP} \times \text{P}}{\text{QBKt5}}$] if 11 $\frac{\text{Cas KR}}{\text{QP1}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{QBKt5}}$ [12 $\frac{\text{KB} \times \text{QP}}{\text{KKt} \times \text{B}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{KP} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{QBKt5bg}}$] and then $\frac{}{\text{QB} \times \text{Kt}}$ and $\frac{}{\text{QKt} \times \text{QP ev}}$ If 11 $\frac{\text{QRQB}}{\text{QP1}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{KP} \times \text{P}}{\text{QBKt5}}$ [12 $\frac{\text{KB} \times \text{P}}{\text{KKt} \times \text{B}}$ then $\frac{}{\text{QBKt5}}$] 13 $\frac{\text{QK4}}{\text{Q} \times \text{Q}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{QKt} \times \text{Q}}{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}$ and 15 $\frac{}{\text{QKt} \times \text{QP ev}}$) 9 $\frac{}{\text{QBK3}}$ (if 9 $\frac{}{\text{Cas KR}}$ you could push 10 $\frac{\text{KKtP2}}{}$ attacking his Royal flank with vigour, castling yourself on the other side) 10 $\frac{\text{KBQKt3}}{}$ (If you take 10 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{QB}}{\text{KBP} \times \text{B}}$ he has a good game, the doubled Pawn being no disadvantage thus posted. But if 10 $\frac{\text{QP1}}{\text{QB} \times \text{KB}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{QKt} \times \text{B}}{\text{KBP2 gd g}}$) 10 $\frac{}{\text{QB} \times \text{B}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{QRP} \times \text{B}}{\text{KB} \times \text{B bst}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{KBP} \times \text{B}}{\text{KBP2}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{QKKt3}}{\text{Cas KR}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{Cas KR}}{}$ ev (If 10 $\frac{}{\text{QB} \times \text{B}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{QKt} \times \text{B}}{\text{KBP2}}$ If 10 $\frac{}{\text{QB} \times \text{B}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{QB} \times \text{KB}}{\text{QRP} \times \text{B}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{QKt} \times \text{B}}{\text{KBP2}}$

Variation on Fourth Move of Second Player.

1 $\frac{\text{KP2}}{\text{KP2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{KBQB4}}{\text{KBQB4}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{QBP1}}{\text{QKKt4}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{QKB3}}{\text{KKtB3}}$ His 4th Move is weak, though advised by Allgaier. 5 $\frac{\text{KKtK2}}{\text{QKKt3}}$ (if 5 $\frac{}{\text{QKR5}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{KBQKt3}}$ [6 $\frac{}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{B+}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{QBQ2bg}}{}$ or else 7 $\frac{\text{KP1}}{\text{PQ6}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{KB} \times \text{QPbg}}{}$] 7 $\frac{\text{QP} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q} \times \text{KP}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{Q} \times \text{KB}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{KKtPbg}}{}$) 6 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ (If 6 $\frac{}{\text{KBQKt3}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{KKt} \times \text{P}}$ you castle with fine game) 7 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{B+}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{QBQ2}}{\text{B} \times \text{B+}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{QKt} \times \text{B}}{\text{QP1}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{KRP1}}{}$ you have Pawns well

Digitized by Google

fixed in the centre. At Move 7 you may also play 7 $\frac{KP1}{QP2\ bst}$

$\left(7\ \frac{}{KtK5}\quad 8\ \frac{KBQ3\ bg}{}\right)$ 8 $\frac{BKt5+\text{ (or Var)}}{QBQ2\ bst}$ 9 $\frac{B\times B+}{KKt\times B}$

10 $\frac{P\times P}{B+}$ 11 $\frac{QKtB3}{KKtQKt3}$ 12 $\frac{Cas}{B\times Kt}$ 13 $\frac{P\times B}{Cas}$ 14 $\frac{KtKB4}{QQB3}$

15 $\frac{QBR3}{KRK}$ 16 $\frac{KRK\ bg}{}$

Variation on your Eighth Move of last Mode of Play.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 3 $\frac{QBP1}{QKKt4}$ 4 $\frac{QKB3}{KKtB3}$ 5 $\frac{KKtK2}{QKKt3}$

6 $\frac{QP2}{P\times P}$ 7 $\frac{KP1}{QP2}$ 8 $\frac{KBQ3}{KKtK5}$ 9 $\frac{P\times P}{B+}$ 10 $\frac{QKtB3}{QBKt5}$

11 $\frac{KB\times Kt}{P\times KB}$ 12 $\frac{QKKt3}{QB\times KKt}$ 13 $\frac{Q\times Q}{RP\times Q}$ 14 $\frac{K\times B}{QKtB3}$

15 $\frac{QBK3}{B\times Kt}$ 16 $\frac{P\times B\ bg}{}$

OPENING BY M. PETROFF.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 3 $\frac{QBP1}{QKKt4}$ 4 $\frac{KKB}{}$ This move is invented by Petroff, and is extraordinarily ingenious.* Your aim is the establishment of your Pawns in the centre, and, if your adversary opposes that, to deeply compromise his Queen. Provided you can attain either one of these points, you have nothing to apprehend from having displaced King. But we shall above all call the attention of our readers to the extreme subtlety of first player's attacking moves. The most natural-looking retreat for second player's Queen being $\frac{}{QKKt3}$ we take that first.

TWENTY-FIRST OPENING.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 3 $\frac{QBP1}{QKKt4}$ 4 $\frac{KKB}{QKKt3}$ 5 $\frac{QP2}{P\times P}$ in our Twenty-second Opening we shall suppose him to retreat KB without taking P.

---

* This move is certainly a fine conception on the part of M. Petroff, and marks the hand of the master, and a great one too. I do not, however, find it equally sound as brilliant. Second player would obviously retreat Q, at once to K2, as shown further on by Jaenisch; and what have you then left to compensate for having displaced King?

Digitized by Google

(if 5 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{P}}{}$ 6 $\frac{\text{KBQ3}}{}$ and you win a Piece) 6 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q} \times \text{KP}}$ (if 6 $\frac{\text{KBKt3}}{}$ 7 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{\text{Q} \times \text{KP}}$ and we enter upon a Var presently to be broached, and if, as his best, 7 $\frac{}{\text{QP1}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{QKtB3}}{\text{KKtK2}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{KRP1}}{}$ your centre Pawns necessarily give you an advantage, despite your King's having moved. His Queen, too, is badly placed. If 6 $\frac{}{\text{KBK2}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{\text{Q} \times \text{KP}}$ and we enter upon matter presently to be examined, but if 7 $\frac{}{\text{QP1}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{QKtB3}}{}$ you will, as before, have centre Pawns, and his KB is shut up) 7 $\frac{\text{KKtB3 bst}}{\text{KBK2}}$ (He retreats here to defend KKt4 in case of the combination $\frac{\text{KB} \times \text{BP+}}{\text{K} \times \text{B}}$ $\frac{\text{KKtKt5}}{}$. For 7 $\frac{}{\text{KBKt3}}$ see Var. If 7 $\frac{}{\text{QP2}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{KBQ3}}{}$ you win Piece. If 7 $\frac{}{\text{KBQ3}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{KB} \times \text{BP+ bg}}{}$) 8 $\frac{\text{QKtB3}}{\text{QKKt5 bst}}$ (If 8 $\frac{}{\text{QQB3 or KKt3}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{KKtK5}}{}$ you win the exchange. If 8 $\frac{}{\text{QKB4}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{KKtK5}}{}$ *First*, if 9 $\frac{}{\text{KKtB3 or KKtR3}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{KKtP2}}{}$ you win a Piece. *Second*, if 9 $\frac{}{\text{QBP1}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{KKtP2}}{\text{QKB3}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{KB} \times \text{P+ bst}}{}$ [if 11 $\frac{\text{QKtK4 inf}}{\text{QKR5}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{KRP1}}{\text{QP2 bst}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{\text{QB} \times \text{KtP bg}}$] 11 $\frac{}{\text{KKB}}$ [if 11 $\frac{}{\text{KQ}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{QBKt5}}{\text{Q} \times \text{QB or QQ3}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{KB} \times \text{Kt bg}}{}$] 12 $\frac{\text{QKtK4}}{\text{QKR5}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{QKB3 bst}}{\text{KBKB3}}$ [13 $\frac{}{\text{KKtB3}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{QBKt5 w}}{}$] 14 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{KKt}}{\text{K or R} \times \text{B}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{QBKt5 w}}{}$] *Third*, if 9 $\frac{}{\text{QP1}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{KBP}}{\text{QBK3}}$ [10 $\frac{}{\text{QP1}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{QKt} \times \text{QP w}}{}$] 11 $\frac{\text{KB} \times \text{B}}{}$ you win exchange, *Fourth*, if 9 $\frac{}{\text{QP2}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{QKt} \times \text{P}}{\text{KBQ3}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{KBP w}}{}$ *Fifth and last*, if 9 $\frac{}{\text{QKtB3}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{KBP}}{\text{QKtR4}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{KKtP2}}{\text{QKB3}}$ [11 $\frac{}{\text{QKKt3}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{R w}}{}$] 12 $\frac{\text{KBQ5}}{\text{QBP1}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{QBKt5}}{\text{QKKt3}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{R}}{\text{Q} \times \text{QB}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{KB} \times \text{Kt w}}{}$) 9 $\frac{\text{KB} \times \text{P+}}{\text{KKB}}$ (if 9 $\frac{}{\text{KQ}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{KRP1}}{\text{QKB4}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{KKtK5}}{\text{QKtB3}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{KKtP2}}{\text{QKB3}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{QKtK4}}{\text{QKR5}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{KKtB3 wins Q}}{}$ And if at Move 11 $\frac{}{\text{KBQ3}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{KKtP2}}{\text{QKB3}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{QKtQ5}}{\text{QKR5}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{KKtB3 wins Q}}{}$ If at

Digitized by Google

Move 11 $\frac{}{\text{K R P 1 or 2}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{K B Kt 6}}{}$ or if 11 $\frac{}{\text{Q K B 3}}$ or 11 $\frac{}{\text{K Kt P 1}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{K B Kt 3}}{}$ and you win the exchange in each one of these four cases. If at

Move 11 $\frac{}{\text{Q P 1}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{K Kt P 2}}{\text{Q K B 3}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{Q Kt K 4}}{\text{Q K R 5}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{K Kt}}{\text{P} \times \text{Kt}}$ [14 $\frac{}{\text{R} \times \text{B}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{Q Q Kt 3}}{\text{K R K B}}$ 16 $\frac{\text{K Kt B 3}}{}$ you win exchange] 15 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P} +}{}$ if in reply 15 $\frac{}{\text{Q B Q 2}}$ 16 $\frac{\text{K B K 6}}{}$ or if 15 $\frac{}{\text{K K}}$ 16 $\frac{\text{Q Q 5}}{}$ in both cases you win) 10 $\frac{\text{K R P 1}}{\text{Q K B 4}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{K Kt K 5}}{\text{K B Q 3}}$ (if 11 $\frac{}{\text{K Kt B 3 or K Kt R 3}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{K Kt P 2}}{}$ you win piece. If 11 $\frac{}{\text{Q Kt B 3}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{K Kt P 2}}{\text{Q K B 3}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{Q Kt K 4}}{\text{Q K R 5}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{K Kt B 3}}{}$ winning Q. If 11 $\frac{}{\text{K R P 1 or 2}}$ or 11 $\frac{}{\text{K Kt P 1}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{K B Q Kt 3}}{}$ you win exchange. If 11 $\frac{}{\text{Q K B 3}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{K B Q Kt 3}}{\text{Q P 2}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{Q Kt} \times \text{Q P}}{}$ you win; and if instead 12 $\frac{}{\text{K Kt R 3}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{Q B} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{Kt P} \times \text{B}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{Q Kt Q 5}}{}$ you win; threatening both 15 $\frac{\text{Q Kt} \times \text{Q B P}}{}$ and 15 $\frac{\text{Q K B 3} +}{}$ If 11 $\frac{}{\text{Q P 1}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{K Kt P 2}}{\text{Q K B 3}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{Q Kt Q 5 bst}}{\text{Q K R 5}}$ [if 13 $\frac{\text{Q Kt K 4}}{\text{Q K R 5}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{K Kt B 3}}{\text{Q B} \times \text{P gd g}}$] 14 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{Kt bst}}{\text{P} \times \text{Kt}}$ [14 $\frac{}{\text{K} \times \text{B}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{K Kt B 3}}{\text{Q B} \times \text{P}}$ 16 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{Q}}{\text{B} \times \text{Q}}$ 17 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{B} + \text{w}}{}$ or if 14 $\frac{}{\text{R} \times \text{B}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{K Kt B 3}}{\text{Q B} \times \text{Kt P}}$ 16 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{Q}}{\text{B} \times \text{Q}}$ 17 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{Q B P w}}{}$] 15 $\frac{\text{Q Kt} \times \text{Q B P}}{\text{R} \times \text{B}}$ 16 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{Q R}}{\text{K B Q 3}}$ [16 $\frac{}{\text{Q Kt R 3}}$ or 16 $\frac{}{\text{K B Q}}$ 17 $\frac{\text{Q Q B 2 w}}{}$] 17 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{K B} \times \text{P}}$ 18 $\frac{\text{Q Q B 2}}{\text{Q Q}}$ 19 $\frac{\text{Q B Kt 5}}{\text{Q} \times \text{B}}$ [19 $\frac{}{\text{Q Q 2}}$ 20 $\frac{\text{Q R Q w}}{}$ 20 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{B} +}{\text{K K B 2}}$ 21 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{P} + \text{w}}{}$) 12 $\frac{\text{K Kt P 2}}{\text{Q K B 3}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{Q Kt K 4}}{\text{Q Q}}$ (if 13 $\frac{}{\text{Q K 2}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{Q B Kt 5}}{\text{K Kt B 3}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{P} \times \text{Kt it}}$ 16 $\frac{\text{B m}}{}$) 14 $\frac{\text{Q B Kt 5}}{\text{B K 2}}$ (if 14 $\frac{}{\text{K Kt K 2}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{Q K B 3}}{\text{K B} \times \text{Kt}}$ 16 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{B}}{}$ you win at least a piece) (if 14 $\frac{}{\text{K Kt B 3}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{K B Q Kt 3}}{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}$ 16 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{B}}{\text{K R P 1}}$ 17 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{P} \times \text{Q B}}$ 18 $\frac{\text{Q Q 5}}{}$ and mate or the loss of Q are inevitable; if 14 $\frac{}{\text{K Kt B 3}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{K B Q Kt 3}}{\text{Q K 2}}$ 16 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{K Kt}}{\text{Kt P} \times \text{K Kt}}$ 17 $\frac{\text{Q B R 6} +}{\text{K K}}$ 18 $\frac{\text{Kt K B 7}}{}$ you win exchange) 15 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{K Kt}}{\text{R} \times \text{B}}$ (if 15 $\frac{}{\text{K B} \times \text{B}}$ 16 $\frac{\text{K B Q Kt 3}}{}$ he must sacrifice Q P or lose the exchange; if 15 $\frac{}{\text{K} \times \text{K B}}$

Digitized by Google

16 $\frac{QQKt3+}{QP2}$ 17 $\frac{QB\times B}{}$ then 18 $\frac{Q\times P+ w}{}$) 16 $\frac{QKB3+}{KBB3}$ 17 $\frac{B\times B}{P\times B}$ 18 $\frac{QKt\times P w}{}$

Variation on Second Player's Seventh Move.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 3 $\frac{QBP1}{QKKt4}$ 4 $\frac{KKB}{QKKt3}$ 5 $\frac{QP2}{P\times P}$ 6 $\frac{P\times P}{Q\times KP}$ 7 $\frac{KKtB3}{KBQKt3}$ 8 $\frac{QKtB3}{}$ (It would be inferior play for you to take 8 $\frac{B\times P+}{KKB}$ 9 $\frac{QKtB3}{QKB4}$ ev; your situation remaining however more advantageous for attack) 8 $\frac{}{QK2}$ (If 8 $\frac{}{QQB3 \text{ or } QKKt3}$ 9 $\frac{KKtK5}{}$ you win exchange. If 8 $\frac{}{QKB4}$ 9 $\frac{KKtK5}{}$ He may answer here six ways: *First*, 9 $\frac{}{QP1}$ 10 $\frac{KKtP2 \text{ bst}}{QKB3}$ 11 $\frac{Kt\times KBP}{}$ and his best play is to let Rook go, for if 11 $\frac{}{Q\times QP}$ 12 $\frac{Q\times Q}{B\times Q}$ 13 $\frac{Kt\times R}{}$ you win Rook; and if at Move 11 $\frac{}{QP1}$ 12 $\frac{QKt\times QP}{Q\times Kt}$ [12 $\frac{}{Q\times QP}$ 13 $\frac{Q\times Q}{B\times Q}$ 14 $\frac{Kt\times QBP+w}{}$] 13 $\frac{QKt\times KB}{}$ he has uselessly sacrificed Pawn, and must still lose exchange. *Second*, 9 $\frac{}{QP2}$ 10 $\frac{KB\times P}{QBP1}$ 11 $\frac{KB\times BP+}{}$ you win Pawn. *Third*, 9 $\frac{}{QBP1}$ 10 $\frac{KKt\times KBP}{}$ and he loses exchange; since he cannot push QP2 without loss of Q by check of Kt. *Fourth*, 9 $\frac{}{KKtB3}$ 10 $\frac{KKtP2}{}$ and you win piece. *Fifth*, 9 $\frac{}{KKtK2}$ 10 $\frac{KKtP2}{QKB3}$ 11 $\frac{QKtK4}{QKR5}$ 12 $\frac{KRP1}{QP2 \text{ bst}}$ 13 $\frac{QBKt5}{QB\times P}$ 14 $\frac{KKt\times B}{QKR4}$ 15 $\frac{Kt+ \text{wins } Q}{}$ *Sixth*, 9 $\frac{}{QKtB3}$ 10 $\frac{KKtP2}{QKB3}$ 11 $\frac{QKtQ5}{}$ [if 11 $\frac{}{QQ \text{or } Q3}$ 12 $\frac{Kt\times KBP}{K\times Kt}$ 13 $\frac{QKt\times KB+}{}$ then $\frac{Kt\times QR}{}$] 11 $\frac{}{QKR5}$ 12 $\frac{Kt\times KBP}{}$ [if 12 $\frac{}{K\times Kt}$ 13 $\frac{Kt\times KB+}{}$] [if 12 $\frac{}{QKR6+}$ 13 $\frac{KKKt}{}$ you win exchange; and if 13 $\frac{}{QKtR4}$ 14 $\frac{KBKB}{QKR5}$ 15 $\frac{QBKt5w}{}$] 12 $\frac{}{QKtR4}$ 13 $\frac{QK2+}{}$ you still win exchange). (If 8 $\frac{}{QKKt5}$ 9 $\frac{KRP1 \text{ bst}}{}$ and if then 9 $\frac{}{QKB4}$ you manœuvre

Digitized by Google

as before shown, having a move in advance; but if 9 ——— 10 $\frac{\text{K Kt P 2}}{\text{Q Q R 4}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{Q B Q 2 w}}{}$) 9 $\frac{\text{Q Kt Q 5}}{\text{Q K 5}}$ (if 9 $\frac{\text{Q Q 3 or Q}}{}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Kt K 5}}{}$ you will win exchange If 9 $\frac{}{\text{Q K B}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{K Kt K 5}}{}$ To avoid the immediate loss of the exchange, we see but three moves he can here try: *First*, 10 $\frac{}{\text{K R P 1 or K R P 2}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{K B P}}{\text{K R R 2}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{Q Q 3}}{\text{K Kt P 1}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{Q K 4} +}{\text{K} \times \text{Kt}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{Q Kt} \times \text{K B} +}{}$ you win exchange, and if at 13 $\frac{}{\text{Kt K 2}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{Kt K B 6 mate}}{}$ *Second*, 10 $\frac{}{\text{K Kt B 3}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{K Kt} \times \text{K B P}}{\text{Kt} \times \text{Kt}}$ [if 11 $\frac{}{\text{K R Kt}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{Q K 2} +}{\text{K} \times \text{Kt}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{K B} +}{\text{Q P 2}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{P} +}{\text{K Kt} \times \text{B}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{Q K R 5} +}{}$ now if 15 $\frac{}{\text{K K 3}}$ 16 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{Kt} +}{}$ and if 15 $\frac{}{\text{K Kt P 1}}$ 16 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{Kt} +}{\text{Q B K 3}}$ 17 $\frac{\text{Q K B 3} + \&c}{}$ lastly, if 15 $\frac{}{\text{K K 2 or K B 3}}$ 16 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{Kt} + \&c}{}$] 12 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{K R Kt}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{Q K 2} +}{\text{Q K 2}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{Kt Q 6} +}{\text{P} \times \text{Kt}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{Q} +}{\text{K} \times \text{Q}}$ 16 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{R w}}{}$ *Third*, 10 $\frac{}{\text{K Kt K 2}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{K Kt} \times \text{K B P}}{\text{K R Kt}}$ [if 11 $\frac{}{\text{Kt} \times \text{Kt}}$ we re-enter last series of moves] 12 $\frac{\text{Q Kt} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{Q} \times \text{Q Kt}}$ [if 12 $\frac{}{\text{K} \times \text{Kt}}$ you mate in three moves] 13 $\frac{\text{Kt Q 6} +}{}$ you win exchange) 10 $\frac{\text{K Kt Kt 5}}{\text{Q} \times \text{Q P}}$ (if 10 $\frac{}{\text{Q K R 5}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{K Kt P 1}}{\text{Q} \times \text{Q P}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{Q}}{}$ we enter upon moves about to be examined, or if 11 $\frac{}{\text{Q K R 3}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{K Kt} \times \text{K B P}}{\text{Q K R 6} +}$ 13 $\frac{\text{K K Kt}}{}$ you win exchange. If 10 $\frac{}{\text{Q K Kt 3}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{K B P} +}{}$ winning exchange, threatening to win Q If 10 $\frac{}{\text{Q K B 4}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{K Kt P 2}}{\text{Q K Kt 3}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{Q B P} +}{}$) 11 $\frac{\text{Q K 2} + \text{bst}}{\text{K K B}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{Q B K 3}}{\text{Q K R 5}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{Q B} \times \text{B}}{\text{Q R P} \times \text{B}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{Q R K w}}{}$

TWENTY-SECOND OPENING.

1 $\frac{\text{K P 2}}{\text{K P 2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{K B Q B 4}}{\text{K B Q B 4}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{Q B P 1}}{\text{Q K Kt 4}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{K K B}}{\text{Q K Kt 3}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{Q P 2}}{\text{K B Q Kt 3}}$ (his best move is 5 $\frac{}{\text{K B K 2}}$ as in Var. If now 5 $\frac{}{\text{K B Q 3}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P bst}}{\text{K B} \times \text{P}}$ [6 $\frac{}{\text{Q} \times \text{K P}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{K B P} + \text{w}}{}$] 7 $\frac{\text{K B P 2}}{\text{K B Q 3}}$ [7 $\frac{}{\text{K B K B 3}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{K B P 1 w}}{}$] 8 $\frac{\text{Q K 2 bst}}{}$ [if

Digitized by Google

now 8 $\frac{\text{K Kt K2}}{}$ 9 $\frac{\text{K Kt B3 b g}}{}$ threatening to play K Kt R4] 8 $\frac{\text{K B Q B4}}{}$ 9 $\frac{\text{K Kt B3}}{\text{Q P1 or Q Kt B3}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{K B P1}}{\text{Q K R4}}$ [10 $\frac{}{\text{Q K B3}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{Q B Kt5 w}}{}$] 11 $\frac{\text{K R P1}}{\text{K Kt R3}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{K R K R2 b g}}{}$) 6 $\frac{\text{K Kt B3}}{\text{K B P1 bst}}$ (if 6 $\frac{}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q P1}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Q Kt B3}}{}$ with the advantage of centre Pawns, and if 7 $\frac{}{\text{Q} \times \text{K P}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Q Kt B3}}{}$ carrying on the attack in the mode already developed. If 6 $\frac{}{\text{Q Kt B3}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q} \times \text{K P}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{K B} \times \text{K B P} + \text{bg}}{}$ If 6 $\frac{}{\text{Q P1}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ [7 $\frac{}{\text{Q} \times \text{K P}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{K B} \times \text{P} +}{\text{K K B}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{Q P b g}}{}$] 8 $\frac{\text{K Kt} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q} \times \text{K P}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{K B} \times \text{P} +}{\text{K K2}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{K B} \times \text{Kt b g}}{}$ If 6 $\frac{}{\text{Q} \times \text{K P}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{K P bst}}{}$ [you may play 7 $\frac{\text{K B} \times \text{P} +}{\text{K K B}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{K Kt}}{\text{K} \times \text{B}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{K P b g}}{}$] If he now play *first* 7 $\frac{\text{Q Kt B3}}{\text{Q P1}}$ or $\frac{}{\text{Q B P1}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{K B P}}{}$ you win the exchange; *second*, if 7 $\frac{}{\text{Q P2}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Q Kt Q2}}{\text{Q K B4}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{K B} \times \text{Q P w}}{}$ *third*, if 7 $\frac{}{\text{K Kt B3}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Q Kt Q2}}{\text{Q K B5}}$ [8 $\frac{}{\text{Q K B4}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{K Kt P2}}{\text{Q K B5}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Q Kt Kt3}}{\text{Q K5}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{K B P1 w}}{}$ or if 9 $\frac{}{\text{Q K Kt4}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Q Kt K B3 w}}{}$] [8 $\frac{}{\text{Q K R5}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Q Kt B3}}{\text{Q K5}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Q Kt Kt5}}{\text{Q K R5}}$ for if $\frac{}{\text{Q K B4}}$ you win by $\frac{\text{K B Q3}}{}$ 11 $\frac{\text{K Kt P1}}{\text{Q K R3}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{K Kt} \times \text{K B P w}}{}$] 9 $\frac{\text{K Kt P1}}{\text{Q K R3 bst}}$ [if 9 $\frac{}{\text{Q K B4}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{K Kt P1 as before}}{}$ if 9 $\frac{}{\text{Q K Kt4}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Q Kt Kt3}}{\text{Q K B4}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{K Kt P1}}{\text{Q K5}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{K B P1 w}}{}$] 10 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{K B P}}{\text{Q K R6} +}$ 11 $\frac{\text{K K Kt}}{\text{K R K Kt}}$ [if 11 $\frac{}{\text{K R K B}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{Q K2} +\text{ w}}{}$] 12 $\frac{\text{Kt K Kt5 w}}{}$) 7 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q} \times \text{K P}}$ (if 7 $\frac{}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{R} \times \text{B}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Q Q5 w}}{}$) (if at Move 7 $\frac{\text{Q K2}}{\text{Q P1}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{K R P1}}{\text{K R P2}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{K Kt R4}}{\text{Q K R2}}$ the game is tolerably even, in spite of the bad position of his Q) 8 $\frac{\text{Q Kt Q2}}{\text{Q K B4}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Q K2}}{\text{K Kt K2}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{Q K4}}{}$ you have the preferable game.* Your last move should be the same, if he retake with Q in lieu of with P.

---

* It appears to me that second player now moves 11 $\frac{}{\text{Q P2}}$ and comes out with rather the better position.

Digitized by Google

Variation on Fifth Move of Second Player.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 3 $\frac{QBP1}{QKKt4}$ 4 $\frac{KKB}{QKKt3}$ 5 $\frac{QP2}{KBK2\ bst}$ 6 $\frac{KKtB3}{QP1}$ (if 6 $\frac{}{QKtB3}$ you may now advantageously move $\frac{QP1}{}$ or $\frac{QP\times P}{}$ the analysis of which occurs in next opening. But if 7 $\frac{Kt\times KP}{Kt\times Kt}$ 8 $\frac{P\times Kt}{Q\times KP}$ 9 $\frac{QK2}{}$ [this is much better than QQ4 as we originally propounded; as instead of changing Queens, he would reply with QQB7] 9 $\frac{}{Q\times Q+}$ 10 $\frac{K\times Q\ gd\ g}{}$ If 6 $\frac{}{KBP1}$ 7 $\frac{P\times P}{Q\times KP}$ [7 $\frac{}{KBP\times P}$ 8 $\frac{B\times Kt}{R\times B}$ 9 $\frac{QQ5\ bg}{}$] 8 $\frac{KBQ5}{QKB4}$ [8 $\frac{}{QKKt3}$ 9 $\frac{KtKR4\ w}{}$] 9 $\frac{QQKt3}{QQ6+}$ 10 $\frac{KK}{KKB}$ 11 $\frac{B\times QKtP\ w}{}$) (if 6 $\frac{}{KP\times P}$ 7 $\frac{P\times P}{QKtB3}$ 8 $\frac{QKtB3}{}$ you have the advantage of position by reason of your Centre Pawns, for if 7 $\frac{}{Q\times KP}$ 8 $\frac{QKtB3}{}$ and continue as in foregoing début. It were less to your advantage to play 6 $\frac{}{KP\times P}$ 7 $\frac{KtK5}{Q\times KP}$ 8 $\frac{Kt\times KBP}{P\times QBP}$ 9 $\frac{KBQ3}{P\times QKtP}$ 10 $\frac{QB\times P}{QK3}$ 11 $\frac{Kt\times R}{KBB3\ bg}$ If 6 $\frac{}{Q\times KP}$ 7 $\frac{Kt\times P}{}$ you acquire great advantage, the following moves being similar to those in preceding Var) 7 $\frac{P\times P}{Q\times KP}$ (if 7 $\frac{}{P\times P}$ 8 $\frac{Kt\times P}{Q\times KP}$ 9 $\frac{KB\times KBP+\ w}{}$) 8 $\frac{QQKt3}{QKKt3}$ (if 8 $\frac{}{QKB4}$ 9 $\frac{KtQ4}{Q\times KP}$ [9 $\frac{}{QKKt3}$ 10 $\frac{KtQKt5}{QKtR3}$ 10 $\frac{QBKB4\ bg}{}$] 10 $\frac{B\times BP+}{KKB}$ 11 $\frac{B\times Kt}{R\times B}$ 12 $\frac{QKtQ2\ gd\ g}{}$) 9 $\frac{QBKB4}{QKtQ2}$ 10 $\frac{P\times P}{KB\times P}$ (you could play same move also against 9 $\frac{}{QKtB3}$) 11 $\frac{B\times B}{P\times B}$ 12 $\frac{QKtQ2}{QKtB4}$ 13 $\frac{QR+}{KKtK2}$ 14 $\frac{QQ}{}$ threatening to drive away QKt and then to plant your QKt on K4, with gd g.

Digitized by Google

Variation on your Sixth Move.

1 KP2/KP2 2 KBQB4/KBQB4 3 QBP1/QKKt4 4 KKB/QKKt3 5 QP2/KBK2
6 KBP2/— This Gambit appears safe for you. (if 6 —/KP×KBP
7 QKB3 b g/— If 6 —/Q×KP 7 KBP×P/QP1 [7 —/KBP1 8 QQKt3/—]
8 QKtQ2/QKB4+ 9 QKtKB3/QKtQ2 10 QK2/— your game is good enough)
6 —/if KP×QP 7 Q×P/QKtB3 8 QK3/QP1 (8 —/KKtB3 9 KBQ3/—)
9 KKtB3/QBQ2 10 QKtP2 gd g/—

TWENTY-THIRD OPENING.

1 KP2/KP2 2 KBQB4/KBQB4 3 QBP1/QKKt4 4 KKB/QKKt3 5 KKtB3/QKtB3 bst
(If 5 —/QP1 6 QP2/P×P 7 P×P/— you have good centre Pawns, or else if
6 —/BQKt3 7 Q.P×P/— as before. If 5 —/KKtB3 6 QP2 bst/— and you will either
win a P, or get good central Pawns. If 5 —/KBQKt3 or K2 6 Kt×KP/Q×KP
7 KB×BP+ w/— If 5 —/Q×KP 6 QP2/— [6 —/KP×P 7 P×P bg/—]
[6 —/KBK2 or QKt3 7 Kt×P/— you re-enter passed Variations]
6 —/KBQ3 if 7 KKtKt5/QQB3 8 B×P+/KQ [if 8 —/KK2 9 QK2 &c/—
and if 8 —/KKB 9 B×KKt/R×B 10 Kt×KRP+ w/—] 9 B×Kt/R×B 10 KtKB7+/—
and then 11 Kt×KP&c/— If 5 —/KBP1 6 QP2/BQKt3 7 P×P/Q×KP you
re-enter a past Variation in your favour. If 5 —/KBQ3 6 QP2/QKtB3 7 Kt×KP/QKt×Kt
[7 —/B×Kt 8 KBP2 bst/—] 8 P×Kt/B×P 9 KBP2/KBQ3 10 KBQ3 bg/—
If 5 —/KBQ3 6 QP2/KBP1 [or 5 —/KBP1 6 QP2/KBQ3] then 7 QKtQ2/KRP2

Digitized by Google

[if 7 $\frac{QP\times P}{KBP\times P}$] [if 7 $\frac{}{KQ}$ 8 $\frac{KKtR4}{QK}$ 9 $\frac{KtKB5}{KBKB}$ 10 $\frac{QQKt3\,bg}{}$]

8 $\frac{KKtR4}{QKR2}$ [8 $\frac{}{QKKt5}$ 9 $\frac{Q\times Q}{RP\times Q}$ 10 $\frac{KtKt6}{RR3}$ 11 $\frac{Kt\times KPw}{}$]

9 $\frac{KtKB5}{KBKB}$ 10 $\frac{QQKt3}{QP1}$ 11 $\frac{KBK6bg}{}$) 6 $\frac{QP2}{KBK2}$ 7 $\frac{Kt\times P\,bst}{}$

(If 7 $\frac{P\times P}{Q\times KP}$ 8 $\frac{QKtQ2}{QKB4}$ 9 $\frac{QK2}{KBP1}$ If 7 $\frac{QK2}{QP1}$ 8 $\frac{KRP1}{KKtB3}$ 9 $\frac{QKtQ2}{Cas}$

Now if 10 $\frac{KKtR4}{QKR4}$ 11 $\frac{QKtKB3}{KP\times QP}$ 12 $\frac{KKtP2}{K\,Kt\times KtPw}$ If 7 $\frac{QP1}{QKtQ}$

8 $\frac{KKt\times P}{Q\times KP}$ 9 $\frac{QK2}{Q\times Q+}$ 10 $\frac{K\times Q}{QP1}$ 11 $\frac{KKtQ3}{}$) 7 $\frac{}{Kt\times Kt}$ 8 $\frac{P\times Kt}{Q\times KP}$

9 $\frac{QK2}{}$ (we originally proposed here to play $\frac{QQ4}{}$ but find that in that case he would not take Queen, but would play QQB7)

9 $\frac{}{Q\times Q+}$ 10 $\frac{K\times Q\,gdg}{}$ (Founding his opinion upon the preceding trains of play, Jaenisch pronounced the move 5 $\frac{KKtB3}{}$ as equal in merit to 5 $\frac{QP2}{}$ The following note, however, in the Appendix to his work recants the judgment given, and decides in favour of 5 $\frac{QP2}{}$ On this occasion, I have deemed it right nevertheless to retain all Jaenisch's Variations. — G. W.)

The attack 5 $\frac{KKtB3}{}$ instead of 5 $\frac{QP2}{}$ appears to us after all to be weak. He answers thus 5 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKtB3}$ 6 $\frac{QP2}{KBQ3}$ * (Or the position might equally form thus 5 $\frac{KKtB3}{BQ3}$ 6 $\frac{QP2}{QKtB3}$) This move appears to us to equalise the game, and we now recognise the incorrectness of certain of our Variations at this point. If you play 7 $\frac{P\times P}{KB\times P\,bst}$ and if 7 $\frac{Kt\times KP}{B\times Kt}$ 8 $\frac{P\times B}{Kt\times P}$ if lastly 7 $\frac{QK2}{KKtK2}$

8 $\frac{Kt\times P}{B\times Kt}$ 9 $\frac{P\times B}{Kt\times P}$ 10 $\frac{KBP2}{Kt\times B}$ 11 $\frac{Q\times Kt}{KtQB3\,ev}$

---

* Notwithstanding the great weight of Jaenisch's opinion, I can never believe that the legitimate fruits of the Bishop thus posted should be aught but a lost game; even allowing for your King being displaced.

Digitized by Google

We may here remark that 1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 3 $\frac{QBP1}{QKKt4}$ 4 $\frac{KKB}{QKR5\text{ wk}}$ (if 4 $\frac{}{QQ}$ 5 $\frac{QP2\text{ bg}}{}$) 5 $\frac{QP2\text{ bst}}{KBK2\text{ or }QKt3}$ (5 $\frac{}{P\times P}$ 6 $\frac{KKtB3}{}$ and whether his Q take K P or no, you take $\frac{QBP\times QP}{}$ and obtain fine centre Pawns; or may resolve the position into one of those in Opening XXI. You may equally play 6 $\frac{QBP\times QP}{}$ before $\frac{KKtB3}{}$) 6 $\frac{KKtB3}{}$ as we have arrived at already many times before in this analysis. If, now 6 $\frac{}{QKKt5}$ 7 $\frac{KRP1}{}$

TWENTY-FOURTH OPENING.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 3 $\frac{QBP1}{QKKt4}$ 4 $\frac{KKB}{QKB3}$ This retreat equally exposes him to certain strong and insidious modes of attack. 5 $\frac{KKtB3}{}$ (To prevent now the establishment of your Pawns in the centre he has but two moves 5 $\frac{}{QP1}$ and 5 $\frac{}{QKtB3}$ for the latter of which see Var) 5 $\frac{}{QP1}$ 6 $\frac{QP2}{KBQKt3}$ (if 6 $\frac{}{P\times P}$ 7 $\frac{P\times P}{BQKt3}$ 8 $\frac{KRP1}{}$ you have the advantage, notwithstanding the displacement of your King. The liberating your K R will only cost you a couple of moves) 7 $\frac{P\times P}{P\times P}$ 8 $\frac{QQ5}{QKtQ2}$ (if 8 $\frac{}{QKtB3}$ 9 $\frac{QBKt5}{QK3}$ [9 $\frac{}{QKKt3}$ 10 $\frac{Kt\times P}{}$ you win a Pawn] 10 $\frac{Q\times Q}{B\times Q}$ 11 $\frac{B\times B}{P\times B}$ 12 $\frac{QKtQ2}{}$ He remains with an isolated doubled P) 9 $\frac{QBKt5}{QKKt3}$ 10 $\frac{Kt\times P}{Q\times B}$ 11 $\frac{Q\times KBP+}{KQ}$ 12 $\frac{Q\times Kt+}{R\times Q}$ 13 $\frac{KtKB7+}{KK2}$ 14 $\frac{Kt\times Q}{KRKB}$ 15 $\frac{KtKB3}{}$ you have two Pawns surplus.

Digitized by Google

Variation on Second Player's Fifth Move.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 3 $\frac{QBP1}{QKKt4}$ 4 $\frac{KKB}{QKB3}$ 5 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKtB3\ bst}$ 6 $\frac{QP2}{KP\times P\ bst}$ (if 6 $\frac{}{KBKt3}$ 7 $\frac{P\times P}{Kt\times P}$ 8 $\frac{QBKt5}{QQ3}$ [8 $\frac{}{QKKt3}$ 9 $\frac{KKt\times Kt}{Q\times B}$ 10 $\frac{Kt\times KBP}{QQB4}$ 11 $\frac{QK2\,bg}{}$] 9 $\frac{Q\times Q}{P\times Q}$ 10 $\frac{QKtQ2\,bst\,g}{}$) 7 $\frac{KP1}{QKKt3\,wk}$ (If 7 $\frac{}{QK2}$ 8 $\frac{P\times P}{KBQKt3}$ his game is grievously crowded. His best move we hold to be here 7 $\frac{}{QKB4}$ 8 $\frac{P\times P}{BQKt3}$ 9 $\frac{QKtB3}{QP1}$ [to avert your winning Q by playing $\frac{KKtR4}{}$] you may now, it is true, attempt several distinct methods of attack; but your K R being out of play, he will in every case be able to defend his game) 8 $\frac{KKtKt5}{KKtR3}$ (8 $\frac{}{QKtQ}$ were better, but his game were still crowded. If 7 or 8 $\frac{}{QKt\times P}$ 9 $\frac{QK2\,bg}{}$) 9 $\frac{KBQ3}{KBP2}$ 10 $\frac{P\times P\ en\ p}{Q\times P}$ 11 $\frac{QKR5+}{KKtP1}$ (If he retires K 12 $\frac{KtK4}{QK4}$ 13 $\frac{Q\times Q}{Kt\times Q}$ 14 $\frac{Kt\times B}{}$ you still win the piece) 12 $\frac{Q\times Kt}{P\times QBP}$ 13 $\frac{KKtK4}{QQ5}$ 14 $\frac{QK3}{P\times P}$ 15 $\frac{QB\times P}{Q\times QB}$ 16 $\frac{Kt\times B+}{}$ and then wins by 17 $\frac{KtQKt3}{}$

BEST DEFENCE OF M. PETROFF'S OPENING.

Although in the preceding Variations we have already seen the possibility of parrying the attack 4 $\frac{KKB}{}$ still the following will be found to be the best defence against this ingenious Opening. 1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 3 $\frac{QBP1}{QKKt4}$ 4 $\frac{KKB}{QK2}$* 5 $\frac{QP2}{KBQKt3}$ 6 $\frac{KKtB3}{QBP1\,bg}$ for

* The intrinsic weakness of M. Petroff's move, despite its real merits of novelty and ingenuity, are now clearly visible, on glancing over the board at the relative positions. Suppose the début 1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 3 $\frac{QBP1}{QK2}$

Digitized by Google

you have fruitlessly displaced K and shut up KR. If now 7 $\frac{\text{QBKt}5}{\text{KBP1 \&c}}$ The same defence may shape itself thus 4 $\frac{}{\text{KBQKt3}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{QP2 or KKtB3}}{\text{QK2}}$

TWENTY-FIFTH OPENING.

1 $\frac{\text{KP2}}{\text{KP2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{KBQB4}}{\text{KBQB4}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{QBP1}}{\text{QK2}}$ This move is generally played to prevent your fixing Pawns in centre. It is doubtless good, but less vigorous than 3 $\frac{}{\text{QKKt4}}$ which constitutes a species of counter attack. Here, second player places himself too exclusively on the defensive, and a vast field of attack is opened up to first player. It is, moreover, essential to observe that this, the French defence, may yet be shaped differently, retiring B 3 $\frac{}{\text{KBQKt3}}$ and playing forth Q at a future stage. (See Var. on Move 3) 4 $\frac{\text{KKtB3 bst}}{\text{QP1 bst}}$ (If he move 4 $\frac{}{\text{QKtB3}}$ he forms the Giuoco Piano, which is more in your favour. Philidor plays here 4 $\frac{}{\text{KKtB3}}$ but this move should be decidedly rejected, as not being able to sustain the shock of the Centre Gambit. See further on) 5 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{}$ (At the first glance, it would seem useful to move 5 $\frac{\text{KRP1}}{}$ to arrest the attack of adverse QB. But this were only a loss of time, since your adversary, as will be seen, can do more by playing QBK3 than QBKt5. See, besides, Variation. The Centre Gambit 5 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{}$ is hazardous, and will occupy our next opening) 5 $\frac{}{\text{QBKt5}}$ This seems vigorous, but we hold that its fruits are unfavourable to him. (It appears to us absolutely necessary to oppose B on K3 before you push $\frac{\text{QP2}}{}$ For if 5 $\frac{}{\text{KKtB3}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{KBQKt3}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{QRP2}}{\text{QRP2}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{QKtR3}}{\text{QBK3}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{KRK}}{\text{QB} \times \text{B}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{B}}{\text{QKtQ2}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{QKtP1 bst}}{\text{KRP1}}$ [11 $\frac{}{\text{Cas}}$

---

his third move here is an orthodox line of defence, even when your King has not moved; how superior, then, must be his position, similarly placed, against M. Petroff's move; first player having *less* the ordinary advantage of the Bishop's Opening, by King's being unable to castle, and K R consequently shut up.

Digitized by Google

12 $\frac{\text{QBR3}}{\text{---}}$] 12 $\frac{\text{QBR3}}{\text{QK3}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{QQB2 gd g}}{\text{---}}$ Having passed Move 5, then, the opposition of QB is no longer advantageous. The sole good defence of this opening is the following: 5 $\frac{\text{---}}{\text{QBK3}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{QQKt3 bst}}{\text{KBQKt3}}$ [6 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{B}}{\text{Q} \times \text{B bst}}$ for if 6 $\frac{\text{---}}{\text{KBP} \times \text{B}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{KP} \times \text{P}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{QBP} \times \text{P}}{\text{KBQKt3}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{KKtKt5}}{\text{---}}$ menacing $\frac{\text{QQKt3 bg}}{\text{---}}$] 7 $\frac{\text{KB} \times \text{B}}{\text{Q} \times \text{B}}$ [7 $\frac{\text{---}}{\text{KBP} \times \text{B}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{KP} \times \text{P}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{QBP} \times \text{P}}{\text{KRP1}}$ this is weak for him, and when he comes out $\frac{\text{---}}{\text{KKtB3}}$ you may play $\frac{\text{KKtR4}}{\text{---}}$] 8 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{Q}}{\text{P} \times \text{Q}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{KKtKt5}}{\text{KK2}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{QP1}}{\text{KKtB3 ev}}$ or 9 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{QBP} \times \text{P}}{\text{KKtB3}}$ ev. Against 5 $\frac{\text{---}}{\text{QBK3}}$ you may also play, to mislead him, 6 $\frac{\text{KBK2}}{\text{---}}$ and he would be wrong to play 6 $\frac{\text{---}}{\text{KKtB3}}$ because of 7 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{KBKt3}}$ [if 7 $\frac{\text{---}}{\text{KP} \times \text{P}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{---}}$ you have front Centre Pawns] 8 $\frac{\text{QP} \times \text{P}}{\text{QP} \times \text{P}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{KKt} \times \text{KP}}{\text{QB} \times \text{RP}}$ [if 8 or 9 $\frac{\text{---}}{\text{Kt} \times \text{KP}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{QQR4} + \text{w}}{\text{---}}$] 10 $\frac{\text{R} \times \text{B}}{\text{Q} \times \text{Kt}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{KBQ3}}{\text{---}}$ and your QR is well in play. But his correct move was 6 $\frac{\text{KBK2}}{\text{QBKKt5}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{KBKt3}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{QRP2}}{\text{QRP2}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{if QKtR3}}{\text{KKtB3}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{KBQ3}}{\text{Cas K R}}$ [if 10 $\frac{\text{QBKKt5}}{\text{KRP1}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{QBR4}}{\text{KKtP2 bg}}$] 11 $\frac{\text{QKtB2}}{\text{QKtB3 gd g}}$) 6 $\frac{\text{QP2 bst}}{\text{KBQKt3}}$ (6 $\frac{\text{QP1}}{\text{---}}$ as played by most authors is very weak. It is necessary to observe that he must never take QP with KP when you push QP2, for in so doing he plants your Pawns in the centre, and disengages your QKt If 6 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{B} \times \text{KKt}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{KKtP} \times \text{B}}{\text{KBQKt3}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{QRP2}}{\text{QRP2}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{PKB4}}{\text{QKtQ2}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{QKtR3}}{\text{KKtB3}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{KRK}}{\text{QRQ}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{QKtQB2}}{\text{Cas K R}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{QKB3}}{\text{KRP1}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{QKtP1}}{\text{---}}$ in order to follow it with $\frac{\text{QBR3}}{\text{---}}$ and his position is cruelly cramped. He gains therefore nothing by doubling your P, and for that reason 5 $\frac{\text{---}}{\text{QBKt5}}$ is useless) 7 $\frac{\text{QRP2 bst}}{\text{QRP2}}$ (These Pawns, each advanced 2 sq. are both well played. If 7 $\frac{\text{QBKt5}}{\text{KKtB3}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{QRP2}}{\text{QRP2}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{QKtR3}}{\text{QB} \times \text{Kt}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{B}}{\text{KRP1}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{Q} \times \text{B bg}}$ or 11 $\frac{\text{BKR4}}{\text{KKtP2 gd g}}$ Your move, therefore, 7 $\frac{\text{QBKt5}}{\text{---}}$ is not advantageous here) 8 $\frac{\text{QKtR3}}{\text{KKtB3}}$

Digitized by Google

(if 8 $\frac{}{B \times Kt}$ 9 $\frac{P \times B}{K\,Kt\,B3}$ [9 $\frac{}{K\,Kt\,P2}$ 10 $\frac{Q\,Kt\,B2}{K\,R\,P2}$ 11 $\frac{Q\,Kt\,K3\,b\,g}{}$]

10 $\frac{P\,K\,B4}{Q\,Kt\,Q2}$ [10 $\frac{}{Q\,Kt\,B3}$ 11 $\frac{K\,B\,Kt5}{}$ if 10 $\frac{}{Kt \times K\,P}$ 11 $\frac{K\,R\,K}{}$]

11 $\frac{K\,R\,K}{}$ we re-enter a previous Var) 9 $\frac{K\,R\,K}{Q\,Kt\,Q2}$ (if 9 $\frac{}{B \times Kt}$

10 $\frac{P \times B}{K\,Kt\,R4}$ 11 $\frac{P\,K\,B4}{Kt \times P}$ 12 $\frac{Q\,B \times Kt}{P \times B}$ 13 $\frac{Q\,K\,Kt4\,b\,g}{}$) 10 $\frac{Q\,Kt\,B2}{K\,R\,P1}$

Preparing to castle with K R (if 10 $\frac{}{Cas}$ 11 $\frac{Q\,B\,Kt5}{K\,R\,P1}$ 12 $\frac{B\,K\,R4}{}$ your B is very strong, for 12 $\frac{}{K\,Kt\,P2}$ is hazardous. In this Opening he can never well castle with Q R, as your Queen's wing would debouch directly upon his King's position) 11 $\frac{Q\,Kt\,P1}{}$ This move, which has not been noticed before by authors, appears to us to decide the Opening in your favour. Q R 3 being the sq your Q B should try to occupy. The weak point of second player, which is the exposed position of his Q, is thus at once uncovered to attack. 11 $\frac{}{Cas\,K\,R}$ 12 $\frac{Q\,B\,R3}{}$ You now threaten to disengage your K Kt by moving $\frac{Q\,Q3}{}$ To parry this attack he seems to have no better moves than these; 12 $\frac{}{K\,K\,R}$

13 $\frac{Q\,Q3}{B \times Kt}$ 14 $\frac{Q \times B}{K\,Kt\,R2}$ 15 $\frac{Q\,Q3}{Q\,K\,Kt4}$ 16 $\frac{Kt\,K3}{}$ Your Kt gains a splendid entry into his game, and the superiority of your position is incontestable.

Variation on your Fifth Move.

1 $\frac{K\,P2}{K\,P2}$ 2 $\frac{K\,B\,Q\,B4}{K\,B\,Q\,B4}$ 3 $\frac{Q\,B\,P1}{Q\,K2}$ 4 $\frac{K\,Kt\,B3}{Q\,P1}$ 5 $\frac{K\,R\,P1}{K\,R\,P1\,wk}$

(His correct move is 5 $\frac{}{Q\,B\,K3}$ if then 6 $\frac{B \times B}{Q \times B\,bst}$ 7 $\frac{K\,Kt\,Kt5}{Q\,K\,Kt3}$ If

6 $\frac{Q\,Q\,Kt3}{B\,Q\,Kt3}$ 7 $\frac{K\,B \times B}{Q \times B}$ 8 $\frac{Q \times Q}{P \times Q}$ 9 $\frac{K\,Kt\,Kt5}{K\,K2\,gd\,g}$ You have another attack, and that of a very insidious character 6 $\frac{K\,B\,K2}{}$ he should not in that case play 6 $\frac{}{K\,Kt\,B3}$ on account of 7 $\frac{Q\,P2}{B\,Q\,Kt3}$ 8 $\frac{Q\,B\,Kt5}{}$ [8 $\frac{Q\,P \times P}{Q\,P \times P}$

$\frac{Kt \times K\,P}{B \times K\,R\,P}$ 10 $\frac{R \times B}{Q \times Kt\,gd\,g}$ and if 10 $\frac{Kt \times K\,B\,P\,bd}{B \times K\,Kt\,P\,or\,Q \times Kt}$] your Q B

Digitized by Google

will, thus posted, much cramp his operations, for if 8 $\frac{}{\text{K R P 1}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{B K R 4}}{\text{K Kt P 2}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Q P} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q P} \times \text{P}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{B K Kt 3 b g}}{}$ he cannot now take $\frac{}{\text{Kt} \times \text{K P}}$ on account of $\frac{}{\text{Q Q R 4 +}}$ If 6 $\frac{\text{K B K 2}}{\text{K R P 1}}$ or 6 $\frac{\text{K B K 2}}{\text{Q B Q 2}}$ would lead to situations about to arise from a different order of moves, and not in his favour. 6 $\frac{\text{K B K 2}}{\text{K B P 2}}$ would not be very good for him; for then 7 $\frac{\text{Q P 2}}{\text{K P} \times \text{P}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{K B P bst}}{\text{Q B} \times \text{P}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Q B P} \times \text{P}}{\text{B Kt 5 +}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Q Kt B 3}}{\text{B} \times \text{Kt +}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{B}}{\text{K Kt B 3}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{Cas K R gd g}}{\text{Cas K R}}$ His best defence is, finally, 6 $\frac{\text{K B K 2}}{\text{Q P 1}}$ if now 7 $\frac{\text{Q P 2}}{\text{K P} \times \text{P}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Q B P} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q P} \times \text{K P}}$ [8 $\frac{\text{K P} \times \text{Q P}}{\text{Q B} \times \text{Q P}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Q B P} \times \text{Q P}}{\text{Q B} \times \text{Kt b g}}$] 9 $\frac{\text{K Kt Kt 5}}{\text{B Q Kt 5 + b g}}$ [9 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{K B}}{\text{P} \times \text{Kt b g}}$] And if 7 $\frac{\text{K P} \times \text{Q P}}{\text{Q B} \times \text{Q P}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{\text{K Kt B 3 bst}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Q P 2}}{\text{K P} \times \text{P}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Q B P} \times \text{P}}{\text{B Q Kt 3}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{K R K}}{\text{Cas K R}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{if K B Q B 4}}{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}$ and if 12 $\frac{\text{K B Q R 6}}{\text{Q Q 3 gd g}}$) 6 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{\text{Q B K 3}}$ (if 6 $\frac{}{\text{K Kt B 3}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Q P 2}}{\text{B Q Kt 3}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Q R P 2}}{\text{Q R P 2}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Q Kt R 3}}{\text{Q Kt B 3}}$ [if 9 $\frac{}{\text{Q B K 3}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{K R K}}{}$ you will have gained "a time," for if 10 $\frac{}{\text{B} \times \text{K B}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{Q Kt} \times \text{B}}{\text{Q Kt Q 2}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{Q Kt P 1}}{}$ then $\frac{\text{Q B R 3 gd g}}{}$] 10 $\frac{\text{K R K}}{\text{Cas}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{Q Kt B 2}}{\text{Q B Q 2}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{Q Kt P 1}}{}$ and 13 $\frac{\text{Q B R 3}}{}$ play as he may, his situation relative to yours is extremely embarrassed) 7 $\frac{\text{K B K 2 bst}}{}$ (7 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{B}}{}$ or 7 $\frac{\text{B Q Kt 3}}{}$ or 7 $\frac{\text{Q Q Kt 3}}{}$ would equalise the game) 7 $\frac{}{\text{Q B Q 2}}$ (if 7 $\frac{}{\text{K Kt B 3}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Q P 2}}{\text{B Q Kt 3}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{K P bst}}{}$ [9 $\frac{\text{K B Q 3 wk}}{\text{Cas}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Q P} \times \text{K P}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{P}}{\text{B} \times \text{K R P}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{K B P}}{\text{B K Kt 5 b g}}$] 9 $\frac{}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{P}}{\text{B} \times \text{Q R P}}$ [if 9 or 10 $\frac{}{\text{K Kt} \times \text{K P}}$ 10 or 11 $\frac{\text{Q Q R 4 +}}{}$] 11 $\frac{\text{Q R} \times \text{B}}{\text{Q} \times \text{Kt}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{K B Q 3 b g}}{}$ and if 10 $\frac{}{\text{Q B} \times \text{K R P}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{K B P}}{\text{K} \times \text{Kt bst}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{B}}{\text{Q or Kt} \times \text{K P}}$ your game is the preferable. If 7 $\frac{}{\text{K B P 2}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Q P 2}}{\text{P} \times \text{K P}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{K B}}{\text{P} \times \text{Kt}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{K B} \times \text{P b g}}{}$ And if 7 $\frac{}{\text{Q P 1}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{K P} \times \text{Q P}}{\text{Q B} \times \text{P}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Q P 2}}{\text{K P} \times \text{P}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Q B P} \times \text{P}}{\text{K B Kt 3}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{K R K b g}}{}$) 8 $\frac{\text{Q P 2}}{\text{B Q Kt 3}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{K B Q 3}}{\text{K Kt B 3}}$

Digitized by Google

10 $\frac{QRP2}{QRP2}$ 11 $\frac{QKtR3}{QKtB3}$ 12 $\frac{QKtB2}{Cas\,KR}$ 13 $\frac{QKtP1\,bst}{KRK}$ 14 $\frac{QBR3}{QQ}$ 15 $\frac{KRK\,bg}{}$

Variation on Second Player's Fourth Move.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 3 $\frac{QBP1}{QK2}$ 4 $\frac{KKtB3}{KKtB3}$ 5 $\frac{QP2}{}$ This is your best move, and the attack is here irresistible. 5 $\frac{P\times P}{}$ (if 5 $\frac{KBQKt3}{}$ 6 $\frac{P\times P}{Kt\times KP}$ 7 $\frac{Cas}{Cas}$ 8 $\frac{KBQ5}{KtQB4}$ 9 $\frac{QBKt5}{QK}$ 10 $\frac{KRK}{KtK3}$ [10 $\frac{}{QKtB3}$ 11 $\frac{QKtQ2bg}{}$] 11 $\frac{QKtQ2bg}{}$ If, actually, 11 $\frac{}{Kt\times B}$ 12 $\frac{Kt\times Kt}{KRP1}$ [12 $\frac{}{QK2}$ 13 $\frac{QKR5}{KRP1}$ 14 $\frac{QKtK4w}{}$] 13 $\frac{QKR5}{P\times Kt}$ 14 $\frac{QKtK4w}{}$) 6 $\frac{Cas}{}$ (You may also advance PK5 and then, castling, form the same violent attack as that about to come before us) 6 $\frac{}{P\times P}$ (if 6 $\frac{}{PQ6}$ 7 $\frac{KP1\,gdg}{}$ if 6 $\frac{}{Kt\times P}$ 7 $\frac{P\times P}{KBQKt3}$ [7 $\frac{}{KBKt5}$ 8 $\frac{QRP1}{}$] 8 $\frac{KRK\,bg}{}$) 7 $\frac{QKt\times P}{}$ (You might also play 7 $\frac{KP1}{if\,P\times QKtP}$ 8 $\frac{QB\times P}{}$ [if 7 $\frac{}{KtKKt}$ 8 $\frac{QKt\times P}{}$] if 7 $\frac{}{KtK5}$ 8 $\frac{QQ5}{}$ you have two Pawns the less, but with so fine an attack, against a position so embarrassed, that he could never make an equal game. We submit this Variation to the judgment of amateurs, and content ourselves here by giving a more simple method of regaining promptly Pawn with a superior game) 7 $\frac{}{QP1}$ (if 7 $\frac{}{Cas}$ 8 $\frac{KP1}{KtKKt5}$ [8 $\frac{}{KKtK}$ 9 $\frac{QBKt5bg}{}$ or if 8 $\frac{}{KKtR4}$ 9 $\frac{QKtQ5}{QQ}$ 10 $\frac{QBKt5bg}{}$] 9 $\frac{QKtQ5}{KB\times BP+}$ [9 $\frac{}{QQ}$ 10 $\frac{QBKt5bg}{}$] 10 $\frac{R\times B}{QQB4}$ 11 $\frac{QQ4}{Q\times Q}$ 12 $\frac{Kt\times Q}{Kt\times R}$ 13 $\frac{Kt\times QBPbg}{}$) 8 $\frac{KP1}{P\times P}$ 9 $\frac{KKt\times P}{Cas}$ 10 $\frac{KRK}{QBK3}$ (if 10 $\frac{}{QQ3}$ 11 $\frac{QQKt3\,\&c}{}$) 11 $\frac{B\times B}{P\times B}$ 12 $\frac{QQKt3}{KBQKt3}$ 13 $\frac{KKtB3}{}$ and then on the following move $\frac{KKtKt5}{}$ regaining your Pawn, with the superior game.

Digitized by Google

Variation on Second Player's Third Move.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 3 $\frac{QBP1}{KBQKt3}$ This move, hitherto unnoticed by the authors, leads to nearly the same combinations as 3 $\frac{}{QK2}$ and appears to us even to strengthen that defence. You have now no chance of gaining any thing by 4 $\frac{QP2}{}$ because 4 $\frac{}{QK2}$ You should continue thus: 4 $\frac{KKtB3}{QP1}$ 5 $\frac{QP2}{QK2\text{ bst}}$ 6 $\frac{Cas}{}$ here we re-enter preceding games. All other methods of attack would open up combinations less advantageous to you. For example, if 4 $\frac{KKtB3}{QP1}$ 5 $\frac{Cas}{KKtB3\text{ bst}}$ $\left(5\ \frac{KRP1}{KKtB3}\right)$ 6 $\frac{QP2}{QKtB3}$ 7 $\frac{\text{if } P\times P}{P\times P}$ 8 $\frac{Q\times Q+}{Kt\times Q}$ 9 $\frac{QBKt5}{}$ $\left(9\ \frac{Kt\times P}{Kt\times P\text{ ev}}\right)$ 9 $\frac{}{QBK3}$ 10 $\frac{B\times B}{Kt\times B}$ 11 $\frac{B\times Kt}{P\times B}$ he has doubled Pawn, but the fine line of attack on your King's encampment, open to his KR and KKt, compensates for this disadvantage. Suppose, again, Move 7 $\frac{KBQKt5}{QBQ2}$ $\left(7\ \frac{QBKt5}{KRP1}\right)$ 8 $\frac{B\times Kt}{B\times B}$ $\left(8\ \frac{QP\times KP}{QKt\times P}\right)$ 9 $\frac{QP\times P}{KKt\times P\text{ bst}}$ 10 $\frac{P\times P}{Q\times P}$ 11 $\frac{Q\times Q}{KKt\times Q}$ 12 $\frac{R+}{KtK5}$ Even game. Lastly, suppose Move 4 varied: 1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 3 $\frac{QBP1}{KBKt3}$ 4 $\frac{QKR5}{QKB3}$ 5 $\frac{KKtB3}{QP1}$ 6 $\frac{\text{if } QP2}{QKtB3\text{ bg}}$ (Your correct move was 6 $\frac{QP1}{}$ or 6 $\frac{Cas}{}$ then 6 $\frac{}{QKKt3}$ and the game is equal) Or suppose, in this last Variation, 4 $\frac{}{QK2}$ 5 $\frac{KKtB3}{KKtB3\text{ bst}}$ 6 $\frac{Q\times KP}{B\times BP+}$ 7 $\frac{KK2}{Q\times Q}$ 8 $\frac{Kt\times Q}{KBQKt3}$ 9 $\frac{B\times KBP+}{KK2}$ 10 $\frac{KBQKt3}{QP1}$ 11 $\frac{KKtQB4}{Kt\times P\text{ ev}}$

In comparing our analysis of the French defence with that previously given in the books, the student can judge how weak are the attacking moves proposed by the latter; and into what difficulties the Two Bishops' Opening may engage second player.

Digitized by Google

TWENTY-SIXTH OPENING.

Gambit of the Centre and Wing. By M. Petroff.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 3 $\frac{QBP1}{QK2}$ 4 $\frac{KKtB3}{QP1}$ 5 $\frac{QP2}{}$ (This Centre Gambit has been long practised by the English school. Theoretically speaking, it is advantageous to accept it; but still, if determined upon refusing it, the following is the way so to do: 5 $\frac{}{KBQKt3}$ 6 $\frac{Cas}{QBK3}$ [6 $\frac{}{QBKt5}$ and 6 $\frac{}{KKtB3}$ would induce combinations unfavourable to the defence, as we have already seen] 7 $\frac{KBQ3}{QBKt5}$ [if 7 $\frac{KBK2}{QBKt5}$] 8 $\frac{QRP2}{QRP2}$ 9 $\frac{QBK3}{KKtB3}$ 10 $\frac{QKtQ2}{QKtQ2}$ ev. If 9 $\frac{QKtR3}{KKtB3}$ 10 $\frac{QKtQB2}{KRP1}$ 11 $\frac{QKtP1}{Cas}$ 12 $\frac{QBR3}{QKtB3gdg}$) 5 $\frac{}{KP\times P}$ 6 $\frac{Cas}{P\times QBP}$ This is his best move. (The authors advise 6 $\frac{}{PQ6}$ renouncing the gain of Pawn, in order not to liberate your Q Kt, but n so doing you acquire the advantage of the position with your Queen's file opened. If 6 $\frac{}{P\times QBP}$ 7 $\frac{QKt\times P}{QBP1\ bst}$ you would certainly have a great attack, but not enough to materially injure the adverse position, or to regain Pawn. For example, if 8 $\frac{KP1}{QP1}$ or if 8 $\frac{QBKB4}{QBK3}$ 9 $\frac{B\times B}{P\times B}$ [9 $\frac{QQ3}{B\times B}$ 10 $\frac{Q\times B}{QKtQ2\ \&c.}$] 10 $\frac{QQKt3}{KRP1}$ 11 $\frac{QRQ}{QKtR3}$ and then he castles Q R. Here, then, would terminate the attack of this Centre Gambit, had not M. Petroff conceived the ingenious idea of strengthening it by the addition of a Wing Gambit, as follows, which renders the defence much more difficult) 7 $\frac{QKtP2}{KB\times KtP}$ The different methods of refusing Second Gambit will be shown presently. 9 $\frac{QQR4+}{QKtB3}$ 9 $\frac{KBKt5}{PQB7\ bst}$ 10 $\frac{B\times Kt+}{KKB\ bst}$ (10 $\frac{}{KQ}$ 11 $\frac{Q\times B}{P\times Kt-Q}$ 12 $\frac{QR\times Q}{P\times B}$ 13 $\frac{QQB3}{KKtB3}$ [13 $\frac{}{QBQ2}$ 14 $\frac{Q\times KKtP}{QKB3}$ 15 $\frac{QBKt5w}{}$] 14 $\frac{KP1}{KKtQ4}$ 15 $\frac{Q\times P}{KtQKt3}$ 16 $\frac{R\times Kt\ w}{}$) 11 $\frac{B\times QKtP}{}$ (The attack 11 $\frac{Q\times P}{P\times B}$ 12 $\frac{Q\times P}{QRKt}$ is less strong) 11 $\frac{}{QB\times B}$ (he does not take 11 $\frac{}{P\times Kt-Q}$ to avoid the attack of your Rook 12 $\frac{R\times Q}{QB\times B}$

Digitized by Google

13 $\frac{R \times B}{}$ instead of 13 $\frac{Q \times B}{}$ which would induce new complications. For after 11 $\frac{}{QB \times B}$ you cannot without loss take P at your QB2, or bring out QKt) 12 $\frac{Q \times B}{P \times Kt - Q}$ 13 $\frac{R \times Q}{B \times KP \text{ bst}}$ (if 13 $\frac{}{QRQKt}$ he cramps the action of the two pieces; if 13 $\frac{}{BQB3}$ 14 $\frac{KRK}{KKtB3}$ 15 $\frac{KtQ4}{QQ2}$ [15 $\frac{}{QBQ2}$ 16 $\frac{QQKt7\,bg}{}$] 16 $\frac{KP1}{KKtQ4}$ 17 $\frac{QQB4}{KtK2}$ 18 $\frac{QBR3\,bg}{}$) 14 $\frac{KRK}{KBP2}$ (if 14 $\frac{}{QP1}$ 15 $\frac{QQKt7}{QRK}$ [15 $\frac{}{QQ}$ 16 $\frac{QBR3+}{KKtK2}$ 17 $\frac{KtK5w}{}$] 16 $\frac{Q \times RP}{QQ2}$ 17 $\frac{BQR3+}{KKtK2}$ 18 $\frac{}{QRQBw}$ and if 18 $\frac{}{B \times Kt}$ 19 $\frac{P \times B}{}$ or if 18 $\frac{}{QRQB}$ 19 $\frac{KtK5}{}$) 15 $\frac{KtKKt5}{QQ2}$ 16 $\frac{Kt \times B}{P \times Kt}$ 17 $\frac{Q \times KP}{QRQB}$ (17 $\frac{}{QRK}$ 18 $\frac{Q \times R+}{Q \times Q}$ 19 $\frac{R \times Q+}{K \times R}$ 20 $\frac{RQKt8+w}{}$) 18 $\frac{QBR3}{KKtB3}$ 19 $\frac{QQB4}{}$ you are secure of regaining Pawn, with the better game.

THE STRICT DEFENCE OF THIS OPENING.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 3 $\frac{QBP1}{QK2}$ 4 $\frac{KKtB3}{QP1}$ 5 $\frac{QP2}{KP \times P}$ 6 $\frac{Cas}{P \times QBP}$ 7 $\frac{QKtP2}{KBQKt3 \text{ bst}}$ 8 $\frac{QKt \times P}{}$ (In truth he dare not answer with 8 $\frac{}{QBP1}$ on account of 9 $\frac{QBKB4}{KBQB2}$ 10 $\frac{QQ4}{}$ then $\frac{QRQ}{}$ nor can he reply 8 $\frac{}{QBKt5}$ 9 $\frac{QKtQ5}{QQ2}$ [9 $\frac{}{QQ}$ 10 $\frac{Kt \times B}{RP \times Kt}$ 11 $\frac{QQ5\,\&c}{}$] 10 $\frac{QRP2}{B \times KKt}$ 11 $\frac{KKtP \times B}{QRP2}$ [11 $\frac{}{QBP1}$ 12 $\frac{Kt \times B}{RP \times Kt}$ 13 $\frac{QQ4\,\&c}{}$] 12 $\frac{Kt \times KB}{QBP \times Kt}$ 13 $\frac{QQ4\,\&c}{}$ In both cases you regain Gambit P with better position. 8 $\frac{}{QBK3}$ is not better for him; for then 9 $\frac{QKtQ5}{B \times Kt}$ 10 $\frac{KP \times B}{QQ2}$ 11 $\frac{QBKt2}{}$ and it merges into a very similar position in our Scotch Gambit [See Book III] in which second player, through his embarrassed position, can derive no benefit from his acquired Pawn. If at Move 9 he did not take your Kt, but retreated Q, the issue were yet more unfavourable for him; though we omit details to gain space.

Digitized by Google

Second player's really best move is as follows) 8 $\frac{}{\text{K Kt B 3}}$ (Should you now move 9 $\frac{\text{Q B Kt 5}}{\text{Q B K 3}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Q Kt Q 5}}{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{B}}{\text{Cas K R}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{K R K}}{\text{Q Q bg}}$ And if 9 $\frac{\text{K P 1}}{\text{Q P} \times \text{P}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{K Kt} \times \text{P}}{\text{Cas K R}}$ he preserves Pawn with equal position) Lastly, playing 9 $\frac{\text{Q Kt Q 5}}{\text{Kt} \times \text{Kt}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{Cas K R}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{Q B Kt 2}}{\text{Q B Kt 5}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{Q R P 2}}{\text{Q R P 2}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{K R K}}{\text{Q Q}}$ Your attack is over, and he has a Pawn surplus.

TWENTY-SEVENTH OPENING.

1 $\frac{\text{K P 2}}{\text{K P 2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{K B Q B 4}}{\text{K B Q B 4}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{K Kt B 3}}{}$ This attack, which has never been duly appreciated by writers, appears to us stronger than 3 $\frac{\text{Q B P 1}}{}$ You avoid both the defence 3 $\frac{}{\text{Q K Kt 4}}$ and that of 3 $\frac{}{\text{Q P 2}}$ which, although proved by us hazardous, induces long and varied complications in which the least fault on the part of first player would be fatal to you. (For now if 3 $\frac{}{\text{Q P 2}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{Q P}}{\text{K Kt B 3}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{Q Kt B 3}}{}$ you will keep the Pawn without difficulty) 3 $\frac{}{\text{Q P 1 bst}}$ (If 3 $\frac{}{\text{Q Kt B 3}}$ he creates the Giuoco Piano; less favourable for the defence than the actual Opening. If 3 $\frac{}{\text{K Kt B 3}}$ See Var) 4 $\frac{\text{Q B P 1}}{\text{if K Kt B 3}}$ (His correct move is 4 $\frac{}{\text{K B Q Kt 3}}$ or 4 $\frac{}{\text{Q K 2}}$ which both conduct us back to Opening XXV. For the move 4 $\frac{}{\text{Q K B 3}}$ see Opening XIX. where it is proved to be bad. If 4 $\frac{}{\text{Q B Kt 5}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{Q Q Kt 3}}{}$ you win Pawn. If 4 $\frac{}{\text{Q B K 3}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{B}}{\text{P} \times \text{B}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{Q Q Kt 3}}{\text{Q Q B}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{K Kt Kt 5}}{\text{K K 2}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{P}}{\text{if Q} \times \text{Kt}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{P w}}{}$ If again 4 $\frac{}{\text{K Kt K 2}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{K Kt Kt 5}}{\text{Q P 1}}$ [6 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Q K R 5 w}}{}$] 6 $\frac{\text{K P} \times \text{P}}{\text{Kt} \times \text{P}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{K B P}}{\text{K} \times \text{Kt}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Q K B 3 +}}{\text{K K 3}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Q P 2}}{\text{K B Q Kt 3}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{}$ his game is not susceptible of defence. The Counter-gambit 4 $\frac{}{\text{K B P 2}}$ is extremely hazardous, for then 5 $\frac{\text{Q P 2}}{}$ threatening $\frac{\text{K Kt Kt 5}}{}$

Digitized by Google

if 5 $\frac{\text{K P} \times \text{P}}{}$ 6 $\frac{\text{Kt Kt 5}}{\text{Q K 2}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Cas w}}{}$, and if 5 $\frac{\text{K B P} \times \text{P}}{}$ 6 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{K P b g}}{}$)

5 $\frac{\text{Q P 2}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ (he is forced to take, for if 5 $\frac{\text{K B Q Kt 3}}{}$ 6 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{Kt} \times \text{K P}}$

7 $\frac{\text{K B} \times \text{P} + \text{b g}}{}$) 6 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{B} +}$ (See Var for 6 $\frac{}{\text{B Q Kt 3}}$) 7 $\frac{\text{Q B Q 2}}{\text{B} \times \text{B} +}$

8 $\frac{\text{Q Kt} \times \text{B}}{\text{Q P 1}}$ (If 8 $\frac{}{\text{Kt} \times \text{P}}$ not 9 $\frac{\text{Q Kt} \times \text{Kt}}{}$ on account of 9 $\frac{}{\text{Q P 1}}$ but

rather 9 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{K B P} +}{}$ which deranges his game. But if 8 $\frac{}{\text{Cas}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{K B Q 3 bst}}{}$

you will without difficulty sustain your Centre Pawns, which assures you of the better position. You could not so well make any other move; for instance,

9 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{\text{Kt} \times \text{K P}}$ and your Pawns are broken) 9 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{Kt} \times \text{P}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Q Q Kt 3}}{\text{Q B P 1}}$

11 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{\text{Cas}}$ The situation is the same as that of one of the Variations of Début XVII., with this difference, that you have the move instead of him. In this position he played Kt Q Kt 3, but as you have to play, the situation is much in your favour. All your pieces are out, while his are not yet in array, and you will be enabled to keep them for a considerable time under restraint, obtaining for yourself decidedly the stronger development of force. 12 $\frac{\text{K Kt K 5}}{\text{Q Kt Q 2}}$ (if 12 $\frac{}{\text{Kt Q Kt 3}}$ or

$\frac{}{\text{Q B K 3}}$ he loses a Pawn. If 12 $\frac{}{\text{K B P 1}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{K Kt Q 3}}{\text{K K R}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{Q} \times \text{B}}$ [14 $\frac{}{\text{P} \times \text{B}}$

15 $\frac{\text{Kt K B 4}}{}$] 15 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{Q}}{\text{P} \times \text{Q}}$ 16 $\frac{\text{Kt K B 4}}{\text{K R Q}}$ 17 $\frac{\text{K R K}}{\text{K Kt P 1}}$ 18 $\frac{\text{Kt K 6 b g}}{}$)

13 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{Kt} \times \text{Kt}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{Q} \times \text{B}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{Q}}{\text{P} \times \text{Q}}$ 16 $\frac{\text{K B P 2}}{}$ you have the advantage of the move and position.

Variation on Sixth Move of Second Player.

5 $\frac{\text{Q P 2}}{\text{K P} \times \text{P}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{B Q Kt 3}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Q Kt B 3 bst}}{\text{Q B Kt 5}}$ (if 7 $\frac{}{\text{Cas}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{K B Q 3}}{}$)

8 $\frac{\text{Q B K 3}}{\text{Cas}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{K B Q 3}}{\text{Q Kt B 3}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{B Q B 2}}{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{K Kt P} \times \text{B}}{}$ you have a fine game, by reason of your Centre Pawns. The doubled P at K B 3 does you no injury, but on the contrary supports your centre, and opens up to your Rook an advantageous line of attack, directed upon adverse King.

Digitized by Google

Variation on Third Move of Second Player.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{Same}$ 3 $\frac{KKtB3}{KKtB3\,bd}$ 4 $\frac{Kt\times P}{Kt\times P}$ (If 4 $\frac{}{QK2}$ 5 $\frac{B\times P+}{KKB\,bst}$ 6 $\frac{QP2}{QP1}$ [6 $\frac{}{Kt\times P}$ 7 $\frac{Cas}{QP1}$ 8 $\frac{KBQB4}{}$ we arrive at same position] 7 $\frac{KBQB4}{Kt\times P}$ 8 $\frac{Cas}{QP\times Kt}$ 9 $\frac{P\times B\,b\,g}{Kt\times P}$) 5 $\frac{KB\times P+}{}$ (If 5 $\frac{QP2}{QK2}$ 6 $\frac{B\times P+}{KKB}$ 7 $\frac{Cas}{}$ we re-enter upon preceding matter)

5 $\frac{}{KKB}$ (if 5 $\frac{}{KK2}$ 6 $\frac{QK2}{B\times P+}$ 7 $\frac{KKB}{QP1}$ 8 $\frac{Q\times Kt}{P\times Kt}$ 9 $\frac{Q\times P+\,b\,g}{}$)

6 $\frac{QKB3}{B\times P+}$ (if 6 $\frac{}{QKB3}$ 7 $\frac{Q\times Kt}{Q\times P+}$ 8 $\frac{KQ}{QP1}$ 9 $\frac{Kt\,Kt\,6+}{K\times B}$ 10 $\frac{Kt\times R+}{}$)

7 $\frac{KK2}{QP1}$ 8 $\frac{Q\times Kt}{P\times Kt}$ 9 $\frac{KRKB\,b\,g}{}$

As an example of the Two Bishops' Opening, we here annex a game ever memorable in the annals of the Chess-board. It was played in February 1836, by M. Petroff, single-handed, against the whole of the Warsaw Club united in council. Far from being composed exclusively of mediocre players, this club numbers on its rolls many eminent amateurs; two of whom, MM. Hoffman and Pétrofsky, are of very great strength. The contest had been already sustained during three long sittings, when uncontrollable circumstances, foreign to Chess, compelled its abandonment on both sides, to the eternal regret of amateurs. Nevertheless, at the close of the third sitting, the game had become an ending in which M. Petroff had a surplus Pawn; with, we believe, a secure winning position. Connoisseurs of different countries will decide upon this.

M. Petroff had to play first in this game.

FIRST SITTING.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{Same}$ 3 $\frac{QBP1}{QK2}$ 4 $\frac{QP1}{QP1}$ 5 $\frac{QK2}{QBK3}$ 6 $\frac{KB\times B*}{Q\times B}$

* Well played, and Jaenisch deservedly praises the beautiful Gambit now set up. This game stands in my "Chess Studies," No. 781. It is a very fine study, but over-rated by Jaenisch; at least I could point to many of the games of M'Donnell and De la Bourdonnais of a character, I believe, decidedly superior. Jaenisch considers M. A. De Petroff the greatest player of our time, and dedicates the first volume of the work before us to him accordingly, styling him "The Philidor of Russia." It is worthy of note that in the game before us Petroff acquires the power of introducing his Gambit, through Warsaw having followed Jaenisch's direction of opposing Q B to K B at K 3.

Digitized by Google

7 $\frac{KBP2}{KBP1}$* 8 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKtQ2}$ 9 $\frac{QP1}{BQKt3}$ 10 $\frac{Cas}{KKtK2}$ 11 $\frac{KBP\times P}{QKt\times P}$

12 $\frac{KK\,R}{QKtKB2}$ 13 $\frac{RK}{QBP1}$ 14 $\frac{QBKB4}{Cas\,KR}$ 15 $\frac{QKtQ2}{QKKt5}$ 16 $\frac{BKKt3}{KRK}$

17 $\frac{QQ3}{KBP1}$ 18 $\frac{K\,P}{KBP1}$ 19 $\frac{KP\times QP}{KtKKt3}$† 20 $\frac{BKB2}{QKt\times P}$ 21 $\frac{KtQB4}{Kt\times Kt}$

22 $\frac{Q\times Kt+}{KKR}$ 23 $\frac{QKB7}{KRQKt}$‡ 24 $\frac{RK4}{QQB}$ 25 $\frac{QR\,K}{QKKt}$ 26 $\frac{QQ7}{KtKB}$

At the close of this sitting, the club players are crowded on all points, and pursued to their very intrenchments.

SECOND SITTING.

27 $\frac{QKKt4}{KtKt3}$ 28 $\frac{KRP2}{BQ}$ 29 $\frac{KRP1}{KtKB}$§ 30 $\frac{Q\times BP}{BB3}$ 31 $\frac{KKtP2}{KRP1}$

32 $\frac{QKtP1}{KtKR2}$ 33 $\frac{BKKt3}{RKB}$ 34 $\frac{QK3}{QKB2}$ 35 $\frac{KKKt2}{KtKt4}$ 36 $\frac{Kt\times Kt}{B\times Kt}$

37 $\frac{QK2}{QRQ}$ 38 $\frac{RK6}{BB3}$ 39 $\frac{QK4}{QQ2}$ 40 $\frac{BQ6}{RKB2}$ 41 $\frac{RK2}{BKKt4}$

The Warsaw players have skilfully sustained the onset during this second encounter. Still, their redoubtable adversary has gained a Pawn, and has preserved his very superior position.

THIRD SITTING.

42 $\frac{QBP1}{RKB3}$ 43 $\frac{QBP1}{R\times R}$ 44 $\frac{Q\times R}{Q\times Q}$ 45 $\frac{R\times Q}{KKKt}$ 46 $\frac{KKB3}{KKB2}$

47 $\frac{RK4}{KKtP1}$ 48 $\frac{P\times P+}{K\times P}$ 49 $\frac{QRP2}{RQ2}$ 50 $\frac{KK2}{KRP1}$ 51 $\frac{P\times P+}{K\times P}$

52 $\frac{KQ3}{KKKt3}$ 53 $\frac{KQB4}{RKR2}$ 54 $\frac{RK2}{KKB4}$ 55 $\frac{BQKt8}{QRP1}$ 56 $\frac{RK5+}{KKB3}$

57 $\frac{BQ6}{BB5}$ In taking leave of this memorable struggle, we must add that we know of nothing so nearly approaching the inimitable model of Philidor as M. Petroff's conduct of this game. The pieces are never played out before the Pawns; the sortie of King's Kt is happily

---

* Would a first-rate answer thus?

† I should much prefer Kt K B 4.

‡ This places both their Rooks *hors du combat*. They had better abandon Q Kt P, and move K R K B.

§ Can this be equally attacking as R K 8?

Digitized by Google

replaced at Move 7 by a magnificent King's Gambit; and the regularity of the chain of operations leaves nothing to be desired from first to last. M. Petroff has ever professed a boundless admiration for Philidor, whom he places above all other players, ancient and modern. With these views, in his own Treatise on Chess, published in 1825 in the Russian language, he abstains from all *innovation;* which can never possess, according to his theories, more than a second-rate degree of importance. He gives, consequently, nothing beyond a complete theoretical *exposé* of the principle of the Pawns; subsequently elucidating the same by detailed comments upon the classical games and examples of endings to be found in Philidor.

THE END OF PART I.

Digitized by Google

PART II.

INTRODUCTION.

We had announced this part of our work for the close of last year (1842).* In publishing it some months later, our best excuse is the considerable augmentation of the volume, which comprises thirteen instead of the nine sheets promised. During a short stay at Warsaw in the autumn of 1842, we moreover enjoyed the inappreciable advantage of reviewing our work in great part, over the Chess-board, with M. Petroff. This circumstance cannot doubtless fail to strengthen the confidence of amateurs in the many novel theories broached in this volume; which, indeed, undertakes the solution of the most difficult and contested cases in the whole Science of Chess. Our first part was published in much haste, during the course of a journey through a great part of Europe, made in 1841 and 1842. Since our return to St. Petersburgh we have been enabled tranquilly to work at the completion of our second volume, and to improve the first by various important additions and corrections.† What we still regret is, that we have not had time to devote to the analysis of games in which odds are given.

In our original preliminary discourse we attempted to explain the real aim of our views. Still, the nature of the object we treat on is so abstract, and delicate, that we feel impelled to return to its consideration, in order to dissipate the many prejudices it has to encounter. What has been said of the game of Chess in general applies even more strongly to the extraordinary development we have given to its theory. It will be stigmatised as far too much for a sport, and yet too little for a science. To this objection, here is our reply; which we recommend to the reflection of all impartial men.

What is the common and essential character of every science? Doubtless, the logic, the analysis, the intellectual unity existing between all its several parts, whatever be the nature of the operations of its extension proper thereto. The object of its workings may all the same be trivial, or conventional; it will not be the trifle which of itself forms the science, but the attendant operations, analytically designed. The theory of Chess treats of a particular class of combinations between certain imaginary beings, still positively and geometrically characterised, and termed "Rooks," "Bishops," "Knights," &c. These combinations give rise to a special class of problems, analogous to geometrical problems, of which, however, the mode of analysis is widely different. As long as these problems only treat of isolated cases, and situations arbitrarily selected, they do not come within the bounds of Science. Thus, any one curious position, unconnected with any general principle, or a game

* Jaenisch's first volume was published in 1842, and his second, at which we now arrive, in 1843.

† All these "additions and corrections" have now been incorporated by the translator in the text of the work.

Digitized by Google

played out entirely independent of, or contrary to, these principles, may serve to fill up agreeably a leisure hour, but cannot pretend to take any place in theory; since theory only occupies itself with problems of a general and necessary character, always reducible to a series of theorems. Thus the Mate of Rook and Bishop against Rook, M. Szen's problem with three Pawns on each side, and a thousand other Chess cases, of greater or less difficulty, but in general the ends of games, may and ought to form the subject of a scientific analysis. Now the most important and complicated of these Chess problems, and the object of one particular theoretical branch cultivated for centuries past by authors of all nations, is the analysis of the known position of the Chess-men at the commencement of the game, or THE THEORY OF THE OPENINGS. Let us hasten then instantly to fix the one scientific point of view in which to place this problem. In the theory of the Openings, it does not come within our scope to examine moves made by chance, or unfounded on principle, which yet might yield certain brilliant combinations, more or less recreative. This, we repeat, is out of the limits of science, which should only take into consideration such presentments of the question as are strictly natural, and altogether absolute. The legitimate aim of science is to demonstrate mathematically the best possible moves, thus to say theoretically necessary on both parts; or else, having conventionally admitted a fault on the one side, to draw from that its most rigorous consequences, near or remote. The most difficult problems are afterwards those in which having conventionally admitted two or more faults on one or both sides, we propose to draw from the situation thus yielded its logical consequences; an examination which, as to the number of admitted errors, will find a natural limit, furnished by the self-interest of the question proposed. Such is the point of view we have exclusively followed in this work; the sole object which can and ought to disculpate us from the reproach of having written a large Treatise upon A GAME. For this game is but with us a pretext for developing a description of analysis of high interest, but hitherto little known, vast as may be its literature. A good method of elucidating our point of view would be to apply it to this same Chess literature; a work of history, which by reason of the space it would require, we are compelled to postpone to another occasion. Suffice it here to remark, that Rui Lopez may be considered as the most ancient author in whom we find the elements of a Scientific Chess System; a system which only attained a certain development at a much later period in the works of Ponziani, (Lolli, Cozio, Philidor, Sarratt, Koch, Stein, and Allgaier).

Let not beginners be frightened at this enormous mass of formulas of ours, the fruit of researches the most laborious and persevering. An attentive glance over our pages will convince the young player that this book is especially written for his use; for every scientific work which aspires to weight should be equally comprehensive by the finished connoisseur as the tyro; provided the latter will seriously reflect on the matter. While clearing up the most complicated and ingenious questions relative to the Chess-board, we have omitted nowhere its elementary explanations, and we have above all dwelt upon the fundamental principle of the Pawns, almost overlooked in modern writers. May the

Digitized by Google

amateurs of our noble game now study its theory more than they have hitherto done! The games played by correspondence, now so favourite a branch of Chess, ought, however, to open their eyes. It is now fully proved that in all these games the vanquished alone owe their defeat to ignorance of some point or other of theory in the *début;* that they have not for the chief part been so badly defended, but because the winning party has simply drawn those mathematical consequences, ever so deplorable, from the first fault of the adversary. We have reason to hope that the utility of this our work will speedily be recognised in the amelioration and improvement of games played in this manner, as well as in all those played with reflection. The Twenty Theses placed at the end of this part of our publication have no other aim than to direct at once the attention of amateurs to the principal theorems of the Openings of the game; strictly indispensable for practice, and which will all be found either presented for the first time in our Treatise, or largely improved by new changes and modifications of our own discovery.

C. F. De Jaenisch.

St. Petersburgh, April, 1843.

Digitized by Google

BOOK III.

KING'S KNIGHT'S OPENING.

Of all the correct attacks for first player, which he may attempt on Move 2 of the Royal Opening, this is the strongest; its defence presenting great difficulties, and having been ever a point on which authors were divided in opinion, although the most important branch of the theory of the game. We are happy in being able to offer hereupon sundry developments entirely new, a first essay of which appeared in the Palamede of April 1842. 1 $\frac{\text{K P 2}}{\text{K P 2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{K Kt B 3}}{}$ his K P being attacked, second player has but two modes of freeing himself from embarrassment; either to defend Pawn, or to allow it to be taken, looking elsewhere for an immediate equivalent, such as the capture of your K P.

We shall occupy ourselves first with this latter system, to which we devote the first section of this Book; while in the two remaining sections we shall revert to the other system of defence; being that of guarding K P.

Section I.

FIRST OPENING.

1 $\frac{\text{K P 2}}{\text{K P 2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{K Kt B 3}}{\text{Q B P 1 bd}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q K 2}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{Q P 2}}{\text{K B P 1 bst}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{K Kt B 3}}{\text{Q} \times \text{P} +}$

$\left(\text{if } 5 \frac{\text{Q K R 5} +}{\text{K Kt P 1}} \quad 6 \frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{Kt P bd}}{\text{Q} \times \text{P} +}\right)$ 6 $\frac{\text{K B K 2}}{\text{Q P 2}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Cas b g}}{}$

SECOND OPENING.

1 $\frac{\text{K P 2}}{\text{K P 2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{K Kt B 3}}{\text{K B Q B 4 bd}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q K 2}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{Q P 2}}{\text{Q P 1}}$ $\left(\text{if } 4 \frac{}{\text{K B Q 3}}\right.$

5 $\frac{\text{K Kt B 3}}{\text{Q} \times \text{P} +}$ 6 $\frac{\text{K B K 2 gd g}}{}$ and if 4 $\frac{}{\text{K B P 1}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{Q K R 5} +}{\text{K Kt P 1}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{Kt P}}{\text{Q} \times \text{P} +}$

Digitized by Google

7 $\frac{KQbst}{Q\times Kt}$ 8 $\frac{Q\times Bbg}{}$) 5 $\frac{Kt\times KBP}{Q\times P+}$ (if 5 $\frac{}{K\times Kt}$ 6 $\frac{P\times B}{Q\times P+}$
7 $\frac{QBK3}{QP\times P}$ 8 $\frac{QKR5+bg}{}$) 6 $\frac{QBK3}{KB\times P}$ 7 $\frac{QKtQ2}{QK2'}$ 8 $\frac{Kt\times Rw}{}$

THIRD OPENING.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{KBP2}$ This Counter-gambit, attributed to the Calabrois*, is extremely hazardous. 3 $\frac{Kt\times P}{}$ (This is your best move. If, instead, you accept the Gambit by taking P with P, he advances P on Kt, and causes you much embarrassment) 3 $\frac{}{QKB3}$ (This is his best move. If 3 $\frac{}{QK2}$ the check 4 $\frac{QKR5}{}$ would give you the gain of at least a Pawn, as proved in the books) 4 $\frac{QP2}{QP1}$ (If he takes P with P, you move KBQB4 getting the advantage) 5 $\frac{KKtQB4}{P\times P}$ 6 $\frac{QKtB3}{QBKB4}$
7 $\frac{QBKB4}{QBP1}$ 8 $\frac{QP1}{}$ You have the better disposition of force. His KB is restrained in its action; and his Q prevents his KKt from coming out to KB3.

FOURTH OPENING.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{QP2}$ This species of Centre Counter-gambit is reprehensible, but first player may easily err in the attack. 3 $\frac{Kt\times P}{}$ In playing thus you equalise the game; for you should have taken the other Pawn. 3 $\frac{}{QK2}$ This as well as the following moves of this Variation are by Ponziani. (He might also have defended himself

---

* This opening stands in my "Art of Chess Play," 4th edit. 1846, p. 238, as The Greco Counter Gambit. It is assuredly weak for second player, who wastes precious time in advancing a Pawn 2 $\frac{}{KBP2}$, when he should rather be debouching with a Piece. Receiving the odds of Kt or R, the tyro's best move is nevertheless here 2 $\frac{}{KBP2}$.

Digitized by Google

thus: 3 $\frac{}{KBQ3}$ 4 $\frac{QP2}{QP\times P}$ 5 $\frac{QKtB3}{B\times Kt}$ 6 $\frac{P\times B}{Q\times Q+}$ 7 $\frac{Kt\times Q}{}$ ev

But if 3 $\frac{}{QP\times P}$ 4 $\frac{KBQB4}{}$ and you would regain the advantage; for then if 4 $\frac{}{QQ5}$ 5 $\frac{KB\times KBP+}{}$ then 6 $\frac{KB\times Kt}{}$ and you have a Pawn the more; and in case of 4 $\frac{}{QKKt4}$ 5 $\frac{QP2}{Q\times P}$ 6 $\frac{KRKB}{QBK3}$ 7 $\frac{QP1}{QKtQ2}$ 8 $\frac{P\times B}{Kt\times Kt}$ 9 $\frac{KBP2}{P\times Penp}$ 10 $\frac{QBKB4}{QRQ}$ 11 $\frac{P\times P+}{KK2}$ 12 $\frac{P\times Kt-Kt+}{R\times Kt}$ 13 $\frac{KBQ3}{}$ you should win) 4 $\frac{QP2}{KBP1}$ 5 $\frac{KtKt4}{B\times Kt}$ 6 $\frac{Q\times B}{Q\times P+}$ 7 $\frac{Q\times Q+}{P\times Q\,ev}$ *

Best Attack in this Opening.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{QP2}$ 3 $\frac{KP\times P\,bst}{KP1}$ (He must now lose a Pawn. 3 $\frac{}{Q\times P}$ were much better as in Var, but the vicious defence 2 $\frac{}{QP2}$ would be still irreparable) 4 $\frac{QK2}{KKtB3}$ 5 $\frac{QKtB3\,bst}{}$ (If 5 $\frac{KKtKt5}{}$† as given by Walker, then 5 $\frac{}{Q\times P}$ 6 $\frac{QP1}{QBKB4}$ 7 $\frac{QKtB3}{KBKt5}$ 8 $\frac{QBQ2}{B\times Kt}$ 9 $\frac{B\times B}{QKtQ2\,ev}$ If 5 $\frac{QP1}{Q\times P}$ 6 $\frac{QKtB3}{KBKt5}$ 7 $\frac{BQ2}{B\times Kt}$ 8 $\frac{B\times B}{Cas\,b\,g}$) 5 $\frac{}{QK2}$ 6 $\frac{KKtQ4\,b\,g}{}$ or if 5 $\frac{}{KBK2}$ 6 $\frac{QKt\times P\,b\,g}{}$

Variation on Third Move of Defence.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{QP2}$ 3 $\frac{P\times P\,bst}{Q\times P}$ 4 $\frac{QKtB3}{QK3}$ 5 $\frac{KB+\,bst}{QBQ2}$ (if 5 $\frac{QKtP1}{KBQ3}$ 6 $\frac{KBQB4}{QKKt3}$ 7 $\frac{QP1}{QBK3}$ [7 $\frac{Cas}{QBR6}$ 8 $\frac{KtKR4}{QKKt5}$

---

* I prefer your game, thinking second player's K P weakly planted, being too far advanced.

† Jaenisch is right in his correction, and accordingly in my last edition (Art of Chess Play, 1846) I have substituted his move 5 $\frac{QKtB3}{}$ for 5 $\frac{KKtKt5}{}$.

Digitized by Google

9 $\frac{Q \times Q}{B \times Q}$ ev] 8 $\frac{KB \times B}{Q \times B}$ 9 $\frac{Cas}{QKtQ2\ ev}$) 6 $\frac{Cas\ bst}{QRP1\ bst}$ (For 6 $\frac{}{B \times B}$ see Var) 7 $\frac{B \times B+\ bst}{QKt \times B}$ (if 7 $\frac{BQR4}{B \times B}$ 8 $\frac{Kt \times B}{QQB3}$ 9 $\frac{QKtB3}{QKtQ2}$ 10 $\frac{KRK}{KBP1}$ 11 $\frac{QP2}{Cas\ ev}$) 8 $\frac{QP2}{Cas}$ 9 $\frac{KRK}{KBQ3}$ 10 $\frac{QKtK4}{KBP2}$ 11 $\frac{QP1}{QKKt3}$ (If 11 $\frac{}{QKB2}$ 12 $\frac{Kt \times B+}{P \times Kt}$ 13 $\frac{KKtKt5\ gd\ g}{}$) 12 $\frac{Kt \times B+}{P \times Kt}$ (12 $\frac{}{Q \times Kt}$ 13 $\frac{KtKt5\ bg}{}$) 13 $\frac{QKtP2}{KKtB3}$ (13 $\frac{}{QKtKt3}$ 14 $\frac{QBP2}{}$) 14 $\frac{QBP2}{}$ If he now play 14 $\frac{}{KP1}$ 15 $\frac{KtQ4}{}$ and if instead 14 $\frac{}{QKtKt3}$ 15 $\frac{QBK3}{KKtQ2}$ 16 $\frac{QRP2}{}$ you will have both ways bg.

Var. on Sixth Move of Foregone Var.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{QP2}$ 3 $\frac{P \times P}{Q \times P}$ 4 $\frac{QKtB3}{QK3}$ 5 $\frac{B+}{BQ2}$ 6 $\frac{Cas}{B \times B}$ 7 $\frac{Kt \times B}{KBQ3}$ 8 $\frac{QP2}{KBP1}$ (if 8 $\frac{}{KP1}$ 9 $\frac{KKtKt5}{}$ then $\frac{KKt \times KP}{}$ if, again, 8 $\frac{}{QRP1}$ 9 $\frac{Kt \times B}{}$ winning Pawn. If 8 $\frac{}{QKtQ2}$ 9 $\frac{KKt \times P}{}$ and you have the advantage) 9 $\frac{P \times P}{P \times P}$ 10 $\frac{KtKt5}{QKKt3}$ (if 10 $\frac{}{QQ2}$ 11 $\frac{Kt \times KB}{QBP \times Kt\ bst}$ 12 $\frac{KBP2\ gd\ g}{}$) 11 $\frac{KBP2}{P \times KBP}$ (Now if 11 $\frac{}{KRP1}$ 12 $\frac{KBP1}{}$ and then $\frac{KKtK6\ \&c}{}$ or 11 $\frac{}{if\ QRP1}$ 12 $\frac{Kt \times B+}{P \times Kt}$ 13 $\frac{P \times KP}{}$ then $\frac{KKtKB7\ w}{}$ and if 12 $\frac{}{Q \times QKt}$ 13 $\frac{P \times P\ w}{}$) 12 $\frac{Kt \times B+}{Q \times QKt}$ (12 $\frac{}{P \times QKt}$ 13 $\frac{KtK6}{}$) 13 $\frac{QK2+\ bg*}{}$

To give a clear idea of the spirit of this début, we here present a game really played, in 1837, by a Russian amateur of the first degree of force, against ourselves. The leading moves of the attack were not strictly regular, but the middle stages of the game will serve, we believe, as an excellent model in similar cases; when, the two Kings having castled on different sides, each player attacks on that wing.

---

* This check is perhaps not the strongest move.

Digitized by Google

We had the first move. (This game ranks No. 968 in Mr. Walker's "Chess Studies.")

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{QP2}$ 3 $\frac{Kt\times KP}{QK2}$ 4 $\frac{QP2}{KBP1}$ 5 $\frac{KKtB3}{P\times KP}$ 6 $\frac{KKtQ2}{KBP1}$

7 $\frac{KBK2}{QKtB3}$ 8 $\frac{KKtQKt3}{KKtB3}$ 9 $\frac{Cas}{QKB2}$ 10 $\frac{QBP2}{QBQ2}$ 11 $\frac{QBKB4}{Cas}$

12 $\frac{QKtB3}{KRP1}$ 13 $\frac{QRP1}{KKtP2}$ 14 $\frac{QBQ2}{KBP1}$ 15 $\frac{QP1}{QKtK4}$ 16 $\frac{KKtQ4}{KBQB4}$

17 $\frac{QBK}{KRKKt}$ 18 $\frac{QKtP2}{KBK2}$ 19 $\frac{KBP1}{KP1}$ 20 $\frac{QQKt3}{KKtP1}$ 21 $\frac{QBP1}{P\times KBP}$

22 $\frac{Kt\times P}{Kt\times Kt+}$ 23 $\frac{B\times Kt}{KtKt5}$ 24 $\frac{QQB4}{KQKt}$ 25 $\frac{QK4}{QRK}$ 26 $\frac{QP1}{QBB3}$

27 $\frac{QQ4}{B\times B}$ 28 $\frac{R\times B}{BKKt4}$ 29 $\frac{KtQKt5}{QBP1}$ 30 $\frac{QP1}{QRK3}$ 31 $\frac{BKKt3}{P\times Kt}$

32 $\frac{B\times KBP+}{KtK4}$ 33 $\frac{B\times Kt+}{R\times B}$ 34 $\frac{Q\times R+}{KQR}$ 35 $\frac{R\times Q\,w}{}$ Second player loses by Move 31 $\frac{}{P\times Kt}$ He should place Q en prise, and play 31 $\frac{}{P\times QB}$ 32 $\frac{R\times Q}{PK7}$ 33 $\frac{QRK}{BK6+}$ 34 $\frac{KKR\,bst}{}$ We still have better game.

THE TWO KINGS' KNIGHTS' OPENING.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{KKtB3}$ The fate of this Opening has been somewhat "bizarre." Proclaimed faulty from the 16th century (compare Damiano, Lopez, and Gianutio), it has been entirely thrown on one side, and has only since appeared in the books; which content themselves with reproducing, without change, the ancient analysis of the classics. Cozio, in truth, that frivolous genius, who saw every thing superficially, without diving into it*, at last briefly corrected the fallacies of the original analysis in question; but, curious enough, was not himself aware of the importance of his observation, which passed altogether unnoticed by later writers. Without having seen Cozio,

* Jaenisch is too severe upon Cozio, who made several discoveries in the Openings, and has given us many new and curious examples of endings of games. Compare Cozio with the laboured dulness of certain authors who are content to twine interminable complications, miscalled "Variations" around one poor solitary move taken from other writers, without giving forth the slightest ray of original genius, and our Italian author, Cozio, shines forth with brilliancy indeed.

Digitized by Google

M. Petroff discovered, himself, the same move $\left(3\ \frac{\text{QP1}}{}\right)$ many years back, and the opening was commonly played in Petersburg, a fine specimen thereof existing in a beautiful game played by M. Petroff by correspondence, against three Russian amateurs, united in council, which we shall presently introduce with our own comments thereupon.

The analysis of the defence $2\ \frac{\text{KKtB3}}{}$ having occupied much of our time, we communicated its elements to M. St. Amant, the director of the "PALAMEDE," in a paper which appeared in that Magazine, April, 1842. Since that period, a prolonged and confirmed study of the subject has led to our discovering certain new methods of attack, which considerably diminish, to our perception, the value of this defence. We no longer consider it, as we once did, completely satisfactory*; however, compared with the two other classic openings $2\ \frac{\text{QP1}}{}$ and $2\ \frac{\text{QKtB3}}{}$ it perhaps still will be found to have the preference, at least in the opinion of many. We express ourselves hesitatingly upon this point; for this question of preference being exceedingly complicated, it is best that each individual amateur should form his own judgment after a deliberate examination of our analyses.

FIFTH OPENING.

$1\ \frac{\text{KP2}}{\text{KP2}}\ 2\ \frac{\text{KKtB3}}{\text{KKtB3}}\ 3\ \frac{\text{Kt}\times\text{P}}{}$ This is the strongest mode of carrying on the attack. (Petroff has invented another very interesting description of attack $3\ \frac{\text{QP2}}{}$ See Openings XII. and XIII. The move $3\ \frac{\text{KBQB4}}{}$ would be weak, conducting to the Seventh Opening of Book II., advantageous for second player. By playing $3\ \frac{\text{QKtB3}}{}$ you would enter upon a Var of Queen's Knight's Opening; in which the best defence would be also $3\ \frac{\text{QKtB3}}{}$ as see in Section III. of Book I.) $3\ \frac{\text{KKt}\times\text{P}}{}$

---

* In a note appended to his work, Jaenisch still further qualifies his original opinion as to the soundness of the move $2\ \frac{\text{KKtB3}}{}$ and admits that, all the best moves being played, it should result in giving an inferior position to second player. I am quite of the same opinion; preferring the classic move of $2\ \frac{\text{QKtB3}}{}$ to all others.

Digitized by Google

(This move loses him a Pawn. 3 $\frac{\text{QK2}}{}$ as taught by Lopez, and since repeated by all the classics, is equally defective. The correct move will be given in our next Opening) 4 $\frac{\text{QK2}}{\text{QK2 bst}}$ (If 4 $\frac{\text{Kt}\times\text{KBP}}{}$ he does not retake on account of 5 $\frac{\text{QKR5+}}{}$ but he plays 4 $\frac{}{\text{QKB3}}$ and then 5 $\frac{\text{QK2}}{\text{Q}\times\text{KBP+ev}}$) 5 $\frac{\text{Q}\times\text{Kt}}{\text{QP1}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{KBP1}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{KBP2}}{\text{QKtQ2}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{QKtB3}}{}$ (It were less advantageous to play 8 $\frac{\text{KBKt5}}{}$ Move as he may after 8 $\frac{\text{QKtB3}}{}$ he loses a Pawn; but as this line of the game has been exhausted by the authors, we shall not dwell on its details; demonstration being besides so simple; but we shall give one method of continuing the game, almost chosen by us from the others at random) 8 $\frac{}{\text{KBP}\times\text{Kt}}$ (if 8 $\frac{}{\text{QP}\times\text{Kt}}$ 9. $\frac{\text{KtQ5}}{}$) 9 $\frac{\text{QP}\times\text{P}}{\text{P}\times\text{P}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{QKtQ5}}{\text{QKtKB3}}$ (10 $\frac{}{\text{QQ3}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{KBP}\times\text{P}}{}$) 11 $\frac{\text{Kt}\times\text{Q}}{\text{Kt}\times\text{Q}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{Kt}\times\text{QB}}{\text{KP}\times\text{P}}$ (12 $\frac{}{\text{R}\times\text{Kt}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{P}\times\text{P}}{}$) 13 $\frac{\text{Kt}\times\text{RP}}{\text{B+}}$ Your correct move now is 14 $\frac{\text{KK2}}{}$ after which 14 $\frac{}{\text{R}\times\text{Kt}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{QB}\times\text{P}}{}$ and you keep Pawn; but suppose 14 $\frac{\text{QBP1}}{\text{Kt}\times\text{QBP}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{P}\times\text{Kt}*}{\text{B}\times\text{P+}}$ 16 $\frac{\text{KQ}}{\text{B}\times\text{R}}$ 17 $\frac{\text{KtKt5}}{\text{QR}\times\text{P}}$ 18 $\frac{\text{Kt}\times\text{P+}}{\text{KQ2}}$ 19 $\frac{\text{QB}\times\text{P}}{\text{KRQB}}$ 20 $\frac{\text{KB+}}{\text{KQ}}$ 21 $\frac{\text{KtK6+}}{\text{KK2}}$ 22 $\frac{\text{KRK}}{\text{KKB2}}$ your superiority is hardly sufficiently decisive to ensure winning.

Variation on Second Player's Third Move.

1 $\frac{\text{KP2}}{\text{KP2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{\text{KKtB3}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{Kt}\times\text{P}}{\text{QK2}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{QP1}}$ (if 4 $\frac{}{\text{Kt}\times\text{P}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{KBQ3}}{\text{QP1}}$ [5 $\frac{}{\text{KtKB3 or QP2}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{Cas gd g}}{}$] 6 $\frac{\text{B}\times\text{Kt}}{\text{P}\times\text{Kt}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Cas gd g}}{}$) 5 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{\text{Q}\times\text{P+}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{KBK2}}{\text{QBKB4 bst}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{QBP2 bst}}{\text{KBK2}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{\text{Cas}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{QKtB3}}{\text{QQB7}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Q}\times\text{Q}}{\text{B}\times\text{Q}}$

---

* Jaenisch passes over 15 $\frac{\text{QBQ2}}{}$.

Digitized by Google

11 $\frac{QBKB4}{QKtQ2\ bst}$ 12 $\frac{QRQB}{QBKKt3}$ (if now 13 $\frac{KtQKt5\ wk}{QRP1}$ 14 $\frac{if\ Q\ Kt \times QBP}{QRQB}$ 15 $\frac{QKtQ5}{Kt \times Kt}$ 16 $\frac{P \times Kt}{QKtQKt3\ gd\ g}$) 13 $\frac{KKtR4}{\quad}$ Once disembarrassed of his QB you have clearly the advantage; your forces being so much better developed on the field.

SIXTH OPENING.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{KKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{Kt \times P}{QP1}$ (This is his correct third move, first given by Cozio. But its importance escaped that author, and he even thought it inferior to 3 $\frac{\quad}{QK2}$ contenting himself with examining the one following Variation only 3 $\frac{\quad}{QP1}$ 4 $\frac{KKtB3}{Kt \times P}$ 5 $\frac{QK2}{QK2}$ 6 $\frac{QP1}{KtKB3}$ 7 $\frac{Q \times Q+}{KB \times Q\ ev}$ This sluggish attack did not awaken the perception of later writers; so that custom still held the defence 2 $\frac{\quad}{KKtB3}$ to be vicious. Without knowing Cozio's work*, Petroff himself struck upon 3 $\frac{\quad}{QP1}$ and at once appreciated its value. For ourselves, we only claim personally the merit of having analysed its results with extreme care, and of thus having established the best methods of carrying out both the attack and defence. Further on, it will be seen that this theory presents certain points of vast difficulty) 4 $\frac{KtKB3\ bst}{Kt \times P}$ 5 $\frac{QP1}{\quad}$ (The strongest attacking move here is 5 $\frac{QP2}{\quad}$ as in following Openings. If 5 $\frac{QK2}{QK2}$ 6 $\frac{QP2}{QP1}$ 7 $\frac{QBP}{QBKt5}$ 8 $\frac{QBP \times P}{B \times KKt}$ 9 $\frac{KKtP \times B}{KtKB3}$ 10 $\frac{Q \times Q+}{KB \times Q}$ 11 $\frac{QKtB3}{QKtQ2\ bg}$) 5 $\frac{\quad}{KKtB3}$ 6 $\frac{QP1}{QP1}$ 7 $\frac{KBQ3}{\quad}$ (In this Opening, the two Kings' Bishops finding themselves cut off on both sides by Queen's Pawns, the only mode which remains for first player to acquire an attacking position is by advance of QBP2. Now this Gambit were premature on Move 7, since in that case 7 $\frac{QBP2}{B+bst}$ 8 $\frac{QKtB3}{Cas}$ and he regains the advantage of the move. If, moreover, he only aimed at

* Cozio's Treatise is indeed so rare as to be almost unprocurable. It consists of two octavo volumes, containing an immense mass of practical matter, and is well worthy of appearing in an English dress.

Digitized by Google

equalising the position, he might play 7 $\frac{QBP2}{P\times QBP}$ 8 $\frac{KB\times P}{B+}$ 9 $\frac{QKtB3}{Cas}$ 10 $\frac{Cas}{QBKt5}$ 11 $\frac{QBK3}{QKtB3\,ev}$) 7 $\frac{}{KBQ3}$ 8 $\frac{Cas}{Cas}$ 9 $\frac{QBP2}{QBP2\,ev}$

SEVENTH OPENING.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{KKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{Kt\times P}{QP1}$ (if 3 $\frac{}{QBP1}$ 4 $\frac{QKtB3}{}$)

4 $\frac{KKtB3}{Kt\times P}$ 5 $\frac{QP2\,bst}{QP1}$ 6 $\frac{KBQ3\,bst}{}$ (You threaten, after castling, to push QBP2; but this Gambit, if now set up, would be fruitless. Ex. 6 $\frac{QBP2}{B+bst}$ 7 $\frac{BQ2}{B\times B+}$ 8 $\frac{QKt\times B}{Kt\times Kt}$ [8 $\frac{KKt\times B}{Kt\times Kt}$ 9 $\frac{Q\times Kt}{Cas\,gd\,g}$] 9 $\frac{Q\times Kt}{Cas}$ and he has gained a move) 6 $\frac{}{QBP2}$ hazardous. (This Counter-gambit on his part would be strong in case you had played 6 $\frac{KBK2}{}$ for 6 $\frac{KBK2}{QBP2}$ 7 $\frac{QBP2\,bst}{QBP\times QP}$ 8 $\frac{Cas}{KBQB4}$ [8 $\frac{Kt\text{ or }Q\times P}{KBQB4}$] 9 $\frac{if\ KKt\times P}{QQKt3\,bg}$ As it is, his Counter-gambit is hazardous, but the correct answer to it would be difficult to discover in actual play. We shall give it in a Var. If 7 $\frac{QP\times P}{KKt\times P}$ 8 $\frac{Cas}{KBK2\,gd\,g}$ or if 7 $\frac{QBK3}{QQKt3\,gd\,g}$) 7 $\frac{Cas\ inf}{QBP\times P}$ 8 $\frac{KKt\times P}{}$ (if 8 $\frac{KRK}{KBP2}$ 9 $\frac{Kt\times P}{KBQB4\,gd\,g}$ and if 8 $\frac{B\times Kt}{P\times B}$ 9 $\frac{Kt\times P}{KBQB4}$ 10 $\frac{KRK}{KBP2}$ as we come to further on) 8 $\frac{}{KBQB4}$ 9 $\frac{KKtQKt3}{}$ (if 9 $\frac{KRK}{KBP2}$ as better than $\frac{}{B\times Kt}$ If 9 $\frac{B\times Kt}{P\times B}$ 10 $\frac{KtQKt3}{Q\times Q}$ 11 $\frac{R\times Q}{KBKt3\,gd\,g}$) 9 $\frac{}{KBKt3}$ 10 $\frac{B\times Kt}{P\times B}$ (10 $\frac{QKtQ2}{KBP2}$) 11 $\frac{Q\times Q+}{KB\times Q}$ 12 $\frac{KRK}{KBP2}$ 13 $\frac{KBP1}{B+}$ 14 $\frac{KKR}{Cas\,gd\,g}$

Variation on First Player's Seventh Move.

7 $\frac{QBP2\,bst}{QBP\times P}$ (if 7 $\frac{}{QKtB3}$ or 7 $\frac{}{KBK2}$ you equally castle, and after the exchanges remain with better position) 8 $\frac{Cas\,bst}{}$ (if 8 $\frac{Kt\times P\,bd}{Kt\times KBP}$

Digitized by Google

9 $\frac{QK2+}{KtK5}$ [9 $\frac{K\times Kt}{QKR5+}$ 10 $\frac{KK3}{KBQB4}$ 11 $\frac{KBQB2}{QKtB3bg}$] 10 $\frac{B\times Kt}{QKR5+}$ [10 $\frac{QKtB3}{KBP2}$ 11 $\frac{Cas}{KBQB4}$ 12 $\frac{QBK3}{Cas\,bg}$] 11 $\frac{KKtP1}{Q\times Bbg}$ If 8 $\frac{QBP\times P}{B+}$ 9 $\frac{QBQ2}{KKt\times B}$ 10 $\frac{QKt\times Kt}{B\times Kt+}$ 11 $\frac{Q\times B}{Q\times Pbg}$) 8 $\frac{}{KBQB4}$ (Playing any other indifferent move, you would equally get the better position by $\frac{QBP\times P}{}$) 9 $\frac{P\times P}{}$ Now he cannot re-take P without loss of piece; nor retire Kt without having a bad game, on account of $\frac{KRK+}{}$ As it is, you have the better game. If 9 $\frac{}{KBP2}$ 10 $\frac{B\times Kt}{P\times B}$ 11 $\frac{Kt\times P}{Q\times P}$ 12 $\frac{KtKt3}{Q\times Q}$ 13 $\frac{R\times Q}{BQKt3}$ 14 $\frac{QKtB3bg}{}$ The reader will easily fill up the details of this mode of play. If at Move 8, he answer 8 $\frac{Cas}{KBK2}$ 9 $\frac{P\times P}{KKtB3}$ 10 $\frac{B+}{QBQ2}$ 11 $\frac{Kt\times P\,bst}{Kt\times P}$ (11 $\frac{}{B\times B}$ 12 $\frac{Kt\times B}{Kt\times P}$ 13 $\frac{Q\times Kt\,w}{}$) 12 $\frac{QKB3\,bst}{QBQB3}$ (12 $\frac{}{B\times B}$ 13 $\frac{Kt\times B}{Cas}$ 14 $\frac{KRQbg}{}$) 13 $\frac{KRQbg}{}$ Again, if he reply to Move 8 $\frac{}{KKtB3}$ 9 $\frac{P\times P}{Kt\times P}$ (9 $\frac{}{Q\times P}$ 10 $\frac{Kt\times P}{}$ and then $\frac{QKtB3bg}{}$) 10 $\frac{B+}{QBin}$ (10 $\frac{}{QKtB3}$ 11 $\frac{Q\times Pbg}{}$) 11 $\frac{Kt\times P}{QKtB3}$ (11 $\frac{}{QKB3}$ still 12 $\frac{QKB3bg}{}$) 12 $\frac{KB\times Kt}{B\times B}$ (12 $\frac{}{P\times B}$ 13 $\frac{QKB3}{KBK2}$ 14 $\frac{QKtB3}{Kt\times Kt}$ 15 $\frac{Q\times Ktbg}{}$) 13 $\frac{Kt\times B}{P\times Kt}$ 14 $\frac{QQR4}{QQB2}$ 15 $\frac{KRQbg}{}$

EIGHTH OPENING.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{KKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{Kt\times P}{QP1}$ 4 $\frac{KKtB3}{Kt\times P}$ 5 $\frac{QP2}{QP1}$ 6 $\frac{KBQ3}{KBQ3}$ This move of his presents itself naturally, but does not in our opinion oppose a sufficient resistance to the attack of Queen's Gambit. 7 $\frac{Cas}{Cas}$ (if 7 $\frac{}{QBP2}$ 8 $\frac{QBP2\,gd\,g}{}$) 8 $\frac{QBP2}{}$ The

Digitized by Google

attack of this Gambit is here irresistible. 8 $\frac{}{QBK3}$ (In retiring Kt they would have an inferior game. [For 8 $\frac{}{QBP1}$ see Var) 9 $\frac{QQKt3 \text{ bst}}{}$*

This move assures you of the advantage of the situation. (You might also play 9 $\frac{KRK}{}$ as in Var. If 9 $\frac{P \times P}{B \times P}$ 10 $\frac{QKtB3}{Kt \times Kt}$ 11 $\frac{P \times Kt}{QBP2 \text{ bst}}$ 12 $\frac{QBP1}{B \times Kt}$ [12 $\frac{P \times QBP}{KB \times P \text{ ev}}$] 13 $\frac{Q \times B}{P \times P}$ 14 $\frac{Q \times QKtP}{QKtQ2 \text{ ev}}$ If now 15 $\frac{QK4 \text{ or } QQ5}{QKtKB3}$ and if Q × P she is lost) 9 $\frac{}{P \times P}$ 10 $\frac{KB \times P}{B \times B}$ 11 $\frac{Q \times B}{}$ ($\frac{Q \times QKtP}{}$ at Move 10 or 11 would lose you a piece on account of $\frac{}{QBQ4}$ as you cannot take B without loss of Q) 11 $\frac{}{KRK}$

(It is on this move the embarrassment of second player really commences. His difficulty lies in defending QKtP without advancing it, which would certainly weaken his game; and in extricating his K Kt from the attack of your QKtB3, since, if he change Knights, you unite your Pawns. Now this difficulty is insoluble; a fact of which we have assured ourselves by a patient analysis of every move he can here adopt. To an amateur but slightly versed in the science of Chess, the position would here appear equal; in effect, the difference is but slight, though assuredly real in the perception of the finished theorist; since the pieces of second player cannot be well developed on the field, without much loss of valuable time. Now for his moves: If 11 $\frac{}{QKtB3}$ 12 $\frac{QP1 \text{ bg}}{}$ To retire B 11 $\frac{}{BK2}$ to make room for Kt were not advisable. The consequences might be 11 $\frac{}{BK2}$ 12 $\frac{QBKB4 \text{ bst}}{QBP1}$ [if 12 $\frac{}{KtQ3}$ 13 $\frac{QQKt3 \text{ bg}}{}$] 13 $\frac{QKtB3}{KtKB3}$ [13 $\frac{}{KtQ3}$ 14 $\frac{QQKt3}{QQKt3}$ 15 $\frac{Q \times Q}{P \times Q}$ 16 $\frac{RK \text{ bg}}{}$] 14 $\frac{QQKt3}{QQKt3}$ 15 $\frac{Q \times Q}{P \times Q}$ 16 $\frac{RK}{RK}$ 17 $\frac{QRP1}{QKtQ2}$ 18 $\frac{QRQ}{}$ then $\frac{QP1 \text{ bg}}{}$

---

* In the game played by correspondence between the clubs of Paris and Pesth, the latter here strengthened Jaenisch's play by moving 9 $\frac{QQB2}{}$ and then on Paris responding with 9 $\frac{}{KBP2}$ they played 10 $\frac{QQKt3}{}$, having the better game. Their playing Queen first to QB2 and then to QKt3 appears stronger than taking up the latter square at once, and this seems to have been the cause of Jaenisch's avowing the weakness of this Opening for second player. See the games of the match between Pesth and Paris, in Le Palamède, St. Amant's amusing Chess periodical, and Bell's Life in London.

Digitized by Google

And if 11 $\frac{}{BK2}$ 12 $\frac{QKtB3}{KtQ3}$ 13 $\frac{QQKt3}{QKtQ2}$ 14 $\frac{QBKB4}{QKtKt3}$ 15 $\frac{QRP2}{QRP2}$ 16 $\frac{KRK}{KKtQB5}$ then $\frac{}{KBQ3}$ and he may equalise game. If 11 $\frac{}{QKtQ2}$ you do not play 12 $\frac{QQ5}{}$ on account of 12 $\frac{}{QKtQB4}$ 13 $\frac{QQB4 \text{ if}}{QKtQ2}$ and if 13 $\frac{QKB5}{QQ2 \text{ ev}}$; but you rather attack thus:—11 $\frac{}{QKtQ2}$ 12 $\frac{QKtB3}{QKtKB3}$ [12 $\frac{}{QKtKt3}$ 13 $\frac{QQKt3 \text{ bst}}{Kt \times Kt}$ 14 $\frac{P \times Kt}{}$ you have the better game through the disposition of your Pawns. If now 14 $\frac{}{QBP2}$ 15 $\frac{QBK3}{}$ and not 15 $\frac{QP1}{}$ which would cost you a Pawn thus: 15 $\frac{QP1}{Kt \times P}$ 16 $\frac{Q \times QKtP}{Kt \times QBP}$] [12 $\frac{}{KKtB3}$ 13 $\frac{QQKt3}{QKtKt3}$ 14 $\frac{QBKt5}{BK2}$ 15 $\frac{QRQ}{KKtQ4}$ 16 $\frac{B \times KB}{KKt \times B}$ 17 $\frac{QP1 \text{ bg}}{}$] 13 $\frac{QQKt3}{QQB}$ [13 $\frac{}{QKtP1}$ 14 $\frac{QBK3 \text{ bg}}{}$] 14 $\frac{QBK3}{QBP1}$ 15 $\frac{QRQB}{QQB2}$ 16 $\frac{QKt \times Kt}{Kt \times Kt}$ 17 $\frac{QP1 \text{ bg}}{\text{if } KtKB3}$ 18 $\frac{KRQ}{}$ &c. Or, moreover, if 11 $\frac{}{QBP1}$ 12 $\frac{QKtB3}{KKtB3}$ 13 $\frac{QQKt3}{QQB2}$ [13 $\frac{}{QQKt3}$ 14 $\frac{Q \times Q}{P \times Q}$ 15 $\frac{QBK3}{QKtQ2}$ 16 $\frac{KRQ}{KRK}$ 17 $\frac{QP1 \text{ bg}}{}$] 14 $\frac{QBKt5}{QKtQ2}$ 15 $\frac{QRQB \text{ bg}}{}$ for if now 15 $\frac{}{KRK}$ 16 $\frac{QKtKt5}{}$ then 17 $\frac{QKt \times B}{}$ and 18 $\frac{Q \times QKtP}{}$ and if 15 $\frac{}{QRP1}$ 16 $\frac{QP1}{QKtQB4}$ 17 $\frac{QQB4}{QKtP2}$ 18 $\frac{QQ4}{Kt \times P}$ 19 $\frac{Kt \times Kt}{P \times Kt}$ 20 $\frac{Q \times P \text{ bg}}{}$ The student will easily supply the details necessarily here omitted through lack of space) 12 $\frac{QKtB3}{QKtQ2}$ (better than 12 $\frac{}{KKtB3}$ as 13 $\frac{QBKt5}{QKtQ2}$ 14 $\frac{QQKt3}{QKtKt3 \text{ or } QQB}$ 15 $\frac{KRK \text{ bg}}{}$) 13 $\frac{QQKt3}{}$ (if 13 $\frac{Kt \times Kt}{R \times Kt}$ 14 $\frac{QQ5}{QKtQB4}$ 15 $\frac{QQB4}{QKBP3}$ [15 $\frac{KKR}{QBP1}$ 16 $\frac{QKB5}{QQ2 \text{ ev}}$] 16 $\frac{QQB2}{KRKKt5}$ 17 $\frac{KRP1}{KRKt3}$ 18 $\frac{QQB3}{KtK5}$ [18 $\frac{KKR \text{ or } QK2}{KtK3}$ 19 $\frac{QBK3}{KtKB5}$] 19 $\frac{QQ3}{QRK}$ 20 $\frac{KRK}{QKB4}$ and they will succeed in disengaging their forces) 13 $\frac{}{QQB}$ (To push QKtP or defend it with QR would be equally worthless. If 13 $\frac{}{QKtKt3}$ 14 $\frac{KRK \text{ bg}}{}$) 14 $\frac{QBK3}{QBP1}$ 15 $\frac{QRQB}{QKtKt3}$ (If 15 $\frac{}{QKtKB3}$

Digitized by Google

16 $\frac{Kt \times Kt}{}$ if then 16 $\frac{}{Kt \times Kt}$ 17 $\frac{QP1\,bg}{}$ and if, instead, 16 $\frac{}{R \times Kt}$ 17 $\frac{QBKt5}{}$ and then 18 $\frac{KRK\,bg}{}$) 16 $\frac{QRP2}{QK3}$ 17 $\frac{QQB2}{KBP2}$ 18 $\frac{KRK\,bg}{}$

Variation on First Player's Ninth Move.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{KKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{Kt \times P}{QP1}$ 4 $\frac{KtKB3}{Kt \times P}$ 5 $\frac{QP2}{QP1}$ 6 $\frac{KBQ3}{KBQ3}$ 7 $\frac{Cas}{Cas}$ 8 $\frac{QBP2}{QBK3}$ 9 $\frac{KRK}{KRK\,bst}$ (If he retire Kt 9 $\frac{}{KKtB3}$ he exposes himself to 10 $\frac{KKtKt5}{KRK}$ 11 $\frac{QKtB3}{QBP1}$ 12 $\frac{KKt \times B}{P \times Kt}$ 13 $\frac{QBKt5\,bg}{}$) 10 $\frac{QBP \times P\,wk}{}$ (If 10 $\frac{B \times Kt}{P \times B}$ 11 $\frac{R \times P}{QB \times P\,ev}$ If 10 $\frac{QBP1}{KBK2}$ 11 $\frac{B \times Kt}{P \times B}$ [11 $\frac{QKtB3}{KBP2\,gd}$] 12 $\frac{R \times P}{KB \times P\,bg}$ But your correct move is 10 $\frac{QQKt3}{P \times P}$ 11 $\frac{B \times P}{B \times B}$ 12 $\frac{Q \times B}{QKtQ2}$ 13 $\frac{QKtB3}{QKtKB3}$ 14 $\frac{QQKt3}{QQB}$ 15 $\frac{QBK3}{QBP1}$ 16 $\frac{QRQB}{QQ2}$ 17 $\frac{KRQ\,bg}{}$ if 16 $\frac{}{QQB2}$ 17 $\frac{Kt \times Kt}{}$ then against 17 $\frac{}{Kt \times Kt}$ 18 $\frac{QP1}{}$ and against 17 $\frac{}{R \times Kt}$ 18 $\frac{BKKt5\,bg}{}$) 10 $\frac{}{QB \times P}$ 11 $\frac{QKtB3}{Kt \times Kt\,bst}$ 12 $\frac{P \times Kt}{QBP2}$ This Counter-gambit is requisite to break your united Pawns; without which the two games would not be altogether even. (if instead of 12 $\frac{P \times Kt}{}$ you move 12 $\frac{R \times R+}{Q \times R}$ 13 $\frac{P \times Kt}{QBP2}$ and the Variation shapes itself like what we are about to arrive at) 13 $\frac{R \times R+}{Q \times R}$ (if 13 $\frac{P \times QBP}{R \times R+}$ 14 $\frac{Kt \times R}{KB \times P}$ [if 14 $\frac{Q \times R}{KB \times P\,ev}$ and not 14 $\frac{}{B \times Kt}$ on account of 15 $\frac{P \times KB}{}$] then against 15 $\frac{BK4\text{ or }QB4}{QKR5\,w}$ and against 15 $\frac{PQB4}{QKB3}$ 16 $\frac{BK3}{B \times B}$ 17 $\frac{KBP \times B}{BQB3\,gdg}$ If at Move 13 $\frac{PQB4}{B \times Kt}$ 14 $\frac{R \times R+}{Q \times R}$ 15 $\frac{Q \times B}{QK8+}$ 16 $\frac{KBB}{QKtB3\,bg}$ for if 17 $\frac{QP1}{QKtQ5}$ 18 $\frac{QK3}{B \times RP+w}$ [18 $\frac{QQ3\,bd}{QK4}$] and if 17 $\frac{QBKt2}{QQ7}$ 18 $\frac{BQB3}{QKR3\,bg}$ Lastly, if 13 $\frac{QBR3}{R \times R+}$

Digitized by Google

14 $\frac{Kt \times R}{QBP \times P}$ 15 $\frac{QB \times B}{Q \times B}$ 16 $\frac{QBP \times P}{QKtB3\,ev}$) 14 $\frac{P \times P}{\quad}$ (if 14 $\frac{QBP1}{B \times Kt}$ as before. If 14 $\frac{QBR3}{QQB3}$ [not 14 $\frac{\quad}{QK2}$ because of 15 $\frac{QK2}{Q \times Q}$ 16 $\frac{B \times Q}{QKtQ2}$ 17 $\frac{PQB4\,bg}{\quad}$] 15 $\frac{QBP1}{B \times Kt}$ [15 $\frac{KKtK}{QBP \times P\,ev}$] 16 $\frac{Q \times B}{Q \times Q}$ 17 $\frac{P \times Q}{QKtQ2}$ 18 $\frac{QRK}{KKB}$ or 18 $\frac{QP1}{QKtK4}$ 19 $\frac{KBK2}{\quad}$ you have undoubtedly passed P, but in return you have doubled Pawn, isolate and useless) 14 $\frac{\quad}{B \times Kt}$ (if 14 $\frac{\quad}{KB \times P}$ 15 $\frac{B \times KRP+\,w}{\quad}$) 15 $\frac{Q \times B}{QK8+}$ 16 $\frac{KBB}{KB \times QBP}$ 17 $\frac{QBKt2}{QK2}$ (if 17 $\frac{QKB5}{QKtQ2}$) He afterwards plays $\frac{\quad}{QKtB3}$ and the party is equal. He did not play 17 $\frac{\quad}{QQ7}$ by reason of 18 $\frac{QRQ}{Q \times B}$ (18 $\frac{\quad}{QKKt4}$ 19 $\frac{Q \times QKtP\,w}{\quad}$) 19 $\frac{R+}{BB}$ 20 $\frac{KBQB4}{QQKt8+}$ 21 $\frac{RQ}{QKKt3}$ 22 $\frac{Q \times QKtP\,w}{\quad}$ After his 12th Move, second player might vary his game; but we have supposed him to play the strongest moves we could discover.

Variation on Eighth Move of Second Player.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{KKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{Kt \times P}{QP1}$ 4 $\frac{KKtB3}{Kt \times P}$ 5 $\frac{QP2}{QP1}$ 6 $\frac{KBQ3}{KBQ3}$ 7 $\frac{Cas}{Cas}$ 8 $\frac{QBP2}{QBP1}$ he cannot defend thus without getting a constrained position. 9 $\frac{QKtB3}{KBP2}$ (If 9 $\frac{\quad}{QBK3}$ 10 $\frac{Kt \times Kt}{P \times Kt}$ 11 $\frac{B \times P}{B \times P}$ 12 $\frac{B \times KRP+}{\quad}$ you win Pawn) 10 $\frac{KtK5}{KRK\,bst}$ (If 10 $\frac{\quad}{QBK3}$ 11 $\frac{QQKt3}{\quad}$ and then against 11 $\frac{\quad}{QKtP1}$ 12 $\frac{P \times QP}{P \times P}$ 13 $\frac{Kt \times Kt}{KBP \times Kt}$ 14 $\frac{KB \times P}{KB \times Kt}$ 15 $\frac{P \times KB\,bg}{\quad}$ and against 11 $\frac{\quad}{QP \times P}$ 12 $\frac{KB \times P}{B \times B}$ 13 $\frac{Q \times B+}{KKR}$ 14 $\frac{Kt+\,w}{\quad}$ If, moreover, 11 $\frac{\quad}{QK2}$ 12 $\frac{P \times P}{P \times P}$ [12 $\frac{\quad}{Kt \times QKt}$ 13 $\frac{P \times B}{KtQ4}$ 14 $\frac{KRK\,bg}{\quad}$] 13 $\frac{Kt \times QP\,bg}{\quad}$ Finally, if 11 $\frac{\quad}{QQB}$

Digitized by Google

12 $\frac{P \times P}{Kt \times QKt}$ 13 $\frac{P \times B}{KtQ4}$ 14 $\frac{KRK\,bg}{}$) 11 $\frac{KBP2}{QBK3}$ (if 11 $\frac{}{QKtQ2}$ 12 $\frac{P \times QP\,bg}{}$) 12 $\frac{QQKt3}{KRK2}$ 13 $\frac{QBK3}{}$ His game is crowded. You have preserved the advantage of the move.

NINTH OPENING.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{KKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{Kt \times P}{QP1}$ 4 $\frac{KtKB3}{Kt \times P}$ 5 $\frac{QP2}{QP1}$ 6 $\frac{KBQ3}{QKtB3}$ (This defence aims chiefly at paralysing the attack of your Q upon his QKt P. It certainly presents considerable resource, but is open to the ordinary drawbacks attendant upon playing QKt to this sq, and does not, to our mind, completely parry your assault. The only way for you to get the advantage in this Opening is to move $\frac{KKtK5}{}$ as soon as possible. This move will force him either to take your Kt with his QKt, and thus assure you the superiority, through the better position of your Pawns; or else to lose time in defending his QKt; under pain of disadvantageously doubling his QKt P by retaking. On the other hand your opponent will do all he can to prevent $\frac{KKtK5}{}$) 7 $\frac{Cas\ bst}{}$ (If 7 $\frac{QBK3}{}$ to prepare for $\frac{KKtK5}{}$ then 7 $\frac{}{QBKt5}$ and then against 8 $\frac{Cas}{QKB3\,gd\,g}$ or against 8 $\frac{KRP1}{BKR4}$ 9 $\frac{KKtP2}{BKKt3}$ 10 $\frac{KKtK5}{QKt \times Kt}$ 11 $\frac{QP \times Kt}{QK2\,bg}$ threatening $\frac{}{QQKt5+}$) 7 $\frac{}{KBK2\ bst}$ 8 $\frac{QBP2}{}$ (8 $\frac{QBK3}{}$ would be yet premature, for then 8 $\frac{}{QBKt5}$ and when 9 $\frac{QBP2}{KKtKt4\ bst}$ having a good defence. If 8 $\frac{KRK}{KKtB3}$ 9 $\frac{QBP2}{Cas\ ev}$) 8 $\frac{}{QBK3}$ (He has no better move. If 8 $\frac{}{KKtB3}$ 9 $\frac{QBK3}{}$ [preparing $\frac{KtK5}{}$] 9 $\frac{}{QBKt5}$ 10 $\frac{QKtB3}{}$ If now 10 $\frac{}{Cas}$ 11 $\frac{KRP1}{BKR4}$ [11 $\frac{}{B \times KKt}$ would give you the advantage] 12 $\frac{KKtP2}{QP \times P}$ [12 $\frac{}{BKKt3}$ 13 $\frac{KKtP1\,bg}{}$] 13 $\frac{KB \times P}{BKKt3}$ 14 $\frac{KtK5\,bg}{}$ and again if 10 $\frac{}{QP \times P}$ 11 $\frac{B \times P}{Cas}$ 12 $\frac{KRP1}{QBKB4}$ [12 $\frac{}{B \times Kt}$ 13 $\frac{Q \times B}{Kt \times QP}$, 14 $\frac{Q \times QKtP}{KtKB4}$ 15 $\frac{QRQ\,bg}{}$] 13 $\frac{KKtK5}{QKtKt5}$

Digitized by Google

[13 $\frac{}{QQ3}$ 14 $\frac{QBKB4}{Q\times QP}$ 15 $\frac{Kt\times Kt\ w}{}$] 14 $\frac{QRP1}{QKtQ4}$ 15 $\frac{QQKt3\ bg}{}$)

9 $\frac{QQKt3}{}$ (This attack does not succeed equally well here as in the Eighth Opening; on account of his QKt being on QB3. Otherwise if 9 $\frac{KRK}{KKtB3\ ev}$ and if 9 $\frac{P\times P}{B\times P}$ 10 $\frac{QKtB3}{KtKB3}$ 11 $\frac{QBK3}{Cas}$ 12 $\frac{KKtK5}{KBQ3}$ 13 $\frac{KBP2}{QKtK2}$ then $\frac{}{QBP2}$ and against 13 $\frac{QKt\times B}{KB\times KKt}$ 14 $\frac{P\times B}{Kt\times Kt\ gd\ g}$)

9 $\frac{}{P\times P}$ 10 $\frac{Q\times QKtP}{QBQ4}$ (if 10 $\frac{KB\times P}{B\times B}$ 11 $\frac{Q\times B}{KKtQ3}$ then $\frac{}{Cas\ QR\ ev}$)

11 $\frac{B\times Kt}{B\times B}$ (if 11 $\frac{KBK2\ or\ QB2}{Kt\times QP\ w}$ If 11 $\frac{KB\times P}{KKtQ3}$ 12 $\frac{B\times B}{Kt\times Q}$ 13 $\frac{B\times Kt+}{KKB}$ 14 $\frac{B\times Kt}{QRKt}$ 15 $\frac{BQB6}{KBKB3}$ He has Queen against three minor pieces and a Pawn; but his Rook being cramped, the game is even*)

12 $\frac{QKtQ2}{QRQKt}$ 13 $\frac{QQR6}{B\times Kt}$ 14 $\frac{Kt\times B}{Kt\times P}$ 15 $\frac{Kt\times Kt}{Q\times Kt}$ 16 $\frac{QQB6+}{QQ2}$ 17 $\frac{Q\times P}{Cas\ \ ev}$†

In this Opening you have played all the moves correctly, except 9 $\frac{QQKt3}{}$ in lieu of which you ought to have played 9 $\frac{QBK3}{}$ Your adversary could not then prevent your moving $\frac{KKtK5}{}$ which will give you the advantage, as before stated. For if then 9 $\frac{}{KBP1}$ 10 $\frac{P\times P}{B\times P}$ 11 $\frac{QKtB3}{KtKKt4}$ (11 $\frac{}{Kt\times QKt}$ 12 $\frac{P\times Kt\ bg}{}$) 12 $\frac{QB\times Kt}{P\times B}$ 13 $\frac{KKtK5}{Kt\times Kt}$ (13 $\frac{}{KKtP1}$ 14 $\frac{KBP2\ bg}{}$) 14 $\frac{QP\times Kt\ bg}{}$ And if instead of this 9 $\frac{QBK3}{KBB3}$ 10 $\frac{P\times P}{QB\times P}$ 11 $\frac{QKtB3}{KKtKt4}$ 12 $\frac{B\times Kt}{KB\times B}$ 13 $\frac{KKt\times B}{Q\times Kt}$ 14 $\frac{Kt\times B}{Q\times Kt}$ 15 $\frac{KR+}{QKtK2}$ 16 $\frac{QK2}{QQ3}$ and you have the better situation.

---

* I venture to differ in opinion; believing that second player will speedily disengage King's Rook, and that the advantage is with him.

† First player has, to my mind, the better situation.

Digitized by Google

TENTH OPENING.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{KKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{Kt\times P}{QP1}$ 4 $\frac{KKtB3}{Kt\times P}$ 5 $\frac{QP2}{QP1}$ 6 $\frac{KBQ3}{KKtQ3}$ (The Kt retreating to this square arrests your projected Queen's Gambit, and defends at the same time QKtP; but it cramps the action both of his Q and K B) 7 $\frac{Cas}{KBK2}$ 8 $\frac{QBKB4\ bst}{Cas}$ (8 $\frac{}{QBKt5}$ would enfeeble the action of B, for then 9 $\frac{QKtQ2}{Cas}$ 10 $\frac{QBP1}{QKtQ2}$ 11 $\frac{QQB2\ bst}{QKtKB3\ or\ KRP1}$ [if 11 $\frac{QQKt3}{QKtKB3\ bst}$ 12 $\frac{KKtK5\ bg}{}$]) 9 $\frac{QBP1\ bst}{}$ (By capturing Kt, in order to play at any risk Queen's Gambit, you would give him a fine game 9 $\frac{B\times Kt}{Q\times B}$ 10 $\frac{QBP2}{P\times P}$ 11 $\frac{KB\times P}{QBKt5}$ 12 $\frac{QKtB3}{QKtB3}$ 13 $\frac{if\ QKtK4\ or\ QKt5}{QKB5\ gd\ g}$) 9 $\frac{}{QBK3}$ 10 $\frac{QKtQ2}{}$ (if 10 $\frac{QQKt3}{QKtP1\ bst}$ 11 $\frac{QQB2}{KRP1}$ he might have a good game now pushing $\frac{}{QBP2}$ If as Move 12 $\frac{QKtP2}{QRP2}$) 10 $\frac{}{QKtQ2}$ 11 $\frac{QQB2}{}$ (If 11 $\frac{QQKt3}{QKtP1}$ 12 $\frac{QQB2}{KRP1}$ 13 $\frac{B\times Kt}{}$ [without which 13 $\frac{}{KtQKt2}$ and then $\frac{}{QBP2\ gd\ g}$] 13 $\frac{}{KB\times B}$ 14 $\frac{QKtP2}{QBP2}$ [14 $\frac{QBP1}{QBP1\ ev}$] 15 $\frac{QKtP\times P}{P\times P}$ 16 $\frac{KBQKt5}{QKtKB3\ ev}$ [17 $\frac{KKtK5}{QQB2\ bg}$] If 16 $\frac{QRQKt}{QBP1}$ 17 $\frac{KBK2}{QKB3\ gd\ g}$ 18 $\frac{QRQKt7\ if}{QKtKt3\ bg}$) 11 $\frac{}{KRP1}$ 12 $\frac{KKtK5}{}$ This is your best move. He can neither take nor drive away Kt, without giving you the advantage, and consequently has the worse position.

Variation on this Opening.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{Same}$ 3 $\frac{Kt\times P}{QP1}$ 4 $\frac{KKtB3}{Kt\times P}$ 5 $\frac{QP2}{QP1}$ 6 $\frac{KBQ3}{KKtQ3}$ 7 $\frac{Cas}{KBK2}$ 8 $\frac{QBKB4}{Cas}$ 9 $\frac{QBP1}{QBK3}$ 10 $\frac{QKtQ2}{QKtP1}$ 11 $\frac{QQB2}{KRP1}$ 12 $\frac{QKtP2}{QQB}$ (12 $\frac{}{KtQKt2}$ 13 $\frac{KRQKt}{QQB}$ 14 $\frac{KRQKt2}{QBP2}$ 15 $\frac{KtP\times P}{KtP\times P}$ 16 $\frac{QRQKt\ bg}{}$)

Digitized by Google

13 $\frac{KRQKt}{QBP2}$ 14 $\frac{KtP\times P}{KtP\times P}$ 15 $\frac{P\times P}{Q\times P}$ 16 $\frac{QKtQKt3}{QQB}$ 17 $\frac{QKtR5}{QKtQ2}$ 18 $\frac{KRQKt2\ b\ g}{}$

ELEVENTH OPENING.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{KKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{Kt\times P}{QP1}$ 4 $\frac{KKtB3}{Kt\times P}$ 5 $\frac{QP2}{QP1}$ 6 $\frac{KBQ3}{KBK2}$ (He plays thus with the intention of retreating K Kt B 3 without regarding the time necessarily expended in this operation. The same position might be formed thus 6 $\frac{}{KKtB3}$ 7 $\frac{Cas}{KBK2}$ 8 $\frac{QBP2}{QP\times P}$ 9 $\frac{KB\times P}{Cas}$ 10 $\frac{KKtK5\ bst}{}$ [if 10 $\frac{QKtB3}{QBKt5}$ and if 10 $\frac{KRP1}{QKtB3}$ 11 $\frac{QBK3}{KBQ3\ ev}$] 10 $\frac{}{QBP1}$ 11 $\frac{QKtB3}{QKtQ2}$ 12 $\frac{QBK3}{}$) 7 $\frac{Cas}{Cas}$ 8 $\frac{QBP2}{QBP1}$ (if 8 $\frac{}{QBK3\ wk}$ but you must not then play 9 $\frac{QQKt3}{}$ by reason of 9 $\frac{}{QP\times P}$ 10 $\frac{KB\times P}{QB\times B}$ 11 $\frac{Q\times B}{KtQ3}$ 12 $\frac{QQKt3}{QKtB3\ ev}$ therefore you should play 9 $\frac{KRK}{KtQ3\ bst}$ [9 $\frac{}{KtKB3}$ 10 $\frac{KKtKt5}{}$] 10 $\frac{QBP\times P}{B\times P}$ 11 $\frac{QKtB3}{B\times KKt}$ 12 $\frac{Q\times B}{QKtB3}$ 13 $\frac{QP1}{QKtQ5}$ 14 $\frac{QKB4\ bst}{KBB3}$ 15 $\frac{QBK3}{QBP2}$ 16 $\frac{QRQ\ b\ g}{}$ And if 8 $\frac{}{KKtB3}$ 9 $\frac{P\times P}{Kt\times P}$ 10 $\frac{QKtB3}{QBP1}$ 11 $\frac{KKtK5}{}$ This position of Kt gives you the advantage; for if 11 $\frac{}{KBP1}$ 12 $\frac{B\times RP+}{K\times B}$ 13 $\frac{QKR5+}{K\ to\ Kt}$ 14 $\frac{KtKt6\ w}{}$) 9 $\frac{QKtB3}{KKtB3}$ 10 $\frac{KKtK5\ bst}{}$ (If 10 $\frac{QBKB4}{QBKt5}$ he would equalise the party, for if 11 $\frac{QQKt3}{B\times Kt}$ 12 $\frac{Q\times QKtP}{B\times KKtP}$ 13 $\frac{Q\times QR}{B\times KR\ gd\ g}$ and if 13 $\frac{K\times B}{QQ2\ gd\ g}$) 10 $\frac{}{QKtQ2}$ (if 10 $\frac{}{P\times P}$ 11 $\frac{KB\times P}{QKtQ2}$ 12 $\frac{QBK3}{QKtKt3}$ 13 $\frac{KBQ3}{}$ &c, as further on) 11 $\frac{QBK3}{P\times P}$ (if 11 $\frac{}{QKtKt3}$ 12 $\frac{QBP1\ b\ g}{}$) 12 $\frac{KB\times P}{QKtKt3}$ 13 $\frac{KBQ3}{KKtQ4}$ 14 $\frac{QK2}{QBK3}$ 15 $\frac{KBP2}{KBP2}$ You have the better position, on account of the strong situation of KKt; which he cannot attack without compro-

Digitized by Google

mising his game. If 15 $\frac{}{KBP1}$ 16 $\frac{QKR5\ bst}{KKtP1}$ 17 $\frac{B \times KtP}{P \times B}$ 18 $\frac{Q \times P+}{KKR}$ 19 $\frac{KRB3\ w}{}$ If 15 $\frac{}{Kt \times B}$ 16 $\frac{Q \times Kt}{QKtQ4}$ 17 $\frac{Kt \times Kt}{}$ (if 17 $\frac{QK2}{KtKt5}$ or if 17 $\frac{QQ2}{KBP1}$) 17 $\frac{}{B \times Kt}$ (to avoid $\frac{KBP1}{}$) 18 $\frac{QKR3}{KRP1}$ (if 18 $\frac{}{KKtP1}$ 19 $\frac{KBP1}{}$) 19 $\frac{QKB5\ w}{}$ Before proceeding further, we repeat that neither the Seventh, Eighth, Ninth, Tenth, nor Eleventh Openings are strictly satisfactory as to the defence. The amateur will adopt that which appears to be the least hazardous; we must remark that the move 6 $\frac{}{KBK2}$ as developed in this Opening gives you too great a superiority in position to be recommendable, after his fifteenth move; but that on the whole we consider it to be the best he can play; advising him to vary Move 7, and to carry the game on thus: 6 $\frac{}{KBK2}$ 7 $\frac{Cas}{QKtB3}$ We now consider this to be his best move. (We have now re-entered our Ninth Opening) 8 $\frac{QBP2}{QBK3}$ 9 $\frac{QBK3}{Cas}$ 10 $\frac{KKtK5\ bg}{}$

TWELFTH OPENING.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{KKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{QP2}{}$ This move was invented by M. Petroff with a view of adding to the variety of this Opening. Though intrinsically weak, as permitting second player promptly to equalise the game, it gives rise to certain very beautiful variations, equally unknown to the authors as those which we have just traced out; and we trust the inventor of this move will approve of our analysis of its consequences. 3 $\frac{}{KP \times P\ bst}$ (This is better than taking P with Kt. See next Opening) 4 $\frac{KP1}{}$ (It were wrong to take 4 $\frac{Q \times P}{}$ for then 4 $\frac{}{QKtB3}$ 5 $\frac{QK3}{KB+}$ 6 $\frac{QBQ2}{Cas}$ and he gains time) 4 $\frac{}{KtK5}$ (It would not be quite so strong to move Kt to Q4, though that might be done without loss. But there is an excellent defensive move here 4 $\frac{}{QK2}$

Digitized by Google

These two moves will be given as separate Variations) 5 $\frac{KBQ3}{}$ (Tolerably well played, but it were better to take P with Kt, as in Var. 5 $\frac{QK2}{}$ as gvien in another Var, is bad. Finally, if 5 $\frac{Q \times P}{QP2}$ 6 $\frac{KP \times P \text{ enp}}{}$ otherwise you are exposed to $\frac{}{KBQB4}$ 6 $\frac{}{Kt \times QP \text{ gd g}}$) 5 $\frac{}{KtQB4 \text{ bst}}$ (if 5 $\frac{}{QP2}$ 6 $\frac{KP \times P \text{ enp}}{Kt \times QP}$ [6 $\frac{Kt \times P}{QBP2 \text{ gd g}}$] 7 $\frac{Kt \times P}{KBK2}$ 8 $\frac{Cas}{Cas}$ 9 $\frac{QBK3}{KBKB3}$ 10 $\frac{QBP1}{\text{if } QBP2}$ 11 $\frac{KtKB3 \text{ bg}}{}$) 6 $\frac{Kt \times P}{QP1}$ (if 6 $\frac{Cas}{QP1 \text{ bg}}$) 7 $\frac{P \times P}{}$ (if 7 $\frac{KKtB3}{QBKt5}$ 8 $\frac{P \times P}{KB \times P}$ [8 $\frac{Cas}{QP \times P}$ 9 $\frac{KRK}{KP1 \text{ bg}}$] 9 $\frac{Cas}{Cas \text{ bg}}$) 7 $\frac{}{KB \times P}$ 8 $\frac{Cas}{Cas}$ (if 8 $\frac{}{B \times RP+}$ 9 $\frac{K \times B}{Q \times kt}$ 10 $\frac{B \times P+ \text{ w}}{}$) 9 $\frac{KtQKt3 \text{ ev}}{}$ It was necessary to prevent adverse Bishop's planting himself on his K4, which might have lost you something. For instance, if 9 $\frac{QBK3}{KBK4}$ 10 $\frac{QBP1}{Kt \times B}$ 11 $\frac{Q \times Kt}{QBP2 \text{ w}}$

Variation on your Fifth Move.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{KKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{QP2}{KP \times P}$ 4 $\frac{KP1}{KtK5}$ 5 $\frac{Kt \times P \text{ bst}}{QP1}$ (He might also play 5 $\frac{}{KBQB4}$ or 5 $\frac{}{QP2}$) 6 $\frac{P \times P}{}$ (You should not play 6 $\frac{QBKB4}{}$ on account of 6 $\frac{}{P \times P}$ 7 $\frac{B \times P}{QBP2}$) 6 $\frac{}{KB \times P \text{ bst}}$ 7 $\frac{KBQB4}{}$ (If 7 $\frac{KBQ3}{KtQB4}$ and we form the preceding Var) 7 $\frac{}{KBQB4}$ 8 $\frac{QBK3}{Cas}$ (Or he may play 8 $\frac{}{B \times Kt}$ 9 $\frac{Q \times B}{Q \times Q}$ [9 $\frac{B \times B}{QBP2 \text{ bg}}$] 10 $\frac{B \times Q}{Cas}$ 11 $\frac{Cas}{QKtB3}$ 12 $\frac{BK3}{KKtQ3 \text{ ev}}$) 9 $\frac{Cas}{QKtQ2}$ and then $\frac{}{QKtQKt3}$ or $\frac{}{QKtKB3}$ according to circumstances. The game is equal.

Digitized by Google

Another Variation on your Fifth Move.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{KKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{QP2}{P\times P}$ 4 $\frac{KP1}{KKtK5}$ 5 $\frac{QK2}{KB+\text{ bst}}$ 6 $\frac{KQ}{KKtQB4}$ 7 $\frac{QQB4}{KKtQR3}$ 8 $\frac{Kt\times P}{QP1}$ (if 8 $\frac{QRP1}{KBQB4}$ 9 $\frac{QKtP2}{KBKt3}$ [9 $\frac{Kt\times P}{QP1\text{ bg}}$] 10 $\frac{QKtP1}{KtQB4}$ 11 $\frac{Kt\times P}{QP1}$ 12 $\frac{KP\times P}{Q\times P\text{ gd g}}$) 9 $\frac{P\times P}{Q\times P}$ (9 $\frac{QBP1}{QP\times P}$ he wins P) 10 $\frac{KBQ3}{Cas}$ 11 $\frac{QBP1}{KBQB4}$ 12 $\frac{QBK3}{QBK3}$ 13 $\frac{Kt\times B}{}$ (if 13 $\frac{QQR4}{QBP1}$ or if 13 $\frac{QQKt5}{QKtP1\text{ gd g}}$) 13 $\frac{}{P\times Kt}$ 14 $\frac{KQB2}{B\times B}$ 15 $\frac{P\times B}{R+}$ 16 $\frac{QKtQ2}{QKtB3\text{ bg}}$

Variation on Fourth Move of Second Player.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{KKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{QP2}{P\times P}$ 4 $\frac{KP1}{KKtQ4}$ 5 $\frac{Q\times P}{}$ (If 5 $\frac{Kt\times P}{QP1\text{ ev}}$) 5 $\frac{}{KKtQKt3}$ 6 $\frac{QBKB4}{QKtB3}$ 7 $\frac{QK4}{}$ (If 7 $\frac{QK3}{KKtQ4}$ then, after the exchange, $\frac{}{QP1\text{ ev}}$) 7 $\frac{}{KBK2}$ (better than 7 $\frac{}{KBQB4}$) 8 $\frac{KBQ3}{}$ (to prevent his castling) 8 $\frac{}{QKtKt5}$ 9 $\frac{Cas}{Kt\times B}$ 10 $\frac{P\times Kt}{Cas}$ 11 $\frac{QP1}{QP2}$ 12 $\frac{QQ3}{QBK3\text{ ev}}$

Another Variation on Fourth Move of Second Player.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{KKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{QP2}{P\times P}$ 4 $\frac{KP1}{QK2}$ 5 $\frac{QK2}{}$ (This is your best attack; for if 5 $\frac{KBK2}{KKtKt5}$ 6 $\frac{Q\times P}{QP1}$ 7 $\frac{P\times P}{Q\times P}$ 8 $\frac{Q\times Q}{KB\times Q}$ 9 $\frac{KRP1}{KKtKB3\text{ ev}}$ In castling here, upon Move 6, you would lose a Pawn thus: 6 $\frac{Cas}{Kt\times KP}$ 7 $\frac{KRK}{QP1}$ [7 $\frac{Q\times P}{QKtB3}$ then $\frac{}{QP1}$ preserving Pawn in surplus] 8 $\frac{Q\times P}{QKtB3}$ he keeps P) 5 $\frac{}{KKtQ4}$ 6 $\frac{Kt\times P}{QP1}$

Digitized by Google

7 $\frac{P \times P}{}$ (If 7 $\frac{QBP2}{KKtQKt5}$ then if 8 $\frac{QRP1}{KKtQB3}$ and if 8 $\frac{KP \times QP}{KtQ6+}$ If 7 $\frac{KBP2}{QP \times P}$ 8 $\frac{Q \times P}{Q \times Q+ gdg}$ or if 8 $\frac{KBP \times P}{QKR5+ bg}$) 7 $\frac{}{Q \times Q+}$ 8 $\frac{KB \times Q}{KB \times P}$ 9 $\frac{Cas}{Cas}$ 10 $\frac{QBP2}{KKtKB5}$ 11 $\frac{KBKB3}{QBP1}$ (if 11 $\frac{QB \times Kt}{B \times B}$ 12 $\frac{QKtB3}{QBP1}$) 12 $\frac{QKtB3}{QKtQ2}$ 13 $\frac{QKtK4}{KBQB2}$ (13 $\frac{KRK}{QKtQB4}$) 14 $\frac{\text{if KKtKB5 or KRK}}{QKtK4 \text{ ev}}$

THIRTEENTH OPENING.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{KKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{QP2}{KKt \times P}$ 4 $\frac{KBQ3}{}$ (If 4 $\frac{QP \times P}{QP2}$ 5 $\frac{KBQ3}{QKtB3}$ brings us to a Var given elsewhere of this Opening. If 4 $\frac{KKt \times KP}{QP2}$ 5 $\frac{KBQ3}{}$ which would reproduce the position analysed further on) 4 $\frac{}{QP2}$ 5 $\frac{KKt \times KP}{}$ (You may also play 5 $\frac{QP \times P}{}$ as in Var) 5 $\frac{}{KBQ3}$ (However singular may appear the assertion on first view, his game, although at the moment strictly identical in position with yours, is not susceptible of a really good defence after his move 5 $\frac{}{KBQ3}$ The move 5 $\frac{}{QBP2}$ would have been tolerably good; as see in Var; but his correct and best move was 5 $\frac{}{KKtQ3}$ then if 6 $\frac{QBP2}{QP \times QBP}$ 7 $\frac{KKt \times P}{QBK3}$ 8 $\frac{Kt \times Kt+}{KB \times Kt}$ 9 $\frac{Cas}{Cas}$ 10 $\frac{QKtB3}{QBP1 \text{ ev}}$ If now 11 $\frac{QKtK4}{KRP1}$ 12 $\frac{QKB3}{KBQB2}$ 13 $\frac{QBK3}{QKtQ2}$ then $\frac{}{QKtQKt3}$ and $\frac{}{QKtQ4}$ after which you have not the slightest advantage) 6 $\frac{Cas}{Cas}$ (If 6 $\frac{}{QBP2}$ 7 $\frac{QBP2}{}$ Now, unless he castles, a move which we examine further on, he has no better course to take than 7 $\frac{}{QBP \times P}$ for if 7 $\frac{}{QQKt3}$ 8 $\frac{QBP \times P}{QBP \times P}$ 9 $\frac{Kt \times KBP w}{}$ and if 7 $\frac{}{KKtB3}$ 8 $\frac{QBP \times P}{Kt \times QP}$ [8 $\frac{}{QBP \times P}$

Digitized by Google

9 $\frac{\text{K B Kt}5+}{}$ and you win Pawn] 9 $\frac{\text{B Q Kt}5+}{\text{Q B Q}2}$ if he displace K he gets a bad game. 10 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{B}}{\text{Q Kt} \times \text{Kt}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{Q P} \times \text{Q B P bg}}{}$ Suppose again he plays 7 $\frac{}{\text{Q B P} \times \text{P}}$ you reply with 8 $\frac{\text{Q B P} \times \text{P}}{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}$ [If he retire Kt you win a Pawn by $\frac{\text{K B}+}{}$] 9 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{Q Kt Q}2 \text{ bst}}$ [he may not castle through $\frac{\text{K B} \times \text{K R P}+}{}$] 10 $\frac{\text{Q Kt Q}2}{\text{K B K B}3}$ [if 10 $\frac{}{\text{Cas}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{Kt K B}3}{}$ and if 10 $\frac{}{\text{Q Q Kt}3}$ 11 $\frac{\text{Kt Q B}4}{}$ or if 10 $\frac{}{\text{Kt Q Kt}3 \text{ or Q B}4}$ 11 $\frac{\text{K R K}}{}$ and he cannot castle for fear of $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{R P}+}{}$] 11 $\frac{\text{K R K}}{\text{Cas}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{Kt Q Kt}3}{\text{Q Q Kt}3}$ [if 12 $\frac{}{\text{Kt Q Kt}3}$ 13 $\frac{\text{Q K B}3}{}$ and then $\frac{\text{K R Q}}{}$ and his Q P is lost] 13 $\frac{\text{Q Q}3}{\text{K R P}1}$ 14 $\frac{\text{R Q}}{}$ you win Pawn. We have not space for all the Variations, but the result is too clear that 6 $\frac{}{\text{Q B P}2}$ compromises his game) 7 $\frac{\text{Q B P}2}{}$ The attack of this Gambit is irresistible (7 $\frac{\text{K B P}1}{}$ were disadvantageous on account of 7 $\frac{}{\text{Kt K B}3}$ then if 8 $\frac{\text{Q B Kt}5}{\text{Q B P}2}$ and afterwards $\frac{}{\text{Q Q Kt}3}$ getting the advantage, which he might equally attain if 8 $\frac{\text{Q B P}2}{\text{Q B P}2}$) 7 $\frac{}{\text{K B P}2 \text{ bst}}$ (If 7 $\frac{}{\text{Q B K}3}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Q Q Kt}3 \text{ bg}}{}$) (If 7 $\frac{}{\text{Q B P}2}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Q B P} \times \text{P}}{\text{K B} \times \text{Kt}}$ [8 $\frac{\text{Q B P} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q B P} \times \text{P}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{R P}+}{}$ you win Pawn] 9 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{B}}{\text{Q} \times \text{P}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{Q} \times \text{B}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{K R K bg}}{}$ If 7 $\frac{}{\text{Q B P}1}$ 8 $\frac{\text{K B P}2}{\text{K B P}2}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Q Q Kt}3}{}$ &c as further on; for if 8 $\frac{}{\text{K B P}1}$ 9 $\frac{\text{K Kt B}3}{\text{K B P}1}$ [9 $\frac{}{\text{Q B K}3}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Q Q Kt}3 \text{ bg}}{}$] 10 $\frac{\text{Q Q Kt}3}{\text{Q P} \times \text{Q B P}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{P}+}{\text{K K R}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{K Kt K}5}{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{Q P} \times \text{B gd g}}{}$ If 7 $\frac{}{\text{K B P}1}$ [in order to play in case of $\frac{\text{K Kt B}3}{\text{Q B K}3}$] 8 $\frac{\text{Q B P} \times \text{P}}{}$ and you gain Pawn; for then if 8 $\frac{}{\text{B} \times \text{Kt or P} \times \text{Kt}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}{}$ and if 8 $\frac{}{\text{Kt} \times \text{K B P}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{R} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{P} \times \text{Kt}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{R} \times \text{R}+}{}$ then against 10 $\frac{}{\text{Q} \times \text{R}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{B} \times \text{P}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{K R P}+}{}$ and against 10 $\frac{}{\text{B} \times \text{R}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{}$ lastly against 10 $\frac{}{\text{K} \times \text{R}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{B} \times \text{P}}$

Digitized by Google

12 $\frac{QKB3+}{}$ followed with $\frac{KB\times KRP}{}$) 8 $\frac{KBP2}{}$ (If 8 $\frac{P\times P}{B\times Kt}$ 9 $\frac{P\times B}{Q\times P}$ [9 $\frac{B\times Kt}{B\times RP+}$ 10 $\frac{K\times B}{QKR5+}$ 11 $\frac{KKKt}{KBP\times Bw}$] 10 $\frac{B\times Kt}{Q\times Q}$ 11 $\frac{R\times Q}{KBP\times B\,ev}$ If 8 $\frac{KBP1}{KtKB3}$ which gives him the possibility of playing next move $\frac{}{QBP2}$ or of taking Kt, and then advancing QP. If 8 $\frac{QQKt3}{B\times Kt}$ and then advances QP, equalising the game) 8 $\frac{}{QBP1}$ (If 8 $\frac{}{QBK3}$ 9 $\frac{QQKt3\,bg}{}$ If 8 $\frac{}{QBP2}$ 9 $\frac{QBP\times P}{B\times Kt}$ [9 $\frac{}{QBP\times P}$ 10 $\frac{KB\times Kt}{}$ you win Pawn] 10 $\frac{QP\times KB}{Q\times P}$ 11 $\frac{B\times Kt}{Q\times Q}$ [if 11 $\frac{}{Q\times B}$ 12 $\frac{QKtB3\,bg}{}$] 12 $\frac{R\times Q}{P\times B}$ 13 $\frac{QKtB3}{QBKB4}$ 14 $\frac{KRK\,bst}{KRQ}$ [14 $\frac{QKtKt5\ inf}{QKtR3}$ 15 $\frac{QKtQ6}{QKtP1}$ 16 $\frac{Kt\times B}{R\times Kt}$ 17 $\frac{KKtP2}{KRKB}$ 18 $\frac{KBP1\,bg}{}$ but 18 $\frac{}{QKtKt5}$ and then $\frac{}{QKtQ6}$ having yet the means of defence] [14 $\frac{KtQ5}{KRB2}$ as better now than $\frac{}{QKtR3}$] 15 $\frac{Kt\times P}{B\times Kt}$ 16 $\frac{R\times B}{R+}$ 17 $\frac{KKB2}{QKtB3}$ 18 $\frac{KRK}{R\times R}$ [18 $\frac{}{QRQ}$ 19 $\frac{QBK3}{KR\times QR}$ 20 $\frac{R\times R}{KtKt5}$ 21 $\frac{KKB3\,bg}{}$] 19 $\frac{K\times R}{KtQ5}$ 20 $\frac{KKB2}{KtQB7}$ 21 $\frac{RQKt}{QRQ}$ 22 $\frac{QBK3\,bg}{}$) 9 $\frac{QQKt3}{}$ On this move we must remark that we have already said that the weakest points in the primitive situation of the pieces are the two Bishops' Pawns. In the Openings springing from Queen's side, and that of the Two Kings' Knights', now before us, in which those two points are protected, the Key of the position against which, on both sides, the chief attack is directed, is as here seen the QKtP. 9 $\frac{}{KBQB2}$ (9 $\frac{}{QQKt3}$ 10 $\frac{Q\times Q}{P\times Q}$ 11 $\frac{P\times P\,bg}{P\times P}$) 10 $\frac{QKtB3}{Kt\times Kt}$ 11 $\frac{P\times Kt}{QKtP1}$ 12 $\frac{P\times P\,gd\,g}{}$

Variation on Fifth Move of Second Player.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{KKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{QP2}{KKt\times P}$ 4 $\frac{KBQ3}{QP2}$ 5 $\frac{Kt\times P}{QBP2}$ 6 $\frac{B\times Kt\,bst}{}$ (If 6 $\frac{P\times P}{K\,Kt\times P\,ev}$) 6 $\frac{}{P\times B}$ 7 $\frac{QP1}{KBQ3}$ KKtQB4 Cas 9 $\frac{Cas}{KBP2}$

Digitized by Google

10 $\frac{Kt \times B}{Q \times B}$ 11 $\frac{QBP2}{QKtQ2}$ 12 $\frac{QKtB3}{QKtKB3}$ Nearly equal.* You have, it is true, a passed Pawn; but in return his KP is well advanced and supported.

Variation on First Player's Fifth Move.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{KKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{QP2}{Kt \times P}$ 4 $\frac{KBQ3}{QP2}$ 5 $\frac{QP \times P}{QKtB3 \text{ bst}}$ 6 $\frac{Cas}{\quad}$ (If 6 $\frac{QBP2}{KB+}$ and you lose either a Pawn or your power of castling If 6 $\frac{B \times Kt}{\quad}$ your move is not very good. If 6 $\frac{KBKt5}{\quad}$ to double a Pawn, your play is naught, for the doubled P will be no disadvantage to him here, but quite the contrary. Ex. 6 $\frac{KBKt5}{KBQB4}$ 7 $\frac{B \times Kt+}{P \times B}$ if 8 $\frac{Cas}{QBR3w}$ and if 8 $\frac{QBK3}{KB \times B \text{ bg}}$) 6 $\frac{\quad}{KBQB4}$ 7 $\frac{QBP2}{\quad}$ (7 $\frac{BQKt5}{\quad}$ is not recommendable, for then 7 $\frac{\quad}{Cas}$ 8 $\frac{B \times Kt}{P \times B}$ here the doubled P is no disadvantage to him; and if 9 $\frac{QKtQ2}{QBR3}$ If 7 $\frac{KB \times Kt}{P \times B}$ 8 $\frac{Q \times Q+}{Kt \times Q}$ 9 $\frac{KtKKt5}{QBKB4}$ 10 $\frac{QKtB3}{QKtQB3}$ 11 $\frac{QBKB4}{KBQ5}$ 12 $\frac{KKt \times KP}{KB \times KP}$ 13 $\frac{QB \times B}{QKt \times B}$ ev) 7 $\frac{\quad}{Cas}$ 8 $\frac{P \times P}{Q \times P}$ 9 $\frac{B \times Kt}{Q \times B}$ 10 $\frac{QKtB3}{QKB4}$ The game is about equal† ("à peu près égale.")

To give our readers a complete idea of the important opening of the Two Knights, we shall close our analysis with the beautiful game won, by correspondence, in 1837, by M. Petroff, against three Russian amateurs consulting together. (This game is printed in Mr. Walker's "Chess Studies," No. 970.) We shall append certain notes and variations. M. Petroff had first move.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{Same}$ 3 $\frac{QP2}{Kt \times KP}$ 4 $\frac{KBQ3}{QP2}$ 5 $\frac{Kt \times P}{KBQ3}$ 6 $\frac{Cas}{Cas}$ 7 $\frac{QBP2}{KBP2}$ 8 $\frac{KBP2}{QBP1}$ 9 $\frac{QBK3}{Same}$ 10 $\frac{P \times P}{P \times P}$ 11 $\frac{QKtB3}{Same}$ 12 $\frac{QRQB}{KRKB3}$ (This un-

---

* Surely second player's game is as strong as yours.

† It were to be wished Chess authors would be more perspicuous in their words, and less timid of pronouncing their opinions. A game must be, in the opinion of its reviewer, *equal* or *unequal*, but cannot properly be dismissed upon any occasion as *about equal*, or *nearly equal*, without stating on which side the advantage or disadvantage exists.

Digitized by Google

happy counter-attack is fatal to the coalition. In games of even and similar character on both sides, the party generally loses who first seeks to leave the beaten path. But observe the admirable style in which Petroff profits by his adversaries' error, and breaches their fortifications) 13 $\frac{B \times Kt}{BP \times B}$ 14 $\frac{KtQKt5}{KtK2}$ 15 $\frac{Kt \times B}{Q \times Kt}$ 16 $\frac{KKtP2}{KKtP1}$ 17 $\frac{KBP1}{}$ (This sacrifice surpasses all eulogium) 17 $\frac{}{P \times P}$ 18 $\frac{BKKt5}{KRKB}$ 19 $\frac{BKR6}{KRQB}$ (Their best resource consisted in leaving R en prise, and advancing KBP) 20 $\frac{QQ2}{}$ Second player's game is now infallibly lost. But as the situation affords so much interest, we here give, in two variations, two several systems of existing and probable means of defence, besides that which was really adopted.

FIRST DEFENCE.

20 $\frac{}{KtKt3}$ 21 $\frac{R \times R+}{R \times R}$ 22 $\frac{P \times P}{Kt \times Kt}$ 23 $\frac{QKKt5+}{Kt\ in}$ 24 $\frac{P \times Kt}{QQ2}$ 25 $\frac{RKB7}{}$ (this is the *coup de grâce*) 25 $\frac{}{RQB8+}$ 26 $\frac{KKB2}{RQB7+}$ 27 $\frac{KK3\ w}{}$

SECOND DEFENCE.

20 $\frac{}{R \times R}$ 21 $\frac{QKKt5+}{Kt\ in}$ 22 $\frac{Kt \times Kt}{KRQB2\ bst}$ (If 22 $\frac{}{R \times R+}$ 23 $\frac{K \times R}{}$ and if then 23 $\frac{}{QQ}$ 24 $\frac{KtK7+}{KKB2}$ 25 $\frac{QKR5+}{}$ and you presently win Q. But if 23 $\frac{}{KKB2}$ 24 $\frac{KtK5+}{KK}$ 25 $\frac{QKB6}{}$ and mate is inevitable. Lastly if 23 $\frac{}{QQB2}$ 24 $\frac{KtK7+}{KKR*}$ 25 $\frac{QKKt7\ m}{}$) 23 $\frac{KtK7+}{KKB2}$ 24 $\frac{P \times P}{Q \times Kt}$ (They cannot retreat B without mate or loss of Q; nor can they take P without loss of piece. If they retreat K, 24 $\frac{}{KK}$ 25 $\frac{P \times B}{Q \times P}$ 26 $\frac{RKB8+}{}$ you have a sur-

* But instead of going to corner he plays 24 $\frac{}{KKB2}$ Your 24th best move is therefore 25 $\frac{KtK5+}{}$ which forces the game directly.

Digitized by Google

plus piece. If 24 $\frac{}{R \times Kt}$ you mate in two) 25 $\frac{P \times B+}{K \times P}$ 26 $\frac{QKKt4+}{KQ3}$ 27 $\frac{B+}{KQB3}$ 28 $\frac{R+}{KQKt4}$ (If 28 $\frac{}{KQKt3}$ 29 $\frac{B \times R+}{}$) 29 $\frac{R \times R\ w}{}$

DEFENCE REALLY ADOPTED.

20 $\frac{}{QQ}$ (The object of this move was to open, in despair of gain, some chance of a draw. If now 21 $\frac{Q+}{Kt\ in}$ 22 $\frac{P \times P}{Q \times Q}$ 23 $\frac{B \times Q}{Kt \times Kt}$ 24 $\frac{P \times Kt}{KKB2\ \&c}$ and again if now 21 $\frac{Q+}{Kt\ in}$ 22 $\frac{Q \times Q+}{R \times Q}$ 23 $\frac{P \times P}{Kt \times Kt}$ 24 $\frac{P \times Kt}{KKB2\ \&c}$) 21 $\frac{R \times R}{R \times R}$ 22 $\frac{P \times P}{Kt \times P}$ (If 22 $\frac{}{B \times P}$ 23 $\frac{Q+}{B\ in}$ 24 $\frac{QKB6}{KtKB4}$ 25 $\frac{R \times Kt\ w}{}$) 23 $\frac{QKKt2+}{KKR}$ 24 $\frac{R \times Kt}{QKKt}$ 25 $\frac{RKB6}{BKR6}$ 26 $\frac{QKKt3}{Q \times Q}$ 27 $\frac{P \times Q\ w}{}$ (On this move the coalition abandoned the game. They are threatened with loss of another piece; which may indeed be saved thus 27 $\frac{}{RK}$ 28 $\frac{KKtP1}{KP1}$ 29 $\frac{B \times KP}{B \times P}$ 30 $\frac{Kt \times B}{RKKt}$ 31 $\frac{RKB5\ w}{}$)

SECTION II.

After having now examined all the various cases in the King's Knight's Opening, in which the player does not on the move support his menaced KP, pass we on to the analysis of those in which he prefers at once defending the Pawn. We will not dwell upon the monstrous defences 2 $\frac{}{KBQ3}$ and 2 $\frac{}{QK2}$ but have a few words to say upon the defence 2 $\frac{}{KBP1}$ which is historically interesting as originating with Damiano; and hence sometimes styled, though incorrectly so, Damiano's Gambit. This defence is bad by reason of 1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$

Digitized by Google

2 $\frac{KKtB3}{KBP1}$ 3 $\frac{Kt \times KP \text{ bst}}{QK2}$* (if 3 $\frac{}{P \times Kt}$ 4 $\frac{QKR5+w}{}$) 4 $\frac{KKtB3 \text{ bst}}{Q \times P+}$ 5 $\frac{KBK2}{}$ you afterwards drive away Queen, castle, and have gd g. Against 4 $\frac{}{QP2}$ 5 $\frac{QP1}{}$

The following opening 1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKB3}$ is likewise vicious; compromising seriously his Queen. 3 $\frac{QKtB3 \text{ bst}}{}$ (3 $\frac{KBQB4}{}$ and 3 $\frac{QP2}{}$ are both comparatively feeble) 3 $\frac{}{QBP1}$ 4 $\frac{QP2}{KP \times P}$ (against 4 $\frac{}{QP1}$ 5 $\frac{QP \times KP}{}$ then $\frac{QBKt5}{}$ and $\frac{QK2}{}$) 5 $\frac{KP1}{QKKt3}$ 6 $\frac{Q \times P}{\text{if } QP1}$ 7 $\frac{KBK2}{}$ you have a magnificent position.

There remains, then, but the choice of one of these two modes of defending KP, 2 $\frac{}{QP1}$ and 2 $\frac{}{QKtB3}$ Ruy Lopez and Philidor are the only masters who pronounce in favour of the former; while all the others, characterised as the Italian school, give judgment for the latter. The consequence of 2 $\frac{}{QP1}$ is to cramp the energies of his KB, and to narrow the active principles of the game. Still, we should do wrong to blame hastily the two ancient masters cited. Lopez, in recommending 2 $\frac{}{QP1}$ wished to evade for second player the multiplied and really dangerous attacks to which 2 $\frac{}{QKtB3}$ exposes him; well knowing the defects of 2 $\frac{}{QP1}$ but believing them less considerable than those of

---

* I cannot agree with Jaenisch here; still believing, as I have elsewhere expressed myself, that the soundest play is not to take P with Kt, but to move 3 $\frac{KBQB4}{}$ and wait a few moves; secure of getting eventually the better opening through the crowded position second player will inevitably fall into. Instead of Jaenisch's fourth move 4 $\frac{}{Q \times P+}$ he should play 4 $\frac{}{QP2}$ and would come out of the opening with an equal game; through your third move 3 $\frac{Kt \times P}{}$

Digitized by Google

2 $\frac{}{\text{QKtB3}}$ Philidor, in pronouncing for the defence 2 $\frac{}{\text{QP1}}$ was led into the error by the discovery of a Counter-gambit, considered by him as advantageous for second player; an error so pardonable, and so little manifest, that all the authors who have attempted to refute him, have been themselves deceived, as we shall show. Moreover, the chief of the French school had ever present to view his grand principle of the Pawns; one of the consequences of which is never *unnecessarily* to play QKtB3. Philidor had not foreseen this *necessity* in the actual case; that is all. It would be, we hold, difficult in the extreme to prove the loss of the game through 2 $\frac{}{\text{QP1}}$, but certain it is that it induces an inferior Opening. For the rest, the analysis of this move, as given in the books, is exceedingly defective, as now about to be shown for the first time.

FOURTEENTH OPENING.

Philidor's Counter-Gambit.

1 $\frac{\text{KP2}}{\text{KP2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{\text{QP1}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{QP2 bst}}{}$ (For 3 $\frac{\text{KBQB4}}{}$ See Openings XVI and XVII) 3 $\frac{}{\text{KBP2}}$ (This is the celebrated Counter-gambit, to which Philidor so fondly clung, and which occupied him, it may be said, during a great part of his life.* It is on this move he based his demonstration of the weakness of 2 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{}$ which, on the contrary, in our own day, is generally considered the best move you can play. The Italian contemporaries of Philidor, with Ercole del Rio at their head, at once attacked him on the subject of this Counter-gambit, which all recent writers equally proclaim hazardous. We are ourselves of the same belief, and shall prove the truth of our opinions; but our reasons will be found to be very different to those habitually opposed to the theory of the French grand master of Chess.†

Instead of 3 $\frac{}{\text{KBP2}}$ it were much better to move 3 $\frac{}{\text{KKtB3}}$ or 3 $\frac{}{\text{KP} \times \text{P}}$ In the following Openings, we shall examine all the other defences at the Third Move, which are indeed alike defective; since the Move 2 $\frac{}{\text{QP1}}$

---

* I hardly comprehend how this can be said with accuracy; since Philidor so rarely played without giving odds.

† The last writer in the field, treating of any given science, cannot well fail to be the strongest; since he has all the experience of former authors, on which to graft his own discoveries.

Digitized by Google

shutting up his K B, is only played to risk subsequently the Counter-gambit; without the success of which, vain is his hope to attain an opening strictly equal; resting on the defensive with a piece less in play) 4 $\frac{\text{Q P} \times \text{P bst}}{\text{K B P} \times \text{P}}$ ($4 \frac{\text{K P} \times \text{K B P}}{\text{K P 1 b g}}$) 5 $\frac{\text{Kt Kt 5}}{\text{Q P 1}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{K P 1}}{\quad}$ (This move, given by Del Rio, in his refutation of Philidor, is now in general adoption. Philidor played 6 $\frac{\text{K B P 2}}{\quad}$ on which he may reply by 6 $\frac{\quad}{\text{K B K 2}}$ threatening thereby to isolate your K P, which would subsequently fall an easy prey) 6 $\frac{\quad}{\text{K Kt R 3}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Q K R 5+}}{\text{K Kt P 1}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Q K R 3}}{\quad}$ (The attack on Moves 7 and 8 is that prescribed by all recent authors, as being the best possible. If 7 $\frac{\text{Q B P 2}}{\text{Q P 1 bst}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{K P}}{\quad}$ [8 $\frac{\text{Q K R 5+}}{\text{K Kt P 1}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Q K R 3}}{\text{P K 6 b g}}$ and if 9 $\frac{\text{Q K R 4}}{\text{P K 6}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{K B P} \times \text{P}}{\text{Kt K B 4}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{Q K Kt 4}}{\text{K R P 2}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{Q K B 4}}{\text{K B Q 3 b g}}$] 8 $\frac{\quad}{\text{K B +}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Q B Q 2}}{\text{B} \times \text{B +}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Q Kt} \times \text{B}}{\text{Q B} \times \text{P}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{Q B P 1}}{\text{Cas}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{Q Kt P 2}}{\text{Q Kt P 1}}$ he has a passed P and the better game. If 7 $\frac{\text{Q Kt B 3}}{\text{Q B P 1}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{K Kt} \times \text{K P}}{\text{P} \times \text{Kt}}$. [if 8 $\frac{\quad}{\text{Q B} \times \text{P}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{Kt b g}}{\quad}$] 9 $\frac{\text{Q K R 5+}}{\text{K Kt P 1}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Q K 5}}{\text{K R K Kt}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{B} \times \text{B}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{Q R Q}}{\text{Q K 2}}$ [12 $\frac{\quad}{\text{Q K Kt 4}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{Q Q B 7}}{\quad}$] 13 $\frac{\text{K B Q B 4}}{\text{K B Kt 2}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{P}}{\text{B} \times \text{Kt +}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{B}}{\text{Q Kt P 2}}$ 16 $\frac{\text{K B Q Kt 3}}{\text{Q R P 2}}$ [16 $\frac{\text{K B} \times \text{P bd}}{\text{Q} \times \text{P}}$] Second player has the better game (as see in Walker's Treatise). Ercole del Rio had quite another idea upon this matter; from which he promised himself to secure the advantage for first player. But Philidor has already annihilated this supposition, and it is in the present time altogether abandoned. Del Rio's plan was 7 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{K R P}}{\quad}$ then if 7 $\frac{\quad}{\text{R} \times \text{Kt}}$ you win by 8 $\frac{\text{Q K R 5+}}{\quad}$ But his correct reply is 7 $\frac{\quad}{\text{B} \times \text{K P}}$ of which the following is the result: 8 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{K B}}{\quad}$ [if 8 $\frac{\text{Kt Kt 5}}{\text{Q K B 3 gd g}}$] 8 $\frac{\quad}{\text{K} \times \text{Kt}}$ [if 8 $\frac{\quad}{\text{R} \times \text{Kt}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{P} \times \text{B}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Q K R 5+}}{\quad}$ you win a Pawn] Second player's King is now displaced, but in return he has central Pawns, and his game on the whole is the better of the two. For the move 7 $\frac{\text{K B P 1}}{\quad}$ which constitutes M. Der Lasa's attack, see Var) 8 $\frac{\quad}{\text{Q K B 3 bst}}$ (What can you now

Digitized by Google

do? You are threatened with $\frac{}{\text{KtKB4}}$ which would cause the loss of your KP, too far advanced. You cannot take KP with Kt without loss; ex. 9 $\frac{\text{Kt}\times\text{KP}}{\text{P}\times\text{Kt}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{B}\times\text{Kt}}{\text{Q}\times\text{QKtP}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{QQB3}}{\text{Q}\times\text{Q}+}$ 12 $\frac{\text{QKt}\times\text{Q}}{\text{B}\times\text{B w}}$ The most simple course to adopt would perhaps be 9 $\frac{\text{QKtB3}}{\text{QBP1 bst}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{KKt}\times\text{KP}}{}$ then if 10 $\frac{}{\text{P}\times\text{Kt}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{B}\times\text{KKt}}{\text{KB}\times\text{B bst}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{Q}\times\text{B}}{\text{Q}\times\text{KP}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{Cas QR b g}}{}$ But his best move was 10 $\frac{}{\text{Q}\times\text{KP}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{Q}\times\text{Q}+}{\text{B}\times\text{Q gd g}}$ If 9 $\frac{\text{KBP1}}{\text{P}\times\text{P}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Q}\times\text{P}}{\text{Q}\times\text{Q}}$ [10 $\frac{\text{P}\times\text{P}}{\text{KtKB4}}$ he wins your Pawn] 11 $\frac{\text{P}\times\text{Q}}{\text{KK2}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{KBR3}}{\text{KKtKB4}}$ [12 $\frac{\text{QKtB3}}{\text{QBP1}}$] 13 $\frac{\text{KKB2}}{\text{KRP1}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{KtKB7}}{\text{KRR2}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{KtK5}}{\text{KKB3}}$ you lose a Pawn. Come we now to the move given in preference by the authors 9 $\frac{\text{QBP2}}{}$) 9 $\frac{\text{QBP2}}{}$

The following continuation is given by Chess authors, for instance, by La Bourdonnais: 9 $\frac{}{\text{QBP1}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{P}\times\text{P}}{\text{P}\times\text{P}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{QKtB3}}{\text{QK4}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{KB}+}{\text{QKtB3}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{\text{KBKt2}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{KRQ}}{}$ you win a Pawn. It is strange how writers have deceived themselves on the point here of the best defence. For against 9 $\frac{\text{QBP2}}{}$ the correct reply is not 9 $\frac{}{\text{QBP1}}$ but 9 $\frac{}{\text{QP1}}$ on which to avoid $\frac{}{\text{KP1}}$ you have no better move than 10 $\frac{\text{Kt}\times\text{KP}}{}$ then 10 $\frac{}{\text{Q}\times\text{KP}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{Q}\times\text{Q}+}{\text{B}\times\text{Q}}$ he has a passed Pawn, and better g. 9 $\frac{\text{QBP2}}{}$ is decidedly therefore a bad move; but still, to show the great resources of second player's game, we will admit the defence for the moment of 9 $\frac{}{\text{QBP1}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{P}\times\text{P}}{\text{P}\times\text{P}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{QKtB3}}{}$ Here only, in lieu of 11 $\frac{}{\text{QK4}}$ we shall play 11 $\frac{}{\text{KBKt5}}$ and second player's game is fully susceptible of defence. (Suppose 12 $\frac{\text{Q}\times\text{Kt}}{\text{B}\times\text{Kt}+}$) 12 $\frac{\text{KB}+}{\text{QKtB3}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{\text{KB}\times\text{Kt}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{Q}\times\text{KB}}{\text{Q}\times\text{Q}}$

Digitized by Google

(14 $\frac{P \times B}{K\,Kt\,B4\ g\,d\,g}$) 15 $\frac{P \times Q}{K\,Kt\,KB4\ bst}$ 16 $\frac{K\,R\,Q}{K\,R\,P1\ bst}$ 17 $\frac{K\,Kt\,KB7}{K\,R\,R2}$ 18 $\frac{R \times P}{\quad}$ (if 18 $\frac{Kt\,K5}{K\,Kt\,K2}$ 19 $\frac{Q\,B\,R3}{Q\,B \times P}$ 20 $\frac{Q\,B \times K\,Kt}{K \times B}$ 21 $\frac{Kt \times Kt}{P \times Kt}$ 22 $\frac{B \times P}{Q\,R\,Q}$ 23 $\frac{Q\,R\,Q\,Kt}{K\,Q3}$ he has central Pawns) 18 $\frac{\quad}{B \times P}$ 19 $\frac{Kt\,Q\,6+}{K\,K2\ bst}$ 20 $\frac{Kt \times Kt+}{P \times Kt}$ 21 $\frac{B \times Kt}{P \times B}$ 22 $\frac{K\,R\,Q4}{\quad}$ Second player has good game.

Attack by M. Von Heydebrand und Der Lasa.

1 $\frac{K\,P2}{K\,P2}$ 2 $\frac{K\,Kt\,B3}{Q\,P1}$ 3 $\frac{Q\,P2}{K\,B\,P2}$ 4 $\frac{Q\,P \times P}{K\,B\,P \times P}$ 5 $\frac{K\,Kt\,Kt5}{Q\,P1}$ 6 $\frac{K\,P1}{K\,Kt\,R3}$ 7 $\frac{K\,B\,P1}{\quad}$ This move, hitherto unnoticed by authors, is the only one which gives you the advantage. It has been recently communicated to us by M. Von Der Lasa, of Berlin. The following are, in our opinion, its most probable consequences. 7 $\frac{\quad}{K\,P \times P}$ (If 7 $\frac{\quad}{K\,B\,K2}$ * 8 $\frac{P \times P}{Q\,P \times P}$ [8 $\frac{\quad}{B \times Kt}$ 9 $\frac{Q\,K\,R5+}{\quad}$ now if 9 $\frac{\quad}{K\,K\,B}$ 10 $\frac{Q\,B \times B\ w}{\quad}$ and if 9 $\frac{\quad}{K\,Kt\,P1}$ 10 $\frac{Q \times B}{Q \times Q}$ 11 $\frac{B \times Q}{\quad}$ then $\frac{K\,P \times Q\,P\ w}{\quad}$ Finally, if 8 $\frac{\quad}{Cas}$ 9 $\frac{Q > P}{Q \times Q}$ 10 $\frac{P \times Q}{K\,R\,K\,B4}$ 11 $\frac{Kt\,K\,B7}{Kt \times Kt}$ 12 $\frac{P \times Kt+}{\quad}$ then $\frac{K\,B\,Q\,B4\ bg}{\quad}$] 9 $\frac{Q\,K\,R5+}{K\,K\,B}$ 10 $\frac{Kt \times K\,P\ w}{\quad}$ if 10 $\frac{\quad}{Q\,B \times P}$ 11 $\frac{Q\,B \times Kt\ w}{\quad}$ If 7 $\frac{\quad}{K\,Kt\,P1}$ 8 $\frac{Q\,Q4}{K\,R\,Kt}$ 9 $\frac{P \times P\ bg}{\quad}$ If 7 $\frac{\quad}{Q\,Q3}$ 8 $\frac{Q\,Kt\,B3}{\quad}$ if now 8 $\frac{\quad}{P \times K\,B\,P}$ 9 $\frac{Q \times P}{P \times K\,Kt\,P}$ 10 $\frac{K\,B \times P\ bst}{\quad}$ if 8 $\frac{\quad}{Q\,B \times P}$ 9 $\frac{Kt \times B}{Q \times Kt}$ 10 $\frac{Q \times P}{\quad}$ you win a Pawn. Or, if 8 $\frac{\quad}{Q\,B\,P1}$ 9 $\frac{K\,B\,P \times P}{Q\,B \times P}$ 10 $\frac{Kt \times B}{Q \times Kt}$ 11 $\frac{Q\,B \times Kt}{P \times B}$ [11 $\frac{\quad}{Q \times B}$ 12 $\frac{K\,P \times Q\,P\ bg}{\quad}$]

---

* The following Variation is worth further analysis : 7 $\frac{\quad}{K\,B\,Q\,B4}$ 8 $\frac{P \times P}{Cas}$ 9 $\frac{P \times P}{B\,K\,B7+}$ 10 $\frac{K\,K2}{\quad}$ though crowded, in favour of first player.

Digitized by Google

12 $\frac{QKR5+\ bg}{}$ Again, at Move 7, if 7 $\frac{}{QKtB3}$ 8 $\frac{KBKt5}{QQ3}$ [if 8 $\frac{QKtB3}{KP\times P\ gd\ g}$] 9 $\frac{P\times P}{P\times P}$ [9 $\frac{}{QB\times P}$ 10 $\frac{Kt\times B}{Q\times Kt}$ 11 $\frac{Q\times P\ bg}{}$] 10 $\frac{QK2}{QB\times P}$ 11 $\frac{Kt\times KP\ bst}{QK4\ bst}$ [if 11 $\frac{Q\times P}{Cas\ QR}$ 12 $\frac{Q\times B+}{Q\times Q}$ 13 $\frac{Kt\times Q}{QRK\ gd\ g}$] 12 $\frac{B\times Kt+}{P\times B}$ 13 $\frac{B\times Kt\ w}{}$ If 13 $\frac{}{Q\times QKtP}$ 14 $\frac{KtQB5}{}$) 8 $\frac{Q\times KBP}{QQ3}$ 9 $\frac{KBQ3}{}$ (if 9 $\frac{KtKB7}{Q\times P+}$ or if 9 $\frac{QBKB4}{QQKt5+}$ finally, if 9 $\frac{QKtB3}{QB\times P}$ 10 $\frac{QK3}{KQ2}$) 9 $\frac{}{QB\times P}$ 10 $\frac{Cas}{KQ}$ (if 10 $\frac{}{KBK2}$ 11 $\frac{QKR5+}{KQ}$ 12 $\frac{Kt\times B+}{Q\times Kt}$ 13 $\frac{QB\times Kt}{KKtP\times B}$ 14 $\frac{QKtB3}{BQB4+}$ 15 $\frac{KKR}{QBP1}$ 16 $\frac{QRK}{QQ3}$ 17 $\frac{KRKB7\ w}{}$) 11 $\frac{Kt\times B+}{Q\times Kt}$ 12 $\frac{B\times Kt}{KKtP\times B}$ 13 $\frac{QKtB3}{KB+}$ 14 $\frac{KKR}{KRKB}$ (If 14 $\frac{}{QBP1}$ he creates the position we have just quitted; and which appears lost to him) 15 $\frac{Q\times P+}{Q\times Q}$ * 16 $\frac{Kt\times Q\ bg}{}$

FIFTEENTH OPENING.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{QP1}$ 3 $\frac{QP2}{KP\times P}$ (For 3 $\frac{}{KKtB3}$ see Var. If 3 $\frac{}{QBKt5}$ 4 $\frac{QP\times P}{B\times Kt}$ 5 $\frac{KKtP\times B}{QP\times P}$ 6 $\frac{Q\times Q+}{K\times Q}$ 7 $\frac{PKB4\ bg}{}$ If 3 $\frac{}{QBKt5}$ 4 $\frac{QBP1}{}$ would be weaker play on your part) 4 $\frac{Q\times P}{}$ (The correct move according to the Italian authors; but those writers have never told us why we should not retake with Kt; and consequently the majority of amateurs prefer the latter move. The reason is indeed curious enough why 4 $\frac{KKt\times P}{}$ is in reality a bad move; yet it has escaped all the classics, however simple. Ex. 4 $\frac{KKt\times P}{QP1}$ and he regains the move upon you. If now 5 $\frac{KP1}{QBP2}$ and if 5 $\frac{KP\times P}{Q\times P}$ 6 $\frac{QKtB3}{KBQKt5}$) 4 $\frac{}{QKtB3}$ (If 4 $\frac{}{QBKt5}$

* It would seem to me stronger play to attack Q with K B. Changing Queens rather lessens second player's embarrassment.

Digitized by Google

5 $\frac{\text{K Kt Kt5}}{\text{K R P1}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{K P1 gd g}}{}$ If 4 $\frac{}{\text{Q K B3}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{Q Q}}{}$ and his Queen is somewhat compromised) 5 $\frac{\text{K B Kt5}}{\text{Q B Q2}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{Q Q}}{\text{K Kt B3}}$ (If 6 $\frac{}{\text{Q R P1}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{K B Q B4 bg}}{}$ If 6 $\frac{}{\text{Q Kt K4}}$ he loses a Pawn: 7 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{P} \times \text{Kt}}$ [7 $\frac{}{\text{B} \times \text{B}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{K B P}}{}$] 8 $\frac{\text{Q Q5}}{}$ The Italian classics, we see not why, play here, 6 $\frac{}{\text{Q Kt Kt5}}$ on which 7 $\frac{\text{K B Q B4}}{\text{K Kt B3}}$ [7 $\frac{}{\text{K B K2}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Q B P1}}{\text{Q Kt B3}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Q Q Kt3 bg}}{}$] 8 $\frac{\text{K Kt Kt5}}{\text{Q P1}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{K B} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q Kt} \times \text{B}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{Kt bg}}{}$) 7 $\frac{\text{Q B Kt5}}{\text{Q Kt K4}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{B}+}{\text{Q Kt} \times \text{B}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Q Kt B3}}{\text{K B K2}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{\text{Cas}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{Q Q4 bg}}{}$

Variation on Second Player's Third Move.

1 $\frac{\text{K P2}}{\text{K P2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{K Kt B3}}{\text{Q P1}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{Q P2}}{\text{K Kt B3}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{Q B Kt5}}{\text{K P} \times \text{P}}$ (If 4 $\frac{}{\text{Q B Kt5}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q B} \times \text{Kt}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{B}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ [or you may play 6 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{B}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{Q}+}{\text{K} \times \text{Q}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}+}{\text{P} \times \text{B}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{K B Q B4 bg}}{}$] 7 $\frac{\text{Q Q Kt3}}{\text{Q Kt P1}}$ [7 $\frac{}{\text{Q Kt Q2}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{K B Q B4 bg}}{}$] 8 $\frac{\text{K B Q B4}}{}$ then $\frac{\text{Q Kt B3}}{}$ $\frac{\text{Q R Q}}{}$ and you have manifestly the advantage) 5 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{P}}{\text{K B K2}}$ (If 5 $\frac{}{\text{Q Kt B3}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{K B Kt5}}{}$ and we re-enter upon a bygone Var) 6 $\frac{\text{Q Kt B3}}{\text{Cas}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Cas Q R}}{}$ * you have the advantage of position.

SIXTEENTH OPENING.

1 $\frac{\text{K P2}}{\text{K P2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{K Kt B3}}{\text{Q P1}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{K B Q B4}}{}$ This attack is inferior to 3 $\frac{\text{Q P2}}{}$ we do not however agree with some writers that it allows second player to equalise the game by pushing 3 $\frac{}{\text{K B P2}}$ (see following Opening) or 3 $\frac{}{\text{Q B P1}}$ In the latter case the continuation would be 3 $\frac{}{\text{Q B P1}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{Q P2}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ (4 $\frac{}{\text{K Kt B3}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{K Kt Kt5}}{\text{Q P1}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{Q P} \times \text{P}}{\text{K Kt} \times \text{P}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{Kt}}{}$ then 8 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{Q}+ \text{bg}}{}$

* The propriety of castling here with Q R may be doubted.

Digitized by Google

while for the move 4 $\frac{}{KBP2}$ see Opening XVII) 5 $\frac{Q \times P}{QBK3}$ 6 $\frac{B \times B}{P \times B}$ 7 $\frac{Cas}{KP1}$ (if 7 $\frac{}{QP1}$ 8 $\frac{KRK\,bg}{}$ if 7 $\frac{}{KKtB3}$ 8 $\frac{KP1\,bg}{}$) 8 $\frac{QQB4\,bg}{}$ you have gained time upon him. And again, if 3 $\frac{}{QBP1}$ 4 $\frac{QP2}{P \times P}$ 5 $\frac{Q \times P}{QKB3}$ 6 $\frac{QBP1}{QBK3}$ 7 $\frac{KBQ3}{}$ his Q is badly placed. In a word, the move 3 $\frac{}{QBP1}$ causes loss of time in bringing out his pieces. His best move, in our opinion, against 3 $\frac{KBQB4}{}$ is 3 $\frac{}{QBKt5}$ but then 4 $\frac{QBP1\ bst}{B \times Kt}$ (the same if you play 4 $\frac{KRP1}{}$) 5 $\frac{Q \times B}{KKtB3}$ (5 $\frac{P \times B}{QBP1}$ 6 $\frac{QQKt3}{QQB2}$ 7 $\frac{QP2}{KKtB3}$ would be less advantageous for you) 6 $\frac{QP2}{KBK2}$ his situation is certainly still capable of being defended, though of the same character as those in the preceding opening, that is, cramped and constricted. It is important further to remark that if 3 $\frac{}{KKtB3\ bd}$ 4 $\frac{KKtKt5}{QP1}$ (4 $\frac{}{Kt \times KP}$ 5 $\frac{B \times KBP+w}{}$) 5 $\frac{KP \times P}{Kt \times P}$ 6 $\frac{Kt \times KBP}{K \times Kt}$ 7 $\frac{QKB3+}{KK3}$ 8 $\frac{QKtB3}{QBP1}$ 9 $\frac{QP2}{KBKt5}$ 10 $\frac{Cas}{B \times Kt}$ 11 $\frac{P \times B}{}$ your attack is irresistible. Now to recapitulate our leading moves:—

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{QP1}$ 3 $\frac{KBQB4}{QBK3}$ this is recommended both by Lopez and Cozio. 4 $\frac{B \times B\ bst}{P \times B}$ 5 $\frac{QBP1\ bst}{}$ (you threaten 6 $\frac{QQKt3}{}$ and then 7 $\frac{KKtKt5}{}$ Lopez advises the defence to adopt 5 $\frac{}{QKtB3}$ 6 $\frac{QQKt3}{QQB}$ 7 $\frac{KKtKt5}{QKtQ}$ but then 8 $\frac{QP2}{KP \times P}$ 9 $\frac{P \times P}{KRP1}$ 10 $\frac{KKtB3}{KKtB3}$ 11 $\frac{QKtB3}{}$ he has bad g. If 5 $\frac{}{KBK2}$ 6 $\frac{QQKt3}{QQB}$ 7 $\frac{QP}{P \times P}$ [to avoid an isolated doubled P] 8 $\frac{KKt \times P}{KP1}$ 9 $\frac{KtK6}{KBKB3}$ 10 $\frac{QBKt5}{B \times B}$ 11 $\frac{Kt \times B}{KKtR3}$ 12 $\frac{KtK6\,bg}{}$) 5 $\frac{}{KRP1}$ 6 $\frac{QQKt3}{QQB}$ 7 $\frac{QP2}{KP \times P}$ 8 $\frac{P \times P\ bst}{}$ &c. His game will be always inferior to yours through the bad position of his Q, his K P, and the

Digitized by Google

threatened spring of your Kt upon KR4. If, on the contrary, you had played 8 $\frac{Kt \times P}{KP1}$ 9 $\frac{QK6+}{}$ (if 9 $\frac{KtK6}{KKtB3}$) 9 $\frac{}{KKtK2}$ (if 9 $\frac{}{Q \times Q}$ 10 $\frac{Kt \times Q}{QKtR3}$ 11 $\frac{Kt \times KB\,b\,g}{}$) 10 $\frac{Q \times Q+}{Kt \times Q}$ 11 $\frac{KtK6}{QKtR3}$ 12 $\frac{Kt \times KB}{R \times Kt}$ ev. In general, we consider that the Pawn thus doubled through the offer to change Bishops 3 $\frac{}{QBK3}$ considerably weakens his position.*

SEVENTEENTH OPENING.

The Lopez Counter-gambit.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{QP1}$ 3 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBP2}$ A want long since experienced, and acknowledged, is a perfect nomenclature of the various Openings universally agreed upon, for the sake of classing and distinguishing the various débuts, and thus throwing light upon their extreme difficulties. We have chosen to name the Lopez Counter-gambit after its inventor, because then the two Counter-gambits (Openings XIV and XVII) will both recall to the amateur, the two great masters, who alone champion the move 2 $\frac{}{QP1}$

The Lopez Counter-gambit, which is one of the most difficult Openings in Chess, has been considered safe for the second player by Lopez, Philidor, and La Bourdonnais, who only supposes the adversary to reply by 4 $\frac{B \times Kt}{}$ or 4 $\frac{QP1}{}$ Allgaier first indicated the correct move 4 $\frac{QP2}{}$ but his demonstration cleared up none of the doubts resting upon the exactitude of the Counter-gambit 3 $\frac{}{KBP2}$ since it only supposed the one reply 4 $\frac{QP2}{KBP \times KP}$ Another German author, Koch, analyses the suppository move of 4 $\frac{QP2}{KP \times P}$, but very imperfectly. An assiduous study, during four years, has enabled us to complete at length the analysis of Allgaier, and to prove strictly that a satisfactory defence for

---

* Here I entirely concur with Jaenisch; holding that it is mostly weak to oppose QB to KB early in the game, as in the example before us; and considering that in such case the opponent frequently does wrong by retreating KBQKt3, but should rather, in a large number of cases, at once take B, doubling P. But does not Jaenisch now preach a different doctrine to what he did formerly (see p. 6.), and has matured experience changed the views he originally entertained?

Digitized by Google

second player against 4 $\frac{QP2}{}$ does not exist, whether he essays 4 $\frac{}{KP\times P}$ 4 $\frac{}{QBP1}$ or 4 $\frac{}{QKtB3}$ The following is our demonstration:—

4 $\frac{QP2\ bst}{}$ (By taking 4 $\frac{B\times Kt}{}$ you improperly free him from the attack of your KB If 4 $\frac{QP1}{QBP1}$ 5 $\frac{QKtB3}{KKtB3}$ 6 $\frac{QK2}{}$ [if 5 or 6 $\frac{KKtKt5}{QP1}$] 6 $\frac{}{QK2}$ [6 $\frac{}{KBK2}$ 7 $\frac{Cas\ bg}{}$] 7 $\frac{QBKt5}{KBP\times P}$ 8 $\frac{QP\times P}{QBK3}$ 9 $\frac{Cas\ QR}{QKtQ2}$ he will succeed in getting equal game) 4 $\frac{}{KP\times QP}$ (for 4 $\frac{}{QBP1}$ and 4 $\frac{}{QKtB3}$ see Var If 4 $\frac{}{KKtB3}$ 5 $\frac{KKtKt5}{QK2}$ 6 $\frac{KB\times P+}{}$ [not 6 $\frac{Kt\times KBP}{}$ on account of 6 $\frac{}{QP1}$] 6 $\frac{}{KQ}$ [6 $\frac{}{KQ2}$ 7 $\frac{BK6+}{}$ then 8 $\frac{B\times QB\ bg}{}$] 7 $\frac{KBQKt3}{KK}$ 8 $\frac{QP\times KP\ bg}{}$ The move 4 $\frac{}{KBP\times P}$ has been completely analysed by Allgaier. Then 5 $\frac{Kt\times P\ bst}{}$ if 5 $\frac{}{QP\times Kt}$ 6 $\frac{QKR5+}{KQ2}$ [if 6 $\frac{}{KKtP1}$ he loses Rook. If 6 $\frac{}{KK2}$ you mate in two] 7 $\frac{QKB5+}{KQB3}$ 8 $\frac{QK5\times P}{}$ and he can only prolong his agony a short time. For instance, 8 $\frac{}{QRP1}$ 9 $\frac{QP+}{KQKt3}$ 10 $\frac{QBK3+}{}$ and mate is inevitable in a few moves. But if 5 $\frac{Kt\times P}{QP1\ bst}$ 6 $\frac{QKR5+}{KKtP1}$ 7 $\frac{Kt\times KtP}{KKtB3}$ 8 $\frac{QK5+}{KBK2}$ 9 $\frac{Kt\times KB}{Q\times Kt}$ 10 $\frac{Q\times Q+}{K\times Q}$ 11 $\frac{KBQKt3}{}$ you have surplus Pawn) 5 $\frac{KKtKt5\ bst}{KKtR3}$ (Koch here plays 6 $\frac{Q\times P}{}$ which is not disadvantageous, strictly speaking, but yet feeble. The idea struck us of applying to the situation before us the sacrifice of Ercole Del Rio (see Opening XIV), and the result is completely satisfactory) 6 $\frac{Kt\times KRP\ bst}{QK2\ bst}$ (If 6 $\frac{}{R\times Kt}$ 7 $\frac{QKR5+}{KQ2}$ 8 $\frac{QKKt6}{KRR}$ 9 $\frac{B\times Kt}{QKB3}$ [if he retake B you mate in five at most] 10 $\frac{Q\times Q}{P\times Q}$ 11 $\frac{B\times B}{R\times B}$ 12 $\frac{KP\times P}{}$ you have a Pawn more, and all your pieces well posted. If 6 $\frac{}{QKR5}$

Digitized by Google

7 $\frac{\text{K Kt Kt 5 bst}}{}$ [if 7 $\frac{\text{Q B Kt 5}}{\text{Q K Kt 5}}$ ev and not 7 $\frac{}{\text{Q} \times \text{K P} +}$ 8 $\frac{\text{K Q 2}}{}$ and you win] 7 $\frac{}{\text{K B P} \times \text{P}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q B K B 4}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Q Kt B 3}}{\text{Q Kt B 3}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{K B Kt 5}}{}$ you win a Pawn)

Now, in the actual circumstances of the game before us, after 6 $\frac{}{\text{Q K 2}}$ three moves all present themselves for our especial examination, as being natural and difficult, viz. 7 $\frac{\text{Q K R 5} +}{}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Q B Kt 5}}{}$ and 7 $\frac{\text{K Kt Kt 5}}{}$ The first of these results in giving the superiority to your adversary, as about to be shown; the second yields combinations highly to his temporary advantage, yet leaving you the prospect of an ultimate draw; while the third assures to you the gain of a Pawn, with a favourable situation. See then two Var on your Seventh Move. 7 $\frac{\text{Q K R 5} +}{}$ (if 7 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{R} \times \text{Kt bg}}$ and if 7 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{K B}}{\text{Q} \times \text{K P} + \text{bg}}$)

7 $\frac{}{\text{K Q 2}}$ (7 $\frac{}{\text{K Kt B 2}}$ is disadvantageous, for then 8 $\frac{\text{Q B Kt 5}}{\text{Q Q 2}}$ [if 8 $\frac{}{\text{R} \times \text{Kt}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{Kt} +}{}$ you win the exchange] 9 $\frac{\text{Q Kt Q 2 bg}}{}$

You would have done wrong to try to gain the exchange thus 7 $\frac{}{\text{Kt K B 2}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{Kt} +}{\text{Q} \times \text{B}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Kt K B 6} +}{\text{P} \times \text{Kt}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{R}}{\text{K B P} \times \text{P bg}}$ through his formidable central Pawns) 8 $\frac{\text{Q B} \times \text{K Kt}}{\text{P} \times \text{B}}$ (8 $\frac{}{\text{Q} \times \text{P} +}$ 9 $\frac{\text{K Q 2 bg}}{}$) 9 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{B} +}{\text{R} \times \text{Kt}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{K R P}}{\text{K B P} \times \text{P bg}}$

First Variation on First Player's Seventh Move.

1 $\frac{\text{K P 2}}{\text{K P 2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{K Kt B 3}}{\text{Q P 1}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{K B Q B 4}}{\text{K B P 2}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{Q}}{\text{K P} \times \text{P}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{Kt K Kt 5}}{\text{K Kt R 3}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{R P}}{\text{Q K 2}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Q B Kt 5}}{\text{Q K 4}}$ (7 $\frac{}{\text{Q} \times \text{P} +}$ 8 $\frac{\text{K Q 2 w}}{}$) 8 $\frac{\text{Q K R 5} +}{\text{K Q 2}}$ (if 8 $\frac{\text{K B P 2}}{\text{Q} \times \text{P} + \text{gd g}}$) 9 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{K B} +}{}$ (Your best play is 9 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{R} \times \text{Kt}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Q K B 7} +}{\text{K B K 2}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{B K B 4}}{}$ [if 11 $\frac{\text{B K Kt 5}}{\text{Q Kt B 3}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{Q Kt Q 2}}{\text{K B P} \times \text{P bg}}$] 11 $\frac{}{\text{Q} \times \text{B}}$ [if 11 $\frac{}{\text{Q K B 3}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{K B P}}{}$] 12 $\frac{\text{Q K 6} +}{}$ you draw by perpetual check)

Digitized by Google

9 $\frac{\text{R} \times \text{Kt}}{}$ 10 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{P} \times \text{B}}$ (He would do wrong to 10 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{P}+}{}$ 11 $\frac{\text{K Q 2}}{\text{P} \times \text{B}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{K R K}}{\text{Q} \times \text{K Kt P}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{R P}}{\text{K R K}}$ [if 13 $\frac{}{\text{K R Q}}$ you mate in two Moves] 14 $\frac{\text{Q K R 7}+}{\text{K Q}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{R} \times \text{R}+}{\text{K} \times \text{R}}$ 16 $\frac{\text{Q K B 7}+}{\text{K Q}}$ 17 $\frac{\text{Q K B 8}+}{\text{K Q 2}}$ 18 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{P}+}{\text{K K 2}}$ [18 $\frac{}{\text{K Q}}$ 19 $\frac{\text{Q K B 6}+}{}$] 19 $\frac{\text{Q K B 7}+}{}$ [You must not take 19 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{B}}{}$ because then 19 $\frac{}{\text{Q} \times \text{P}+}$] 19 $\frac{}{\text{K Q}}$ 20 $\frac{\text{Q K B 6}+}{\text{K K}}$ 21 $\frac{\text{Q Kt R 3 w}}{}$) 11 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{R P}}{\text{K R R}}$ (11 $\frac{}{\text{Q} \times \text{K P}+}$ is not good by reason of 12 $\frac{\text{K Q 2}}{\text{Q} \times \text{K Kt P}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{R}}{\text{Q} \times \text{R}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{K B P}+}{}$) 12 $\frac{\text{Q K Kt 6}}{\text{K B P} \times \text{P bg}}$

Second Variation on First Player's Seventh Move.

1 $\frac{\text{K P 2}}{\text{K P 2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{K Kt B 3}}{\text{Q P 1}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{K B Q B 4}}{\text{K B P 2}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{Q P 2}}{\text{K P} \times \text{Q P}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{Kt Kt 5}}{\text{Kt K R 3}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{R P}}{\text{Q K 2}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{K Kt Kt 5 bst}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{\text{Q B K B 4}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{P}}{\text{K Kt Kt 5}}$ You have the better game, for he cannot maintain K P. (if 9 $\frac{}{\text{Q Kt B 3}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{K B Q Kt 5}}{}$) 10 $\frac{\text{K R P 1}}{\text{Kt K B 3}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{K R K}}{\text{Q B P 1}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{K B P 1}}{\text{Q P 1}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{K B Q 3}}{}$ You have the advantage.*

Variation on Second Player's Fourth Move.

1 $\frac{\text{K P 2}}{\text{K P 2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{K Kt B 3}}{\text{Q P 1}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{K B Q B 4}}{\text{K B P 2}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{Q P 2}}{\text{Q B P 1}}$ (The same situation might be created thus: 1 $\frac{\text{K P 2}}{\text{K P 2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{K Kt B 3}}{\text{Q P 1}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{K B Q B 4}}{\text{Q B P 1}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{Q P 2}}{\text{K B P 2}}$) 5 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{R} \times \text{B}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{K P} \times \text{P}}{\text{K P 1}}$ (if 6 $\frac{}{\text{Q B} \times \text{P}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Q P} \times \text{P}}{}$ you win Pawn) 7 $\frac{\text{K Kt Kt 5}}{\text{B} \times \text{P}}$ (if 7 $\frac{}{\text{Q P 1}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Q K R 5}+}{\text{K Kt P 1}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{K Kt P}}{\text{R P} \times \text{P}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Q K 2}}{}$ you win

---

* Second player's game appears to me to be better than Jaenisch pronounces it.

Digitized by Google

Pawn) 8 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{RP}}{\text{KBK2}}$ (8 $\frac{}{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{QKR5+}}{}$) 9 $\frac{\text{KRP2}}{}$ you win Pawn. The sacrifice of Ercole del Rio is not applicable to this Variation; because second player has an open sq, QB2, on to which his King could retreat.

Another Variation on Fourth Move of Second Player.

1 $\frac{\text{KP2}}{\text{KP2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{\text{QP1}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{KBQB4}}{\text{KBP2}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{QKtB3}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{KKtKt5 wk}}{}$ (Your correct move is 5 $\frac{\text{QP} \times \text{P}}{\text{QP} \times \text{P}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{Q+}}{\text{Kt} \times \text{Q}}$ [if 6 $\frac{}{\text{K} \times \text{Q}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{KtKt5}}{\text{KKtR3}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Cas b g}}{}$] 7 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{KBP bst}}{\text{KP1}}$ [if 7 $\frac{}{\text{QB} \times \text{P}}$ [8 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{P}}{\text{B} \times \text{QBP}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{\text{KBQ3}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{K R K}}{\text{K KtK2}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{QKtB3 b g}}{}$ and if 7 $\frac{}{\text{KBQ3}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{KBQ3}}{\text{if K KtK2}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{KKtR4 w}}{}$] 8 $\frac{\text{KKtQ4}}{\text{KBQB4}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{KtK6 bst}}{\text{Kt} \times \text{Kt}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{Kt bst}}{\text{KK2}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{QBKt5+}}{\text{KKtB3}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{QKtQ2 b g}}{}$ And if, again, 5 $\frac{\text{QP} \times \text{P}}{\text{Kt} \times \text{P}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{P} \times \text{Kt}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{Q+}}{\text{K} \times \text{Q}}$ he loses the faculty of castling. Finally, if 5 $\frac{\text{QP} \times \text{P}}{\text{KBP} \times \text{P}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{QQ5}}{}$ now if 6 $\frac{}{\text{QK2}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{QBKt5}}{\text{KKtB3}}$ [7 $\frac{}{\text{QQ2}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{KP1 w}}{}$] 8 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{KKtP} \times \text{P}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{KtQ4 w}}{}$ or if at Move 6 $\frac{}{\text{QQ2}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{P}}{\text{QK2}}$ [7 $\frac{}{\text{QP} \times \text{P}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{KB} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{R} \times \text{B}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{RP w}}{}$] 8 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{KR} \times \text{B}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Cas b g}}{}$) 5 $\frac{}{\text{KKtR3}}$ (You may now push 6 $\frac{\text{QBP1}}{}$ threatening to take KRP with KKt, and if to frustrate this attack he moves 6 $\frac{}{\text{KKtP1}}$ 6 $\frac{}{\text{QK2}}$ or 6 $\frac{}{\text{QKB3}}$ you may castle, and in the last of these three supposed cases 6 $\frac{}{\text{QKB3}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{\text{KP} \times \text{P}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{KP} \times \text{KBP}}{}$ But the strictly exact defence is 6 $\frac{\text{QBP1}}{\text{KBP} \times \text{P}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{RP}}{\text{QKR5}}$ [7 $\frac{}{\text{R} \times \text{Kt}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{QKR5+}}{\text{KQ2}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{QKKt6 w}}{}$] 8 $\frac{\text{KtKt5 bst}}{\text{QKKt5}}$ [8 $\frac{\text{QBKt5}}{\text{QKKt5}}$] 9 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{Q}}{\text{B} \times \text{Q}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{KBQ5}}{\text{KP} \times \text{QP ev}}$ So again if 6 $\frac{\text{KKt} \times \text{KRP}}{\text{QKR5 bst}}$ [he might also take P with QKt safely] 7 $\frac{\text{KKtKt5}}{\text{KBP} \times \text{KP}}$ in order not to lose his Queen 8 $\frac{\text{QBP1}}{\text{QKKt5 ev}}$) You have one other mode of attack worthy of attention

Digitized by Google

6 $\frac{QP1}{QKtK2}$ 7 $\frac{QKtB3}{}$ (7 $\frac{KtK6}{}$ were premature, for then 7 $\frac{}{B \times Kt}$ 8 $\frac{P \times B}{}$ [8 $\frac{QB \times Kt}{BKB2}$ 9 $\frac{BKKt5}{KBP \times P \text{ gd g}}$] 8 $\frac{}{KBP \times P}$ [all other moves would lose; for example, if 8 $\frac{}{KKtP1}$ or 8 $\frac{}{KKtKt}$ 9 $\frac{QKB3}{}$ the student will supply the details] 9 $\frac{QB \times Kt}{KKtP \times B}$ 10 $\frac{QKR5 + \text{bst}}{}$ [if 10 $\frac{QKtB3}{QKtKKt3}$ 11 $\frac{QKt \times P}{QBP1}$ 12 $\frac{QKB3}{KBK2 \text{ gd g}}$ * notwithstanding his doubled Pawn] 10 $\frac{}{QKtKKt3}$ 11 $\frac{QKtB3}{QKKt4}$ 12 $\frac{Q \times Q}{KRP \times Q}$ 13 $\frac{QKt \times P}{KRP1}$ 14 $\frac{KtKB6+}{KK2}$ 15 $\frac{KtQ5+}{KQ}$ 16 $\frac{Cas\ QR}{QBP1}$ then $\frac{}{QP1}$ and we prefer his game) 7 $\frac{}{QKtKKt3 \text{ bst}}$ (if 7 $\frac{}{QBP1}$ 8 $\frac{KBP2}{QKtKKt3}$ 9 $\frac{Cas}{}$ and if 8 $\frac{}{QBP \times P}$ 9 $\frac{QKt \times P}{}$ So, too, against 7 $\frac{}{KKtP1}$ 8 $\frac{KBP2}{KBKt2}$ 9 $\frac{Cas}{}$ In each of these cases he cannot castle without danger, and you have consequently a manifest advantage) 8 $\frac{Cas}{}$ (8 $\frac{KKtK6}{}$ is disadvantageous, for then 8 $\frac{}{B \times Kt}$ 9 $\frac{P \times B}{KBP \times P}$ 10 $\frac{QB \times Kt}{KKtP \times B}$ 11 $\frac{QKt \times P}{KBKt2}$ he has a gd g in spite of his doubled Pawn on border file) 8 $\frac{}{KBK2}$ 9 $\frac{KBP2}{Cas}$ In this position, although his game is cramped, and his force less active than yours, it does not appear to us that your advantage is sufficient to determine the game in your favour. Observe, that if at last move you offer to sacrifice 9 $\frac{Kt \times RP}{}$ the move would be unsound, though he must not retake on account of 9 $\frac{}{R \times Kt}$ 10 $\frac{QKR5}{KKB2}$ 11 $\frac{KBP2\ w}{}$ but he plays 9 $\frac{}{KKtKB2}$ 10 $\frac{P \times P}{QB \times P}$ (if 10 $\frac{QKR5 \text{ bd}}{QKtKB}$) 11 $\frac{QKR5}{QQ2}$ (if 11 $\frac{}{B \times QBP}$ 12 $\frac{KB+}{}$) 12 $\frac{KKtP2}{B \times QBP}$ 13 $\frac{KBP2}{QKt \times KBP \text{ bg}}$

* There is some omission here overlooked by Jaenisch, as your Queen can mate at K B 7. In a situation exactly similar a few lines further on, Jaenisch plays for his Move 11 instead of $\frac{}{QBP1}$ 11 $\frac{}{KBKt2}$ and probably should do so here.

Digitized by Google

SECTION III.

THE ITALIAN GAME.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKtB3}$ This defence is presented as the best, by the great masters of Italian Chess, and has consequently in the present day generally displaced the defence 2 $\frac{}{QP1}$ brought into vogue during the past century by Philidor. The Italian Opening is, after the King's Gambit, the most brilliant and rich of all others, — for which reason theorists have generally bestowed much pains on its analysis. We hope, however, that the reader will find many novelties, notwithstanding, in this section, particularly respecting the theory of the Giuoco Piano. At the same time it is not that Opening, but rather the Scottish Début, which, in our opinion, is decisive of the grand question, as to whether 2 $\frac{}{QKtB3}$ presents a defence perfectly satisfactory.*

EIGHTEENTH OPENING.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{QBP1}{}$ This is a tolerably good attack. (He must not defend with 3 $\frac{}{KBQB4}$ by reason of 4 $\frac{QP2}{}$ nor by 3 $\frac{}{QP2}$ because of 4 $\frac{KBKt5}{}$ a weakness in his position existing through 2 $\frac{}{QKtB3}$ Moreover, he should not play 3 $\frac{}{QKB3}$ because then 4 $\frac{QP2}{P \times P}$ 5 $\frac{}{KP1}$ [he cannot take this Pawn without loss of a piece] and on the following move $\frac{QBP \times P \text{ gd g}}{}$ Ponziani proposes here a beautiful

---

* Jaenisch considered when he wrote this that the Scottish Opening, or Queen's Pawn Two Game, could not be defended by second player, and that consequently the Move 2 $\frac{}{QKtB3}$ ought not to be played. In a note appended to his work Jaenisch recants this opinion, believing his subsequent discoveries in the Opening in question prove that the Scotch Game can be defended with success. (See Appendix.)

Digitized by Google

Counter-gambit, of which the following would be the consequences: 3 $\frac{}{KBP2}$ 4 $\frac{QP2\text{ bst}}{KBP\times P}$ [if 4 $\frac{}{KKtB3}$ 5 $\frac{QP\times KP}{KKt\times P}$ 6 $\frac{KBQB4\text{ b g}}{}$ and against 4 $\frac{}{KP\times P}$ 5 $\frac{KP\times KBP}{}$ if then 5 $\frac{}{QP\times QBP}$ 6 $\frac{QKtB3\text{ gd g}}{}$ and if 5 $\frac{}{QP2}$ 6 $\frac{KBKt5\text{ gd g}}{}$] 5 $\frac{KKt\times KP}{KKtB3\text{ bst}}$ [if 5 $\frac{KKtKt5}{QP2}$] 6 $\frac{Kt\times Kt*}{QKtP\times Kt\text{ bst}}$ 7 $\frac{QBKt5}{QP2}$ About even) 3 $\frac{}{KKtB3\text{ bst}}$ 4 $\frac{QP2}{KKt\times KP}$ (if 4 $\frac{}{KP\times P}$ 5 $\frac{KP1}{KKtK5}$ [5 $\frac{}{KKtKt5}$ 6 $\frac{QBP\times P}{}$ then $\frac{KRP1\text{ b g}}{}$] 6 $\frac{QK2}{KKtQB4}$ 7 $\frac{QBP\times P\text{ b g}}{}$) 5 $\frac{P\times P}{QP1\text{ bst}}$ (For 5 $\frac{QP1}{}$ See Var. If 5 $\frac{P\times P}{QP2}$ 6 $\frac{KBKt5}{}$ and if 5 $\frac{QP\times P}{KBQB4}$ 6 $\frac{QQ5}{}$) 6 $\frac{QBKB4}{}$ (If 6 $\frac{KBQB4}{P\times P}$ 7 $\frac{Q\times Q+}{Kt\times Q}$ 8 $\frac{Kt\times P}{KBQ3\text{ gd g}}$ If 6 $\frac{KBQKt5}{QBQ2}$ 7 $\frac{QQ5}{KKtQB4}$ 8 $\frac{QBKB4\text{ or Cas}}{QKt\times P}$ 9 $\frac{Kt\times Kt}{P\times Kt}$ 10 $\frac{Q\times KP+}{KtK3\text{ b g}}$) 6 $\frac{}{P\times P}$ 7 $\frac{Q\times Q+}{QKt\times Q}$ 8 $\frac{B\times P}{KBQB4}$ (8 $\frac{Kt\times P}{KBQ3}$) ev

Variation on First Player's Fifth Move.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{QBP1}{KKtB3}$ 4 $\frac{QP2}{Kt\times KP}$ 5 $\frac{QP1}{QKtKt}$ 6 $\frac{KBQ3}{KtKB3}$ (6 $\frac{Kt\times P}{}$ bad on account of 6 $\frac{}{QK2}$) 7 $\frac{Kt\times P}{KBQB4}$ (7 $\frac{}{Kt\times P}$ 8 $\frac{KBQB4\text{ b g}}{}$) 8 $\frac{Cas}{Cas}$ 9 $\frac{QBP1}{QP1}$ 10 $\frac{KKtB3}{QBKt5}$ 11 $\frac{QKtB3}{QKtQ2\text{ ev}}$

---

* In lieu of this move Mr. Staunton rightly proposes 6 $\frac{KBQKt5\text{ b g}}{}$ (See Chess Player's Chronicle for 1846, p. 345.)

Digitized by Google

NINETEENTH OPENING.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{KBQKt5}{}$ (You wish to profit by the early sortie of his Q Kt to make him double a Pawn. Ruy Lopez considered this attack to be decisive in favour of first player, and on this was founded his opinion that the defence 2 $\frac{}{QKtB3}$ was inferior to 2 $\frac{}{QP1}$. The Italians have refuted this, but their demonstration is very incomplete. We here give many new details) 3 $\frac{}{KBQB4}$ (This is the move recommended by the Italians. If 3 $\frac{}{QRP1}$ you do not take 4 $\frac{B \times Kt}{}$ as they prescribe, but retire 4 $\frac{BQR4}{}$ and the Pawn will then have been advanced without effect, for 4 $\frac{}{QKtP2}$ would give them a bad game by weakening their flank, and replacing your B upon his line of attack. The idea of the move 3 $\frac{KBQKt5}{}$ badly understood by the Italians, is not simply to cause him to double a Pawn, but to crowd his game by preventing his playing $\frac{}{QP1}$ For there is a wide difference, as Lopez has already observed, between doubling the Q B P by retaking B with Q P, or with Q Kt P. The former mode must be considered as gaining a move on you, since it at once disengages his Q B and frees the line of his Queen; which constitutes an advantage of position. On the other hand, by retaking with Q Kt P, his Q is not disengaged; while his Q R P becomes isolated; and although he opens up good lines of attack, both to his Q R and Q B, such would not be sufficient, in a general sense, to compensate for the disadvantage of the doubled Pawn. By the first manner of recapturing Kt, his four Pawns rest banded together; a group which frequently is not disadvantageous, even composed of two doubled Pawns. The K B was not then played by you to Q Kt 5 to capture Kt forthwith, but to watch for the moment of second player's advancing Q P; in order then to take Kt, when he must retake with Q Kt P) 4 $\frac{QBP1\ bst}{}$ (For 4 $\frac{B \times Kt}{}$ as played by the Italian writers, see Var) 4 $\frac{}{KKtK2}$ (if 4 $\frac{}{QKB3}$ 5 $\frac{QP2}{P \times P}$ 6 $\frac{KP1}{QKKt3}$ [if 6 $\frac{}{Q Kt \times P}$ he loses a piece] 7 $\frac{QBP \times P}{KBQKt5+}$ 8 $\frac{QBQ2\ bst}{B \times B+}$ 9 $\frac{Q Kt \times B}{Q \times KKtP}$ 10 $\frac{KRKKt}{QKR6}$ 11 $\frac{R \times P\ bg}{}$ And if 4 $\frac{}{QKB3}$ 5 $\frac{QP2}{KBKt3}$ 6 $\frac{Cas}{}$ Now at this point, unless he chooses to lose a Pawn, or to permit your

Digitized by Google

establishing your Pawns in the centre by taking $\frac{\text{KP} \times \text{QP}}{}$ he should play 6 $\frac{}{\text{KKtK2}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{QBKt5}}{\text{QQ3}}$ [7 $\frac{}{\text{QKKt3}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{QP1 bg}}{}$] 8 $\frac{\text{QB} \times \text{KKt}}{\text{Q} \times \text{B}}$ [8 $\frac{}{\text{K} \times \text{B}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{Q} \times \text{B}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{P}}{\text{if Q} \times \text{KP}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{KRK w}}{}$] 9 $\frac{\text{KB} \times \text{QKt}}{\text{QP} \times \text{B}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{P}}{}$ you win Pawn. If 4 $\frac{}{\text{KKtB3}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{QKt}}{\text{QP} \times \text{B}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{P}}{}$ If now 6 $\frac{}{\text{Kt} \times \text{P}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{QK2 bg}}{}$ and if instead 6 $\frac{}{\text{QK2 or Q3}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{KKt} \times \text{P}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{QK2}}{\text{QBKB4 or KBP2}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{KB}}{\text{Q} \times \text{Kt}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{KBP1 w}}{}$) 5 $\frac{\text{Cas bst}}{}$ (if 5 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{KBKt5+}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{QKtB3}}{\text{QP2}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{KP1}}{\text{Cas}}$ [if 8 $\frac{\text{KP} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q} \times \text{P}}$] the game is about even; the preference being slightly for your side. This Var has been already given by Lopez) 5 $\frac{}{\text{Cas}}$ (If 5 $\frac{}{\text{QP1}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{KP} \times \text{P}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{BQKt3}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{QP1}}{\text{QRP1}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{BQR4 bg}}{}$) 6 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{BQKt3}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{QP1}}{\text{QRP1}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{KBQR4}}{\text{QKtKt}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{QP1}}{\text{KKtKKt3}}$ (if 10 $\frac{}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{P}}{\text{BQB2}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{QQ3 bg}}{}$) 11 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{}$ (if 11 $\frac{\text{KP1}}{\text{QKtB3}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{KRK}}{\text{KRK}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{QQ5}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{R} \times \text{R+}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{R}}{\text{QKR5 w}}$) 11 $\frac{}{\text{Q} \times \text{P}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{QKtB3 bg}}{}$

Variation on First Player's Fourth Move.

1 $\frac{\text{KP2}}{\text{KP2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{\text{QKtB3}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{KBQKt5}}{\text{KBQB4}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{QP} \times \text{B}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{QP1 bst}}{}$ (Ponziani gives Var 5 $\frac{\text{QBP1}}{\text{QQ6}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q} \times \text{KP+}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{QK2}}{\text{Q} \times \text{KKtP}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{KtKB3+}}{\text{KKtK2}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{KRKt}}{\text{QKR6}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{R} \times \text{P}}{\text{QBKKt5}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{QQB4}}{\text{B} \times \text{P+}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{K} \times \text{B}}{\text{Q} \times \text{Kt+}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{KKKt}}{\text{BK3 bg}}$ If at Move 5 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{P}}{\text{QQ5}}$) 5 $\frac{}{\text{QBKt5}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{QBK3}}{\text{QQ3}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{\text{QRQ}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{QKtQ2}}{\text{KKtK2}}$ (8 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{B}}{\text{Q} \times \text{B}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{QKtQ2}}{\text{KKtK2 gd g}}$) 9 $\frac{\text{QKtKt3}}{\text{KBKt3 ev}}$ Some might even prefer second player's position.

Digitized by Google

Best Defence of this Opening.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKtB3}$. 3 $\frac{KBQKt5 \text{ bst}}{KKtB3}$ as indicated by M. Der Lasa. 4 $\frac{QP1}{\quad}$ (To take Kt would lead to no very good result. If 4 $\frac{B \times Kt}{QP \times B}$ 5 $\frac{QP1 \text{ bst}}{KBQB4}$ 6 $\frac{Cas}{QBKt5}$ 7 $\frac{QBK3}{QQ3}$ [7 $\frac{QBKt5}{QQ3}$] 8 $\frac{B \times B}{Q \times B}$ [8 $\frac{QKtQ2}{QRQ}$] 9 $\frac{QKtQ2}{QRQ}$ 10 $\frac{QKtKt3}{QQKt3 \text{ gd g}}$ And if at Move 4 $\frac{B \times Kt}{QP \times B}$ 5 $\frac{KKt \times P}{QQ5}$ 6 $\frac{KKtB3}{Q \times KP+}$ 7 $\frac{QK2}{Q \times Q+}$ 8 $\frac{K \times Q}{QBKt5}$ 9 $\frac{QP2}{PQB4}$ then $\frac{\quad}{\text{Cas QR b g}}$) 4 $\frac{\quad}{KBQB4}$ 5 $\frac{Cas}{QKtQ5}$ 6 $\frac{Kt \times Kt}{B \times Kt}$ 7 $\frac{QBP1}{BQKt3}$ 8 $\frac{QBKt5}{QBP1}$ 9 $\frac{KBQR4}{KRP1}$ 10 $\frac{B \times Kt}{Q \times B}$ 11 $\frac{QKtQ2}{\text{Cas ev}}$

SCOTTISH, or EDINBURGH OPENING.

(*Known equally as The Queen's Pawn Two Opening.*)

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{QP2}{\quad}$ This Pawn advanced two squares gives birth to one of the finest and most brilliant openings of the game of Chess. Although analysed to some extent by the Italian masters, and particularly by the celebrated Ercole del Rio, it was in some degree forgotten; when, about the year 1824, the London Club adopted it against the Edinburgh Club, in that memorable struggle which so gloriously crowned with victory the Scottish players.* Conquerors in the first game of this class†, the Edinburgh Club themselves retorted back

---

* This renowned match by correspondence, which lasted five years, consisted of five games, three of which may be considered as models of the Opening before us; two of the three being won by Edinburgh, and the third drawn. The two other games of the match were of an insignificant character; the one being drawn, and the other won by London. — JAENISCH. (The five games in question are all in my "CHESS STUDIES.")

† The more correct phrase to adopt would be "Luckily escaping defeat in the first," &c., as the London Club had a won game at one point, and overlooked both a forced mode of winning, and, subsequently, one of drawing, the party. The truth was, the best player on the London side, Mr. Cochrane, left England for India at the critical moment when the splendid attack concocted by him was at the point of being crowned with complete success; and, the master-spirit once gone, the conduct of the game fell from the excellent to the tame second-rate play which led to its loss. Nothing could exceed Mr. Cochrane's disgust, except his disappointment, when the news reached him in Bombay that his coadjutors had lost this party.

Digitized by Google

the Opening, to them previously altogether unknown, and were again victors. Be the name of "Edinburgh" imposed then upon this their trophy, and that with the more justice, from the fact of these fine games having called into life so many theoretical labours, as to have left completely in the shade the original sketch of the Italians. In our opinion 3 $\frac{QP2}{}$ constitutes your strongest possible attack on the third move of this Opening; an Opening, the defence of which will ever remain deeply laborious and difficult, if there even should be found to exist any defence at all of a character perfectly satisfactory.

TWENTIETH OPENING.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{QP2}{}$ Should he take Pawn with Kt or with P? On this point authors differ. For our own part we maintain that to capture P with Kt is disadvantageous; and as the analysis of this case is the more simple of the two we place it first. 3 $\frac{}{Kt \times P}$ 4 $\frac{Kt \times Kt}{}$ (You may likewise take K P with Kt. See Var) 4 $\frac{}{P \times Kt}$ 5 $\frac{Q \times P}{KKtK2}$ bst (Your Queen placed in the midst of the board after the exchange of Knights gives you a superiority of position which he will try in vain to dispute. If 5 $\frac{}{QKB3}$ as shown by Del Rio, the following would be the consequences: 5 $\frac{}{QKB3}$ 6 $\frac{KP1}{QQKt3}$ [if 6 $\frac{}{QKKt3}$ 7 $\frac{QKtB3}{QBP1}$ 8 $\frac{QKtK4 bg}{}$ He cannot take without loss 7 $\frac{}{Q \times QBP}$ 8 $\frac{KBQ3}{KBQB4}$ 9 $\frac{Q \times B}{Q \times B}$ 10 $\frac{KtQ5 w}{}$] 7 $\frac{QBK3 bst}{Q \times Q}$ [if 7 $\frac{}{QP1}$ 8 $\frac{QQB3 bst}{}$ then if 8 $\frac{}{QQB3}$ 9 $\frac{Q \times Q}{P \times Q}$ 10 $\frac{KBP2 bg}{}$ and if 8 $\frac{}{QBP2}$ 9 $\frac{KP \times P}{Q \times P}$ 10 $\frac{QKtR3 b g}{}$] 8 $\frac{B \times Q}{KKtK2}$ [if 8 $\frac{}{QP1}$ 9 $\frac{P \times P}{P \times P}$ he has a Pawn isolated disadvantageously] 9 $\frac{QKtQ2}{KtQB3}$ 10 $\frac{BQB3}{KBQB4}$ 11 $\frac{KtK4}{BQ5}$ [11 $\frac{}{BQKt5}$ 12 $\frac{Cas b g}{}$] 12 $\frac{B \times B}{Kt \times B}$ 13 $\frac{Cas b g}{}$) 6 $\frac{KBQB4}{KtQB3}$ 7 $\frac{QQ5}{QKB3}$ 8 $\frac{Cas}{KtKt5}$ (By playing 8 $\frac{}{QP1}$ he would encumber his array yet more, for

Digitized by Google

then 9 $\frac{KBKt5}{QBQ2}$ 10 $\frac{QKtB3}{KBK2}$ 11 $\frac{QBK3}{Cas\,KR}$ 12 $\frac{KBP2}{\quad}$) 9 $\frac{QQ}{KBQB4}$ 10 $\frac{QRP1}{KtQB3}$ 11 $\frac{QKtB3}{QP1}$ 12 $\frac{KtQ5}{QQ}$ 13 $\frac{QKtP2}{BQKt3}$ 14 $\frac{QBKt2\,bg}{\quad}$

Variation on Fourth Move of First Player.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{QP2}{QKt\times P}$ 4 $\frac{Kt\times P}{KtK3\,bst}$ 5 $\frac{KBQB4}{\quad}$ (against 5 $\frac{KBP2}{KBQB4}$ for you cannot push 6 $\frac{KBP1}{\quad}$ because of 6 $\frac{\quad}{QKR5+}$) 5 $\frac{\quad}{QBP1\,bst}$ (If 5 $\frac{\quad}{KKtB3}$ 6 $\frac{B\times Kt}{KBP\times B}$ 7 $\frac{QBKt5\,bg}{\quad}$ The move 5 $\frac{\quad}{QKB3}$ advised by Ponziani, has the ordinary disadvantage attendant upon a premature sortie of Queen. You would answer by 6 $\frac{KtKt4}{QKKt3}$ 7 $\frac{KBQ3}{KtQB4}$ 8 $\frac{Cas}{QP2}$ [8 $\frac{\quad}{Kt\times B}$ 9 $\frac{P\times Kt\,bg}{\quad}$] 9 $\frac{KtK5}{QQ3}$ 10 $\frac{P\times QP}{Kt\times B}$ 11 $\frac{Kt\times Kt}{Q\times P}$ 12 $\frac{QKtB3\,bg}{\quad}$) 6 $\frac{Cas*}{\quad}$ (if 6 $\frac{B\times Kt}{QQR4+}$ 7 $\frac{QKtB3}{Q\times Kt}$ 8 $\frac{BQKt3}{KBKt5\,bg}$) 6 $\frac{\quad}{QQB2}$ (6 $\frac{\quad}{KKtB3}$ 7 $\frac{B\times Kt}{KBP\times B}$ 8 $\frac{QBKt5\,bg}{\quad}$) 7 $\frac{KtQ3\,bg}{\quad}$

Return we to the Opening. 1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{QP2}{P\times P}$ Now we have seen that it was weak to take with Kt, but here he takes with P; and it is natural to suppose that in reply you should take P with Kt, which was in effect the continuation frequently played, pursuing it 4 $\frac{Kt\times P}{Kt\times Kt}$ 5 $\frac{Q\times Kt}{\quad}$ as before. Recently, however, it has been discovered that 4 $\frac{Kt\times P}{\quad}$ loses first player at least the move. Their best answer

---

* The following move may here be risked, though probably not sound against the best possible play. It was invented by Mr. Cochrane. 6 $\frac{Kt\times KBP}{K\times Kt}$ 7 $\frac{B\times Kt+}{K\times B}$ You have given up Kt for a Pawn; the question is, whether the exposed position of his King compensates for the sacrifice. See Game 636 of my "Chess Studies."

Digitized by Google

is 4 $\frac{\text{QKR5}}{}$* then 5 $\frac{\text{QQ3}}{\text{KtK4 bst}}$ (if 5 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{Kt bd}}{\text{Q} \times \text{KP}+}$ and if 5 $\frac{\text{QKtB3}}{\text{KBKt5}}$†)
6 $\frac{\text{QK2}}{}$ (6 $\frac{\text{QK3}}{\text{KBB4}}$) 6 $\frac{}{\text{KKtB3}}$ (6 $\frac{}{\text{KBQB4}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{KtKB5}}{}$)
7 $\frac{\text{QKtQ2}}{\text{KBQB4}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{KtKB5}}{\text{QKKt5}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{KBP1}}{\text{QKKt3 bg}}$ In case of 5 $\frac{\text{QQ3}}{\text{KBQB4}}$
6 $\frac{\text{QBK3}}{\text{QKtK4}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{QQB3}}{\text{QP1}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{QKtQ2}}{\text{KKtB3}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{KBQ3}}{\text{Cas gdg}}$ (if 9 $\frac{}{\text{QKtKKt5}}$
10 $\frac{\text{KKtKB3}}{}$) Instead of 4 $\frac{}{\text{QKR5}}$ he may also play 4 $\frac{}{\text{KBQB4}}$
5 $\frac{\text{QBK3}}{}$ (5 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{QKt}}{\text{QKB3}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{QK2 bst}}{\text{Q} \times \text{Kt gdg}}$) 5 $\frac{}{\text{QKR5 bst}}$ (any other move here is disadvantageous for him) 6 $\frac{\text{QQ3}}{\text{KtK4}}$ and we return to the preceding; for if 6 $\frac{\text{QKtB3}}{\text{KBKt5}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{KBQ3}}{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}+}$ 8 $\frac{\text{QKtP} \times \text{B}}{\text{KKtB3 gdg}}$

This discovery, then, has completely changed the face of the Edinburgh Opening. Already the Italians had, instead of retaking 4 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{P}}{}$ proposed the move 4 $\frac{\text{KBQB4}}{}$ which forms a centre Gambit, now called, for the reason already assigned, The Scottish Gambit. Now this Gambit, which to the Italians seemed to be but voluntary, becomes positively forced for the first player to adopt, unless he is disposed to see the attack pass over immediately to the other side.

The Scottish Gambit has this peculiarity, that there exist for second player several modes of supporting the acquired Pawn, and even of gaining a second; but his position becomes in that case so disadvantageous, that it remains ever doubtful whether he can successfully parry the numerous attacks of his opponent. In this Gambit we find three several systems of defence, which we have examined and compared with each other carefully, and which we now proceed to develope individually.

---

* The move 4 $\frac{\text{QKR5}}{}$ first appears in my Treatise on Chess, edit. 1841, p. 61. It was invented by Mr. Pulling, of the London Chess Club.

† At this point the move 5 $\frac{\text{KtQKt5}}{}$ has been latterly advocated, but is decidedly weak if answered with 5 $\frac{}{\text{KBQB4}}$

Digitized by Google

TWENTY-FIRST OPENING.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{QP2}{P\times P}$ 4 $\frac{KBQB4}{QKB3}$ This defence has only been mentioned by the authors, without ever having been fully analysed, although deserving the greatest attention. Your correct play would be now to castle, as in Var. To attack Queen with Bishop were a loss of time. 5 $\frac{QBP1}{}$ (This move allows him to maintain the Gambit Pawn) 5 $\frac{}{P\times P}$ (5 $\frac{}{PQ6}$ would be bad; giving you the superiority of position) 6 $\frac{Kt\times P}{KBKt5}$ 7 $\frac{Cas}{}$ (This move of yours is very insidious. If 7 $\frac{QBQ2}{KKtK2\text{ bst}}$ 8 $\frac{QKtQ5}{Kt\times Kt}$ [8 $\frac{Cas}{Cas}$] 9 $\frac{P\times Kt}{B\times B+}$ 10 $\frac{Q\times B}{QKtK4}$ he preserves Pawn with a good position) 7 $\frac{}{B\times Kt\text{ bst}}$ 8 $\frac{P\times B}{KKtK2\text{ bst}}$ (It were highly wrong to take 8 $\frac{}{Q\times P}$ 9 $\frac{QQ5}{QKtQ}$ [9 $\frac{}{QKB3}$ 10 $\frac{QBKt2}{QKKt3}$ 11 $\frac{KtKR4\,b\,g}{}$] 10 $\frac{QBQ2}{QKB3}$ [10 $\frac{}{QQR6\text{ or }QB7}$ 11 $\frac{QK5+b\,g}{}$] 11 $\frac{QBKt5}{QK3}$ [11 $\frac{}{QKKt3}$ 12 $\frac{B\times Kt}{K\times B}$ 13 $\frac{KKtK5\,b\,g}{}$] 12 $\frac{QQ4}{QKKt3}$ 13 $\frac{B\times Kt}{K\times B}$ 14 $\frac{KtK5\,b\,g}{}$) 9 $\frac{KP1}{}$ We do not find that you can set up here any stronger form of attack. (if 9 $\frac{QBR3}{QP1}$) 9 $\frac{}{Kt\times P\text{ bst}}$ 10 $\frac{Kt\times Kt}{Q\times Kt}$ 11 $\frac{KRK}{QKB3}$ (if 11 $\frac{}{QQB4}$ 12 $\frac{QQKt3}{}$ and then $\frac{QBR3\,w}{}$) 12 $\frac{QK2}{QP1}$ 13 $\frac{QBK3\text{ bst}}{}$ (threatening $\frac{QBQ4}{}$) 13 $\frac{}{QBK3}$ 14 $\frac{BQ4}{QKKt3}$ 15 $\frac{KB\times B}{P\times B\text{ bst}}$ 16 $\frac{Q\times P^*}{Q\times Q}$ 17 $\frac{R\times Q}{KKB2}$ 18 $\frac{QRK}{KtQB3\text{ bst}}$ He ought to win through the surplus Pawn.

---

* Jaenisch should have given also the move 16 $\frac{QQKt5+}{}$

Digitized by Google

Variation on First Player's Fifth Move.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{QP2}{P\times P}$ 4 $\frac{KBQB4}{QKB3}$ 5 $\frac{Cas}{KBQB4}$ 6 $\frac{QBP1\ bst}{}$ (if 6 $\frac{KP1}{QKB4}$ 7 $\frac{QBP1}{P\times P}$ [7 $\frac{KBQ3}{QKR4}$ 8 $\frac{QBP1}{P\times P}$ 9 $\frac{QKt\times P}{KKtK2\ \&c}$] 8 $\frac{Kt\times P}{KKtK2}$ 9 $\frac{BQ3\ if}{QKR4}$ he preserves Pawn without compromising his game) 6 $\frac{}{P\times P}$ (6 $\frac{}{PQ6}$ would leave the advantage of position to you. For the move 6 $\frac{}{KtK4}$ see next Var. But if 6 $\frac{}{KKtK2}$ 7 $\frac{QBKt5}{}$ then $\frac{B\times KKt}{}$ and $\frac{P\times QP\ b\ g}{}$ Or, if 6 $\frac{}{QP1}$ 7 $\frac{KBKt5}{P\times QBP}$ 8 $\frac{QKt\times P\ bst}{QBQ2}$ 9 $\frac{QKtQ5}{QQ}$ 10 $\frac{QKtP2}{BQKt3}$ [10 $\frac{}{Kt\times P}$ 11 $\frac{B\times B+}{Q\times B}$ 12 $\frac{Kt\times Kt}{B\times Kt}$ 13 $\frac{QQ4}{}$] 12 $\frac{QBKt2}{KBP1}$ he has yet Pawn, but with his pieces badly arranged) 7 $\frac{Kt\times P}{KKtK2}$ (7 $\frac{}{QP1}$ would induce Variations similar to the preceding; the second player keeping Pawn, but with a bad game. As these Variations have been already given in detail by Lewis, we shall content ourselves here with presenting them in outline: —

7 $\frac{}{QP1}$ 8 $\frac{QKtQ5}{QQ}$ 9 $\frac{QKtP2}{KB\times P}$ [9 $\frac{}{KBQKt3}$ 10 $\frac{QBKt2}{KKtB3}$ 11 $\frac{QKt\times Kt}{KKtP\times Kt}$ 12 $\frac{KKtKt5\ b\ g}{}$ and if, instead 10 $\frac{}{KBP1}$ 11 $\frac{KKtKt5\ b\ g}{}$] 10 $\frac{Kt\times B}{Kt\times Kt}$ 11 $\frac{QQKt3}{KtQB3}$ 12 $\frac{QBKt2}{KKtB3}$ [12 $\frac{}{KtK4}$ 13 $\frac{Kt\times Kt}{P\times Kt}$ 14 $\frac{B\times KBP+}{KK2}$ 15 $\frac{QBR3+\ b\ g}{KKB3}$] 13 $\frac{B\times KBP+}{KKB\ bst}$ [13 $\frac{}{KK2}$ 14 $\frac{KP1}{}$] 14 $\frac{KP1}{QP\times P}$ 15 $\frac{BR3+}{QKtK2}$ 16 $\frac{QRQ}{QBQ2}$ 17 $\frac{Kt\times P}{}$)

8 $\frac{QKtQ5\ bst}{}$ (if 8 $\frac{KtQKt5}{BQKt3}$ 9 $\frac{QBKt5}{QKKt3}$ 10 $\frac{B\times KKt}{K\times B}$ [10 $\frac{}{Kt\times Kt}$ 11 $\frac{KtK5}{}$] 11 $\frac{KP1}{KRK}$ 12 $\frac{KBQ3}{QKR3\ b\ g}$) 8 $\frac{}{KKt\times Kt}$ 9 $\frac{P\times Kt}{KtK2}$ 10 $\frac{QBKt5}{QKB4\ bst}$ (if 10 $\frac{}{Q\times QKtP}$ 11 $\frac{QRQKt}{if\ QQR6}$ 12 $\frac{QRKt3}{Q\times QRP}$

Digitized by Google

[12 $\frac{}{QQR4}$ 13 $\frac{B \times Kt}{B \times B}$ 14 $\frac{KRK}{QQB4}$ 15 $\frac{QRK3\ w}{}$] 13 $\frac{B \times Kt}{B \times B}$ 14 $\frac{KRK\ w}{}$

you threaten at once to capture B with R. And if 11 $\frac{}{QQB6}$ 12 $\frac{QK2}{KBP1}$

[12 $\frac{}{Cas}$ 13 $\frac{QRQKt3\ w}{}$] 13 $\frac{QRQKt3}{QQR4}$ 14 $\frac{QRQKt5}{QQR5}$ [14 $\frac{}{QQR6}$

15 $\frac{QBQB\ w}{}$] 15 $\frac{R \times B}{KBP \times B}$ 16 $\frac{KRK\ w}{}$) 11 $\frac{B \times Kt}{B \times B}$ 12 $\frac{KRK}{QKB3}$

13 $\frac{QK2}{KQ}$ 14 $\frac{QRQ}{QP1}$ 15 $\frac{QQ3}{}$ you have fine game, though minus Pawn.

Another Variation on Sixth Move.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{QP2}{P \times P}$ 4 $\frac{KBQB4}{QKB3}$ 5 $\frac{Cas}{KBQB4}$

6 $\frac{QBP1}{QKtK4}$ 7 $\frac{Kt \times Kt}{Q \times Kt}$ 8 $\frac{KBP2\ bst}{}$ (You may also play 8 $\frac{QKtP2}{BQKt3}$

9 $\frac{KBP2}{P \times P+}$ 10 $\frac{KKR}{QQ5}$ 11 $\frac{QQKt3}{}$) 8 $\frac{}{P \times P+}$ 9 $\frac{KKR}{QQ5}$

(if 9 $\frac{}{PQB7}$ 10 $\frac{Q \times P}{QQ5}$ 11 $\frac{QQKt3}{QKB3}$ 12 $\frac{QKtB3}{KKtK2}$ as otherwise developed.

If 9 $\frac{}{P \times QKtP}$ 10 $\frac{P \times Q}{P \times R-Q}$ 11 $\frac{QQ5}{KBK2}$ [11 $\frac{}{KKtR3}$ 12 $\frac{B \times KKt}{P \times B}$

13 $\frac{Q \times KBP+\ w}{}$] 12 $\frac{Q \times KBP+}{KQ}$ 13 $\frac{Q \times KKtP\ bg}{}$ If, lastly, 9 $\frac{}{QKB3}$

10 $\frac{KP1}{QQKt3}$ 11 $\frac{Kt \times P}{KKtK2}$ 12 $\frac{KBP1\ bg}{}$) 10 $\frac{QQKt3}{}$ (You might also

play 10 $\frac{QK2}{KKtK2}$ 11 $\frac{QKt \times P}{QRP1\ bst}$ 12 $\frac{QBQ2}{Cas}$ 13 $\frac{QRQ\ gd\ g}{}$)

10 $\frac{}{Q \times KP}$ (if 10 $\frac{}{QKB3}$ 11 $\frac{Kt \times P}{KKtK2}$ 12 $\frac{KP1}{QKB4}$ 13 $\frac{KKtP2}{Q \times P}$

14 $\frac{B \times P+}{KKB\ bst}$ 15 $\frac{KtK4}{QP1}$ 16 $\frac{QBQ2}{}$ you have the better game)

11 $\frac{B \times P+}{KKB}$ 12 $\frac{Kt \times P}{QKB4}$ 13 $\frac{B \times Kt}{R \times B}$ 14 $\frac{QBQ2}{QP1}$ (if 14 $\frac{KtQ5\ bd}{QBP1}$

and not 14 $\frac{}{BQKt3}$ because of 15 $\frac{KtK7}{}$) 15 $\frac{QRK}{}$ you have a fine game, though wanting Pawn.*

---

* Jaenisch would surely not have over-rated your position, if he here dismissed this game as decidedly lost for your opponent.

Digitized by Google

TWENTY-SECOND OPENING.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{QP2}{KP\times P}$ 4 $\frac{KBQB4}{B+}$ As in the preceding Opening, this mode of defence allows of his keeping one, or even two Pawns in surplus; but you will find throughout a compensation more than sufficient in the advantage of your situation.

5 $\frac{QBP1}{}$ This is the correct move. You must not, in this description of Gambit, seek to regain your Pawn immediately; for such attempt would not succeed. (If 5 $\frac{QBQ2}{QK2\ bst}$ [5 $\frac{}{B\times B+}$ 6 $\frac{Kt\times B}{}$ and you speedily regain Pawn] 6 $\frac{Cas}{QQB4\ bst}$ [if 6 $\frac{}{BQB4}$ 7 $\frac{QBP1}{P\times P}$ 8 $\frac{QB\times P}{KBP1}$ 9 $\frac{KP1\ bg}{}$] 7 $\frac{B\times B}{Q\times QB\ bst}$ [7 $\frac{}{Q\times KB}$ 8 $\frac{BQR3}{}$ then $\frac{QKtQ2}{}$ and $\frac{QKtQKt3}{}$ regaining P] 8 $\frac{KBQKt3}{QP1}$ 9 $\frac{QBP1}{P\times QBP}$ 10 $\frac{QKt\times P}{KKtK2}$ 11 $\frac{QRP1}{BQB4}$ he preserves Pawn with gd g)

5 $\frac{}{P\times P}$ 6 $\frac{Cas\ bst}{}$ (By this move you gain precious time, and greatly strengthen your attack. To retake P with P were far inferior, it being then demonstrable that second player would have the advantage. (See Var) After you have castled, he has to choose between two modes of play. He may gain a second Pawn, by capturing P with P; but that would advantageously bring out your Q B, and reinforce your assault. Or, he may content himself with the one Pawn, and profit by the move to put himself upon the most secure defence. The second description of play is the more simple. It brings on something like the following combination) 6 $\frac{}{QP1}$ 7 $\frac{QRP1}{BQB4}$ 8 $\frac{QKtP2}{BQKt3}$ 9 $\frac{QQKt3}{QKB3}$ 10 $\frac{QKt\times P}{QBK3}$ 11 $\frac{QKtQ5}{B\times Kt}$ (if 11 $\frac{}{QKKt3}$ 12 $\frac{KBQ3}{}$ and his Q is seriously committed)

12 $\frac{KP\times B}{KtK4}$ (or you may play 12 $\frac{B\times B}{KKtK2}$ 13 $\frac{QBKt5}{QKKt3}$ 14 $\frac{QB\times Kt}{K\times B}$)

13 $\frac{BQKt5+}{KKB}$ 14 $\frac{Kt\times Kt}{Q\times Kt}$ Notwithstanding you are minus a Pawn, you have a fine game.

Digitized by Google

Variation on Second Player's Sixth Move.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{QP2}{P\times P}$ 4 $\frac{KBQB4}{B+}$ 5 $\frac{QBP1}{P\times P}$ 6 $\frac{Cas}{P\times QKtP}$ 7 $\frac{QB\times P}{}$ (He can only now defend his K Kt P in four different ways. First 7 $\frac{}{KBKB}$ Second 7 $\frac{}{KKtB3}$ Third 7 $\frac{}{KBP1}$ and Fourth 7 $\frac{}{KKB}$ The two first are evidently bad 7 $\frac{}{KBKB}$ 8 $\frac{KP1}{QP1}$* 9 $\frac{P\times P}{P\times P}$ [9 $\frac{}{Q\times P}$ 10 $\frac{QQKt3}{KKtR3}$ 11 $\frac{R+}{QKtK2}$ 12 $\frac{QKtB3\,bg}{}$) 10 $\frac{KR+}{QKtK2}$ [10 $\frac{}{KKtK2}$ 11 $\frac{KKtKt5\,bg}{}$] 11 $\frac{KBKt5+}{QBQ2}$ 12 $\frac{QKtB3\,bg}{}$ If 7 $\frac{}{KKtB3}$ 8 $\frac{KKtKt5}{Cas}$ 9 $\frac{KP1}{KKtK}$ [if 9 $\frac{}{KRP1}$ 10 $\frac{Kt\times KBP\,bg}{}$ and if 9 $\frac{}{QP2}$ 10 $\frac{P\times Kt}{P\times B}$ 11 $\frac{QKR5\,bg}{}$] 10 $\frac{QKR5}{KRP1}$ 11 $\frac{Kt\times KBP\,bg}{}$ Again, the Third mode of defence 7 $\frac{}{KBP1}$ appears weak, for then 8 $\frac{KP1}{P\times P}$ [8 $\frac{}{KBK2}$ 9 $\frac{KKtR4}{}$† and the combination offers nothing healthy for second player] [8 $\frac{}{Kt\times P}$ 9 $\frac{Kt\times Kt}{P\times Kt}$ 10 $\frac{QQKt3\,bg}{}$] 9 $\frac{Kt\times P}{Kt\times Kt}$ 10 $\frac{B\times Kt}{KKtB3}$ 11 $\frac{QQR4}{QK2}$ [11 $\frac{}{BK2}$ 12 $\frac{KRK}{if\,QBP1}$ 13 $\frac{BQ6\,w}{}$ and if 11 $\frac{}{QBP2}$ 12 $\frac{QRP1}{}$ and then $\frac{QRQR2\,bg}{}$] 12 $\frac{B\times Kt}{P\times B}$ 13 $\frac{QRP1}{BQB4}$ 14 $\frac{QKtB3\,bg}{}$) 7 $\frac{}{KKB}$

You have now the choice of several different systems of attack; the whole of which it were impossible to enumerate. The following is that which to us appears the best: 8 $\frac{QQKt3}{KKtR3}$ (if 8 $\frac{}{QK2}$

---

* Some of our best players hold that second player should now get the better game, by K B K 2.

† In the Palamede of 1844, p. 213, Jaenisch wishes to substitute for 9 $\frac{KKtR4}{}$ 9 $\frac{QQ5}{}$ as a stronger move; proceeding thus 9 $\frac{QQ5}{KKtR3}$ 10 $\frac{P\times P}{KB\times P}$ 11 $\frac{R+}{KKB}$ 12 $\frac{B\times B}{P\times B}$ 13 $\frac{QKtQ2}{}$ and Jaenisch prefers your game, although minus two Pawns.

Digitized by Google

9 $\frac{\text{Q Kt B 3}}{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{B}}{\text{K B P 1}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{B Q R 3} +}{\text{Q P 1}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{Q R K}}{\text{K P 1}}$) you threaten to advance 9 $\frac{\text{K P 1}}{\text{Q P 1}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Q Kt R 3}}{\text{Q B Kt 5}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{Q R Q gd g}}{}$

Variation by Mr. Cochrane.

1 $\frac{\text{K P 2}}{\text{K P 2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{K Kt B 3}}{\text{Q Kt B 3}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{Q P 2}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{K B Q B 4}}{\text{B} +}$ 5 $\frac{\text{Q B P 1}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$

6 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{}$ This move, long abandoned by amateurs, has been recently brought into vogue by Mr. Cochrane, one of the strongest players in Great Britain. As soon as we were apprised of it through the medium of the Palamede, we pronounced it to be weak, but being then much occupied with the Opening of the Two Kings' Knights, we had not leisure to examine it properly. Under these circumstances, M. De Heydebrand who was with us at Berlin, undertook the analysis, and kindly favoured us with the produce of his labours. As there can be nothing more satisfactory, we avail ourselves of his permission to commit this analysis to our readers. 6 $\frac{}{\text{B Q R 4 bst}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{K P 1 bst}}{\text{K Kt K 2}}$ * This move of his destroys your attack, and preserves the Pawn for him in perpetuity. (If you play now 8 $\frac{\text{Q B Kt 5}}{\text{Cas}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{\text{Q P 2}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{K P} \times \text{P en p}}{\text{Q} \times \text{P}}$ [10 $\frac{\text{K B Q Kt 5}}{\text{Q B Q 2}}$] 11 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{Q}}{\text{Q B P} \times \text{Q}}$ he has Pawn, and better position; for if now 12 $\frac{\text{K R Q}}{\text{Q B Kt 5}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{R} \times \text{P}}{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{B}}{\text{Q R Q gd g}}$ If, instead of this 8 $\frac{\text{Kt Kt 5}}{\text{Kt} \times \text{P}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{K B P}}{\text{Kt} \times \text{Kt}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{Kt} +}{\text{K} \times \text{B}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{Q K R 5} +}{\text{K Kt P 1}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{B}}{\text{Q B P 1}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{Q Q R 4}}{\text{K R K}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{\text{Q P 2}}$ he keeps Pawn, and has fine game.)

8 $\frac{\text{Q B R 3 bst}}{\text{Cas}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{\text{K K R bst}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{K Kt Kt 5}}{}$ We see no other likely form of attack for you. 10 $\frac{}{\text{Kt} \times \text{P}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{K R P}}{}$ (if 11 $\frac{\text{Q K R 5}}{\text{K R P 1}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{K B P}}{\text{Q P 1}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{K B P 2 bd g}}{\text{Q B Kt 5}}$) 11 $\frac{}{\text{Kt} \times \text{K B bst}}$ (If 11 $\frac{}{\text{K} \times \text{Kt}}$

---

* In truth, it was upon this move Mr. Cochrane chiefly prided himself in this Opening, and nothing can be more brilliant than the conception.

† The Cochrane Variation is defended by some players on another form of tactics. See Palamede, and my "Art of Chess Play."

Digitized by Google

12 $\frac{QKR5+}{KKKt}$ 13 $\frac{Q\times Kt}{KKtQB3}$ 14 $\frac{QKR5}{QP1}$ 15 $\frac{BQ3}{KKtP1}$ 16 $\frac{B\times KKtP}{}$ you may gain perpetual check) 12 $\frac{QKR5}{}$ (if 12 $\frac{KtKB6}{KKtP1}$ 13 $\frac{QQ4bdg}{Kt\times B}$)

(If 12 $\frac{KtKt5}{KtKB4}$ 13 $\frac{QKR5+}{KtK.R3}$ 14 $\frac{B\times R\ bdg}{Q\times B}$) 12 $\frac{}{KKtP1}$

13 $\frac{QKR6}{KtKB4}$ 14 $\frac{QKR3}{QKR5}$ 15 $\frac{Q\times Q}{Kt\times Q}$ 16 $\frac{Kt\times R}{Kt\times B}$ 17 $\frac{Kt\times KKtP+}{P\times Kt\ w}$

(Observe, that at Move 9, instead of 9 $\frac{}{KKR}$ he might also risk 9 $\frac{}{KRP1}$ though with less effect. 9 $\frac{}{KRP1}$ 10 $\frac{QQKt3}{BQKt3}$ 11 $\frac{QKtQ2}{KKR}$ 12 $\frac{QKtK4}{QKtR4}$ 13 $\frac{QQR4}{Kt\times B}$ 14 $\frac{Q\times Kt}{}$ he has better game*)

TWENTY-THIRD OPENING.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{QP2}{P\times P}$ 4 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ This defence is recommended as the best in the work of Mr. Cochrane. It is, undoubtedly, the least dangerous he can adopt, if, through fear of meeting a fierce attack, he at once determines on abandoning the surplus Pawn. 5 $\frac{QBP1}{}$ This we hold to be your best attack. (There is an inferior mode of play more generally adopted, viz. 5 $\frac{KKtKt5}{}$) 5 $\frac{}{PQ6}$ (He has probably no better move.† If 5 $\frac{}{QKB3}$ 6 $\frac{KP1}{}$ then $\frac{QBP\times P\ bg}{}$ for if 6 $\frac{}{Kt\times P}$ 7 $\frac{QK2}{}$ you win a piece. If 5 $\frac{}{P\times QBP}$ and 6 $\frac{B\times KBP+}{}$ now if 6 $\frac{}{K\times B}$ 7 $\frac{QQ5+}{KK}$ 8 $\frac{Q\times B}{P\times KtP}$ 9 $\frac{QB\times P}{KKtB3}$ 10 $\frac{KP1}{}$ &c., and if 6 $\frac{}{KKB}$ 7 $\frac{BQKt3}{P\times KtP}$ 8 $\frac{QB\times P}{}$ in both cases he has Pawn, but your advantage of position is immense) 6 $\frac{QKtP2}{BQKt3}$

---

* I should much doubt this.

† Jaenisch subsequently gives an appendix to this opening, which I shall present in its place, in which he answers 5 $\frac{QBP1}{}$ with 5 $\frac{}{KKtB3}$ thus resolving the game into the Giuoco Piano, and discovering a certainly safe defence for second player.

Digitized by Google

(You thus gain time, for the P on your Q 3 cannot escape you. If 6 $\frac{}{PQ7+}$ 7 $\frac{QKt \times P}{BQKt3}$ 8 $\frac{QRP2}{QRP1}$ [if 8 $\frac{}{QRP2}$ 9 $\frac{QKtP1}{}$] 9 $\frac{Cas}{QP1}$ 10 $\frac{QKtKt3}{KKtB3}$ 11 $\frac{QBKt5}{Cas}$ 12 $\frac{QKtQ4}{B \times Kt}$ 13 $\frac{Kt \times B\ gd\ g}{}$) 7 $\frac{QRP2}{QRP1}$ 8 $\frac{QQKt3}{QK2}$ 9 $\frac{Cas}{QP1}$ 10 $\frac{QBKt5}{KKtB3}$ 11 $\frac{QKtQ2}{Cas}$ 12 $\frac{KB \times P}{QBK3}$ 13 $\frac{QQB2}{KRP1}$ 14 $\frac{BKR4}{QRQ}$ 15 $\frac{KRP1}{}$ * The game is equal; but the defence is cramped and crowded. These moves were the commencement of a game recently played at Berlin between M. Von Der Lasa and M. Hanstein; a game which may be quoted as a perfect model, and which we append to our analysis of this Opening.

Another Attack in this Opening.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{QP2}{P \times P}$ 4 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 5 $\frac{KtKKt5}{KKtR3\ bst}$ (If 5 $\frac{}{QKtK4}$ you still play 6 $\frac{Kt \times KBP}{}$ and he has a piece more left at home) 6 $\frac{Kt \times KBP}{Kt \times Kt}$ (if 6 $\frac{}{B+}$ 7 $\frac{QBP1}{P \times P}$ 8 $\frac{P \times P}{B \times P+}$ 9 $\frac{QKt \times B}{Kt \times Kt}$ 10 $\frac{B \times Kt+}{K \times B}$ 11 $\frac{QKR5+}{KKB}$ [11 $\frac{}{KKtP1}$ 12 $\frac{QQ5+}{KK}$ 13 $\frac{QBKt5}{QKtK2}$ 14 $\frac{QK5}{KRKB}$ 15 $\frac{KtQ5}{KRB2}$ 16 $\frac{Kt \times QBP+\ w}{}$] 12 $\frac{QBR3+}{QP1}$ 13 $\frac{QRQ\ gd\ g}{}$) 7 $\frac{B \times Kt+}{K \times B}$ 8 $\frac{QKR5+}{KKtP1}$ 9 $\frac{Q \times B}{QP1\ bst}$ (if 9 $\frac{}{QK2}$ as played by Cochrane 10 $\frac{QQB4+}{QK3}$ 11 $\frac{QK2}{QP2}$ 12 $\frac{KBP1}{KRK}$ 13 $\frac{Cas}{KKKt2}$ 14 $\frac{QKB2}{P \times P}$ 15 $\frac{P \times P\ b\ g}{}$) 10 $\frac{QQKt5}{}$ (if 10 $\frac{QQB4+}{QBK3}$ 11 $\frac{QK2}{QKB3}$ † 12 $\frac{Cas}{KKKt2}$ 13 $\frac{QBP1}{QRK}$ 14 $\frac{QBP \times P}{QKt \times P}$ 15 $\frac{QQ3}{QKtP2\ b\ g}$)

---

* Might you not with more advantage push K P, in order then to play Q Kt K 4?

† In Palamede for 1844, p. 214, Jaenisch varies this move thus: 11 $\frac{QQKt5}{QKR5}$ 12 $\frac{QK2}{KRK}$ 13 $\frac{Cas}{KKKt2\ b\ g.}$

‡ In Palamede for 1844, p. 214, Jaenisch adds this Variation: 11 $\frac{}{KKKt2}$

Digitized by Google

10 $\frac{}{\text{QRP1}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{QQ3}}{\text{KKKt2}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{\text{QBK3}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{QBP1}}{\text{QKB3}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{KRQ}}{\text{QP}\times\text{P}}$
15 $\frac{\text{QKt}\times\text{P}}{\text{KRKB}}$ 16 $\frac{\text{QBK3}}{\text{QRK ev}}$

Supplementary Variation to Twenty-third Opening.

(This Variation is given by Jaenisch as an addition to his analysis of this Opening, in Le Palamede, 1844, p. 215. I have thought it right to incorporate it accordingly. Jaenisch here prefers 4 $\frac{}{\text{KKtB3}}$ even to 4 $\frac{}{\text{KBQB4}}$ G. W.)

1 $\frac{\text{KP2}}{\text{KP2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{\text{QKtB3}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{P}\times\text{P}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{KBQB4}}{\text{KKtB3}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{Kt}\times\text{P}}{}$ (if 5 $\frac{\text{KtKt5}}{\text{QP2}}$
6 $\frac{\text{P}\times\text{P}}{\text{QK2+gdg}}$ If 5 $\frac{\text{KP1}}{\text{QP2}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{BQKt5}}{\text{KtK5}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Kt}\times\text{P}}{\text{QBQ2}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{B}\times\text{Kt}}{\text{P}\times\text{B}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{\text{QBP1}}$
10 $\frac{\text{KtK2}}{\text{QBB3 b g}}$ If 5 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{\text{Kt}\times\text{KP bst}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{KRK}}{\text{QP2}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{B}\times\text{QP}}{\text{Q}\times\text{B}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{QKtB3}}{\text{QKB4}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{R}\times\text{Kt}+}{\text{QBK3}}$
[9 $\frac{\text{Kt}\times\text{Kt}}{\text{KBK2}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{KKt}\times\text{P}}{\text{Kt}\times\text{Kt}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{Q}\times\text{Kt}}{\text{Cas ev}}$] 10 $\frac{\text{KKt}\times\text{QP}}{\text{Kt}\times\text{Kt}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{Q}\times\text{Kt}}{\text{QRQ}}$
12 $\frac{\text{QK3}}{\text{KBQB4}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{QKB4}}{\text{Cas}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{Q}\times\text{Q}}{\text{B}\times\text{Q}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{RK5}}{\text{KRK ev}}$) 5 $\frac{}{\text{KKt}\times\text{P}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{B}\times\text{P}+}{\text{K}\times\text{B}}$
7 $\frac{\text{QKR5}+}{\text{KKtP1}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{QQ5}+}{\text{KKKt2}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Kt}\times\text{Kt}}{}$ (9 $\frac{\text{Q}\times\text{KKt}}{\text{KB}+}$ 10 $\frac{\text{KQ}}{\text{KRK}}$
11 $\frac{\text{QKB4}}{\text{QKB3 b g}}$) 9 $\frac{}{\text{QK bst}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{QK5}+}{\text{Q}\times\text{Q}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{Kt}\times\text{Q}}{\text{KBQB4}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{\text{QP1}}$
13 $\frac{\text{KKtQ3 ev}}{}$

We close our theory of the Queen's Pawn Two, or Scottish Opening, by quoting the whole of the game previously cited between MM. Von Der Lasa and Hanstein, played at Berlin, March 31, 1842. Von Der Lasa had the move. (This game stands in Mr. Walker's "Chess Studies," No. 659.)

1 $\frac{\text{KP2}}{\text{KP2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{\text{QKtB3}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{KP}\times\text{P}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{KBQB4}}{\text{Same}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{QBP1}}{\text{PQ6}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{QKtP2}}{\text{BQKt3}}$

---

12 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{\text{QKB3}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{QBP1}}{\text{QRK}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{QQKt5}}{\text{QRQKt}}$ then $\frac{}{\text{QRP1}}$ And if
14 $\frac{\text{QQ2}}{\text{KRP2}}$ &c.

Digitized by Google

7 $\frac{QRP2}{QRP1}$ 8 $\frac{QQKt3}{QK2}$ 9 $\frac{Cas}{QP1}$ 10 $\frac{QBKt5}{KKtB3}$ 11 $\frac{QKtQ2}{Cas}$ 12 $\frac{B\times P}{QBK3}$
13 $\frac{QQB2}{KRP1}$ 14 $\frac{BKR4}{QRQ}$ 15 $\frac{KRP1}{QRQ2}$ 16 $\frac{QRP1}{BQR2}$ 17 $\frac{QKtP1}{QKtKt}$
18 $\frac{KKtQ4}{KKtP2}$ 19 $\frac{BKKt3}{P\times P}$ 20 $\frac{Kt\times P}{BQB4}$ 21 $\frac{KKR}{KtKR4}$ 22 $\frac{BKR2}{KBP1}$
23 $\frac{KKtP2}{KtKKt2}$ 24 $\frac{KBP2}{QKtB3}$ 25 $\frac{P\times P}{BP\times P}$ 26 $\frac{KtKB3}{QQ}$ 27 $\frac{QKtQ4}{R\times R+}$
28 $\frac{R\times R}{KKR}$ 29 $\frac{QKB2}{B\times Kt}$ 30 $\frac{Q+}{B\text{ in}}$ 31 $\frac{P\times B}{Q\times Q}$ 32 $\frac{R\times Q}{KtK3}$ 33 $\frac{R\times B+}{K\times R}$
34 $\frac{QP1}{KtQB4}$ 35 $\frac{P\times Kt}{P\times P}$ 36 $\frac{B+}{QP1}$ 37 $\frac{P\times P}{P\times Kt}$ 38 $\frac{PQ6+}{P\times B}$ (It were perhaps better to play 38 $\frac{B\times P}{R\times P}$ 39 $\frac{BQB4}{QBP1}$ 40 $\frac{BQ6}{}$) 39 $\frac{P\times P}{R\times P}$ 40 $\frac{B\times R}{PQB6}$
41 $\frac{BK5}{PQB7}$ 42 $\frac{BQKt2}{KKB2}$ 43 $\frac{KKKt2}{KKKt3}$ (If 43 $\frac{}{KK3}$ 44 $\frac{KRP1}{KtQ6}$
45 $\frac{BQR3}{KQ2}$ 46 $\frac{P\times P}{P\times P}$ 47 $\frac{KKB3}{PB8—Q}$ 48 $\frac{B\times Q}{Kt\times QB}$ 49 $\frac{KK4}{KtK7}$ 50 $\frac{KKB5}{Draw}$)
44 $\frac{KKB3}{KRP1}$ 45 $\frac{KK3}{P\times P}$ 46 $\frac{P\times P}{KKB2}$ 47 $\frac{KQ4}{KtKt6+}$ 48 $\frac{KQB3}{Kt\times P\text{ drawn}}$

TWENTY-FOURTH OPENING.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{KBQB4}{}$ (This is a very good attack, though we hold it to be rather inferior to 3 $\frac{QP2}{}$ He evidently cannot reply now by 3 $\frac{}{KKtB3}$ because of 4 $\frac{KKtKt5}{}$ which would reduce it to a Var of Seventh Opening in Book II, disadvantageous for second player; nor may he move 3 $\frac{}{KBK2}$ without having an embarrassed game, for he would subsequently be forced to advance $\frac{}{QP1}$ and thus restrict the action of his KB) 3 $\frac{}{KBP2}$

This Counter-gambit is hazardous, as we proceed to prove. Mr. Lewis has given an analysis of it, radically defective, but very elegant *, and which it is indispensable to know, in order to seize the spirit of the début. We begin, then, with this analysis, and give its necessary rectification first, before proceeding to show the correct attacking moves

* What an odd mode of characterising Mr. Lewis's apple — rotten but rosy.

Digitized by Google

for first player. 4 $\frac{B \times Kt}{}$ (This is the move given by Lewis. You would do better to play 4 $\frac{QP2}{}$ as in Var. If 4 $\frac{QP1}{}$ he might, we believe, boldly come forth with 4 $\frac{}{KKtB3}$ on which if 5 $\frac{QBKt5}{KRP1\ gd\ g}$ and if 5 $\frac{KKtKt5}{QP2}$ 6 $\frac{KP \times QP}{KKt \times P}$ 7 $\frac{QKB3}{QKtK2}$ 8 $\frac{\text{if } QKtB3}{QBP1}$ and $\frac{}{KRP1}$ having nothing to fear from your attack) 4 $\frac{}{R \times B\ bst}$ (if 4 $\frac{}{KBP \times P}$ 5 $\frac{Kt \times P}{R \times B}$ [5 $\frac{}{Kt \times Kt}$ 6 $\frac{QKR5+}{QKtKt3}$ 7 $\frac{B \times KRP\ w}{}$] 6 $\frac{QKR5+}{KKtP1}$ 7 $\frac{Q \times KRP}{RKKt2}$ 8 $\frac{Kt \times Kt\ b\ g}{}$) 5 $\frac{QP2}{KP \times QP}$ (if 5 $\frac{}{Kt \times QP}$ 6 $\frac{Kt \times KP\ b\ g}{}$ If 5 $\frac{}{KBP \times P}$ 6 $\frac{Kt \times P}{Kt \times Kt}$ [if 6 $\frac{}{QK2}$ 7 $\frac{Kt \times Kt}{}$ then 8 $\frac{Cas\ b\ g}{}$] 7 $\frac{P \times Kt}{QK2}$ 8 $\frac{QQ5}{RKR}$ 9 $\frac{Q \times KP}{QP1}$ 10 $\frac{QBKB4\ b\ g}{}$ Here lies the fault of Lewis, who does not appear to have remarked that his best fifth move is 5 $\frac{}{QP1}$ reducing the game to the following Variation of the Lopez Gambit 1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{QP1}$ 3 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBP2}$ 4 $\frac{QP2}{QKtB3}$ 5 $\frac{B \times Kt}{R \times B}$ in this situation you certainly cannot expect any gain. For if 6 $\frac{QP \times P\ bst}{QP \times P}$ [6 $\frac{}{KBP \times P}$ 7 $\frac{QQ5\ \&c}{}$] 7 $\frac{Q \times Q+}{QKt \times Q}$ 8 $\frac{KP \times KBP}{QB \times P}$ 9 $\frac{KKt \times P}{B \times QBP}$ 10 $\frac{Cas}{QKtK3\ ev}$) 6 $\frac{Kt \times P}{Kt \times Kt}$ (6 $\frac{}{QK2}$ 7 $\frac{Kt \times P}{Q \times P+}$ 8 $\frac{KtK3\ b\ g}{}$) 7 $\frac{Q \times Kt}{P \times P}$ (7 $\frac{}{QK2}$ 8 $\frac{Cas}{Q \times P}$ 9 $\frac{QQB3}{KBK2}$ 10 $\frac{KRK\ b\ g}{}$) 8 $\frac{QQ5\ bst}{KRR}$ 9 $\frac{QKR5+}{KKtP1}$ 10 $\frac{QK5+}{KKB2}$ 11 $\frac{Cas\ b\ g}{}$

Variation on your Fourth Move.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBP2}$ 4 $\frac{QP2}{}$ (This is your best move. It can only be answered by 4 $\frac{}{QP1}$ reducing the game to a Lopez Counter-gambit. But you will now have more resources for attack than if you follow Lewis's plan of first taking off Kt, for you here preserve your K B still, compelling him to crowd

Digitized by Google

his array by moving $\frac{}{QP1}$ since if he wishes to avoid this by 4 $\frac{}{KBP\times P}$ then 5 $\frac{Kt\times P}{Kt\times Kt}$ 6 $\frac{P\times Kt\,b\,g}{}$ If 4 $\frac{}{KP\times P}$ 5 $\frac{B\times Kt}{KBP\times P}$ [5 $\frac{}{R\times B}$ 6 $\frac{Kt\times P}{}$] 6 $\frac{Kt\times P}{Kt\times Kt}$ [6 $\frac{}{R\times B}$ 7 $\frac{Kt\times Kt}{QKtP\times Kt}$ 8 $\frac{QKR5+w}{}$] 7 $\frac{Q\times Kt\,\&c}{}$ as in the analysis of Lewis) Finally if 4 $\frac{}{KKtB3}$ 5 $\frac{KtKt5}{QK2}$ (if 5 $\frac{}{QP2}$ 6 $\frac{KP\times QP}{if\ QKt\times P}$ 7 $\frac{PQ6\,b\,g}{}$ and if 6 $\frac{}{KKt\times P}$ 7 $\frac{QP\times P\,b\,g}{}$) 6 $\frac{KB+}{KQ}$ 7 $\frac{KBQKt3}{KP\times P}$ (if 7 $\frac{}{QP2}$ 8 $\frac{QP\times KP}{}$ and if, instead, 7 $\frac{}{KK}$ 8 $\frac{KtKB7}{KRKt}$ 9 $\frac{Kt\times KP}{}$) 8 $\frac{KtKB7+}{KK}$ 9 $\frac{Kt\times R}{Q\times P+}$ 10 $\frac{QK2}{QP2}$ 11 $\frac{QKtQ2}{Q\times Q+}$ 12 $\frac{K\times Q}{QBK3}$ 13 $\frac{QKtKB3}{KBQB4}$ 14 $\frac{QKtKKt5}{KK2}$ 15 $\frac{Kt\times KRP\,b\,g}{}$

TWENTY-FIFTH OPENING.

The Evans Gambit.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ (This move is generally regarded as his best, according to the decisions of the Italian school. Your really strongest attack now is 4 $\frac{QBP1}{}$ as in our following Openings; we shall, however, begin by analysing the two Gambits you may here attempt, 4 $\frac{QP2}{}$ and 4 $\frac{QKtP2}{}$ The first of these two moves is not very profound, since as his best 4 $\frac{}{B\times P}$ and he brings on Eleventh Opening of Book II, which finishes badly for you. For if 4 $\frac{}{KP\times P}$ he would be reduced to a defence of Scottish Gambit [Opening XXIII of this Book], but little advantageous for second player) 4 $\frac{QKtP2}{}$ (This move constitutes the Evans Gambit, so called from its inventor, the English Captain Evans. It is a very fine opening. Although hazardous, it has made an epoch in the theory of Chess; through having directed the attention of amateurs to the various branches of the wing gambits, so highly important, but previously so little cultivated. The English works having given an incalculable number of variations of attack, in cases where second player adopts a bad defence, we shall here content ourselves with reproducing the exact defence, which may be considered, we believe, as discovered and fixed by La Bourdonnais, in his

Digitized by Google

celebrated games with M'Donnell. We shall, however, preface this with some observations upon an important point but hitherto imperfectly examined. Should the offered Pawn be taken with K B or with Q Kt? [if 4 $\frac{\text{K B Q Kt 3}}{}$ 5 $\frac{\text{Q Kt P 1 b g}}{}$] We are told to capture with Bishop, but the fact has never been proved. The true reason is, that if 4 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{P}}{}$ 5 $\frac{\text{Q B P 1}}{\text{Q Kt B 3}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{Q P 2 bst}}{}$ and we arrive at a situation examined further on, and disadvantageous for the defence. For if 5 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q K B 3 bst}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{Kt Kt 4}}{\text{Q} \times \text{R}}$ [6 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{K B P +}}{\text{K Q}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Q P 2 lost}}{\text{K B} \times \text{P}}$ and if 6 $\frac{\text{Q K B 3}}{\text{Q} \times \text{Kt}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{K B P + lost}}{\text{K Q}}$ or if 6 $\frac{\text{Q P 2 lost}}{\text{B} \times \text{Q P}}$] 7 $\frac{\text{Q Kt B 3}}{\text{K B Q 5}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Q K B 3}}{\text{Q P 2}}$ [8 $\frac{}{\text{Q} \times \text{B + bd}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{K K 2 w}}{}$] 9 if $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{P}}{\text{Kt} \times \text{B}}$ then 10 $\frac{}{\text{Q} \times \text{B + w}}$ But if instead of 5 $\frac{}{\text{Q K B 3}}$ 5 $\frac{}{\text{K B Q 5}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{K B P}}{\text{Q K B 3}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{\text{B} \times \text{R}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{R}}{\text{K Kt R 3}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Q P 1 b g}}{}$) 4 $\frac{}{\text{K B} \times \text{Q Kt P}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{Q B P 1}}{\text{K B Q B 4}}$ (For the moves 5 $\frac{}{\text{K B Q R 4 bst}}$ and 5 $\frac{}{\text{K B K 2}}$ See Variations. The retreat 5 $\frac{}{\text{K B Q B 4}}$ is disadvantageous; but has never been hitherto proved to be so. The authors always in such case having played 6 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{}$ thus reducing the same two forms of retreat to one thing. Instead of which you should play as follows) 6 $\frac{\text{Q P 2 *}}{\text{K P} \times \text{P}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{B +}}$ (If 7 $\frac{}{\text{B Q Kt 3}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Q B Q Kt 2}}{}$ threatening to advance $\frac{\text{Q P 1}}{}$ and if 8 $\frac{}{\text{B +}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{K K B b g}}{}$) 8 $\frac{\text{K K B bst}}{\text{Q K 2}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Q R P 1}}{\text{B Q R 4}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Q R R 2}}{\text{B Q Kt 3}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{Q R K 2 gd g}}{}$

Variation on Second Player's Fifth Move.

1 $\frac{\text{K P 2}}{\text{K P 2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{K Kt B 3}}{\text{Q Kt B 3}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{K B Q B 4}}{\text{K B Q B 4}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{Q Kt P 2}}{\text{B} \times \text{Kt P}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{Q B P 1}}{\text{K B K 2}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{Q Q Kt 3}}{\text{K Kt R 3}}$ (6 $\frac{}{\text{Q Kt R 4}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{P +}}{\text{K K B}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Q Q R 4 b g}}{}$) 7 $\frac{\text{Q P 2}}{\text{Q Kt R 4}}$

---

* Jaenisch is wrong in supposing this move to be better than castling. (See my "Art of Chess Play.")

Digitized by Google

8 $\frac{QQR4}{Kt\times B}$ 9 $\frac{Q\times Kt}{KP\times P}$ 10 $\frac{B\times Kt}{P\times B}$ 11 $\frac{P\times P}{KRKt}$ 12 $\frac{Cas}{QP1}$

13 $\frac{KKR}{QBP1 \text{ or } QQ2}$ 14 $\frac{QKtB3}{\quad}$ You have fine attack. He has a Pawn the more, but that is isolated, and on the border file.

Another Variation on his Fifth Move.

5 $\frac{QBP1}{BQR4}$ 6 $\frac{Cas}{BQKt3}$ 7 $\frac{QP2}{P\times P}$ 8 $\frac{P\times P}{QP1}$ 9 $\frac{QBKt2 \text{ bst}}{KKtB3}$

You must well recollect these five moves, as they constitute the exact defence. (If 9 $\frac{QP1}{QKtK2}$ not 9 $\frac{\quad}{KtQR4}$ nor 9 $\frac{\quad}{KtK4}$) Your attack is now reduced to hazardous expedients. (If 10 $\frac{KP1}{P\times P}$ 11 $\frac{BQR3}{\quad}$ he now does not take [11 $\frac{\quad}{Kt\times P}$ 12 $\frac{Kt\times P}{\quad}$ or 11 $\frac{\quad}{B\times P}$ 12 $\frac{QQKt3}{\quad}$] in order to avoid dangerous attacks; but opposes 11 $\frac{\quad}{QBK3}$ then 12 $\frac{B\times B}{P\times B}$ 13 $\frac{P\times P}{Q\times Q}$ [13 $\frac{QQKt3}{QQ4}$] 14 $\frac{R\times Q}{KKt}$ 15 $\frac{RKB}{QKt\times P}$ 16 $\frac{Kt\times Kt}{BQ5 \text{ w}}$)

If you continue 10 $\frac{QP1}{QKtK2 \text{ bst}}$ 11 $\frac{B\times Kt}{P\times B}$ 12 $\frac{KRP1}{QKtKKt3}$

13 $\frac{QKtB3}{QBQ2}$ 14 $\frac{QQ2}{QK2}$ he will castle with QR, and has a good game. His doubled Pawn, so easy to be exchanged, is rather for him an advantage than the reverse, in the actual position.

Those students who desire to have a more perfect knowledge of the Evans Gambit, will read with profit that chapter of Mr. George Walker's Book wherein he treats of this game. We close our own analysis with an Evans Gambit recently played by correspondence between the Clubs of Shottisbrooke and Delhi. The tyro will do well to examine with the deepest attention the moves of this fine game. (This game was printed in "Bell's Life in London," and stands No. 398 of Mr. Walker's "Chess Studies.")

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{KBQB4}{\text{Same}}$ 4 $\frac{QKtP2}{B\times KtP}$ 5 $\frac{QBP1}{KBR4}$

6 $\frac{Cas}{KKtB3}$ 7 $\frac{KKtKt5}{Cas}$ 8 $\frac{KBP2}{QP2}$ 9 $\frac{KP\times QP}{B+}$ 10 $\frac{KKR}{KtQR4}$

11 $\frac{KBP\times KP}{KKtKt5}$ 12 $\frac{QP2}{KBP1}$ 13 $\frac{KKtK6}{QB\times Kt}$ 14 $\frac{P\times B}{QKt\times B}$

Digitized by Google

15 $\frac{Q \times KKt}{KBP \times P}$ 16 $\frac{RKB7}{R \times R}$ 17 $\frac{P \times R+}{K \times P}$ 18 $\frac{BKKt5}{QQ3}$ 19 $\frac{KtQR3}{KtK6}$
20 $\frac{RB+}{Kt \times R}$ 21 $\frac{KtQB4}{QKB}$ 22 $\frac{Kt \times KP+}{KKKt}$ 23 $\frac{QK6+}{KKR}$ 24 $\frac{BK7}{QKB5}$
25 $\frac{Kt+}{}$ Drawn, perpetual +

THE GIUOCO PIANO.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ The Italians apply the term "Il Giuoco Piano" to this Opening and all its Variations, excepting only the two Gambits just examined. You have here the choice of several various systems of attack. If 4 $\frac{QKtB3}{KKtB3}$ and the game is reduced to a Var. of the QKt Opening. To castle on Move 4 was important to the Italians, on account of their ample mode of castling; but to us, to castle here would only produce an attack comparatively feeble. For if 4 $\frac{Cas}{KKtB3}$ you are forced to defend KP and if 5 $\frac{KKtKt5}{Cas}$ To the move 4 $\frac{Cas}{}$ he may also answer with 4 $\frac{}{QP1}$ which would equally meet 4 $\frac{QP1}{}$ and 4 $\frac{QK2}{}$ We omit the details of all these Openings, since they involve no serious difficulty. Your correct fourth move is 4 $\frac{QBP1}{}$ threatening to establish your Pawns in the centre, and opening certain free lines of action to Queen. We proceed then to our analysis of the Giuoco Piano.

TWENTY-SIXTH OPENING.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 4 $\frac{QBP1}{QKB3}$ A bad defence, but badly analysed by the authors. We owe the correct moves, in reply, to M. Petroff. 5 $\frac{QP2\ bst}{KP \times P}$ (For 5 $\frac{}{KBKt3}$ see Var)
6 $\frac{KP1}{QKB4}$ (if 6 $\frac{}{Kt \times P}$ $\frac{QK2\ w}{}$ If 6 $\frac{}{QKKt3}$ 7 $\frac{P \times P}{if\ Q \times Kt\ P}$

Digitized by Google

8 $\frac{KRKt}{QKR6}$ 9 $\frac{B \times KBP+ \text{ b g}}{}$ or else 7 $\frac{KKtKt5}{QKtQ \text{ bst}}$ [7 $\frac{}{Kt \times P}$ 8 $\frac{QK2 \text{ w}}{}$] 8 $\frac{QBP \times P}{}$ then $\frac{\text{Cas gd g}}{}$ for if 7 $\frac{KKtKt5}{KKtR3}$ 8 $\frac{KBQ3}{KBP2}$ 9 $\frac{P \times P \text{ enp}}{Q \times P}$ 10 $\frac{QKR5+}{}$ and he loses a piece, as in Opening 24 of Book II)

7 $\frac{P \times P}{}$ Afterwards you castle, and have better situation.

Variation on Fifth Move.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 4 $\frac{QBP1}{QKB3}$ 5 $\frac{QP2}{KBKt3}$ 6 $\frac{Cas}{QP1}$ (If, to avoid your menaced attack, 6 $\frac{}{KRP1}$ 7 $\frac{P \times P}{Kt \times P}$ 8 $\frac{Kt \times Kt}{Q \times Kt}$ 9 $\frac{QQKt3}{QK2}$ 10 $\frac{KP1 \text{ gd g}}{}$) 7 $\frac{QBKt5}{QKKt3}$ 8 $\frac{P \times P}{P \times P}$ (if 8 $\frac{}{KRP1}$ 9 $\frac{BKR4}{}$) 9 $\frac{Kt \times P}{Q \times B}$ 10 $\frac{Kt \times KBP}{QQB4}$ 11 $\frac{KBQ5}{KKtB3}$ 12 $\frac{Kt \times R}{QBKt5}$ 13 $\frac{QQ3}{Cas}$ 15 $\frac{KtKB7 \text{ w}}{}$

TWENTY-SEVENTH OPENING.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 4 $\frac{QBP1}{KKtK2}$ This is a bad move; but one, the examination of which has hitherto been imperfect; Lewis's analysis thereof being, as we shall show, erroneous. 5 $\frac{KKtKt5}{}$ (This is the move given by Lewis. 5 $\frac{Cas}{}$ were equally good. But if 5 $\frac{QP2}{KP \times P}$ 6 $\frac{P \times P}{B+}$ 7 $\frac{QKtB3}{QP2}$ 8 $\frac{KP \times P}{KKt \times P}$ 9 $\frac{Cas}{B \times Kt}$ 10 $\frac{P \times B}{Cas}$ 11 $\frac{B \times Kt}{Q \times B}$ 12 $\frac{KRP1}{QBK3}$ game about equal; and if 6 $\frac{KtKt5}{QP2}$ 7 $\frac{KP \times P}{KKt \times P \text{ gd g}}$ as see further on) 5 $\frac{}{QP2}$ (if 5 $\frac{}{Cas}$ 6 $\frac{QKR5 \text{ w}}{}$) 6 $\frac{P \times P}{KKt \times P}$ 7 $\frac{Kt \times KBP \text{ bst}}{}$ (Here occurs the blunder in Lewis. He plays now 7 $\frac{QP2}{P \times P}$ 8 $\frac{Kt \times KBP}{QK2+}$ 9 $\frac{QK2}{Q \times Q+}$ 10 $\frac{K \times Q}{K \times Kt}$ 11 $\frac{B \times Kt+}{K}$ moves

Digitized by Google

12 $\frac{B \times Kt\,b\,g}{}$ First, instead of retreating K he may play 11 $\frac{}{B\,K3}$ and the game is equal; and second, instead of taking Kt with K he should move 10 $\frac{}{Kt\,Q\,Kt3}$ 11 $\frac{B\,Q\,Kt3}{K\,R\,K\,B}$ and he has better game.) 7 $\frac{}{Q\,K\,B3\ bst}$ (if 7 $\frac{}{K \times Kt}$ 8 $\frac{Q\,K\,B3+}{K\,K3}$ 9 $\frac{Q\,P2}{B\,Q\,Kt3}$ 10 $\frac{Cas}{Q\,Kt\,K2}$ 11 $\frac{K\,R\,K\ w}{}$) 8 $\frac{Q\,P2}{Q \times Kt}$ 9 $\frac{P \times B}{Q\,B\,K3}$ 10 $\frac{B\,Q\,Kt5\ bst}{Cas\,K\,R}$ 11 $\frac{Cas}{Q\,R\,Q}$ 12 $\frac{Q\,K2}{}$ He is minus a Pawn; though it is just to admit that he has a good situation.

Variation on your Fifth Move.

1 $\frac{K\,P2}{K\,P2}$ 2 $\frac{K\,Kt\,B3}{Q\,Kt\,B3}$ 3 $\frac{K\,B\,Q\,B4}{K\,B\,Q\,B4}$ 4 $\frac{Q\,B\,P\,]}{K\,Kt\,K2}$ 5 $\frac{Cas}{K\,B\,Kt3}$ 6 $\frac{K\,Kt\,Kt5}{Q\,P2}$ (6 $\frac{Q\,P2\ wk}{}$) 7 $\frac{K\,P \times P}{K\,Kt \times P}$ (7 $\frac{}{Q\,Kt\,R4}$ 8 $\frac{P\,Q6}{Kt \times B}$ 9 $\frac{Q\,Q\,R4+}{Q\,B\,P1}$ 10 $\frac{Q \times Kt\,b\,g}{}$) 8 $\frac{Q\,P2}{}$ (If 8 $\frac{Kt \times K\,B\,P\ wk}{K \times Kt}$ 9 $\frac{Q\,K\,B3+}{Q\,K\,B3\ bst}$ 10 $\frac{B \times Kt+}{Q\,B\,K3}$ 11 $\frac{B \times Q\,Kt}{P \times B}$ 12 $\frac{Q \times P}{Q\,R\,Q}$ 13 $\frac{Q\,P2}{Q\,R\,Q3}$ 14 $\frac{Q\,Q\,Kt5}{K\,P \times Q\,P}$ [14 $\frac{Q\,Q\,Kt7}{B\,Q4}$] 15 $\frac{Q\,B\,P \times P}{K\,B \times P}$ Although less a Pawn, his game is preferable to yours) 8 $\frac{}{K\,P \times P}$ 9 $\frac{K\,R+}{Q\,Kt\,K2}$ (9 $\frac{Kt \times K\,B\,P\,bd}{}$) 10 $\frac{Kt \times K\,B\,P}{K \times Kt}$ 11 $\frac{Q\,K\,B3+}{Q\,B\,K\,B4}$ 12 $\frac{Q\,B\,Kt5}{K\,R\,K}$ * 13 $\frac{B \times Q\,Kt\dagger}{R \times B}$ 14 $\frac{B \times Kt+}{K\,K}$ (14 $\frac{Q \times B+\ wk}{}$) 15 $\frac{Q\,Kt\,Q2}{Q\,B\,P1}$ 16 $\frac{B \times Q\,B\,P+}{P \times B}$ 17 $\frac{Q \times B}{P \times Q\,B\,P}$ 18 $\frac{R \times R+}{Q \times R}$ 19 $\frac{Kt\,K\,B3}{Q\,K\,B3}$ 20 $\frac{R+}{K\,K\,B}$ 21 $\frac{Q \times R\,P\,b\,g}{}$

---

* You may here take Kt with B at once, checking.

† Rather play 13 $\frac{K\,B \times Kt+}{}$

Digitized by Google

TWENTY-EIGHTH OPENING.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 4 $\frac{QBP1}{QP1}$ This defence has long passed for the best in the English School.* They permitted you coolly to establish your Pawns in the centre, in the hope of being able to sunder them at a late period; or even to get a good game without their being broken. The second game by correspondence between Paris and London (Westminster Club) served greatly to throw light upon this important question, and was the occasion of new triumph to the eternal principles of Philidor. The English, in consequence of having adopted this defence, and subsequently omitting to profit by a favourable opportunity of breaking the French centre Pawns, acquired a position so crowded and embarrassed, that it became impossible to free themselves without loss. After the rules established in our introduction, it were useless to add that the defence 4 $\frac{}{QP1}$ is not to be recommended; though we find it necessary thereupon to lay certain important details before our readers. 5 $\frac{QP2}{P\times P}$ 6 $\frac{P\times P}{BQKt3}$ (This is much better than smothering the B by checking 6 $\frac{}{B+}$ on which 7 $\frac{QKtB3\ b\ g}{}$ Some authors think you might even play advantageously 7 $\frac{KKB}{}$) 7 $\frac{KRP1}{}$ (This move has made much noise in the world. Adopted by the French in the second game of the match by correspondence between the clubs of Paris and Westminster, it was at first looked on by the latter as very weak, pursuant to a principle, utterly unfounded, in the English School, not to advance the Rooks' Pawns one square so early.† But the party once gained by the French, Westminster did not fail to laud the move 7 $\frac{KRP1}{}$ to the skies, and to attribute thereto the preservation of the fronting central pawns: which were in truth the proximate cause of their disaster, through having so cruelly crowded the English pieces. The truth is that 7 $\frac{KRP1}{}$ very far from preserving the pawns in the centre, ought inevitably to have caused their rupture; and that if Westminster

* On the contrary, this defence had been exploded as inferior by our best players, some time before Jaenisch's book appeared. See my Treatise, edit. 1841; where this move is distinctly proclaimed to be weak as compared with the only sound move for second player; viz. 4 $\frac{}{KKtB3}$.

† A sound and good principle, and one not half sufficiently acted on, "*non-obstant*" Jaenisch's dictum.

Digitized by Google

had correctly played their ninth move, they would have come out with at least an even game; instead of remaining with all their forces shut up. Here are our proofs. *)

7 $\frac{}{\text{K Kt B 3}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Q Kt B 3}}{}$ (if 8 $\frac{\text{Q B Kt 5}}{\text{K R P 1}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{B K R 4}}{\text{K Kt P 2 b g}}$ and if 9 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{Q} \times \text{B}}$ and the front of your central Pawns will be found broken)

8 $\frac{}{\text{Cas}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{}$ (If 9 $\frac{\text{Q B Kt 5}}{\text{K R K}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{\text{K R P 1}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{B K R 4}}{\text{K Kt P 2 b g}}$ and if 11 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{Q} \times \text{B}}$ and the front of your Pawns will be broken. Up to 9 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{}$ all the moves indicated are those really played in the match of which we have spoken. The 9th move of Westminster was 9 $\frac{}{\text{K R K}}$ an attack wholly useless; since they could not take K P; and the French replied accordingly with 10 $\frac{\text{Q R P 1}}{}$ winning a move. But the correct play for Westminster was as follows †) 9 $\frac{}{\text{K Kt} \times \text{P}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{P}+}{\text{R} \times \text{B}}$ (10 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{Q P 1}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q} \times \text{B}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{Kt Q B 3}}{\text{Q Q bst}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{Q B K 3}}{\text{Q B K B 4}}$ your isolated Pawn gives him the advantage of position)

11 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{Q B K B 4}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{Q Kt K Kt 5}}{}$ (This is a fault; the correct play is 12 $\frac{\text{K R K}}{\text{Q Q 2}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{Q Kt K Kt 3}}{\text{K R P 1}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{Q B K 3}}{\text{Q R K}}$ [14 $\frac{\text{Q P 1}}{\text{Kt K 4 b g}}$] he comes off with the better disposed game) 12 $\frac{}{\text{K R K B 3}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{Q P 1}}{\text{Q Kt K 4}}$ (if 13 $\frac{\text{K R K}}{}$ or 13 $\frac{\text{Q Q Kt 3}+}{}$ 13 $\frac{}{\text{Q P 1 b g}}$) 14 $\frac{\text{K R K}}{}$ (if 14 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{P} \times \text{Kt}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{Q Q Kt 3}}{\text{R Q 3}}$ [15 $\frac{\text{Q Kt K B 3}}{\text{K P 1}}$ 16 $\frac{\text{K Kt R 4}}{\text{Q Q 2}}$ 17 $\frac{\text{Q Q Kt 3}}{\text{K R Q 3}}$ 18 $\frac{\text{K R Q}}{\text{Q R Q b g}}$] 16 $\frac{\text{K R Q}}{\text{Q K B 3}}$ he has the advantage; if 17 $\frac{\text{Q Kt K B 3}}{\text{K P 1}}$) 14 $\frac{}{\text{K R P 1}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{Q P} \times \text{Kt}}$ (if 15 $\frac{\text{Q Kt K 6}}{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}$ If 15 $\frac{\text{Q Kt K 4}}{\text{Kt} \times \text{Kt}+}$ 16 $\frac{\text{K Kt P} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{R}+}$ [16 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}$ and

---

* I do not wish to diminish the triumph of M. Jaenisch here, but in fact all that he states upon this game has been known to us in England for many years. Westminster discovered the fault when just too late.

† As I have just remarked, the move Westminster should have played was well known to us all, when too late. Jaenisch comes into the field with his critique upon this point ten years after the right time. The games played in the match between Paris and Westminster Clubs are both included in my "Chess Studies."

Digitized by Google

17 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{KBP+bg}}{}$] 17 $\frac{\text{KKB}}{\text{B} \times \text{KRP+w}}$ or if 17 $\frac{\text{KKR or KR2}}{\text{QKR5 w}}$) 16 $\frac{\text{KtKB3}}{\text{KP1}}$ (16 $\frac{\text{KtK4}}{\text{B} \times \text{Kt bg}}$) 17 $\frac{\text{KtKR2 or K5}}{}$ (if 17 $\frac{\text{Kt Q2 or Q4}}{}$ you lose Q P, if 17 $\frac{\text{KtKR4}}{\text{B} \times \text{KRP}}$ 18 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{B}}{\text{R} \times \text{KBP w}}$) 17 $\frac{}{\text{B} \times \text{RP}}$ 18 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{B}}{\text{B} \times \text{P+}}$ (18 $\frac{\text{R} \times \text{KP}}{\text{R} \times \text{KBP}}$) 19 $\frac{\text{KKB}}{\text{BKKt6+}}$ (19 $\frac{\text{KKR}}{\text{B} \times \text{R}}$ and 20 $\frac{}{\text{Q} \times \text{P}}$) 20 $\frac{\text{K'KKt2}}{}$

Now if your Kt is at K 5 20 $\frac{}{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}$ and if same Kt is at your KR2 20 $\frac{}{\text{B} \times \text{R}}$ 21 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{B}}{\text{Q} \times \text{P w}}$

Variation on Seventh Move of First Player.

1 $\frac{\text{KP2}}{\text{KP2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{\text{QKtB3}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{KBQB4}}{\text{KBQB4}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{QBP1}}{\text{QP1}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{BQKt3}}$ The move 7 $\frac{\text{KRP1}}{}$ being proved defective, it is important to decide what you should here play to fix your Pawns in the centre. This question has never hitherto been properly put, or correctly resolved. 7 $\frac{\text{QKtB3}}{}$ This is your best move, though you may also play 7 $\frac{\text{KBKt5}}{}$ as in Var But any other move would immediately cause the breaking up of your Pawns. (For example, if 7 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{\text{KKtB3 bst}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{QKtB3}}{\text{Cas}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{QBKt5}}{\text{QBKt5}}$ [if 9 $\frac{\text{KRP1}}{\text{KKt} \times \text{P}}$]) In considering the reason of 7 $\frac{\text{QKtB3}}{}$ we must above all understand that 7 $\frac{\text{KRP1}}{}$ was absolutely useless, since the arrival of Bishop $\frac{}{\text{QBKt5}}$ was not at all to be regarded with fear. In fact 7 $\frac{\text{QKtB3}}{\text{if BKKt5}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{KBKt5 bst}}{}$ then if 8 $\frac{}{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{B}}{}$ and if to prevent the advance of your QP 9 $\frac{}{\text{QKR5 bst}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Cas bst}}{\text{Cas QR}}$ (you might also move 10 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{Kt+}}{\text{P} \times \text{B}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{QQR4}}{\text{KKtK2}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{QBK3 bst}}{\text{Cas KR}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{Cas QR bg}}{}$) 11 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{P} \times \text{B}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{QRP2 bg}}{}$ But, again, if 7 $\frac{\text{QKtB3}}{\text{KKtB3 bst}}$ we here remark that to pre-

Digitized by Google

vent the derangement of your Pawns you must now play 8 $\frac{KBQKt5}{}$ for otherwise he will castle, and you will be menaced at the same time with the coming of B to your KKt4, and the move $\frac{}{KKt\times P}$ to push subsequently $\frac{}{QP1}$ nor could you parry both of these attacks. We submit these observations as the key to the entire question. We play then as Move 7 $\frac{QKtB3}{KKtB3}$ (if 7 $\frac{}{QBQ2}$ 8 $\frac{Cas}{KKtB3}$ 9 $\frac{KRP1}{Cas}$ 10 $\frac{QBKt5\,bg}{}$ And if 7 $\frac{}{QRP1}$ 8 $\frac{KRP1}{KKtB3}$ 9 $\frac{Cas}{Cas}$ 10 $\frac{QBKt5\,bg}{}$ or 9 $\frac{}{\text{if } KRP1}$ 10 $\frac{QBK3}{Cas}$ 11 $\frac{QQB2}{QKtK2}$ [11 $\frac{}{QKtKt5}$ 12 $\frac{QQKt3}{}$] 12 $\frac{QRQbg}{}$) 8 $\frac{KBKt5\,bst}{QBQ2}$ (8 $\frac{}{BKKt5}$ 9 $\frac{QP1}{QRP1}$ 10 $\frac{BQR4}{}$) 9 $\frac{B\times Kt\ bst}{B\times B}$ (To cas were less serviceable. 9 $\frac{Cas}{QKtK2\,bst}$ And if 9 $\frac{QBKt5}{KRP1}$ 10 $\frac{B\times KKt}{Q\times B}$ 11 $\frac{B\times Kt}{B\times B\,gd\,g}$ or if 10 $\frac{BKR4}{KKtP2}$ then $\frac{}{KKtP1\,gd\,g}$) 10 $\frac{QQ3}{Cas}$ (10 $\frac{}{QK2}$ 11 $\frac{Cas}{}$) 11 $\frac{Cas}{KRK}$ 12 $\frac{KRK}{KRP1}$ (12 $\frac{}{QK2}$ 13 $\frac{QBKt5}{}$) 13 $\frac{QBKB4}{\text{if } QK2}$ 14 $\frac{KKtQ2}{}$ your game is the preferable one, on account of your central position of Pawns.

We have said after Move 7 $\frac{QKtB3}{KKtB3}$ that you must continue with 8 $\frac{KBKt5}{}$ or otherwise he would castle, and threaten you with two forms of attack. Now on the first glance it would seem that you would equally prevent these attacks by 8 $\frac{Cas}{Cas}$ (8 $\frac{}{QBKt5}$ 9 $\frac{KBQKt5}{}$) 9 $\frac{KBK2}{}$ apparently attaining the same end, which is to parry simultaneously the two attacks $\frac{}{KKt\times KP}$ and $\frac{}{QBKt5}$ But this is a fallacy, for then 9 $\frac{KBK2}{KRK}$ 10 $\frac{QQ3}{}$ (if 10 $\frac{QBKt5}{KRP1}$ 11 $\frac{QBR4}{KKtP2\,bg}$ and if 11 $\frac{B\times Kt}{Q\times B}$ and the front of your Pawns is broken) 10 $\frac{}{Kt\times KP\ bst}$

Digitized by Google

11 $\frac{Kt \times Kt}{QBKB4}$ 12 $\frac{KKtKt5}{QP1}$ 13 $\frac{KKt \times KBP}{B \times Kt}$ (13 $\frac{QKB3\ bd}{QKt \times P}$ and 13 $\frac{QQKt3\ bd}{B \times Kt}$) 14 $\frac{Kt \times Q}{B \times Q}$ (or 14 $\frac{Q \times B}{R \times Q}$ 15 $\frac{Kt \times Q\ bd}{QR \times Kt}$) 15 $\frac{B \times B}{QR \times Kt}$ you lose a Pawn.

Another Variation on the same Move.

7 $\frac{KBQKt5}{QBQ2}$ 8 $\frac{QKtB3}{QKtK2}$ (You might equally move 8 $\frac{B \times Kt}{B \times B}$ 9 $\frac{QKtB3}{KKtB3}$ [9 $\frac{}{QK2}$ 10 $\frac{Cas}{}$] 10 $\frac{QQ3}{}$ re-entering the preceding Opening. If 8 $\frac{QKtB3}{KKtB3}$ 9 $\frac{B \times QKt}{}$ as above) 9 $\frac{B \times B+}{Q \times B}$ 10 $\frac{Cas}{KRP1}$ 11 $\frac{QBK3\ bst}{KKtB3}$ 12 $\frac{QQB2}{CasKR}$ 13 $\frac{QRQ}{QP1}$ 14 $\frac{KP1}{KKtR2}$ 15 $\frac{KRK\ bg}{}$

Another Variation on Seventh Move.

7 $\frac{QP1}{}$ (This move, which was actually played by La Bourdonnais against M'Donnell, is weak, since you thus break up your fronting Pawns without real aim. The only thing the defence has here to observe is to retreat his QKt to no square but K2, for then he is safe. 7 $\frac{}{QKtK2}$ 8 $\frac{KP1}{QBKt5}$ 9 $\frac{B+}{QBP1}$ 10 $\frac{QP \times P}{QKtP \times P}$ and after the several exchanges you will have no advantage over your adversary. Against the move 8 $\frac{QBKt5}{KKtB3}$ 9 $\frac{B \times Kt}{KKtP \times B}$ 10 $\frac{QKtB3}{QKtKKt3\ ev}$) 7 $\frac{}{QKtK4\ wk}$ 8 $\frac{Kt \times Kt}{P \times Kt}$ 9 $\frac{QKtB3}{KKtB3\ bst}$ 10 $\frac{QBKt5}{QRP1}$ (if 10 $\frac{}{Cas}$ 11 $\frac{QKB3}{QQ3}$ [or $\frac{}{QRP1}$] 12 $\frac{B \times Kt}{Q \times B}$ 13 $\frac{Q \times Q}{P \times Q}$ 14 $\frac{KKtP2\ bg}{}$*) 11 $\frac{QKB3}{QQ3}$ 12 $\frac{B \times Kt}{Q \times B}$ 13 $\frac{Q \times Q}{P \times Q}$ 14 $\frac{CasQR}{B \times P}$

---

* This Variation is taken from the game played by M'Donnell and De la Bourdonnais, standing in "Chess Studies," No. 4. In repeating the Opening M'Donnell retreated his QKt at move 7 very properly to K2, as now approved of by Jaenisch. See my No. 6. of "Chess Studies." In the games between these two great players, the Opening before us was introduced but thrice.

Digitized by Google

15 $\frac{KRKB}{\quad}$ for the remainder see the game actually played by M'Donnell and De la Bourdonnais. (Walker's Chess Studies, No. 36.) Your game appears to be rather the better. The same attack may be set up at Move 8, thus: 7 $\frac{QKtB3}{KKtB3}$ 8 $\frac{QP1}{QKtK2\text{ bst}}$ $\left(8\ \frac{\quad}{KtK4\text{ wk as above}}\right)$ 9 $\frac{QBKt5}{QKtKt3}$ he may in this situation push $\frac{\quad}{KRP1}$ forcing your Bishop to exchange. His position yields in no one point to yours.

TWENTY-NINTH OPENING.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 4 $\frac{QBP1}{QK2}$ This mode of play, imitated from the French defence of the Two Kings' Bishops' Opening, has not here the same success. The evil comes from the QKt, which placed on QB3 prevents the sortie of QB (necessary to interpose upon Q2, in case of $\frac{KBQKt5}{\quad}$) and prevents also his opposition on K3 (because of the advance of your QP), the only means of strictly equalising this description of game; as we have already said respecting Opening XXV of Book II. 5 $\frac{Cas}{\quad}$ (You might equally play 5 $\frac{QP2}{\quad}$ then if 5 $\frac{\quad}{KP\times P}$ 6 $\frac{Cas}{QKtK4\text{ bst}}$ 7 $\frac{Kt\times Kt}{Q\times Kt}$ he is reduced to Opening XXI of this book. And if 5 $\frac{QP2}{KBKt3}$ then 6 $\frac{Cas}{\quad}$ and he is brought to that which follows presently. For the Variation 5 $\frac{QP2}{KP\times P}$ 6 $\frac{Cas}{P\times QBP}$ 7 $\frac{QKt\times P}{QP1}$ 8 $\frac{QKtQ5}{QQ2}$ 9 $\frac{QKtP2\text{ bst}}{\quad}$ See Game by correspondence between London and Edinburgh*). 5 $\frac{\quad}{QP1}$ (if 5 $\frac{\quad}{KKtB3}$ 6 $\frac{QP2}{KBQKt3}$ 7 $\frac{QRP2}{QRP2}$ 8 $\frac{QKtR3}{QP1}$ 9 $\frac{KRK}{\quad}$ we enter upon what will presently appear. But if 5 $\frac{\quad}{KRP1}$ 6 $\frac{QP2}{BQKt3}$ 7 $\frac{Kt\times P}{Kt\times Kt}$ 8 $\frac{P\times Kt}{Q\times P}$ 9 $\frac{KKR}{QP1}$

* Given in "Chess Studies," No. 363.

Digitized by Google

10 $\frac{KBP2}{QK2}$ 11 $\frac{KP1}{P\times P}$ 12 $\frac{P\times P}{QBK3}$ 13 $\frac{B\times B}{Q\times B}$ 14 $\frac{QQR4+}{QBP1}$ 15 $\frac{QBKB4}{KKtK2}$
16 $\frac{QKtQ2}{Cas\ KR}$ 17 $\frac{KtK4}{KKtKt3}$ 18 $\frac{QRK}{KRQ}$ 19 $\frac{BKKt3\ bg}{}$) 6 $\frac{QP2\ bst}{}$

(The weak move 6 $\frac{QP1}{}$ would equalise the party) 6 $\frac{}{BQKt3}$

7 $\frac{QRP2\ bst}{}$ (if 7 $\frac{QBKt5\ wk}{KKtB3}$ 8 $\frac{QRP2}{QRP2}$ 9 $\frac{QKtR3}{KRP1}$ 10 $\frac{QBR4}{KKtP2}$

[10 $\frac{B\times Kt}{Q\times B\ gd\ g}$] 11 $\frac{BKKt3}{KP\times P}$ [11 $\frac{QP\times P}{QP\times P}$ 12 $\frac{BKKt3}{Kt\times P\ b\ g}$] 12 $\frac{QBP\times P}{KKtP1\ b\ g}$

or else may play 7 $\frac{}{KBP1}$ 8 $\frac{QBK3}{KP\times P}$ [if 8 $\frac{BKR4}{KRP2\ bst}$ 9 $\frac{BKKt3}{KKtP2}$

10 $\frac{KRP1}{KRP1}$ 11 $\frac{BKR2}{KKtP1}$ 12 $\frac{KRP\times P}{QB\times P\ b\ g}$] 9 $\frac{QB\times P}{QBK3}$ 10 $\frac{KB\times QB}{Q\times B}$

11 $\frac{QRP2}{KKtK2\ gd\ g}$ And now if 12 $\frac{QRP1}{QKt\times RP}$ or if 12 $\frac{QKtP2}{Q\times KP}$)

7 $\frac{}{QRP2}$ (if 7 $\frac{}{QRP1}$ 8 $\frac{QKtP2}{if\ KKtB3}$ 9 $\frac{QRP1}{KBQR2}$ 10 $\frac{QKtP1}{QRP\times P}$

11 $\frac{B\times P\ b\ g}{}$ and if 8 $\frac{}{KP\times QP}$ 9 $\frac{QRP1}{KBQR2}$ 10 $\frac{QBP\times P\ b\ g}{}$ if now

10 $\frac{}{QKt\times KtP}$ 11 $\frac{QQR4+}{QKtB3}$ 12 $\frac{QP1\ w}{}$ But if 7 $\frac{}{KKtB3}$

8 $\frac{KBQKt5\ b\ g}{}$) 8 $\frac{QKtR3}{KKtB3}$ 9 $\frac{KRK}{Cas}$ (8 or 9 $\frac{}{QBKt5}$

9 or 10 $\frac{KBKt5}{}$) 10 $\frac{KRP1}{KRP1}$ 11 $\frac{QKtB2}{QBQ2}$ 12 $\frac{QKtP1}{}$

(Here, as in Opening XXV of Book II, this is the decisive move*)

12 $\frac{}{KRK}$ 13 $\frac{BQR3}{QQ}$ 14 $\frac{QQ3\ b\ g}{}$ This Opening, as well as the preceding, shows wherefore one should avoid adopting those variations of the King's Bishop's Opening which lead to the Giuoco Piano.

The same defence of the Giuoco Piano may be slightly reinforced by playing 4 $\frac{QBP1}{KBKt3}$ then of necessity 5 $\frac{QP2}{QK2}$ (5 $\frac{}{QKB3\ wk}$ see Opening XXVI) and we re-enter the preceding; for if 5 $\frac{Cas}{QP1}$ 6 $\frac{QP2}{KKtB3\ bst}$ ev, as shown in a former game.

---

* From the emphatic phrase here bestowed by Jaenisch on one of his pet moves, we should think he was about to prove it forced the game; but I cannot see such to be the case.

Digitized by Google

THIRTIETH OPENING.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 4 $\frac{QBP1}{KKtB3\ bst}$ This mode of defence has considerable relationship with that of Opening XVII in Book II, but it is here much more vigorous, by reason of the surplus piece, Queen's Kt, he has in play. In latter times, the value of the attack in the Giuoco Piano has been much exaggerated; as will be proved by our analysis of the defence before us; with which we have been especially occupied, and which we here proceed to offer with a great number of variations altogether new. 5 $\frac{QP2}{}$ (We will not deign to notice the insignificant move of 5 $\frac{QP1}{}$) 5 $\frac{}{KP\times P}$ 6 $\frac{KP1\ bst}{}$ (if 6 $\frac{QBP\times P\ wk}{B+}$ 7 $\frac{QBQ2}{B\times B+}$ [7 $\frac{}{Kt\times KP}$ 8 $\frac{B\times B}{QKt\times B}$ 9 $\frac{KB\times P+\ bg}{}$] 8 $\frac{QKt\times B}{QP2}$ 9 $\frac{KP\times P}{KKt\times P}$ 10 $\frac{QQKt3}{QKtK2\ ev}$ Your isolated Pawn will be easy to defend) 6 $\frac{}{QP2}$ (This move saves him from much complexity of manœuvre, but we cannot certainly pronounce it to be strictly better than 6 $\frac{}{KtK5}$ as seen in following Openings. He has no choice beyond these two moves. If 6 $\frac{}{QK2}$ 7 $\frac{Cas}{}$ and you have the advantage; for if then 7 $\frac{}{QKt\times P}$ 8 $\frac{KKt\times Kt\ bg}{}$ If 7 $\frac{}{KKtKt5}$ 8 $\frac{QBP\times P}{}$ then 9 $\frac{KRP1}{}$ If 7 $\frac{}{KKtR4\ or\ K5}$ the Kt is lost, and if 7 $\frac{}{KKtKt}$ 8 $\frac{QBP\times P}{KBQKt3}$ 9 $\frac{KRK\ bg}{}$ In case of the move 6 $\frac{}{KKtKt5}$ some authors advise 7 $\frac{KB\times KBP+}{}$ but this were wrong, for then 7 $\frac{}{K\times B}$ 8 $\frac{KtKt5+}{KK}$ 9 $\frac{Q\times Kt}{QKt\times P}$ 10 $\frac{QK4}{QK2}$ and he maintains the advantage, since 11 $\frac{QBP\times P}{KB\times P}$ Instead, therefore, of shaping your tactics thus, you should rather play 6 $\frac{}{KKtKt5}$ 7 $\frac{QBP\times P}{if\ BQKt3}$ 8 $\frac{KRP1}{}$ and 9 $\frac{QB\times Kt}{}$ doubling his Pawn on side file; and if 7 $\frac{}{B+}$ 8 $\frac{QKtB3}{QP2}$ 9 $\frac{KBQKt5}{QBQ2}$ 10 $\frac{B\times Kt}{B\times B}$ 11 $\frac{KRP1}{}$ then $\frac{QB\times Kt}{}$ doubling his Pawn

Digitized by Google

on border file. If, again, 6 ___ 7 $\frac{B \times BP+}{K \times B}$ 8 $\frac{KtKt5+}{}$ Now if 8 ___ 9 $\frac{Q \times Kt+}{KKtP1}$ 10 $\frac{QK2\ b\ g}{}$ or if 8 ___ 9 $\frac{QQKt3+\ w}{}$ again, if 8 ___ 9 $\frac{QQ3+\ w}{}$ or if 8 ___ 9 $\frac{Q \times Kt}{Kt \times P}$ 10 $\frac{KtK4\ b\ g}{}$ If 8 ___ 9 $\frac{Q \times Kt}{\text{if } Kt \times P}$ 10 $\frac{Kt \times P+}{KKKt}$ 11 $\frac{Q \times Kt\ w}{}$ Further, if 6 ___ 7 $\frac{P \times P}{\text{if } BQKt3}$ 8 $\frac{QP1\ b\ g}{}$ but if 7 ___ 8 $\frac{QKtB3}{QP2}$ 9 $\frac{KBQKt5}{QBQ2}$ 10 $\frac{B \times Kt}{B \times B}$ 11 $\frac{QRP1}{B \times Kt+}$ [he would lose more time retreating B] 12 $\frac{P \times B}{KRP1}$ 13 $\frac{Cas}{}$ you have the better disposed game) 7 $\frac{KBKt5\ bst}{KKtK5}$ (if 7 $\frac{P \times Kt\ bd}{P \times B}$ 8 $\frac{P \times KKtP}{KRKt\ b\ g}$ and if 7 $\frac{KP \times P\ en\ p}{Q \times P\ b\ g}$) 8 $\frac{B \times Kt+}{P \times B}$ (if 8 $\frac{KKt \times P}{QBQ2}$ 9 $\frac{B \times Kt}{B \times B}$ 10 $\frac{Cas}{QBQ2}$ ev and if at 9 or 10 $\frac{Kt \times Kt}{B \times BP+}$) 9 $\frac{P \times P}{}$ (We think it rather better to capture with Kt* 9 $\frac{Kt \times P}{B \times Kt}$ [9 ___ 10 $\frac{QBK3}{QBP1}$ 11 $\frac{KtQKt3}{QBR3}$ 12 $\frac{QKtQ2\ gd\ g}{}$] 10 $\frac{P \times B}{QBP1}$ 11 $\frac{QKtB3\ bst}{P \times P}$ 12 $\frac{Q \times P}{Kt \times Kt}$ 13 $\frac{P \times Kt}{Cas}$ 14 $\frac{Cas}{}$ we rather prefer your game) 9 $\frac{}{KBQKt3}$ (To check with B would be faulty, as tending to disengage your force on this flank more speedily. 9 ___ 10 $\frac{QBQ2}{B \times B+}$ [10 ___ 11 $\frac{QKtB3}{}$] 11 $\frac{QKt \times B}{PQB4}$ [11 ___ 12 $\frac{QQB2\ b\ g}{}$] 12 $\frac{QRQB}{\text{if } QK2}$ 13 $\frac{QQB2\ b\ g}{}$ and if 12 $\frac{}{P \times P}$ 13 $\frac{KKt \times P\ b\ g}{}$ If, again, 12 $\frac{}{PQB5}$ 13 $\frac{QKtP1\ b\ g}{}$

---

* In Palamede, 1844, p. 217, Jaenisch recants this opinion, and considers to take with Kt inferior; appending the following: 9 $\frac{Kt \times P}{KBQKt3\ bst}$ 10 $\frac{QBK3}{QBP1}$ 11 $\frac{KtQKt3}{PQB5\ bst}$ 12 $\frac{B \times KB}{RP \times B}$ 13 $\frac{KtQ4}{KtQB4\ bst}$ 14 $\frac{Cas}{KtQ6}$ 15 $\frac{QQB2}{QBP2}$ and ___ $\frac{}{Cas\ KR}$ with b g

Digitized by Google

Observe, that if at Move 10 $\frac{QBQ2}{Kt \times B}$ 11 $\frac{QKt \times Kt}{PQB4}$ 12 $\frac{QRQB}{B \times Kt+}$ 13 $\frac{Q \times B}{P \times P}$ 14 $\frac{Kt \times P\ b\ g}{}$) 10 $\frac{QKtB3\ bst}{}$ (You might also castle, 10 $\frac{Cas}{if\ Cas}$ 11 $\frac{QKtB3}{}$ But 10 $\frac{QBK3}{}$ is disadvantageous, for then 10 $\frac{}{PQB4}$ 11 $\frac{QP \times P}{}$ [without which $\frac{}{P \times QP}$ then $\frac{}{QBP2}$] 11 $\frac{}{Kt \times QBP}$ 12 $\frac{B \times Kt}{B \times B}$ [12 $\frac{QKtP2}{KtK5}$] 13 $\frac{Cas}{Cas}$ 14 $\frac{QKtB3}{QBQKt2\ gd\ g}$) 10 $\frac{}{PQB4}$ $\frac{}{bst}$ (if 10 $\frac{}{Cas}$ or 10 $\frac{}{QBKt5}$ 11 $\frac{QBK3}{}$ and you prevent the undoubling of his Pawn) 11 $\frac{P \times P}{KKt \times Kt}$ 12 $\frac{P \times Kt}{B \times P}$ 13 $\frac{KKtQ4}{Cas}$ 14 $\frac{Cas}{}$ The game seems even. Authors have hitherto stopt in this analysis about the 8th Move; we believe we have made some progress in showing that second player may undouble his Pawn without loss. As to the continuation of the game, we shall only remark that if 14 $\frac{}{BQKt3}$ 15 $\frac{QRP2}{QRP2}$ (15 $\frac{}{QRP1}$ 16 $\frac{QBR3}{KRK}$ 17 $\frac{KBP2}{QBP2}$ 18 $\frac{KtQKt3}{PQB5}$ 19 $\frac{KtQ4\ b\ g}{}$) 16 $\frac{QBR3}{KRK}$ 17 $\frac{if\ KBP2}{QBP2}$ 18 $\frac{KtQKt3}{QBR3}$ (18 $\frac{KtQKt5}{QBR3}$ 19 $\frac{KRK}{B \times Kt\ ev*}$) 19 $\frac{KRK}{QRQB}$ equal. If at Move 17 $\frac{KRK}{QBR3}$ (17 $\frac{}{QBP2}$ 18 $\frac{KtQKt5\ b\ g}{}$) 18 $\frac{KBP2}{QBP2\ ev}$

THIRTY-FIRST OPENING.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 4 $\frac{QBP1}{KKtB3}$ 5 $\frac{QP2}{P \times P}$ 6 $\frac{KP1}{KtK5}$ The Italian school gave this as best defence for second

* In the Palamede, 1844, p. 218, Jaenisch repeats his opinion, that the nineteen leading moves here laid down are the best that can be played on both sides; suggesting, therefore, that this would be a profitable game for amateurs to continue by correspondence.

Digitized by Google

player; probably not liking the Pawn momentarily doubled in the preceding form. The writers of our own time have since rejected this move $\overline{\text{Kt K 5}}$, as exposing that piece to great danger. A study of four years convinces us that the dangers to which Knight is here exposed have been much exaggerated; and that although he is open to sundry strong assaults, yet the move $6\ \overline{\text{Kt K 5}}$ presents large resources, and that it would at least be extremely difficult to prove that it ought to cost him the game.

In the first place we must observe that $7\ \underline{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ would not yield you profit; for then $7\ \overline{\text{B}+}$ $8\ \underline{\text{B Q 2}}$ $\underline{\text{Kt} \times \text{B}}$ (we give the analysis of $8\ \overline{\text{B} \times \text{B}+}$ purposely in a supplementary note) $9\ \underline{\text{Q Kt} \times \text{Kt}}$ $10\ \underline{\text{K B Q 3}}$ $11\ \underline{\text{Cas}}$ $\overline{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}$ $12\ \underline{\text{Q} \times \text{B}}$ $\overline{\text{Q B Kt 5}}$ $13\ \underline{\text{K B K 2 ev}}$; and if $10\ \underline{\text{K B Kt 5}}$ $\overline{\text{Q B Q 2}}$ $11\ \underline{\text{B} \times \text{Q Kt}}$ (to avoid $\overline{\text{Q Kt} \times \text{K P}}$) $11\ \overline{\text{Q B} \times \text{B}}$ $12\ \underline{\text{Cas}}$ $\overline{\text{Cas}}$ $13\ \underline{\text{Q R P 1}}$ $\overline{\text{K B K 2}}$ he keeps the two Bishops against Knights.

Moreover, on Move 7, you have three modes of threatening the audacious K Kt. These are $7\ \underline{\text{K B Q 5}}$ your best move, $7\ \underline{\text{Q K 2}}$ and $7\ \underline{\text{Cas}}$ Let us pause a moment on the last: $7\ \underline{\text{Cas}}$ $\overline{\text{Q P 2 bst}}$ $8\ \underline{\text{if K B Kt 5}}$ $\overline{\text{P} \times \text{Q B P}}$ ($8\ \underline{\text{K B Q Kt 3}}$ $\overline{\text{Q B Kt 5}}$) $9\ \underline{\text{Q Kt} \times \text{P}}$ $\overline{\text{Kt} \times \text{Kt}}$ $10\ \underline{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}+}$ $\overline{\text{Kt P} \times \text{B}}$ $11\ \underline{\text{Q Kt P} \times \text{Kt}}$ $\overline{\text{Cas b g}}$ and if $9\ \underline{\text{B} \times \text{Q Kt}+}$ $\overline{\text{P} \times \text{B}}$ $10\ \underline{\text{Q Kt} \times \text{P}}$ $\overline{\text{Q B R 3 b g}}$ and if $11\ \underline{\text{Kt} \times \text{Kt}}$ $\overline{\text{P} \times \text{Kt b g}}$ Your correct play against $7\ \overline{\text{Q P 2}}$ will be $8\ \underline{\text{K P} \times \text{P en p}}$ $\overline{\text{K Kt} \times \text{P}}$ $9\ \underline{\text{K R K}+}$ $\overline{\text{Q Kt K 2}}$ $10\ \underline{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ $\overline{\text{Kt} \times \text{B}}$ $11\ \underline{\text{P} \times \text{B}}$ $\overline{\text{Q} \times \text{Q}}$ $12\ \underline{\text{R} \times \text{Q}}$ $\overline{\text{Q B Kt 5}}$ $13\ \underline{\text{R Q 3}}$ $\overline{\text{Cas}}$ his game is slightly preferable; and therefore $7\ \underline{\text{Cas}}$ is bad.

We now proceed with our analysis, supposing you to try at Move $7\ \underline{\text{Q K 2}}$ (This attack is considered to be the best by many amateurs, among others by Mosler. We shall show, on the contrary, that it is a bad move, yield-

Digitized by Google

ing the advantage to the defence.) 7 $\frac{}{QP2}$ 8 $\frac{P \times P \text{ en p}}{Cas}$ (We examine this move, because it is the one ordinarily played, and one which admittedly does not compromise his game; but for all that he had better play 8 $\frac{}{QBKB4}$ as in Var) 9 $\frac{P \times QBP}{QQ2}$ 10 $\frac{Cas}{KRK}$ 11 $\frac{QQ3}{P \times QBP}$ 12 $\frac{QKt \times P \text{ bst}}{Q \times Q}$ (For the move 12 $\frac{Q \times Q}{}$ see Var. But if 12 $\frac{QKt \times P}{Kt \times Kt}$ 13 $\frac{P \times Kt}{\text{if } Q \times P \text{ or } KBQ3}$ 14 $\frac{KKtKt5}{}$ &c.) 13 $\frac{B \times Q}{Kt \times QKt}$ 14 $\frac{P \times Kt}{KBQ3}$ (if 14 $\frac{}{KRP1}$ 15 $\frac{QBKB4}{\text{if } KBQKt3}$ 16 $\frac{KRK}{}$ and he will not regain Pawn) 15 $\frac{KtKt5}{KRP1}$ 16 $\frac{BKR7+}{KKB}$ 17 $\frac{KtK4}{KB \times P}$ 18 $\frac{QB+}{QKtK2}$ 19 $\frac{KRK}{QKtP1 \text{ bst}}$ (if 19 $\frac{QRQ}{QKtP1}$) 20 $\frac{QBP1}{KBP2}$ (20 $\frac{}{QBK3}$ 21 $\frac{QBP1}{}$) 21 $\frac{KtQ6}{}$ (if 21 $\frac{BKKt6}{}$ he ought not to take 21 $\frac{}{P \times Kt}$ because of 22 $\frac{B \times R}{K \times B}$ 23 $\frac{R \times P}{KBQ}$ 24 $\frac{B \times Kt}{B \times B}$ 25 $\frac{QRK \text{ w}}{}$ but he should rather play 21 $\frac{}{KRQ}$ 22 $\frac{B \times Kt+}{K \times B}$ [22 $\frac{KtQB3}{KBQ3}$ 23 $\frac{QRQ}{Kt \times KB}$ 24 $\frac{B \times B+}{KKB2 \text{ ev}}$] 23 $\frac{KtQB3+}{KKB}$ 24 $\frac{KtQ5}{KBQ3}$) 21 $\frac{}{B \times Kt}$ 22 $\frac{B \times B}{KKB2}$ 23 $\frac{B \times Kt}{R \times B}$ 24 $\frac{BKt8+}{KKB}$ 25 $\frac{BQ5}{R \times R+}$ 26 $\frac{R \times R}{QRQKt}$ 27 $\frac{BQB6}{QBKt2}$ 28 $\frac{BQ7}{BK5 \text{ ev}}$

Variation on Twelfth Move.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 4 $\frac{QBP1}{KKtB3}$ 5 $\frac{QP2}{P \times P}$ 6 $\frac{KP1}{KtK5}$ 7 $\frac{QK2}{QP2}$ 8 $\frac{P \times P \text{ en p}}{Cas}$ 9 $\frac{P \times QBP}{QQ2}$ 10 $\frac{Cas}{KRK}$ 11 $\frac{QQ3}{P \times QBP}$ 12 $\frac{Q \times Q}{QB \times Q}$ 13 $\frac{QKt \times P}{Kt \times Kt}$ 14 $\frac{P \times Kt}{KtQR4}$ 15 $\frac{KBQ5}{}$ (if 15 $\frac{KBQKt3}{KBQKt3}$ 16 $\frac{QBKB4}{QRQB}$ 17 $\frac{KKtKt5}{Kt \times B}$ [17 $\frac{KRQ}{QBKt5}$] 18 $\frac{QRP \times Kt}{QRP1}$ you cannot longer sustain Pawn) 15 $\frac{}{KBKt3}$ (if 15 $\frac{}{KBQ3}$ 16 $\frac{KRQ \text{ bg}}{}$) 16 $\frac{QBKB4}{QRQB}$

Digitized by Google

17 $\frac{KKtKt5}{QBK3}$ ($17\ \frac{KRQ}{BQR5}$) 18 $\frac{KB\times B}{KBP\times P}$ 19 $\frac{KRK}{KB\times P}$ 20 $\frac{B\times B}{R\times B}$ 21 $\frac{R\times P}{R\times R}$ 22 $\frac{Kt\times R}{R\times P\ ev}$

Variation on Eighth Move of Second Player.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 4 $\frac{QBP1}{KKtB3}$ 5 $\frac{QP2}{P\times P}$ 6 $\frac{KP1}{KKtK5}$ 7 $\frac{QK2}{QP2}$ 8 $\frac{KP\times P\ en\ p}{QBKB4\ bst}$ 9 $\frac{QBP\times P}{}$ (if 9 $\frac{KKtKt5}{Cas}$ 10 $\frac{Kt\times Kt}{B\times Kt\ b\ g}$ If 9 $\frac{KBQ5}{Cas}$ 10 $\frac{B\times QKt}{QKtP\times B}$ 11 $\frac{P\times QBP}{Q\times P}$ [$\frac{QBP\times P}{KB+\ b\ g}$] 12 $\frac{Cas}{KRK\ b\ g}$ If, again 9 $\frac{P\times QBP}{Q\times P}$ 10 $\frac{QBP\times P}{QKt\times P}$ [10 $\frac{Cas}{Cas\ K\ R\ b\ g}$] 11 $\frac{Kt\times Kt}{B\times Kt}$ [11 $\frac{BKt5+}{Kt\times B}$ 12 $\frac{Q\times Kt+}{BQ2\ b\ g}$] 12 $\frac{if\ B+}{KKB}$ [12 $\frac{Cas}{Cas\ K\ R\ b\ g}$] 13 $\frac{Cas}{Kt\times KBP\ b\ g}$ and if 12 $\frac{KBP1}{QBK3\ b\ g}$ Lastly, if 9 $\frac{P\times QBP}{Q\times P}$ 10 $\frac{QBP\times P}{}$ he might here equally retake 10 $\frac{}{KB\times P}$ then 11 $\frac{Cas}{Cas\ K\ R}$ [11 $\frac{BQ5\ bd}{QQR4+}$] 12 $\frac{KKtR4}{KKtQ3}$ 13 $\frac{QBKB4}{KRK\ b\ g}$) 9 $\frac{}{KB+}$ (if 9 $\frac{}{QKt\times P}$ 10 $\frac{Kt\times Kt}{B\times Kt}$ 11 $\frac{KBP1\ b\ g}{}$ [11 $\frac{B\times KBP+}{K\times B}$ 12 $\frac{QQB4+}{}$ equal] and if 9 $\frac{}{KB\times P}$ 10 $\frac{KBQ5}{Cas}$ 11 $\frac{Cas\ b\ g}{}$ but if 11 $\frac{B\times QKt}{KB\times KBP+\ b\ g}$) 10 $\frac{QBQ2}{Q\times P}$ 11 $\frac{Cas}{Cas\ QR}$ (if 11 $\frac{KB\times B}{Q\times B+}$ 12 $\frac{QKtB3}{Cas\ K\ R\ b\ g}$) 12 $\frac{B\times KBP}{}$ (if 12 $\frac{QB\times B}{Q\times B}$ 13 $\frac{QRP1}{QQ3}$ 14 $\frac{KB\times P}{QKt\times P}$ [14 $\frac{QP1}{QKtK2\ b\ g}$] 15 $\frac{Kt\times Kt}{Q\times Kt\ b\ g}$) 12 $\frac{}{QKt\times P}$ 13 $\frac{Kt\times Kt}{Q\times Kt}$ 14 $\frac{B\times B}{Q\times B}$ 15 $\frac{QRP1}{QQ5\ b\ g}$

REMARK UPON THIS OPENING.

The aim of this note is to examine more in detail the following branch of the attack.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBB4}$ 4 $\frac{QBP1}{KKtB3}$ 5 $\frac{QP2}{P\times P}$ 6 $\frac{KP1}{KtK5}$ 7 $\frac{QBP\times P}{B+\ bst}$ 8 $\frac{QBQ2\ bst}{B\times B+bst}$ (We have already seen in the text that

Digitized by Google

8 $\frac{}{\text{Kt} \times \text{B}}$ conducts us to a tolerably equal game) 9 $\frac{\text{QKt} \times \text{B}}{}$ (if 9 $\frac{\text{K Kt} \times \text{B}}{}$ hoping to gain a move to advance K B P 1, he might play 9 $\frac{}{\text{QP2}}$ [if 9 $\frac{}{\text{Kt} \times \text{KBP}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{QKB3 b g}}{}$] 10 $\frac{\text{KBKt5}}{\text{QBQ2}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{B} \times \text{B}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{\text{Cas}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{QKtB3}}{\text{KBP2}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{KBP1}}{\text{Kt K Kt4}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{K Kt QKt3}}{\text{QKtP1}}$ &c, but it would be better to answer thus: 9 $\frac{}{\text{QP2}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{KB QKt5}}{\text{K Kt} \times \text{KBP}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}+}{\text{P} \times \text{B}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{K} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{QKR5}+}$ 13 $\frac{\text{K K3}}{\text{QK Kt4}+}$ 14 $\frac{\text{K KB2}}{\text{QKR5}+}$ and thus nullifies the game by persisting in the same moves) 9 $\frac{}{\text{QP2}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{KBQ3}}{}$ (if 10 $\frac{\text{KBKt5}}{\text{QBQ2}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}{}$ to avoid $\frac{}{\text{QKt} \times \text{KP}}$ 11 $\frac{}{\text{B} \times \text{B}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{\text{Cas}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{QKt Kt3}}{\text{QBQKt4}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{KRK}}{\text{QKtP1 gd g}}$) 10 $\frac{}{\text{KBP2}}$ the best move, and to be distinctly noted as such. 11 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{\text{Cas}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{QKt Kt3}}{\text{QKtP1}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{K Kt K}}{\text{QBKt2}}$ (if 13 $\frac{\text{QRQB}}{}$ he equally plays 13 $\frac{}{\text{BKt2}}$ This *fianchetto* appears here to constitute his strongest defence) 14 $\frac{\text{KBP1}}{\text{K Kt Kt4}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{QRQB}}{\text{QRQB}}$ he then plays $\frac{}{\text{QKtK2}}$ and the game is equal. The move $\frac{\text{KBP1}}{}$ leads to $\frac{}{\text{K Kt K5}}$ and $\frac{\text{KRP2 bd}}{}$ conducts to $\frac{}{\text{K Kt K3}}$

THIRTY-SECOND OPENING.

1 $\frac{\text{KP2}}{\text{KP2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{K KtB3}}{\text{QKtB3}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{KBQB4}}{\text{KBQB4}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{QBP1}}{\text{K Kt B3}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{KP} \times \text{P}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{KP1}}{\text{Kt K5}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{BQ5 bst}}{}$ (If now 7 $\frac{}{\text{KBP2}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{QP}}{\text{B}+}$ 9 $\frac{\text{QBQ2}}{\text{Kt} \times \text{QB}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{QKt} \times \text{Kt gd g}}{}$) 7 $\frac{}{\text{Kt} \times \text{KBP bst}}$* 8 $\frac{\text{K} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}+}$ 9 $\frac{\text{K K}}{}$

* In the games and variations we now proceed to examine, Jaenisch attempts to demonstrate that second player may safely exchange this Kt for three Pawns. I dissent "in toto" from his position; believing that although three *good* Pawns may be the full value of a minor piece, the case before us is not one which falls into that category; and that first player ought to win from the situation thus created, say seven times out of ten. Jaenisch founds his theory

Digitized by Google

(This is the move advised by the Italians, the authors of this Opening. Your King has two other squares of retreat, examined severally in the subsequent Openings) 9 $\frac{}{P \times P}$ 10 $\frac{QB \times P}{QKtK2\ bst}$ (if 10 $\frac{}{QK2}$ 11 $\frac{QKtQ2}{Cas}$ 12 $\frac{QKtK4}{KBQKt3}$ 13 $\frac{QK2\ bg}{}$ now if 13 $\frac{}{QP1}$ 14 $\frac{P \times P}{if\ QBP \times P}$ 15 $\frac{B \times Kt}{QKtP \times B}$ 16 $\frac{KtKB6+\ w}{}$ and if 11 $\frac{QKtQ2}{QP1}$ 12 $\frac{QKtK4}{}$ if he castles he gets a tripled pawn; and if he retreat B or Kt he is in great danger from $\frac{KP \times QP}{}$ and then $\frac{QB \times KKtP}{}$ If 10 $\frac{}{Cas}$ 11 $\frac{QKtQ2}{KRK}$ 12 $\frac{QKtK4}{}$ and if 11 $\frac{}{QKtK2}$ 12 $\frac{KBK4}{QP1}$ [12 $\frac{}{QP2}$ 13 $\frac{B \times KRP+w}{}$] 13 $\frac{QQB2}{}$ then $\frac{QQB3\ bg}{}$ and if 11 $\frac{}{QP1}$ 12 $\frac{B \times Kt}{P \times B}$ 13 $\frac{QKtK4}{KBQKt3}$ 14 $\frac{QQB2}{}$ to play afterwards $\frac{QRQ\ gdg}{}$) 11 $\frac{KBK4\ bst}{QP2\ bst}$ 12 $\frac{P \times Penp}{Q \times P}$ 13 $\frac{Q \times Q}{P \times Q}$ he retakes as best with P to preserve a strong line of attack, and to open out an advantageous road for QR. The sequel will prove the importance of this. 14 $\frac{QB \times P}{}$ (It were better not to take this Pawn, but then we think it sufficiently evident that in this situation of the game he has the best of it; his three pawns sufficing to counterbalance the power of your piece. As 14 $\frac{QB \times KKtP}{}$ is the sole attack which is difficult to meet, and which leads to brilliant and interesting combinations, we shall here examine its fruits in detail) 14 $\frac{}{KRKt}$ 15 $\frac{BKB6}{}$ (if 15 $\frac{BQ4}{B \times B}$ 16 $\frac{Kt \times B}{RKt5}$ 17 $\frac{QKtB3}{KBP2}$ 18 $\frac{KRP1}{R \times B+}$ 19 $\frac{Kt \times R}{P \times Kt}$ 20 $\frac{KtKt5}{KQ2}$ 21 $\frac{QRQ}{QP1}$ Against your Rook, he has Bishop and two fine central Pawns) 15 $\frac{}{R \times P}$ 16 $\frac{QKtQ2\ bst}{}$ (It were bad to take RP with KB; see Var) 16 $\frac{}{QBKB4\ bst}$ 17 $\frac{QRQKt}{}$ (It would be dangerous to take his QKtP;

---

on the Italians, who advocated giving up Kt for the three Pawns; but it must be remembered they themselves never satisfactorily proved the matter, and that the second player's Pawns are stronger according to Italian laws, as they cannot be taken "en passant."

Digitized by Google

see Var. But if 17 $\frac{B \times Kt}{QB \times B}$ 18 $\frac{B \times QP}{QB \times Kt}$ 19 $\frac{B \times KB}{RK7+}$ 20 $\frac{KQ}{R \times KRP+ \text{ w}}$)

17 $\frac{}{QB \times KB}$ 18 $\frac{Kt \times B}{KtQ4}$ 19 $\frac{R \times P}{}$ (By taking K B with Kt you would reunite his three Pawns) 19 $\frac{}{R \times QRP}$ 20 $\frac{Kt \times B}{}$ (Not to take were to expose your men to great danger $\frac{}{KBKt5+}$) 20 $\frac{}{Kt \times B}$

21 $\frac{QKtQKt3}{}$ ev; if now 21 $\frac{}{QRP2}$ 22 $\frac{KQ}{}$ or if 21 $\frac{}{KRQKt7}$

22 $\frac{KRKB}{}$

Variation on your Sixteenth Move.

16 $\frac{B \times KRP \text{ bd}}{KtQ4}$ (We may remark that if 16 $\frac{B \times Kt}{K \times B}$ and you cannot then take K R P, as he would move K B P 2) 17 $\frac{QBQ4}{}$ (If 17 $\frac{QBQB3}{QBKt5}$

18 $\frac{KBK4}{Kt \times B}$ [if 18 $\frac{KKtR4 \text{ or } Q2}{RK7+ \text{ w}}$ and if 18 $\frac{KRKB}{Kt \times B}$ 19 $\frac{QKt \times Kt}{KBKt5}$

20 $\frac{QRQB}{QRQB \text{ w}}$] 19 $\frac{Kt \times Kt}{BQKt5}$ 20 $\frac{QRQB}{QRQB}$ [20 $\frac{KKB}{QBR6}$] 21 $\frac{KKB}{QBR6}$

22 $\frac{QKtK2}{R \times R+}$ 23 $\frac{Kt \times R}{RQB7+}$ 24 $\frac{KKKt}{KBQB4+}$ and then mates. If 21 $\frac{KKtQ2}{QR \times Kt}$

22 $\frac{R \times R}{RK7+}$ 23 $\frac{KKB}{B \times R \text{ w}}$ If 17 $\frac{BKR8}{QBKt5}$ 18 $\frac{KBK4}{KBKt5+}$ [18 $\frac{KKtQ2}{}$

or $\frac{R4 \text{ bd}}{RK7+}$ if 18 $\frac{QKtQ2 \text{ bd}}{KBKt5}$ if 18 $\frac{KKtQ4 \text{ bd}}{BKt5+}$ if 18 $\frac{KRKB}{BKt5+}$ 19 $\frac{KKtQ2}{RK7+ \text{ w}}$]

19 $\frac{KKtQ2}{RK7+}$ [19 $\frac{KQ \text{ bd}}{KtK6+}$] 20 $\frac{KKB}{KtK6+}$ 21 $\frac{KKKt}{KB \times Kt \text{ w}}$ If at

Move 17 $\frac{QBKt5}{R \times QB}$ 18 $\frac{Kt \times R}{BQ5 \text{ w}}$ If 17 $\frac{QBKR4}{QBKt5}$ 18 $\frac{KBK4 \text{ or } KRKB}{BKt5+}$

[18 $\frac{QKtQ2 \text{ bd}}{KBKt5}$] 19 $\frac{KKtQ2}{RK7+}$ or 19 $\frac{KQ}{KtK6+}$ 20 $\frac{KQB \text{ lost}}{QR+}$)

17 $\frac{}{QBKt5}$ 18 $\frac{QB \times KB}{}$ (It were rather stronger to play 18 $\frac{QKtQ2}{}$

but then 18 $\frac{}{R \times Kt}$ 19 $\frac{Kt \times R}{B \times B}$ ev; or else 19 $\frac{K \times R}{QB \times Kt}$ 20 $\frac{KRK+}{KKB}$

21 $\frac{B \times KB}{P \times B}$ 22 $\frac{KRKB}{QBKR4}$ 23 $\frac{KRKB5}{QRQ}$ ev; and if 19 $\frac{B \times KB}{B \times KKt}$

Digitized by Google

20 $\frac{K \times R}{B \times R}$ 21 $\frac{B \times QP}{QRQw}$) 18 $\frac{}{QB \times Kt}$ 19 $\frac{BQ4}{}$ (if 19 $\frac{B \times QP}{RK7+}$ 20 $\frac{KKB}{Kt+w}$ and if 19 $\frac{QBKKt}{RKKt2w}$ or if 19 $\frac{QBKB2}{R \times B}$) 19 $\frac{}{RK7+}$ 20 $\frac{KKB}{KtKB5\ bst}$ 21 $\frac{KRKt}{BKKt7+}$ (if 21 $\frac{QKtB3}{BKKt7+}$ and then mates) 22 $\frac{R \times B}{R \times R\ bg}$

Variation on your Seventeenth Move.

16 $\frac{QKtQ2}{QBKB4}$ 17 $\frac{KB \times QKtP}{QRQKt}$ 18 $\frac{KBK4}{}$ (if 18 $\frac{KBQR6}{KtQ4}$ Now if 19 $\frac{QBR4\ Kt5\ Q4\ or\ KR8}{KtQKt5}$ [20 $\frac{KKB}{BKR6}$] and play as you may, he has the advantage. If, instead, 19 $\frac{KKtR4}{KB+}$ if 20 $\frac{KKB}{KtK6+}$ 21 $\frac{KK2}{B \times Kt+w}$ if 20 $\frac{KK2}{B \times Kt+w}$ if 20 $\frac{KQ}{B \times Kt}$ 21 $\frac{B \times B}{QRKt7w}$ If 18 $\frac{QB \times Kt}{K \times B}$ 19 $\frac{BK4}{B \times B}$ 20 $\frac{QKt \times B}{QRKt7}$ 21 $\frac{Kt \times KB}{P \times Kt\ bg}$) 18 $\frac{}{BQKt5}$ 19 $\frac{KB \times B\ must}{Kt \times B\ bg}$ If 20 $\frac{QRQ\ \ KQ\ or\ KKB}{KtK6}$ if 20 $\frac{QRP1}{BQR4}$ if 20 $\frac{QRQB\ or\ QRQKt}{KQ2}$

THIRTY-THIRD OPENING.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 4 $\frac{QBP1}{KKtB3}$ 5 $\frac{QP2}{P \times P}$ 6 $\frac{KP1}{KKtK5}$ 7 $\frac{KBQ5}{Kt \times KBP}$ $\frac{K \times Kt}{P \times P+}$ 9 $\frac{KKB}{P \times P}$ (This retreat of K has for its object the preventing adversary's advantageously pushing QP2 as in last Opening, and the support of KKtP. The Italians had no occasion to move 9 $\frac{KKB}{}$ since their Pawns could not capture "en passant.") 10 $\frac{QB \times P}{Cas\ bst}$ (If 10 $\frac{}{QKtK2}$ 11 $\frac{KBK4}{KRP1}$ 12 $\frac{QQB2}{KBQKt3}$ 13 $\frac{QKtQ2}{Cas}$ 14 $\frac{QQB3}{}$ his game is much cramped. If 10 $\frac{}{QK2}$ 11 $\frac{QKtQ2}{Cas}$

Digitized by Google

[11 $\frac{\text{Q Q B 2}}{\text{Q Kt Kt 5 gd g}}$] 12 $\frac{\text{Q Kt K 4}}{\text{K B Q Kt 3}}$ [12 $\frac{}{\text{K R K}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{Q Kt K Kt 5}}{}$]

13 $\frac{\text{Q Q Kt 3 b g}}{}$ For now if 13 $\frac{}{\text{Q P 1}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{K P} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q B P} \times \text{P}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{Q Q B 3 b g}}{}$

If 13 $\frac{}{\text{Q Kt R 4}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{Q Q B 3}}{}$ If 13 $\frac{}{\text{Q Kt Q}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{Q Q B 3}}{\text{Q Kt K 3}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{Q R K}}{\text{if K K R}}$

16 $\frac{\text{K Kt P 1}}{}$ and his game is crowded) 11 $\frac{\text{Q Kt Q 2}}{\text{Q P 1 bst}}$ (You had

equally another form of atttack; see Var for 11 $\frac{\text{Q Q B 2}}{}$ If 11 $\frac{\text{Q Kt Q 2}}{\text{Q Kt K 2}}$

12 $\frac{\text{K B K 4}}{\text{Q P 1}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{Q Q B 2}}{}$ and then $\frac{\text{Q Q B 3 b g}}{}$) 12 $\frac{\text{Q Kt K 4}}{}$

(It would not be good to play here 12 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}{}$ for though you would

double his Pawns, you would afford a good sortie to his Q B and Q R at

a time your K is much exposed. For example, 12 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{Q Kt P} \times \text{B}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{Q Kt K 4}}{\text{Q B +}}$

[13 $\frac{\text{K Kt P 1}}{\text{Q B K R 6 +}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{K K 2}}{\text{Q B Kt 7}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{K R K}}{\text{K R K b g}}$] 14 $\frac{\text{K K}}{\text{K B Kt 5 +}}$

15 $\frac{\text{K K B 2}}{\text{Q P 1}}$ 16 $\frac{\text{Q Kt Q 2}}{\text{Q R Q Kt gd g}}$ If 16 $\frac{\text{Q Kt Q B 3}}{\text{Q K 2 gd g}}$ and if at Move

13 $\frac{\text{Q Q R 4}}{\text{Q R Q Kt}}$ then $\frac{}{\text{Q P} \times \text{P}}$ threatening $\frac{}{\text{Q Q 6 +}}$ and having a fine

game) 12 $\frac{}{\text{Q Kt K 2 bst}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{Q Kt} \times \text{B}}{\text{P} \times \text{Kt}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{K B K 4}}{\text{Q B K B 4 bst}}$

15 $\frac{\text{Q Q B 2}}{\text{B} \times \text{B}}$ 16 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{B}}{\text{Q Q 4}}$ ev

Variation on First Player's Eleventh Move.

11 $\frac{\text{Q Q B 2}}{\text{Q P 1 bst}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{Q Q B 3}}{}$ (12 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}{}$ were not advantageous; for

then 12 $\frac{}{\text{Q Kt P} \times \text{B}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{Q Kt Q 2}}{\text{Q B R 3 +}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{K K}}{\text{K R K}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{Q Kt K 4}}{\text{K B Q Kt 3}}$

16 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q P} \times \text{P}}$ 17 $\frac{\text{Q R Q}}{\text{Q Q B gd g}}$ If 12 $\frac{\text{K P} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q} \times \text{P}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{Q Q B 3}}{\text{Q Kt Q 5 bst}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{K Kt} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{Q} \times \text{B ev}}$

and if 14 $\frac{\text{K B} \times \text{Q Kt P}}{\text{Q B} \times \text{B}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{Q B R 3 +}}$ 16 $\frac{\text{K K}}{\text{K R +}}$ [16 $\frac{\text{K K Kt}}{\text{Q R Q w}}$]

17 $\frac{\text{K Q}}{\text{Q R Q w}}$ and if 14 $\frac{\text{K B Q B 4}}{\text{Kt K B 4}}$ threatening to move $\frac{}{\text{Kt K 6 +}}$ and

$\frac{}{\text{Q Q 8 +}}$) 12 $\frac{}{\text{K B Kt 5}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{Q Q B 4}}{\text{K B Q R 4 bst}}$ His game is now cer-

Digitized by Google

tainly not inferior to yours. (If, now, 14 $\frac{QBR3}{QKtK2}$ 15 $\frac{KP\times P}{QBP\times P\ bst}$ and then he comes out with Q B, making room for Q R, having good game) 14 $\frac{B\times Kt}{P\times B}$ 15 $\frac{Q\times P}{QR\ Kt}$ 16 $\frac{QBQR3}{KRK\ gd\ g}$ (if 16 $\frac{QBQB3}{QR\ Kt3}$ 17 $\frac{QK4\ if}{R\times Kt+\ w}$)

THIRTY-FOURTH OPENING.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 4 $\frac{QBP1}{KKtB3}$ 5 $\frac{QP2}{P\times P}$ 6 $\frac{KP1}{KKtK5}$ 7 $\frac{KBQ5}{Kt\times KBP}$ 8 $\frac{K\times Kt}{P\times P+}$ 9 $\frac{}{KKKt3}$ This move is ingenious; and although at first sight it may appear hazardous, your adversary will find his defence difficult; however, playing all the correct moves, the result will be, we believe, an even game. 9 $\frac{}{P\times P}$ 10 $\frac{QB\times P}{QKtK2\ bst}$ 11 $\frac{}{KRK}$ (if 11 $\frac{QQB2}{QP1}$ 12 $\frac{KBK4}{QKtK\ Kt3}$ 13 $\frac{QKtQ2}{QBP1}$ [13 $\frac{KRQ}{Cas}$ 14 $\frac{KRP1}{QK2}$ and if 13 $\frac{KRP2}{QQ2}$] 14 $\frac{QKtKt3}{KBQKt3}$ 15 $\frac{QRQ}{QP1\ ev}$) 11 $\frac{}{Cas\ bst}$ (if 11 $\frac{}{Kt+}$ 12 $\frac{KKB4}{}$* and if 11 $\frac{}{QP1}$ 12 $\frac{KP1}{Kt+}$ 13 $\frac{KKB4}{}$ and you have the advantage, notwithstanding the exposed situation of your King) 12 $\frac{KRP1\ bst}{}$ (This move is here of necessity, to avoid $\frac{}{Kt+}$ and then $\frac{}{QP1}$) 12 $\frac{}{QP1\ wk}$ (His correct move is 12 $\frac{}{Kt\times B}$ see Var) 13 $\frac{KP1}{Kt\times B}$ (if 13 $\frac{}{P\times P}$ 14 $\frac{B\times P+}{B\times B}$ 15 $\frac{R\times B}{Kt+}$ 16 $\frac{KKR2}{QQ2}$ 17 $\frac{QQKt3}{KKR}$ 18 $\frac{QKtQ2\ gd\ g}{}$ And if

---

* To me, it seems incredible how so acute and far-sighted an author as Jaenisch can believe your game not only capable of defence, but even the better; with King thus advanced, the Queens not being off the board. It strikes me that your game in this Variation is decidedly inferior to that of your adversary.

Digitized by Google

13 $\frac{}{P \times P}$ 14 $\frac{B \times P+}{K K R}$ 15 $\frac{Q Q Kt 3}{Kt+}$ 16 $\frac{K K R 2}{K R K}$ 17 $\frac{Q Kt Q 2}{R \times B}$ 18 $\frac{R \times R}{B \times R}$ 19 $\frac{Q \times B}{\text{if } Q K B}$ 20 $\frac{Q R K}{}$ and you maintain the advantage of the move) 14 $\frac{P \times P+}{R \times P}$ 15 $\frac{Q \times Kt}{Q B P 1}$ 16 $\frac{Q Q Kt 3}{Q B K B 4}$ 17 $\frac{Q Kt Q 2}{Q P 1}$ 18 $\frac{K K R 2}{}$ Your Rook preserves command of King's file; and you will be enabled advantageously to double Rooks upon this important line.

Variation on Second Player's Twelfth Move.

12 $\frac{}{Kt \times B \text{ bst}}$ 13 $\frac{Q \times Kt}{Q P 1}$ 14 $\frac{P \times P}{}$ (if 14 $\frac{Q Kt Q 2}{}$ or 14 $\frac{K K R 2}{}$ 14 $\frac{}{Q B K 3}$ then $\frac{}{Q P 1}$ winning moves) 14 $\frac{}{Q \times P+ \text{ bst}}$ (if 14 $\frac{}{B \times P+}$ 15 $\frac{Q B K 5}{B \times B+}$ 16 $\frac{Q \times B}{Q B K 3}$ 17 $\frac{Q Kt B 3}{}$ and if 14 $\frac{}{B \times P+}$ 15 $\frac{Q B K 5}{K R K}$ 16 $\frac{B \times B}{R \times R}$ 17 $\frac{Kt \times R}{Q \times B+}$ 18 $\frac{Q \times Q}{P \times Q}$ 19 $\frac{Q Kt B 3}{}$ (In both these suppositions, you have rather the better game) 15 $\frac{Q \times Q}{B \times Q+}$ 16 $\frac{Q B K 5}{B \times B+}$ 17 $\frac{R \times B}{Q B K 3}$ 18 $\frac{Q Kt B 3}{}$ (if 18 $\frac{K Kt Q 4 \text{ or } Kt 5}{Q R Q}$ 19 $\frac{Kt \times B}{R+}$ 20 $\frac{K K B 2}{P \times Kt+}$ 21 $\frac{K K 2}{K R Q}$ then $\frac{}{Q R Q 8 b g}$ The retreat 20 $\frac{K K R 2}{}$ produces the same result) 18 $\frac{}{Q R Q}$ ev; his three Pawns being equivalent to your Knight.

Digitized by Google

BOOK IV.

ON THE KING'S GAMBITS.

It will be understood that we here only apply the term "King's Gambit" to the Gambits arising upon the second move. 1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBP2}{\quad}$ This Gambit may be accepted immediately, by 2 $\frac{\quad}{P \times P}$ or declined. In the latter case, should second player take Gambit P even on the 3d or 4th move, we must still class such Opening as "The King's Gambit refused." The question as to whether the Gambit can be refused with safety to second player, is one of great importance in the theory of Chess. It is, of a truth, generally now admitted, that second player may, after accepting the Gambit, defend and preserve his surplus pawn to the close of the party. Still the great superiority of position on the side of first player so narrows the line of defence, and so multiplies the sources of attack, that the King's Gambit, although really hazardous, may be fearlessly played, even in a game by correspondence.* This Opening gives birth to the most ingenious and complicated combinations that can arise in Chess, and which we shall here class in three sections. The last of the three will include the King's Knight's Gambit 1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KB\ P}{P \times P}$ 3 $\frac{KKtB3}{\quad}$, the second, the King's Bishop's Gambit 1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBP2}{P \times P}$ 3 $\frac{KBQB4}{\quad}$, and the first section will treat of Gambits refused, and irregular; in which category we shall rank all such Gambits as are accepted on the second move 2 $\frac{KBP2}{P \times P}$ and yet which form legitimate variations, neither of the Bishop's nor yet of the Knight's Gambit. In the first and second Sections, it will be found that we present many developments entirely new.

---

* Mark this, ye advocates of the King's Pawn One Opening!

Digitized by Google

SECTION I.

ON THE KING'S GAMBITS REFUSED.

There exists, in our opinion, no completely satisfactory manner of evading the King's Gambit. We are about to analyse in the present Section, no fewer than eight modes of refusing the Gambit, and it will be seen that in every case first player obtains the better position.

FIRST OPENING.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBP2}{QP1}$ This mode of refusing the Gambit is reprehensible, as shutting up his K B. 3 $\frac{KBQB4}{}$ (You might equally play 3 $\frac{KKtB3}{}$ as in Var) 3 $\frac{}{KBP2}$ (If 3 $\frac{}{KKtB3}$ 4 $\frac{QP1}{QBP1}$ 5 $\frac{KBQKt3}{QBKt5}$ 6 $\frac{KKtB3}{}$ &c. His K B will be confined throughout the game, which cannot but be unfavourable for him. If 3 $\frac{}{KP\times P}$ you may move 4 $\frac{KKtB3}{}$ and proceed as in Var, or more simply thus: 4 $\frac{QKB3}{QKB3}$ 5 $\frac{QP1}{KKtP2}$ 6 $\frac{KRP2}{KRP1}$ 7 $\frac{KKtP1}{KKtP\times KRP}$ 8 $\frac{P\times RP}{}$ you then retake Gambit Pawn, or may play 8 $\frac{P\times KBP}{}$ reserving to yourself the subsequent capture of an indefensible Pawn) 4 $\frac{QP1}{KKtB3}$ 5 $\frac{KKtB3}{KBP\times P}$ (If 5 $\frac{}{QKtB3}$ 6 $\frac{KKtKt5}{QK2}$ 7 $\frac{Cas\ b\ g}{}$) 6 $\frac{QP\times P}{KP\times P}$ (he cannot take 6 $\frac{}{Kt\times KP}$ without loss, through 7 $\frac{QQ5}{}$ And so against 6 $\frac{}{QBKt5}$ 7 $\frac{KBP\times P}{}$ you will acquire the advantage; for then 7 $\frac{}{Kt\times KP}$ would induce 8 $\frac{QQ5}{}$ and 7 $\frac{}{B\times Kt}$ leads to 8 $\frac{P\times B}{Kt\times KP}$ 9 $\frac{P\times Kt}{Q+}$ 10 $\frac{KKB}{Q\times KP}$ 11 $\frac{BQ5\ b\ g}{}$ If 6 $\frac{}{QKtB3}$ 7 $\frac{KKtKt5}{QK2}$ 8 $\frac{Cas\ b\ g}{}$) 7 $\frac{QB\times P}{QBKt5}$ (Against 7 $\frac{}{Kt\times P}$ 8 $\frac{QQ5}{QK2}$ 9 $\frac{Cas}{KtKB3}$ 10 $\frac{QQ3}{QQ}$

Digitized by Google

11 $\frac{R+}{KBK2}$ 12 $\frac{QKtB3\,bg}{}$ You threaten him with $\frac{KKtKt5}{}$ and $\frac{R\times B+}{}$ and he cannot parry the double attack) 8 $\frac{Cas\,bg}{}$

Variation on First Player's Third Move.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBP2}{QP1}$ 3 $\frac{KKtB3}{KP\times P}$ (if 3 $\frac{}{QBKt5}$ 4 $\frac{KBQB4}{KKtB3}$ 5 $\frac{QP1}{QBP1}$ 6 $\frac{KBQKt3}{}$ as before, and you have the better game. If 3 $\frac{}{QBKt5}$ 4 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBP2}$ 5 $\frac{QP1}{}$ then $\frac{KRP1}{}$ and you have a fine game) 4 $\frac{KBQB4}{KKtP2}$ 5 $\frac{KRP2}{KKtP1}$ 6 $\frac{KKtKt5}{KKtR3}$ 7 $\frac{QP2}{KBP1}$ 8 $\frac{QB\times P}{P\times Kt}$ This sacrifice here appears to be your correct play. (If 8 $\frac{KtK6}{QK2\,bst}$ 9 $\frac{Kt\times P}{Q\times P+}$ 10 $\frac{KKB2}{P+bst}$ 11 $\frac{K\times P}{Kt+}$ 12 $\frac{KKR2}{Q\times QP}$ [12 $\frac{KKB2}{Q\times QP+bg}$] you have a good attacking game; but it is doubtful whether you can recover Pawn) 9 $\frac{QB\times P}{}$ (We think it weaker to take P with P, as he retreats Kt home) 9 $\frac{}{QQ2}$ 10 $\frac{Cas}{}$ (You threaten to play QQ2) 10 $\frac{}{QBP1\,bst}$ 11 $\frac{QQ2}{QP1}$ 12 $\frac{P\times P}{P\times P}$ (if 12 $\frac{}{KKtKt}$ 13 $\frac{QKtB3}{P\times P}$ 14 $\frac{QR+}{}$ &c as below; for if 13 $\frac{}{KRP1}$ 14 $\frac{P\times QBP}{if\ Q\times P}$ 15 $\frac{BQKt5w}{}$) 13 $\frac{QKtB3}{KKtKt}$ 14 $\frac{QR+}{}$ (the same move answers 13 $\frac{}{QKtB3}$ or 13 $\frac{}{P\times B}$) 14 $\frac{}{KBK2}$ 15 $\frac{Kt\times P}{QKtB3}$ 16 $\frac{QB\times B}{QKt\times B}$ 17 $\frac{R\times Kt+}{Kt\times R}$ 18 $\frac{KtKB6+w}{}$

SECOND OPENING.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBP2}{QKtB3}$ This is a bad manner of declining Gambit.

3 $\frac{KKtB3}{KBQB4}$ (To accept Gambit this move were faulty by reason of

Digitized by Google

3 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{}$ 4 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{KKtP2}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{QP1 \&c}}{}$ If 3 $\frac{\text{QP1}}{}$ 4 $\frac{\text{QP2 bg}}{}$ If 3 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{}$ 4 $\frac{\text{KBP} \times \text{P}}{\text{KKt} \times \text{KP}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{QP1}}{\text{KtQB4}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{QP1 bg}}{}$ If 3 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{}$ 4 $\frac{\text{KBKt5 bg}}{}$) 4 $\frac{\text{KBQKt5 bst}}{}$ (4 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{}$ is disadvantageous on account of 4 $\frac{}{\text{Kt} \times \text{P}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{Q}+}$ 6 $\frac{\text{KKtP1}}{\text{Q} \times \text{KP}+}$ 7 $\frac{\text{QK2}}{\text{Q} \times \text{KR}}$ Now if 8 $\frac{\text{KtKB3}+}{\text{KKtK2}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{KBQ3}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{QKtB3}}{\text{Cas}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{if QKtK4}*}{\text{KKtB4}}$ and we prefer his game. If, again, 8 $\frac{\text{KtKt6}+}{\text{KKtK2}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{R}}{\text{QP1}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{QKR5}}{\text{QK5}+}$ [10 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{KBP}}{\text{K} \times \text{Kt}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{QP1}}{\text{QBKB4 bg}}$] 11 $\frac{\text{KBK2}}{\text{QKB4}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{Q}}{\text{B} \times \text{Q}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{KBP}}{\text{K} \times \text{Kt}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{QP1}}{\text{QRK}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{QKtB3}}{\text{KtQB3 bg}}$) 4 $\frac{}{\text{QKB3}}$ (if 4 $\frac{}{\text{QP1}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{KP} \times \text{QP}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}+}{\text{P} \times \text{B}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{KKt} \times \text{P bg}}{}$) 5 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{Q} \times \text{B}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{QP1}}{}$ You now either gain a Pawn, or compel his acceptance of a disadvantageous Gambit.

THIRD OPENING.

1 $\frac{\text{KP2}}{\text{KP2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{KBP2}}{\text{QBP1}}$ (This début and the following 2 $\frac{}{\text{KKtB3}}$ are methods of evading the Gambit but little studied. They avoid distinct loss, but lead on the whole to positions unfavourable for second player) 3 $\frac{\text{QP2 bst}}{}$ (If 3 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{}$ or 3 $\frac{\text{KBQB4}}{}$ 3 $\frac{}{\text{QP2}}$ and his game is good) 3 $\frac{}{\text{KKtB3}}$ (if 3 $\frac{}{\text{KP} \times \text{QP}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{P}}{}$ your game is superior; playing against 4 $\frac{}{\text{QQKt3}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{QBK3}}{}$ and against 4 $\frac{}{\text{QKB3}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{KP1}}{}$) 4 $\frac{\text{KBP} \times \text{KP}}{}$ (It is remarkable that 4 $\frac{\text{QP} \times \text{P}}{}$ would not be advantageous. 4 $\frac{\text{QP} \times \text{P}}{\text{KKt} \times \text{KP}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{QKB3}}{\text{QP2}}$ [5 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{\text{KBQB4 gd g}}$] 6 $\frac{\text{KP} \times \text{P en p}}{\text{Kt} \times \text{QP}}$ and he has a good-enough game) 4 $\frac{}{\text{Kt} \times \text{KP}}$

* Perhaps K to B2 were better. I do not like second player's game, notwithstanding our author's preference.

Digitized by Google

5 $\frac{KKtB3}{QP2}$ 6 $\frac{QBP2}{QBK3}$ (if 6 $\frac{}{QBKt5\,wk}$ 7 $\frac{QQKt3}{}$ If, also, 6 $\frac{}{KB+}$ 7 $\frac{QBQ2}{QQR4}$ 8 $\frac{QQKt3\,bg}{}$) 7 $\frac{QQKt3}{QKtP1}$ (7 $\frac{}{QQ2}$ would cramp QKt. If 7 $\frac{}{QQB2}$ 8 $\frac{QKtB3}{}$ and his QP is exposed; besides, his Q is badly placed on this file, as you will bring QR to QB) 8 $\frac{QKtB3}{KBP2}$ 9 $\frac{QBK3\,bg}{}$

FOURTH OPENING.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBP2}{KKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{KBP\times P\,bst}{}$ (for 3 $\frac{QKtB3}{}$ See Var)

3 $\frac{}{Kt\times P}$ 4 $\frac{KKtB3}{QP2}$ 5 $\frac{QP1}{KtQB4}$ 6 $\frac{QP1}{KtK5}$ (6 $\frac{}{KtK3}$ were worse, for then 7 $\frac{QBP2}{}$) 7 $\frac{QBP2}{QBP1}$ (if 7 $\frac{}{QBK3}$ 8 $\frac{QQKt3\,bg}{}$ If 7 $\frac{}{KB+}$ 8 $\frac{QBQ2}{B\times B+}$ 9 $\frac{QKt\times B}{QBKt5\text{ or }QBP1}$ 10 $\frac{QQKt3\,bg}{}$) 8 $\frac{QQKt3}{QKtP1}$ 9 $\frac{QKtB3}{QBK3}$ 10 $\frac{QBK3}{KBP2}$ 11 $\frac{QRQB\,bg}{}$

Variation on your Third Move.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBP2}{KKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{QKtB3}{}$ (This, in fact, forms a Variation of the Queen's Kt's Opening 1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{QKtB3}{KKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{KBP2}{}$) 3 $\frac{}{QP2\,bst}$ (if 3 $\frac{}{KBKt5}$ 4 $\frac{KBP\times P}{KB\times Kt}$ 5 $\frac{QP\times B}{Kt\times KP}$ 6 $\frac{QKKt4}{}$ you win Pawn) 4 $\frac{KP\times QP}{}$ (if 4 $\frac{KBP\times P}{KKt\times P}$ 5 $\frac{Kt\times Kt}{P\times Kt}$ 6 $\frac{QP2}{KP\times P\,en\,p}$ 7 $\frac{QBP\times P}{KBQB4}$ 8 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKtB3\,bg}$) 4 $\frac{}{KP\times P}$ (if 4 $\frac{}{KKt\times QP}$ 5 $\frac{Kt\times Kt}{Q\times Kt}$ 6 $\frac{KBP\times P}{Q\times P+}$ 7 $\frac{KBK2}{KBQB4}$ 8 $\frac{KKtB3\,bg}{}$) 5 $\frac{QKB3}{KBQ3}$ (5 $\frac{\text{if }QP2}{KBKt5\,bg}$) 6 $\frac{QP2}{Cas}$ 7 $\frac{KBQB4}{KR+}$ 8 $\frac{KKtK2}{QBKt5}$ 9 $\frac{QKB2}{QB\times Kt}$ 10 $\frac{Kt\times B}{KtKt5\,bg}$ (That which

Digitized by Google

has given you the worst of this Opening is the move 4 $\frac{KP \times QP}{}$ instead of which you should play 4 $\frac{QP1}{\text{if } QP \times KP}$ 5 $\frac{KBP \times KP}{KKtKt5}$ 6 $\frac{QKt \times P}{Kt \times KP}$ [6 $\frac{QP1}{PK6}$] 7 $\frac{QP1}{KtKKt3\,ev}$)

FIFTH OPENING.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBP2}{QP2}$ This mode of evading Gambit, which, we know not why, is the most common in use, is, however, very defective, as compromising too much second player's Queen. (2 $\frac{}{KBP2}$ 3 $\frac{KP \times Pbg}{}$) 3 $\frac{KP \times P}{Q \times P}$ (For 3 $\frac{}{KP \times P}$ see Var) 4 $\frac{QKtB3}{QK3}$ 5 $\frac{KKtB3}{P \times P+}$ (if 5 $\frac{}{QKtB3}$ 6 $\frac{KBKt5}{}$ then still against 6 $\frac{}{P \times P+}$ 7 $\frac{KKB2}{}$ and if he do not give this discovered check, you castle. If, on the contrary, 5 $\frac{}{KBQ3}$ 6 $\frac{P \times P}{B \times P}$ 7 $\frac{Kt \times B}{Q \times Kt+}$ 8 $\frac{KBK2}{}$ and his Queen is compromised for many moves by $\frac{QP2}{}$ then by your castling and the attacks of Kt) 6 $\frac{KKB2}{QBP1}$ (This is his best mode of preventing $\frac{KBKt5+}{}$ and then $\frac{KRK}{}$ for this P thus advanced one square prevents equally the advance of your Kt, and is so far preferable to 6 $\frac{}{KBK2}$ or 6 $\frac{}{QBQ2}$) 7 $\frac{QP2}{KBQ3}$ 8 $\frac{KBQ3}{KKtK2}$ 9 $\frac{KRK}{}$ His Queen is deeply compromised, and he cannot fail to lose moves; moreover, it is impossible to defend the Gambit Pawn.

Variation on Second Player's Third Move.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBP2}{QP2}$ 3 $\frac{KP \times P}{KP \times P}$ 4 $\frac{KKtB3}{KKtB3}$ (If 4 $\frac{}{Q \times P}$ 5 $\frac{QKtB3}{}$ as above) 5 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQ3}$ 6 $\frac{Cas}{Cas}$ 7 $\frac{QP2}{QBP1}$ 8 $\frac{QKtB3}{QBKt5}$ 9 $\frac{QQ3}{}$

Digitized by Google

Constantly under attack, as he cannot fail to be, we do not see how Gambit P can be defended; the gain of which ought to assure you of the game, from position.

SIXTH OPENING.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBP2}{Q+}$ This mode of evading the Gambit is highly embarrassing to beginners in Chess. In reality, it is, however, feeble; since it commits in some measure the Queen, and causes a loss of time. 3 $\frac{KKtP1}{QKB3}$ or $\frac{}{K2}$ 4 $\frac{P\times P}{Q\times P}$ 5 $\frac{KBKt2\ bst}{KKtB3}$ (if 5 $\frac{}{KBQB4}$ 6 $\frac{KKtK2}{QKtB3}$ 7 $\frac{QBP1\ bg}{}$ If 5 $\frac{}{QP2}$ 6 $\frac{QP2}{QK3}$ 7 $\frac{KP1}{QKtB3}$ 8 $\frac{KKtK2\ bg}{}$) 6 $\frac{QP2}{QQR4+}$ 7 $\frac{QBP1}{QP1}$ 8 $\frac{QKtR3}{QBK3}$ 9 $\frac{KP1}{KKtQ4}$ 10 $\frac{QBQ2\ bg}{}$

SEVENTH OPENING.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBP2}{QKB3}$ (This counter-attack, suggested by Cozio, although bizarre and irregular, is very ingenious; and its real defence difficult of discovery in actual play. Its end is to take Gambit P, not with P but with Queen. This project, should it prove successful, deeply commits Queen, it must be conceded; but still there is always the won Pawn. If now you play 3 $\frac{QP2}{KP\times QP}$ 4 $\frac{KP1}{QQKt3\ bg}$ If 3 $\frac{KKtB3}{Q\times P}$ 4 $\frac{QP1}{QKB3\ bg}$ If 3 $\frac{KBQB4}{Q\times P}$ 4 $\frac{QP1}{QKR5+}$ 5 $\frac{KKtP1}{QK2}$ 6 $\frac{KKtB3}{QP1}$ 7 $\frac{KKtKt5}{KKtR3}$ [7 $\frac{Cas}{KBP1\ bg}$] 8 $\frac{Cas}{KBP1}$ 9 $\frac{KKtB3}{QBR6\ bg}$ If 3 $\frac{QKtB3}{Q\times P}$ 4 $\frac{QP2}{QKB3}$ 5 $\frac{QP\times KP}{Q\times P}$ [5 $\frac{QKtQ5}{QKR5+}$] 6 $\frac{KKtB3}{QK2}$ He has lost in truth much time, but he has gained a Pawn.

The inventor of this Opening, Cozio, makes you play thus: 1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBP2}{QKB3}$ 3 $\frac{QKB3}{}$ then if 3 $\frac{}{Q\times P}$ 4 $\frac{Q\times Q}{P\times Q}$ 5 $\frac{QP2}{QKtB3}$ 6 $\frac{QBP1}{KKtP2}$ 7 $\frac{KRP2}{KBP1}$ 8 $\frac{RP\times P}{BP\times P}$ 9 $\frac{KKtB3}{KKtP1}$ 10 $\frac{KKtKt}{KBR3}$ 11 $\frac{KKtK2}{}$ &c And if

Digitized by Google

9 ——— or ——— 10 KBQB4 and the Pawn is no longer tenable. If, on the contrary, 3 PxP you are engaged in a very complicated description of Gambit, in which to us it remains doubtful whether you will ever recover the Pawn. But still, in supposing such recovery to be possible, the move 3 QKB3 appears to be yet defective; since, in lieu of taking Gambit Pawn, he may play 3 ——— then 4 KBQB4 5 QBP1 and the game becomes equalised, so that the move 2 ——— would so far appear to be a perfectly irreproachable means of refusing the Gambit; an admission we are certainly not prepared to sanction.

It is to Von der Lasa we are indebted for a solution of this difficulty; who proposes at move 3 QP1 which we adopt in the following analysis as your best move, and which gives you the advantage. Against a very irregular attack, the defence necessarily becomes equally irregular) 3 QP1 (See Var for 3 ———) 4 QKKt4 (4 ——— 5 KRP2 6 RPxP 7 QxQ 8 KKtR3 b g†) 5 KKtK2 (if 5 ——— 6 KRP2 b g If, again, 5 ——— 6 QKB3 7 KRP2 8 QKB2 b g) 6 QKR5 (Playing anything almost besides, you still move 7 KRP2 and then QKKt5 and will regain Pawn) 7 KRP2 (7 ——— 8 PxP w) 8 QKKt5 b g

Variation on Second Player's Third Move.

1 KP2 2 KBP2 3 QP1 (if 3 ——— 4 KBPxP 5 KKtB3 b g)

---

* Jaenisch may well term a game "irregular" which involves such a move as this. I should pronounce decidedly now for first player's side of the question; but you should not aim at immediately recovering P, as advised by Jaenisch, but rather at quietly bringing out your pieces; doing nothing which can help your adversary to displace his K B, now so well posted for blocking up his own game.

† Better move K Kt P1

Digitized by Google

4 $\frac{QKtB3}{QBP1}$ 5 $\frac{KKtB3}{QBKt5}$ (if 5 $\frac{}{KP\times P}$ 6 $\frac{KRP2}{}$ and on the following move $\frac{QKtK2}{}$ recovering Gambit Pawn) 6 $\frac{KBK2}{B\times Kt}$ (if 6 $\frac{}{QKtQ2}$ 7 $\frac{Cas}{}$ if then 7 $\frac{}{Cas}$ 8 $\frac{KBP\times P\,b\,g}{}$ and if 7 $\frac{}{KP\times P}$ 8 $\frac{KKtK}{QQ5+}$ 9 $\frac{KKR}{B\times B}$ 10 $\frac{QKt\times B\,b\,g}{}$ If again at move 6 $\frac{}{KP\times P}$ 7 $\frac{Cas}{B\times Kt}$ [7 $\frac{}{KKtP2}$ 8 $\frac{KKtP1}{B\times Kt}$ 9 $\frac{B\times B}{QQ5+}$ 10 $\frac{KKR}{P\times P}$ 11 $\frac{QB\times P}{P\times P}$ 12 $\frac{KBR5\,bg}{}$] 8 $\frac{KB\times B}{QQ5+}$ 9 $\frac{KKR}{KKtP2}$ 10 $\frac{KKtP1}{KBR3}$ 11 $\frac{KBR5\,bg}{}$) 7 $\frac{B\times B}{QKtQ2}$ (if 7 $\frac{}{KP\times KBP}$ 8 $\frac{KRP2}{}$ and then $\frac{QKtK2}{}$ regaining P) 8 $\frac{Cas}{Cas}$ 9 $\frac{P\times P}{Q\times P}$ 10 $\frac{QP1}{QK}$ you have a very fine game.

EIGHTH OPENING.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBP2}{KBQB4}$ This mode of evading Gambit was long considered by us as irreproachable; but we have latterly become convinced that it permits first player to occupy the middle of the board, without his adversary's being able to prevent it. 3 $\frac{KKtB3}{QP1}$ (if 3 $\frac{QKKt4}{QKB3\,bg}$ If 3 $\frac{QKR5}{QKtB3}$ 4 $\frac{\text{if } P\times P}{KKtP1\,bg}$) 4 $\frac{QBP1}{}$ (This move assures you of the advantage, by giving you the centre of the board. He cannot place any obstacle in your way by playing 4 $\frac{}{QK2}$ because of 5 $\frac{QP2}{KP\times P}$ 6 $\frac{QBP\times P\,bg}{BQKt3}$ for now if 6 $\frac{}{Q\times KP+}$ 7 $\frac{KKB2}{}$ and if 6 $\frac{}{BQKt5+}$ 7 $\frac{KKB2}{Q\times KP}$ 8 $\frac{QQR4+}{QKtB3}$ 9 $\frac{KBKt5}{}$ in both cases you win the piece. 4 $\frac{KBQB4\,wk}{}$ see Var) 4 $\frac{}{QBKt5}$ (4 $\frac{}{KKtB3}$ would not prevent your Pawns taking up the centre; for then 5 $\frac{QP2}{BQKt3}$ 6 $\frac{KBQ3}{KP\times QP}$ 7 $\frac{QBP\times P}{QKtB3}$ 8 $\frac{QBK3\,bg}{}$ The Counter-gambit 4 $\frac{}{KBP2}$ appears at first sight to be good, but is defective; as see in Var) 5 $\frac{QP2}{}$ (This move is very hazardous, but we purposely

Digitized by Google

present it, in order to develope the beautiful début resulting therefrom; in which, braving the dangers to which you expose King, you determine at all costs to maintain the centre. The strictly correct move now, instead, is 5 $\frac{\text{K B K 2}}{}$

of which the consequences would be 5 $\frac{}{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{K B} \times \text{B}}{\text{Q Kt B 3}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Q Kt P 2}}{\text{K B Kt 3}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Q Kt P 1}}{\text{Q Kt K 2}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Q P 2}}{\text{Q R P 1}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{Q R P}}{\text{Q R} \times \text{P}}$ [10 $\frac{\text{Q P} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q P} \times \text{P}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{Q}+}{\text{K} \times \text{Q}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{R P}}{\text{Q R} \times \text{P}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{K B P} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q Kt K Kt 3 gd g}}$] 11 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{\text{Q Kt Q B 3}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{Q B Q Kt 2}*}{\text{if K P} \times \text{K B P}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{K B K 2 b g}}{}$ and if 12 $\frac{}{\text{K P} \times \text{Q P}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q K B 3}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{K P 1 b g}}{}$) 5 $\frac{}{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{K Kt P} \times \text{B}}{\text{Q K R 5}+}$ 7 $\frac{\text{K K 2}}{\text{K B Q Kt 3}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Q Q R 4}+\text{bst}}{\text{Q Kt Q 2}}$ (if 8 $\frac{}{\text{Q B P 1}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Q Kt R 3}}{\text{K P} \times \text{K B P}}$ [not 9 $\frac{\text{K B P} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q P} \times \text{P}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Q Kt R 3}}{\text{K B P 2}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{Q Kt Q B 4}}{\text{K B Q B 2 b g}}$] 10 $\frac{\text{Q Kt B 4}}{\text{K B Q B 2}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{Q Q Kt 4 gd g}}{}$) 9 $\frac{\text{Q Kt R 3}}{\text{Cas}}$ (9 $\frac{}{\text{K P} \times \text{K B P}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Q Kt Q B 4 gd g}}{}$) 10 $\frac{\text{Q Kt B 4}}{\text{K Q Kt}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{Q B K 3}}{\text{K B P 2 bst}}$ (If 11 $\frac{\text{K B P 1}}{\text{K Kt P 1 b g}}$ If 11 $\frac{\text{Q B Q 2}}{\text{K P} \times \text{Q P b g}}$ If 11 $\frac{\text{Q B K 3}}{\text{K P} \times \text{K B P}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{Q B K B 2}}{\text{Q K R 4 bst}}$ [12 $\frac{}{\text{Q K 2}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{K Q 2}}{\text{K B P 2}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{Q R K gd g}}{}$] 13 $\frac{\text{K B Kt 2}}{\text{K B P 2}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{K Q 2}}{\text{K B P} \times \text{K P}}$ [14 $\frac{\text{K Q 3}}{\text{K B P} \times \text{K P}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{P K B 3} \times \text{P}}{\text{Kt Q B 4}+\text{b g}}$] 15 $\frac{\text{P K B 3} \times \text{P}}{\text{K B P 1}}$ 16 $\frac{\text{K B K B}}{\text{K Kt B 3}}$ 17 $\frac{\text{K B Q 3}}{\text{K Kt P 2 b g}}$) 12 $\frac{\text{K B Kt 2}}{}$ (If 12 $\frac{\text{K B P} \times \text{K P}}{\text{K B P} \times \text{P b g}}$ If 12 $\frac{\text{Q B K B 2}}{\text{Q K R 4 bg}}$ If 12 $\frac{\text{K P} \times \text{K B P}}{\text{K P} \times \text{K B P}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{B K B 2}}{\text{Q R}+}$ [13 $\frac{\text{Q B Q 2}}{\text{K Kt B 3}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{Q B K}}{\text{K R}+}$ 15 $\frac{\text{K Q 2}}{\text{Q K R 4 b g}}$] 14 $\frac{\text{K Q 3}}{\text{Q} \times \text{B}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{K Kt B 3 w}}$) 12 $\frac{}{\text{K Kt B 3}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{K B P} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q P} \times \text{P}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{Q P} \times \text{P}}{\text{K B} \times \text{B}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{K} \times \text{B}}{\text{Q Kt} \times \text{P}}$ (if 15 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{K Kt}}{\text{Q K B 7}+\text{w}}$) 16 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{Q K Kt 4}+\text{w}}$ (16 $\frac{\text{Q R Q}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ 17 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q K Kt 4}+\text{w}}$)

---

* After this move I should decidedly take second player's game for choice, your front appearing so weak.

Digitized by Google

Variation on Fourth Move of Second Player.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBP2}{KBQB4}$ 3 $\frac{KKtB3}{QP1}$ 4 $\frac{QBP1}{KBP2}$ 5 $\frac{QP2\ wk}{}$ (Your right play is 5 $\frac{KP\times P}{B\times P}$ [if 5 $\frac{}{KP1\ or\ KP\times P}$ 6 $\frac{QQR4+bg}{}$]

6 $\frac{KBP\times P}{QP\times P}$ 7 $\frac{QQKt3}{}$ you win a Pawn forcedly, for if 7 $\frac{}{KBQKt3}$ 8 $\frac{KKt\times P}{QKR5+}$ 9 $\frac{KQ}{}$ and if 7 $\frac{}{KP1}$ 8 $\frac{Q\times QKtP}{QKtQ2}$ 9 $\frac{KKtQ4}{QRQKt}$ 10 $\frac{QQR6}{}$ or still better for you to play 8 $\frac{KtK5}{QK2}$ 9 $\frac{Q\times QKtP}{}$ &c

And it must be observed that if 7 $\frac{QK2}{KP1}$ 8 $\frac{QP2}{KBQKt3\ bst}$ [8 $\frac{}{KBK2\ bd}$ 9 $\frac{QQKt5+}{QBQ2}$ 10 $\frac{Q\times QKtP}{BQB3}$ 11 $\frac{KBKt5}{B\times B}$ 12 $\frac{Q\times B+}{QBP1}$ 13 $\frac{QKR5+}{KKtP1}$ 14 $\frac{QK5}{KKtB3}$ 15 $\frac{KKtKt5\ bg}{}$] 9 $\frac{KKtK5}{QBP1}$ [9 $\frac{QQKt5+}{QQ2}$] 10 $\frac{QBKB4}{KKtB3}$ [10 $\frac{QQB4}{QQ4}$] 11 $\frac{KtQB4}{KBQB2}$ his game is preferable on account of his passed Pawn) 5 $\frac{}{KBP\times P\ bst}$ (5 $\frac{}{KBQKt3}$ 6 $\frac{QP\times KP}{KBP\times P}$ 7 $\frac{QQR4+bg}{}$) 6 $\frac{P\times B}{P\times Kt}$ 7 $\frac{P\times QP}{}$ (if 7 $\frac{Q\times P}{KKtB3}$ 8 $\frac{P\times QP}{QBP\times P}$ for the continuation see same position produced below, but if 8 $\frac{}{Q\times P}$ 9 $\frac{KBP\times P}{Q\times P+}$ [9 $\frac{KBQB4}{QBKt5}$ 10 $\frac{QQ3}{Q\times Q}$ 11 $\frac{KB\times Q}{KP1\ gd\ g}$] 10 $\frac{KBK2}{QBKt5}$ 11 $\frac{QK3}{Q\times Q}$ 12 $\frac{B\times Q}{}$ ev) 7 $\frac{}{QBP\times P}$ (if 7 $\frac{}{P\times KKtP}$ 8 $\frac{QKR5+}{}$ If 7 $\frac{}{Q\times P}$ 8 $\frac{Q\times Q}{P\times Q}$ 9 $\frac{KKtP\times P}{QBK3}$ 10 $\frac{P\times P}{P\times P\ ev}$) 8 $\frac{Q\times P}{}$ (if 8 $\frac{KBP\times KP}{P\times KKtP}$ 9 $\frac{KB\times P}{QKR5+bg}$) 8 $\frac{}{KKtB3}$ 9 $\frac{P\times P}{}$ (if 9 $\frac{KBK2}{KP1}$ or if 9 $\frac{KBQB4}{KP1}$ then $\frac{}{QP1\ bg}$) 9 $\frac{}{P\times P}$ 10 $\frac{KBQB4}{QBKt5}$ 11 $\frac{QQ3}{Q\times Q}$ 12 $\frac{B\times Q}{KP1\ gdg}$ (If you go on thus: 13 $\frac{BQB4}{QKtB3}$ 14 $\frac{QBKB4}{Cas\ QR\ gd\ g}$)

Digitized by Google

Variation on First Player's Fourth Move.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBP2}{KBQB4}$ 3 $\frac{KKtB3}{}$ (By playing 3 $\frac{KBQB4}{}$ you would form Opening 12 of Book II, disadvantageous for first Player) 3 $\frac{}{QP1}$ 4 $\frac{KBQB4}{KKtB3}$ 5 $\frac{P\times P}{P\times P}$ 6 $\frac{QP1}{Cas}$ (If 6 $\frac{}{BKKt5}$ 7 $\frac{KRP1}{}$) (If 6 $\frac{}{KKtKt5}$ 7 $\frac{KRKB}{}$ and you have the advantage; for if 7 $\frac{}{Cas}$ 8 $\frac{KRP1}{}$ or if 7 $\frac{}{Kt\times RP}$ 8 $\frac{B\times KBP+}{K\times B}$ [8 $\frac{}{KQ2}$ 9 $\frac{Kt\times KP+bg}{}$] 9 $\frac{Kt\times Kt+bg}{}$ &c Finally, if 7 $\frac{KRKB}{QKtB3}$ 8 $\frac{KtKKt5}{}$ &c, or else you may play 8 $\frac{B\times BP+}{K\times B}$ 9 $\frac{Kt\times KP+}{KK}$ 10 $\frac{Kt\times KKt}{Q+}$ 11 $\frac{KtKB2}{Q\times KRP}$ 12 $\frac{QBP1}{B\times Kt+}$ [12 $\frac{}{Q\times KKtP}$ 13 $\frac{QKR5+w}{}$] 13 $\frac{R\times B}{QKR8+}$ 14 $\frac{KQ2}{}$) 7 $\frac{QK2}{QBKt5}$ 8 $\frac{KRP1}{B\times Kt}$ 9 $\frac{Q\times B}{QKtB3}$ 10 $\frac{QBP1}{QQ3}$ 11 $\frac{QBK3}{B\times B}$ 12 $\frac{Q\times B}{QRQ}$ 13 $\frac{Cas}{}$ ev

Supplementary Note on this Variation.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBP2}{KBQB4}$ 3 $\frac{K'KtB3}{QP1}$ 4 $\frac{KBQB4\ wk}{KKtB3}$ 5 $\frac{P\times P}{P\times P}$ (if 5 $\frac{}{Kt\times KP}$ 6 $\frac{QP2\ gd\ g}{}$) 6 $\frac{QP1}{if\ KKtKt5\ wk}$ 7 $\frac{KRKB}{Kt\times RP}$ 8 $\frac{KB\times KBP+}{KKB\ bst}$ 9 $\frac{Kt\times Kt}{QKR5+}$ 10 $\frac{KQ2}{Q\times Kt}$ (10 $\frac{}{QKKt4+}$ 11 $\frac{KQB3}{}$) 11 $\frac{QKB3}{KK2}$ 12 $\frac{KBQB4\ bg}{}$ You might equally have played at Move 7 $\frac{QK2}{}$ for then if 7 $\frac{}{BKB7+}$ 8 $\frac{KQ}{KBQKt3}$ 9 $\frac{KRB}{}$ he loses a Pawn; and answering instead 7 $\frac{QK2}{QQ3}$ 8 $\frac{KRP1}{KKtB3}$ 9 $\frac{QBK3}{}$ you have gained time.

Digitized by Google

On Irregular King's Gambits.

Every mode of refusing the Gambit being, comparatively speaking, unfavourable for second player, it follows that in order to win the game, he should uniformly accept the Gambit, and attempt by all possible means to preserve the surplus Pawn; such Pawn being the sole advantage which he can derive from accepting the Gambit attack, which attack necessarily gives you fine centre Pawns, and a great advantage of position; of which you must avail yourself as largely as possible, there being no chance for you but in so doing. Now, this being premised, the two best methods of attack are the Bishop's Gambit 1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBP2}{P\times P}$ 3 $\frac{KBQB4}{\quad}$ and that of the Knight 1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBP2}{P\times P}$ 3 $\frac{KKtB3}{\quad}$ All other forms of attack are less potent, but their comparative weakness must be here proved.

The move 3 $\frac{QP2}{\quad}$ is bad by reason of the disastrous check 3 $\frac{\quad}{QKR5+}$ The Move 3 $\frac{QKKt4}{\quad}$ has for its fruits 3 $\frac{\quad}{QP2}$ 4 $\frac{Q\times P}{KBQ3}$ 5 $\frac{KP1}{QK2}$ (if 5 $\frac{QKB3 \text{ or } K3}{QKR5+}$ then $\frac{\quad}{Q\times P}$ recovering Pawn) 6 $\frac{QP2}{KBP1}$ 7 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKtQ2}$ 8 $\frac{QKtB3}{QBP1}$ he regains Pawn with better position.

If 3 $\frac{QKB3}{QKR5+ \text{ bst}}$ 4 $\frac{QKB2}{Q\times Q+}$ (4 $\frac{KKtP1}{P\times P}$ 5 $\frac{P\times P}{QKB3\,bg}$) 5 $\frac{K\times B}{KBQB4+ \text{ bst}}$ 6 $\frac{KKB3}{B\times Kt}$ 7 $\frac{R\times B}{KKtP2}$ 8 $\frac{QP2}{QKtB3}$ (8 $\frac{KRP2}{QKtB3}$ 9 $\frac{QBP1}{KtK4+bg}$) 9 $\frac{QBP1}{KBP1}$ 10 $\frac{KRP2}{KRP1}$ 11 $\frac{KKtP1}{P\times KKtP}$ 12 $\frac{R\times P}{QP1}$ (12 $\frac{\quad}{KtP\times RP}$ 13 $\frac{RR3\,gd\,g}{\quad}$) 13 $\frac{RP\times KtP}{RP\times P\,bg}$ At Move 11, if you vary your tactics, and play 11 $\frac{RKR}{KKtK2 \text{ bst}}$ Should you now continue 12 $\frac{RP\times P}{BP\times P}$ 13 $\frac{KKtP1}{P\times KKtP}$ 14 $\frac{QB\times P}{KRKB+}$ 15 $\frac{QBKB4}{KKtKt3\,bg}$ and playing

Digitized by Google

instead at Move 12 $\frac{\text{KKtP 1}}{\text{P} \times \text{KKtP}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{KRP} \times \text{P}}{\text{KBP} \times \text{P}}$ (13 $\frac{\text{K} \times \text{P}}{\text{KKtKt 3}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{KRP 1}}{\text{KKtK 2}}$) 14 $\frac{\text{K} \times \text{P}}{\text{KKtKt 3}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{KP 1}}{\text{QP 1}}$ 16 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ (16 $\frac{\text{KBQ 3}}{\text{KKB 2}}$) 17 $\frac{\text{KBQ 3}}{\text{KKB 2}}$ 18 $\frac{\text{BQB 4} +}{\text{KKKt 2}}$* (18 $\frac{\text{R} +}{\text{KKKt 2}}$) 19 $\frac{\text{KRKB}}{\text{KRKB bg}}$

The Move 3 $\frac{\text{KBK 2}}{}$ creates a Gambit, the defence of which is extremely difficult. The following are the best moves: 3 $\frac{\text{KBK 2}}{\text{Q} +}$ 4 $\frac{\text{KKB}}{\text{KKtP 2}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{KKtB 3}}{\text{QKR 3}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{KRP 2}}{\text{KBP 1 bst}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{KKB 2}}{\text{QKKt 2}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ (if 8 $\frac{\text{QP 2}}{\text{KRP 1}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{KRP} \times \text{P}}{\text{KRP} \times \text{P}}$ rather better for them than the other variation) 9 $\frac{\text{QP 2}}{\text{QP 1}}$ he preserves Pawn, with good g.

NINTH OPENING.

1 $\frac{\text{KP 2}}{\text{KP 2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{KBP 2}}{\text{KP} \times \text{P}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{KRP 2}}{\text{KBK 2 bst}}$ (If 3 $\frac{}{\text{KKtB 3}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{QP 1}}{}$ and Gambit P is lost. If 3 $\frac{}{\text{KKtP 2}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{KRP} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q} \times \text{P}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{QKB 3}}{\text{QKtB 3}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{KKtK 2}}{\text{KBR 3}}$ [6 $\frac{}{\text{QP 1}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{QP 2 bg}}{}$ and if 6 $\frac{}{\text{KBQB 4}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{KRR 5}}{\text{QK 2}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{QQB 3}}{}$ you win a piece] 7 $\frac{\text{QP 2 bg}}{}$ Again by playing 3 $\frac{}{\text{QP 2}}$ he would uselessly compromise his Q; for instance: 3 $\frac{}{\text{QP 2}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{KP} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q} \times \text{P}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{KKtB 3}}{\text{QBKt 5}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{QKtB 3}}{\text{QQ}}$ he has lost a move, and will still be forced to play at a later period $\frac{}{\text{KBK 2}}$ for if 6 $\frac{}{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}$ [6 $\frac{}{\text{QK 3} +}$ 7 $\frac{\text{KKB 2}}{}$ winning a move] 7 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{Q}}{\text{B} \times \text{Q}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{K} \times \text{B}}{\text{KBQ 3}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{QP 2}}{}$ you regain Gambit P) 4 $\frac{\text{KKtB 3}}{}$

---

* Instead of this move, you should take P with QB, and would have the better game. If he retake B with KRP, you capture Kt with KB, checking. Jaenisch, therefore, fails to prove that 3 $\frac{\text{QKB 3}}{}$ is a bad move, whether it really be so or not.

Digitized by Google

(for the move 4 $\frac{QKKt4}{}$ see Var.) 4 $\frac{}{KKtB3}$ (This is a good move, but it would simplify matters more to advance 4 $\frac{}{QP1}$ 5 $\frac{QP2}{QBKt5}$ [5 $\frac{}{KKtP2}$ 6 $\frac{RP\times P}{KB\times P}$ 7 $\frac{KKtP1}{}$ you recover Pawn] 6 $\frac{QB\times P}{B\times P+}$ 7 $\frac{KKtP1}{BKKt4}$ he preserves P with gd g. Against 8 $\frac{B\times B}{B\times Kt}$ 9 $\frac{Q\times B}{Q\times B*}$) 5 $\frac{QP1}{}$ (If 5 $\frac{KP1}{KKtR4}$ 6 $\frac{QP2}{QP1}$ 7 $\frac{KKtKt5}{KtKt6}$ then $\frac{}{KB\times Kt}$ and $\frac{}{Q\nearrow P\,b\,g}$ If also 5 $\frac{QP2}{Kt\times P}$ [not $\frac{}{KtKR4}$] 6 $\frac{QB\times P}{QP2}$ he keeps pawn with a fine game) 5 $\frac{}{QP2}$ (if 5 $\frac{}{KKtR4}$ 6 $\frac{QKtB3}{KBKt5}$ [6 $\frac{}{KRP1}$ 7 $\frac{QKtQ5}{KKtP2}$ 8 $\frac{KRP\times P}{KRP\times P}$ 9 $\frac{KKt\times P}{KB\times Kt}$ 10 $\frac{R\times Kt\,b\,g}{}$] 7 $\frac{QBQ2}{B\times QKt}$ 8 $\frac{B\times B}{QP2}$ 9 $\frac{KKtKt5}{KKtKt6}$ 10 $\frac{KRR2}{Kt\times KB}$ 11 $\frac{K\times Kt}{Cas\,KR}$ 12 $\frac{QQ2}{}$ You will recover Gambit Pawn. There arise several other Variations, but it appears to us that he always regains Pawn) 6 $\frac{KP\times P}{Kt\times P}$ (6 $\frac{KP1}{KKtR4\,gd\,g}$) 7 $\frac{QBP2}{KtK6}$ (7 $\frac{}{BKt5+}$ 8 $\frac{KKB2}{}$ you regain Pawn) 8 $\frac{B\times Kt}{P\times B}$ 9 $\frac{QP1}{Cas\,b\,g}$

Variation on Fourth Move of First Player.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBP2}{KP\times P}$ 3 $\frac{KRP2}{KBK2}$ 4 $\frac{QKKt4}{KKtB3}$ (He would do yet better to play 4 $\frac{}{QP2}$ 5 $\frac{Q\times BP}{P\times P}$ [5 $\frac{Q\times KKtP}{BKB3\,w}$] 6 $\frac{Q\times P}{KKtB3\,w}$) 5 $\frac{Q\times KKtP}{}$ (This move loses your game; you should have taken Gambit P with Q, on which he castles, and has better g) 5 $\frac{}{KRKt}$ 6 $\frac{QKR6}{KBQ3}$ (he now threatens to win Q by playing $\frac{}{RKKt3}$) 7 $\frac{KRP1}{}$ (if 7 $\frac{KP1}{KB\times P}$ 8 $\frac{KBQ3}{R\times KKtP\,b\,g}$) 7 $\frac{}{RKKt5}$ (he threatens to win

---

* I admit you lose a Pawn, but you will get a very fine attack here.

Digitized by Google

Q by $\left(\frac{}{KBKB}\right)$ 8 $\frac{KP1}{B \times P}$ You remain with Pawn less, and dangerous position. If now 9 $\frac{KBK2}{PKB6}$ he wins piece.

Section II.

KING'S BISHOP'S GAMBIT.

It is extremely difficult to convey, not only to a beginner, but to all players who are comparatively strangers to the great principle of the Pawns, what can be the advantage to the attacking party in this Opening, which induces him to renounce from the very beginning the faculty of castling; and to place his King upon a square which cramps the activity of his King's Rook, and upon a line open to continued counter-attacks on the part of the adverse pieces. It is not only the wing Pawns, those necessary guards of the King, which are so audaciously advanced in the attack of this Gambit, as in the case of the Knight's Gambit; but it is the King himself who, in this Opening, from the very commencement, participates actively in the assault. The true secret of the Bishop's Gambit, the fundamental idea which gives birth to, and subsequently directs, its every combination, may be expressed thus: —

Through the acceptance of this Gambit, the centre Pawns being firmly established, and the activity of the hostile force proportionally restrained, it is your immediate aim to recover the Gambit Pawn. Now the diagonal line of attack, primarily commanded by your Queen, (Q sq to KR5) remaining open to her range in the Bishop's Gambit, as long as your KKt remains unmoved, the defence of Gambit P becomes much more laboured for second player; and the check of his Queen $\left(3\ \frac{}{QKR5+}\right)$ is absolutely necessary to be given; which check compromises the Queen, draws her away from the centre of the position, and exposes her wing at home to be attacked. Moreover, your King's Rook, being essentially necessary for service, in this Opening, upon his own file, you can well forego castling; and even use King as an attacking piece.

This conception is, doubtless, admirably bold and profound. We even think we do not exaggerate in looking upon the Bishop's Gambit, with certain other Chess Openings, as an imperishable monument of human wisdom.* For it has required centuries to its erection, and to

* Brother Chess-players, imbued with the right feeling, will well appreciate this honest and hearty burst of enthusiasm.

Digitized by Google

the completion of it in its actual state: while who can foresee how many new forms of attack and defence may yet thereto be added by generations to come? We find from the work of Ruy Lopez, that, out of Italy, where the King could not castle, but was permitted to leap only two squares, this Gambit was much in vogue, and already largely developed, in the 16th century. The Italian authors, posterior to Ruy Lopez, did not duly appreciate the Bishop's Gambit; and gave a too decided preference to that of the Knight; such preference arising from their mode of castling, which gave the assailant an advantage, of which he naturally availed himself. However, both in France and England, this Gambit seems to have been much cultivated in the 18th century; and Philidor was deeply skilled in its details. Cozio, who adopted the French mode of castling, much advanced the progress of the theory of this début; but his labours on this, as on many other Openings, are underrated, by reason of the numerous errors of detail which ever accompany the examinations of this author; so fertile, nevertheless, in original ideas. Finally, in our own times, the celebrated M'Donnell has brought to bear many new lights upon the Bishop's Gambit, by combining therein certain novel forms of attack and defence, to be found in WALKER'S TREATISE. It remains to unite all these incoherent parts, to examine those systems of defence which have been always rejected without their faults being proved; and finally to rectify and properly complete the analyses of Cozio and M'Donnell.* We flatter ourselves we have fulfilled this task, and we here present to the student, a theory of the Bishop's Gambit, in many respects original, and more complete than any which has been hitherto published.

TENTH OPENING.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBP2}{P\times P}$ 3 $\frac{KBQB4}{KKtP2}$ (We begin with the analysis of this move to convince the reader that in this Opening, in which your Queen's long diagonal line of march is open and free (QKR5), the adversary cannot defend Gambit Pawn without checking 3 $\frac{}{QKR5+}$ On this point we pretend to offer nothing new; but merely repeat details commonly known) 4 $\frac{KRP2}{}$

(This move forcedly recovers Gambit P. If 4 $\frac{QKR5}{QK2\text{ bst}}$ 5 $\frac{QP1\text{ or }QKtB3}{KRP1}$

6 $\frac{KRP2}{KBKt2\text{ gd g}}$) 4 $\frac{}{KBKt2}$ (If 4 $\frac{}{KBP1}$ you mate in five moves.

---

* It is hardly just to me here, not to add my own name; having laboured so much and so long personally with M'Donnell, in the creation of those formulas of attack which he first suggested; as given in my "Art of Chess Play."

Digitized by Google

If 4 $\frac{\text{Kt P} \times \text{P}}{}$ 5 $\frac{\text{Q K R 5}}{\text{Q K 2}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{Q P 1}}{}$ and his two Pawns are not maintainable. If 4 $\frac{\text{K B R 3}}{}$ 5 $\frac{\text{Q K R 5}}{\text{Q K 2}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{Q P 1}}{}$ then $\frac{\text{R P} \times \text{P}}{}$ and $\frac{\text{K Kt P 1}}{}$ and if 4 $\frac{\text{K B K 2}}{}$ 5 $\frac{\text{R P} \times \text{P}}{}$ then $\frac{\text{Q P 2}}{}$ and you easily recover Gambit P. If 4 $\frac{\text{K R P 2}}{}$ 5 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q} \times \text{P}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{K Kt B 3}}{\text{Q K Kt 6+}}$ [6 $\frac{}{\text{Q} \times \text{Kt P}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{K R Kt}}{}$ then $\frac{\text{K B} \times \text{K B P+}}{}$ and you win the piece] 7 $\frac{\text{K K B}}{\text{Q P 1}}$ [to avoid $\frac{\text{K R R 3}}{}$] 8 $\frac{\text{Q Kt B 3}}{\text{K Kt B 3}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Q Kt K 2}}{}$ play as he may, you regain Pawn. Finally, against 4 $\frac{\text{K R P 2}}{}$ 5 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q} \times \text{P}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{K Kt B 3}}{\text{if Q K 2}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Q Kt B 3}}{\text{K Kt B 3}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Q P 1}}{\text{K B R 3}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Q Kt K 2}}{}$) 5 $\frac{\text{Q P 2}}{\text{K R P 1}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{R} \times \text{R}}{\text{B} \times \text{R}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Q K R 5}}{\text{Q K B 3}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{K P 1}}{\text{Q K Kt 2}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{K Kt R 3}}{}$ you regain Pawn with gd g.

ELEVENTH OPENING.

1 $\frac{\text{K P 2}}{\text{K P 2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{K B P 2}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{K B Q B 4}}{\text{Q K R 5+}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{K K B}}{\text{K Kt B 3 bd}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{K Kt B 3}}{\text{Q K R 4}}$ (if 5 $\frac{}{\text{Q K Kt 5}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{B P+ b g}}{}$ If 5 $\frac{}{\text{Q K R 3}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{Kt K 5}}{\text{Q P 2}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{K P} \times \text{P}}{}$ you recover Pawn; and if 6 $\frac{}{\text{Kt} \times \text{K P}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{B P}}{\text{Q K R 5}}$ [7 $\frac{}{\text{Kt K Kt 6+}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{K K Kt w}}{}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Q K 2 w}}{}$) 6 $\frac{\text{K P 1}}{\text{K Kt Kt 5}}$ (if 6 $\frac{}{\text{Kt K 5}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{K K Kt}}{\text{K Kt P 2}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Q P 1}}{\text{Kt Q B 4}}$ [8 $\frac{}{\text{B Q B 4+}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Q P 2}}{\text{B Q Kt 3}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Q K 2}}{\text{Q K Kt 3}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{K B Q 3 b g}}{}$] 9 $\frac{\text{K R P 2}}{\text{K Kt P 1}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{K Kt Kt 5 b g}}{}$ If, again, 6 $\frac{}{\text{Q P 2}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{K B Q Kt 3}}{\text{Kt K 5}}$ [7 $\frac{}{\text{Kt Kt 5}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{P}}{\text{if Kt} \times \text{K P}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Q K 2 b g}}{}$] 8 $\frac{\text{K K Kt}}{}$ threatening $\frac{\text{Q P 1}}{}$ and recovering Gambit P) 7 $\frac{\text{Q P 2}}{\text{K Kt P 2}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{K R P 2}}{\text{K B R 3}}$ (if 8 $\frac{}{\text{Kt K 6}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{P} \times \text{B}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Q K 2}}{\text{K B R 3}}$ [10 $\frac{}{\text{K Kt P 1}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{K Kt Kt 5}}{}$] 11 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{K Kt P b g}}{}$) 9 $\frac{\text{K K Kt}}{\text{Q K Kt 3}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{P}}{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}$ (if 10 $\frac{}{\text{Kt K 6}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{K B} \times \text{Kt}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{B}}{\text{P} \times \text{B}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{Q K B 3 b g}}{}$) 11 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{K B R 3}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{Q}}{}$ and you

Digitized by Google

recover P. You may also play it thus: 11 $\frac{P \times B}{Kt K 6}$ (11 $\frac{Q \times P}{}$ 12 $\frac{Q K B 3 \text{ b g}}{}$) 12 $\frac{B \times Kt}{P \times B}$ 13 $\frac{Q K B 3}{}$ as before.

Although we find the defensive Move 4 $\frac{}{K B Q B 4}$ examined in several works on Chess, we shall not here dwell upon it, as being evidently too weak; not only losing a valuable time 4 $\frac{}{K B Q B 4}$ 5 $\frac{Q P 2}{}$ but also necessarily losing the Gambit Pawn, a few moves later. Your centre Pawns intercepting the line from your QB5 to KB2, the best place for second player's KB in this Gambit, as in Knight's Gambit, is no longer his QB4 but his KKt2, on which latter square he defends Rook, and commands an important diagonal.

TWELFTH OPENING.

1 $\frac{K P 2}{K P 2}$ 2 $\frac{K B P 2}{P \times P}$ 3 $\frac{K B Q B 4}{Q K R 5 +}$ 4 $\frac{K K B}{Q K B 3}$ This Opening, extremely difficult of analysis, has never been deeply gone into by authors, although deserving especially of their attention, as presenting a system of defence, *sui generis*, and very natural, yet radically defective; as we shall now first demonstrate. (If your adversary had played on Move 3 $\frac{}{Q K B 3}$ you would answer 4 $\frac{K Kt B 3}{K Kt P 2}$ 5 $\frac{Cas}{}$ and you thus set up a Knight's Gambit highly disadvantageous to second player) 5 $\frac{Q Kt B 3 \text{ bst}}{Q B P 1}$ (For the Move 5 $\frac{}{K Kt K 2}$ see Var. If, disregarding your menacing advance of QKt, he moves 5 $\frac{}{Q P 1}$ or 5 $\frac{}{K Kt P 2}$ you play 6 $\frac{Q Kt Q 5}{}$ and the Q once driven away, you will easily recover Pawn) 6 $\frac{Q K B 3}{}$ (Here you deviate from the usual line of attack, which consisted in playing 6 $\frac{Q P 2}{}$ or 6 $\frac{K Kt B 3}{}$ as see in another Var. Cozio was the first writer to point out the advantages of this sortie of Queen, in Bishop's Gambit; although not exactly in the Var before us now. We shall presently speak more in detail upon this) 6 $\frac{}{K Kt P 2}$ (if 6 $\frac{}{Q P 1}$ 7 $\frac{Q P 1}{K Kt P 2}$

Digitized by Google

8 $\frac{KRP2}{\ }$ If 6 $\frac{\ }{KBQ3}$ 7 $\frac{KKtK2}{\ }$ then $\frac{QP2}{\ }$) 7 $\frac{KRP2}{KRP1}$ (if 7 $\frac{\ }{P\times RP}$ 8 $\frac{QP1}{KBR3}$ 9 $\frac{QKtK2}{KKtK2}$ 10 $\frac{Kt\times P}{B\times Kt}$ [if 10 $\frac{\ }{QP1}$ 11 $\frac{KtKR5}{\ }$ and you recover second Pawn. If, again, 10 $\frac{\ }{KKtKt3}$ 11 $\frac{Kt\times Kt}{\ }$] 11 $\frac{Q\times B}{Q\times Q}$ 12 $\frac{QB\times Q}{KKtKKt3}$ 13 $\frac{BKKt5\,bg}{\ }$ you have recovered Pawns) 8 $\frac{P\times P}{P\times P}$ 9 $\frac{R\times R}{Q\times R}$ 10 $\frac{KKtP1}{QKB3 \text{ or } KR7}$ 11 $\frac{P\times P}{P\times P}$ (if 11 $\frac{\ }{Q\times P}$ 12 $\frac{Q\times Q}{P\times Q}$ 13 $\frac{QP2}{KBR3}$ [13 $\frac{\ }{KBKt2}$ 14 $\frac{QKtK2}{KKtB3}$ 15 $\frac{KP1\,bg}{\ }$] 14 $\frac{KKtK2}{PKB6}$ 15 $\frac{KKtKt\,bg}{\ }$) 12 $\frac{QKtK2}{KBR3}$ 13 $\frac{QP1}{\ }$ You regain Gambit P, and preserve your fine centre Pawns.

Variation on Fifth Move of Second Player.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBP2}{P\times P}$ 3 $\frac{KBQB4}{Q+}$ 4 $\frac{KKB}{QKB3}$ 5 $\frac{QKtB3}{KKtK2}$ 6 $\frac{QP2}{QP1}$ (His move 5 $\frac{\ }{KKtK2}$ which will much embarrass his game, induces you to return to the ordinary system of attack; for if 6 $\frac{QKB3}{QKtB3}$ his Q Kt will now give you trouble) 7 $\frac{KKtB3}{KKtP2}$ (if 7 $\frac{\ }{QBK3}$ 8 $\frac{QQ3}{B\times B}$ 9 $\frac{Q\times B}{QBP1}$ 10 $\frac{KP1}{\ }$ or else, if 8 $\frac{\ }{QBP1}$ 9 $\frac{KP1}{\ }$ and he cannot maintain P) 8 $\frac{KRP2}{KRP1}$ (if 8 $\frac{\ }{KKtP1}$ 9 $\frac{KKtKt5}{QBK3}$ 10 $\frac{B\times B}{P\times B}$ 11 $\frac{Q\times P}{\ }$) 9 $\frac{KP1}{QP\times P}$ (9 $\frac{\ }{QKKt2}$ 10 $\frac{QKtK4}{KKtP1}$ 11 $\frac{KtKB6+}{KQ}$ 12 $\frac{KKtK\,bg}{\ }$) 10 $\frac{QP\times P}{QKKt2}$ 11 $\frac{QKtK4}{QKtQ2}$ 12 $\frac{P\times P}{P\times P}$ 13 $\frac{R\times R}{Q\times R}$ 14 $\frac{QKt\times P}{QKR8+}$ 15 $\frac{KKtKt*}{QKt\times P}$ 16 $\frac{QK2}{Kt\times KB}$ 17 $\frac{Q\times QKt}{\ }$ you recover P, and remain with b g

---

* This is a mere oversight on the part of Jaenisch. You should, instead, move K K B 2 leaving Q en prise, for you threaten mate in two moves. His last check, in fact, costs him the Queen, and he would have done better to let it alone.

Digitized by Google

Variation on Sixth Move of First Player.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBP2}{P\times P}$ 3 $\frac{KBQB4}{Q+}$ 4 $\frac{KKB}{QKB3}$ 5 $\frac{QKtB3}{QBP1}$ 6 $\frac{QP2}{QP1}$

(if 6 $\frac{}{KKtP2}$ you will speedily reconquer Gambit P by attacking Queen:

7 $\frac{KP1}{QKKt2}$ [if 7 $\frac{}{QKB4}$ 8 $\frac{KRP2}{KKtP1}$ 9 $\frac{BQ3\,bg}{}$ or else he may play

8 $\frac{}{KBR3}$ 9 $\frac{KBQ3}{QK3}$ 10 $\frac{RP\times P}{B\times P}$ 11 $\frac{R\times Pw}{}$ and again, if 7 $\frac{}{QKKt3}$

8 $\frac{KRP2}{KBR3}$ 9 $\frac{KBQ3}{QKKt2}$ 10 $\frac{RP\times P}{KB\times P}$ 11 $\frac{QKtK4bg}{}$] 8 $\frac{KRP2}{KRP1}$ 9 $\frac{QKtK4}{KBK2}$

10 $\frac{QKR5bg}{}$) 7 $\frac{KKtB3}{KKtP2}$ (if 7 $\frac{}{QBK3}$ 8 $\frac{B\times B}{BP\times B}$ 9 $\frac{KP1}{QP\times P}$

10 $\frac{QP\times P}{QKB4}$ [if 10 $\frac{}{QKB2}$ 11 $\frac{QKtK2}{}$] 11 $\frac{QKtK2}{KKtP2}$ 12 $\frac{QKtQ4}{QKKt3}$

13 $\frac{KRP2}{KKtP1}$ 14 $\frac{KKtKt5}{}$ you regain Pawn. But if at Ninth Move

9 $\frac{}{QKB4}$ 10 $\frac{QKtK2}{KKtP2}$ 11 $\frac{KRP2}{KKtP1}$ 12 $\frac{KKtKt5}{QP\times P}$ 13 $\frac{QP\times P}{Q\times P}$

14 $\frac{QB\times P}{Q\times QKtP}$ 15 $\frac{Kt\times KP}{QKtR3}$ 16 $\frac{Kt\times B}{K\times Kt}$ 17 $\frac{QQ6+}{}$ and then wins by

$\frac{BK5}{}$) 8 $\frac{KRP2\,bst}{KRP1}$ (if 8 $\frac{}{KKtP1}$ 9 $\frac{KKtKt5}{KKtR3}$ 10 $\frac{QKtK2}{PKB6}$

11 $\frac{P\times P}{P\times P}$ 12 $\frac{QKtKKt}{PKB7}$ 13 $\frac{QKtKR3}{QB\times Kt}$ 14 $\frac{R\times B}{}$ and you regain P)

9 $\frac{KP1}{QP\times P}$ (if 9 $\frac{}{QKKt2}$ 10 $\frac{KP\times P}{KB\times P}$ 11 $\frac{QK2+}{KBK2}$ 12 $\frac{QKtK4bg}{}$)

10 $\frac{QP\times P}{QKKt2}$ 11 $\frac{QQ4}{}$ (This is your best move. You threaten to take

$\frac{KRP\times P}{P\times P}$ then to change Rooks, and win KKtP, which you could not safely do before, by reason of certain subsequently impending checks of his Queen) 11 $\frac{}{QKtQ2}$ (if 11 $\frac{}{KBK2}$ 12 $\frac{KP1}{PKB3}$ [12 $\frac{}{Q\times Q}$

13 $\frac{P\times KBP+bg}{}$] 13 $\frac{QKtK4w}{}$) 12 $\frac{KRP\times P}{RP\times P}$ 13 $\frac{R\times R}{Q\times R}$

14 $\frac{KP1\,bst}{}$ (if 14 $\frac{Kt\times P}{Kt\times P}$ and if then 15 $\frac{Kt\times KBP}{Q+w}$) 14 $\frac{}{Q+}$

Digitized by Google

(if 14 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{Q}}{}$ 15 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{KBP} + \text{b g}}{}$) 15 $\frac{\text{QKKt}}{\text{Q} \times \text{Q} +}$ 16 $\frac{\text{K} \times \text{Q}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ 17 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{KtP}}{}$ you regain Gambit P, and have fine g.

THIRTEENTH OPENING.

1 $\frac{\text{KP2}}{\text{KP2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{KBP2}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{KBQB4}}{\text{QKR5} +}$ 4 $\frac{\text{KKB}}{\text{QP1}}$ (This defence has naturally occupied the observation of authors, as being so probable; nevertheless, its theory had long slumbered in the most deplorable imperfection. We have given it much of our attention, and that, during considerable space of time; having it at heart to supply all the existing deficiencies of authors on this point; proving rigorously that this defence cannot keep the acquired Gambit Pawn) 5 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{}$ (This is given as the best move by Mr. George Walker, but we regard it as inferior to 5 $\frac{\text{QKB3}}{}$ as seen in Var. The move 5 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{}$ conducts us to combinations highly difficult and varied, and advantageous for you, we admit, in the majority of cases; but at the end of which, it is problematical if you recover Pawn. The second player, instead of answering by 5 $\frac{\text{QBKKt5}}{}$ or 5 $\frac{\text{KKtP2}}{}$ as given in the books, should move 5 $\frac{\text{QKB3}}{}$ Then, afterwards, 6 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{\text{KKtP2}}$ for which see Var.

The move 5 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{}$ would equally bring about the same Var. For then as best 5 $\frac{\text{QKB3}}{}$ 6 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{KKtP2}}$ &c for if 6 $\frac{\text{QKtB3}}{}$ 7 $\frac{\text{QKtB3 b g}}{}$ The move most in vogue, and already proposed by Gianutio, A. D. 1597, is 5 $\frac{\text{QBP1}}{}$ to prevent the opposition of his QB at K3; for if then 5 $\frac{\text{QBK3}}{}$ 6 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{B}}{}$ and 7 $\frac{\text{QQKt3 b g}}{}$ But 5 $\frac{\text{QBP1}}{}$ is in fact an irreparable loss of time, which will give leisure to your adversary to defend fully and legitimately, upon known rules, the Gambit Pawn, and thus to correct his primary fault of 4 $\frac{\text{QP1}}{}$ This Mr. Walker has already judiciously observed, but we shall here supply the moves he has not given. If then 5 $\frac{\text{QBP1}}{\text{KKtP2}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{\text{QKR4}}$ [if 6 $\frac{\text{QQKt3}}{\text{QKR4}}$] 7 $\frac{\text{KRP2}}{\text{KBKt2}}$

Digitized by Google

8 $\frac{QP2}{KRP1}$ 9 $\frac{KKKt}{QKKt3}$ and his Pawn is perfectly well defended; for had you tried to force it at move 8 $\frac{KKKt}{P\times P\ bst}$ 9 $\frac{QP2}{PKR6}$ [if 9 $\frac{KBK2}{PKR6}$] 10 $\frac{QB\times P}{QKKt5}$ [10 $\frac{KBK2}{QKKt3}$ and if 11 $\frac{KtR4}{QKKt6\ bg}$] 11 $\frac{QQ2}{Q\times P+}$ 12 $\frac{Q\times Q}{P\times Q}$ he keeps Pawn, and has a gd g*) 5 $\frac{}{QBK3}$ (We have pronounced the attack 5 $\frac{QP2}{}$ wk. If, then, we here pursue our analysis, it is chiefly to be able to examine the move 5 $\frac{}{QBK3}$ which we present as best, though hitherto passed over in silence, although so obviously natural. If, moreover, 5 $\frac{}{QBKt5}$ 6 $\frac{KKtB3}{KKtP2}$ 7 $\frac{QKtB3}{QKR4}$ [if 7 $\frac{}{B\times Kt}$ 8 $\frac{Q\times B}{}$ then $\frac{KKtP1}{}$ regaining P] 8 $\frac{KRP2}{KRP1}$ 9 $\frac{KKB2}{KBKt2}$ 10 $\frac{KRP\times P}{B\times Kt}$ 11 $\frac{P\times B}{Q\times P}$ 12 $\frac{QKtK2}{QKtB3}$ 13 $\frac{QBP1}{}$ you regain P) 6 $\frac{QQ3}{}$ (6 $\frac{KBK2}{}$ is weak; for then 6 $\frac{}{QKB3}$ continuing as before shown) 6 $\frac{}{B\times B}$ (He could not well play either 6 $\frac{}{QBP1}$ or 6 $\frac{}{KKtB3}$ or 6 $\frac{}{QKB3}$ without exposing himself to the loss of one or two Pawns by 7 $\frac{B\times B}{}$ and then 8 $\frac{QQKt3}{}$ or $\frac{QQKt5+}{}$) 7 $\frac{Q\times B}{QBP1}$ 8 $\frac{QQKt3}{}$† (If 8 $\frac{KKtB3}{}$ or 8 $\frac{QKtB3}{}$ Still 8 $\frac{}{QKB3}$ and then $\frac{}{KKtP2}$ forming Variations several times herein explored, and disadvantageous for you) 8 $\frac{}{QKtP1}$ (For 8 $\frac{}{QK2}$ see Var)

---

* He certainly "keeps Pawn" for the moment, but his pieces are not out, and his Pawns are broken. I should, myself, take your game now for choice; retaking Pawn at once with King, having in view the instant deployment of Q Kt; the doubling of Rooks, if possible, on King's file; the advance of K P and King's Kt, &c., according to the line of defence set up. In similar positions, you frequently gain splendid quarters for your Q Kt on K 4, by pushing K P to open that sq.

† Jaenisch gives this as your best move. I own I think it a loss of time; as counting for nought. Queen's Pawn One were preferable, though not, perhaps, critically your strongest move.

Digitized by Google

9 $\frac{\text{QKB3 bst}}{\text{QKB3}}$ ($9\ \frac{\text{KKtP2}}{}$ 10 $\frac{\text{KKtP1 b g}}{}$) 10 $\frac{\text{QB}\times\text{P}}{}$ (if 10 $\frac{\text{QKB2 or KKtK2}}{}$ 10 $\frac{\text{KKtP2 gd g}}{}$) 10 $\frac{}{\text{Q}\times\text{QP}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{QKtB3}}{\text{KKtB3 bst}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{KKtK2}}{\text{QQKt5}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{QRP1}}{\text{QQB4}}$ (if 13 $\frac{}{\text{QQB5}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{QRQ}}{}$ and if 13 $\frac{}{\text{Q}\times\text{QKtP}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{QRQR2}}{}$) 14 $\frac{\text{QKtP2}}{\text{QQB5}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{QRQ}}{\text{QK3}}$ (Against 14 $\frac{}{\text{QKR4}}$ equally 15 $\frac{\text{QRQ}}{}$) 16 $\frac{\text{KKtQ4}*}{\text{QQB5}+}$ 17 $\frac{\text{KKB2}}{}$ and on the following move 18 $\frac{\text{KKtKB5}}{}$ recovering Gambit P with b g (But if 17 $\frac{}{\text{KKtP1}}$ 18 $\frac{\text{KP1 b g}}{}$)

Variation on Eighth Move of Second Player.

1 $\frac{\text{KP2}}{\text{KP2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{KBP2}}{\text{P}\times\text{P}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{KBQB4}}{\text{Q}+}$ 4 $\frac{\text{KKB}}{\text{QP1}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{QBK3}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{QQ3}}{\text{B}\times\text{B}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Q}\times\text{B}}{\text{QBP1}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{QQKt3}}{\text{QK2}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{QB}\times\text{P bst}\ \dagger}{\text{Q}\times\text{P}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Q}\times\text{P}}{\text{Q}\times\text{B}+}$ 11 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{\text{QQB8}+}$ 12 $\frac{\text{KKB2}}{\text{Q}\times\text{R}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{Q}\times\text{R}}{\text{QQB8}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{Q}\times\text{Kt}+}{\text{KK2}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{QQKt3}}{\text{KKtB3}}$ 16 $\frac{\text{QK3}+\ddagger}{}$ ev.

Variation upon your Fifth Move.

1 $\frac{\text{KP2}}{\text{KP2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{KBP2}}{\text{P}\times\text{P}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{KBQB4}}{\text{Q}+}$ 4 $\frac{\text{KKB}}{\text{QP1}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{QKB3}}{}$

(This is your best move, and you now ought to recover Gambit P, which proves

---

* I fancy you might have strengthened your latter moves. Jaenisch hardly aims high enough, considering your attacking situation.

† Jaenisch originally gives 9 $\frac{\text{QKtB3}}{}$ but in a note recants the train of play arising from that move; and substitutes 9 $\frac{\text{QB}\times\text{P}}{}$ as your strongest line of action.

‡ These latter moves are too scrambling to be satisfactory; at least to me.

Digitized by Google

the fault of the defence 4 $\frac{\text{Q P 1}}{}$ The idea of 5 $\frac{\text{Q K B 3}}{}$ is Cozio's, but we have been compelled to remodel his details; this author appearing to have regarded the move $\frac{\text{Q K B 3}}{}$ as the universal panacea for service in the Bishop's Gambit; causing it invariably to win for first player) 5 $\frac{}{\text{K Kt P 2}}$ (If 5 $\frac{}{\text{Q K B 3}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{Q P 1}}{\text{K Kt P 2}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{K R P 2}}{\text{K R P 1}}$ [7 $\frac{}{\text{Kt P} \times \text{R P}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{P}}{\text{K B K 2}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{K Kt B 3 b g}}{}$] 8 $\frac{\text{K R P} \times \text{P}}{\text{R P} \times \text{P}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{R} \times \text{R}}{\text{Q} \times \text{R}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{K Kt P 1 gd g}}{}$ Against 10 $\frac{}{\text{Q B R 3 +}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{K K}}{}$ and you acquire the advantage. Against 10 $\frac{}{\text{Q K R 7}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q} \times \text{Q B P}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{Q Kt R 3}}{}$ you recover P) 6 $\frac{\text{K Kt P 1}}{\text{Q K Kt 5}}$ (if 6 $\frac{}{\text{Q K R 3}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Q P 1 b g}}{}$ If 6 $\frac{}{\text{B +}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{K K B 2}}{\text{Q K Kt 5 or K R 3}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P b g}}{}$) 7 $\frac{\text{Q P 1 bst}}{}$ (if 7 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{Q}}{\text{B} \times \text{Q}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Q P 1}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{R P} \times \text{P}}{\text{K B Kt 2}}$ then 10 $\frac{}{\text{K R P 1}}$ preserving his Pawn) 7 $\frac{}{\text{Q} \times \text{Q}}$ (if 7 $\frac{}{\text{K B R 3}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{Q}}{\text{B} \times \text{Q}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{K R P 2 b g}}{}$) 8 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{Q}}{\text{K B R 3}}$ (if 8 $\frac{}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{P}}{}$ and if 8 $\frac{}{\text{K Kt P 1}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Kt Kt 5}}{}$) 9 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Q Kt B 3}}{\text{Q B K 3 bst}}$ (if 10 $\frac{}{\text{Q B P 1}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{Q Kt K 2}}{\text{Q B Kt 5}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{K K B 2}}{}$ you win P) 11 $\frac{\text{Q Kt K 2}}{\text{B} \times \text{B}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{B}}{\text{K Kt B 3}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{P}}{\text{B} \times \text{B}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{B}}{\text{Kt} \times \text{P}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{Q R K}}{\text{K B P 2}}$ 16 $\frac{\text{K Kt Kt 5}}{\text{Cas}}$ 17 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{Kt}}{}$ you win P.

Suppose at Move 10 he plays thus: 10 $\frac{}{\text{K Kt K 2}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{K Kt R 4 bst}}{\text{K B Kt 4}}$ (11 $\frac{}{\text{K R Kt}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{K R Kt}}{\text{B K Kt 4}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{Kt K B 3}}{\text{Q B R 6 +}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{K K B 2}}{\text{K R P 1}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{Q Kt K 2}}{}$) 12 $\frac{\text{Kt K Kt 2}}{\text{Q B R 6}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{K K B 2}}{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{K} \times \text{B}}{\text{K R Kt}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{K R K B}}{\text{Q B P 1}}$ 16 $\frac{\text{K K R}}{\text{K Kt Kt 3}}$ 17 $\frac{\text{Q Kt K 2}}{}$

Digitized by Google

Another Variation of Fifth Move.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBP2}{P\times P}$ 3 $\frac{KBQB4}{Q+}$ 4 $\frac{KKB}{QP1}$ 5 $\frac{QP2}{QKB3}$
6 $\frac{KKtB3}{KKtP2}$ (if 6 $\frac{}{QBK3}$ 7 $\frac{QQ3}{B\times B}$ [to avoid $\frac{KB\times B}{}$ then $\frac{QQKt5+}{}$
and if 7 $\frac{}{QBP1}$ 8 $\frac{KP1}{}$ his Pawn is now no longer tenable]
8 $\frac{Q\times B}{QBP1}$ 9 $\frac{KP1}{QKB4}$ [if 9 $\frac{}{QP\times P}$ 10 $\frac{QP\times P}{}$ and you gain P]
10 $\frac{QQKt4}{Q\times QBP}$ 11 $\frac{QB\times P}{QQ8+}$ 12 $\frac{KKB2}{Q\times KR}$ 13 $\frac{Q\times QKtP\ bg}{}$) 7 $\frac{KRP2\ bst}{KRP1}$
(if 7 $\frac{}{KKtP1}$ 8 $\frac{KKtKt5}{KKtR3}$ 9 $\frac{QKtB3}{QBK3}$ 10 $\frac{QQ3}{KB\times B}$ 11 $\frac{Q\times B}{QBP1}$ 12 $\frac{QKtK2}{PKB6}$
13 $\frac{P\times P}{P\times P}$ 14 $\frac{QKtKKt}{PKB7}$ 15 $\frac{QKtKR3}{KKtKt5}$ 16 $\frac{QK2}{}$ you will capture P)
8 $\frac{QKtB3}{QBK3}$ (His sole advantage, comparatively with Opening XII, consists in the *sortie* of this Bishop. Had he played 8 $\frac{}{QBP1}$ he would re-enter upon a bygone position. You have now the choice of two attacks: 9 $\frac{KB\times B}{}$ and 9 $\frac{QQ3}{}$ The first seems to be inferior, because of 9 $\frac{B\times B}{P\times B}$
10 $\frac{KP1}{QP\times P}$ [if 10 $\frac{}{QKKt2}$ 11 $\frac{KP\times QP}{QBP\times P\text{ or }KB\times P}$ 12 $\frac{QK2}{}$
and do what he will, you regain Pawn] 11 $\frac{QP\times P}{QKKt2}$ 12 $\frac{QQ4}{QKtB3}$ [if
12 $\frac{QQ3}{KKtP1}$] 13 $\frac{QQB4}{KQ2}$ it is more than doubtful whether you will recover Pawn) 9 $\frac{QQ3}{B\times B}$ (if 9 $\frac{}{QBP1}$ 10 $\frac{KB\times B}{KBP\times B}$ 11 $\frac{KP1}{QP\times P}$ 12 $\frac{QP\times P}{QKKt2}$
13 $\frac{KRP\times P}{KRP\times P}$ 14 $\frac{R\times R}{Q\times R}$ 15 $\frac{QKKt6+\ bg}{}$) 10 $\frac{Q\times B}{QBP1}$ 11 $\frac{KP1}{QP\times P}$
(if 11 $\frac{}{QKKt2}$ 12 $\frac{QQKt4}{}$) 12 $\frac{QP\times P}{QKKt2}$ 13 $\frac{KP1}{KBP1}$ in this situation we dismiss the game as favourable for you; though we doubt whether you will recover Gambit Pawn. (Had his last move been
13 $\frac{}{P\times KP}$ 14 $\frac{Q\times P+}{KKtK2}$ 15 $\frac{QKtK4}{}$ you ought to win.)

Digitized by Google

FOURTEENTH OPENING.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBP2}{P\times P}$ 3 $\frac{KBQB4}{Q+}$ 4 $\frac{KKB}{KKtP2}$ (The third and fourth are the correct moves for the defence; and deserving of especial attention. The K Kt P thus pushed 2 sq cramps, it is true, the action of his Queen; but there are no other means of preserving Gambit Pawn. You have now actually the choice between three different systems of attack. The first 5 $\frac{KKtB3}{}$ which forms the ancient classic attack; the second 5 $\frac{QKtB3}{}$ invented more recently*; and the third 5 $\frac{QKB3}{}$ due to Cozio, who first introduced this move into the different variations of Bishop's Gambit. Its author fancied it irresistible; and by its assistance makes first player almost always win; though in this Cozio is greatly deceived; without having been, however, hitherto corrected by subsequent writers. We shall now proceed to expose the fallacy of his theory) 5 $\frac{QKB3}{QKtB3\ bst}$ (If 5 $\frac{}{QP1}$ 6 $\frac{KKtP1}{}$ and we re-enter upon the preceding début, in which you recover Pawn. Suppose, again, that he pushes 5 $\frac{}{QP1}$ you would not do well to be allured into the following tempting attack, overlooked by Cozio; and to an extent embarrassing for your adversary, though in reality unsound. 5 $\frac{}{QP1}$ 6 $\frac{QQB3}{PKB3}$ [6 $\frac{QQKt3}{}$ were a waste of time; for then 6 $\frac{}{QKR4}$] 7 $\frac{QQKt3}{}$ [7 $\frac{B\times Kt\ bd}{R\times B}$ now, if 8 $\frac{Q\times QBP}{QKtB3}$ and if 8 $\frac{Q\times KBP}{BKKt2}$ in either case your Queen is lost] 7 $\frac{}{KKtR3}$ 8 $\frac{KBK6}{QKtQ2\ bst}$ 9 $\frac{B\times Kt+}{K\times B}$ 10 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKR4}$ 11 $\frac{QKtB3}{QBP1}$ 12 $\frac{QP2}{KBKt2}$ 13 $\frac{KRP2}{KRK}$ 14 $\frac{QBQ2}{KQB2}$ 15 $\frac{KKKt}{QKKt3}$ he has kept Gambit P, and should win. For the comparatively weak move of 5 $\frac{}{KKtB3}$ see Var) 6 $\frac{KKtP1}{}$ (if 6 $\frac{QQKt3\ inf}{KBQB4\ bst}$ 7 $\frac{B\times KBP+}{KK2}$ 8 $\frac{KKtR3}{KKtP1}$ or else 8 $\frac{KKtP1}{P\times KKtP}$ 9 $\frac{QKB3}{QKtK4}$ in both cases you lose. But if 6 $\frac{QQB3}{PKB3}$ [6 $\frac{}{KBQB4}$

* Invented by M'Donnell, the greatest Chess-player England has ever yet produced. Honour to his memory!

Digitized by Google

7 $\frac{B \times KBP+ bg}{}$] 7 $\frac{B \times KKt}{R \times B}$ [if 7 $\frac{QQKt3}{KBQB4 bst}$ since you must return 8 $\frac{QKB3}{}$ for if 8 $\frac{KKtR3}{QP2}$ 9 $\frac{KP \times QP}{QB \times Kt}$ or else 8 $\frac{KKtP1}{P \times KKtP}$ and now if 9 $\frac{KB \times Kt}{}$ he mates in three] 8 $\frac{Q \times KBP}{KBKt2}$ 9 $\frac{QKB5}{KBQ5}$ 10 $\frac{KKtR3}{}$ [if 10 $\frac{KKtP1 bd}{P \times P}$ and if 10 $\frac{KK2}{QKB7+}$ 11 $\frac{KQ3}{KtK4+ w}$] 10 $\frac{}{QP1}$ 11 $\frac{QQKt5}{QB \times Kt w}$) 6 $\frac{}{QKR3}$ 7 $\frac{P \times P}{P \times P}$ (if 7 $\frac{KRP2}{QKtK4}$ 8 $\frac{QQKt3}{Kt \times B}$ 9 $\frac{Q \times Kt}{P \times KKtP w}$) 8 $\frac{QP1}{QKtQ5}$ 9 $\frac{QQ}{}$ (if 9 $\frac{QKB2}{KBQB4}$ 10 $\frac{QB \times P}{Kt \times QBP}$ 11 $\frac{B \times Q}{B \times Q}$ 12 $\frac{BKKt7}{BQ5}$ he preserves Pawn with gd g) 9 $\frac{}{KKtK2}$* 10 $\frac{QBP1}{QKtK3}$ 11 $\frac{QKB3}{KKtKt3}$ 12 $\frac{KKtR3}{KBQ3}$ (if 12 $\frac{QP1}{PKB3}$) 13 $\frac{QP1}{PKB3}$ 14 $\frac{KRKt}{QKtKKt4}$ (if 14 $\frac{B \times Kt}{P \times B}$ then $\frac{}{PK4 bg}$) 15 $\frac{Kt \times Kt}{P \times Kt}$ 16 $\frac{KP1}{KBK2}$ 17 $\frac{KRP1 if}{KKtR5}$ 18 $\frac{QQ5 if}{QK3 bg}$

Variation on Fifth Move of Second Player.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBP2}{P \times P}$ 3 $\frac{KBQB4}{Q+}$ 4 $\frac{KKB}{KKtP2}$ 5 $\frac{QKB3}{KKtB3 bd}$ 6 $\frac{KKtP1}{QKKt5}$ (if 6 $\frac{KP1}{KKtKt5 w}$) (For the move 6 $\frac{}{QKR3}$ see Supplementary Var. If 6 $\frac{}{QKR4}$ 7 $\frac{KP1}{Q \times Q}$ as about to come before us; for if 7 $\frac{}{KKtKt5}$ 8 $\frac{KRP1}{}$ you win a piece) 7 $\frac{KP1}{Q \times Q}$ (7 $\frac{}{P \times P}$ if 8 $\frac{KB \times P+}{}$) 8 $\frac{Kt \times Q}{KKtK5}$ (if 8 $\frac{}{KtKKt5}$ 9 $\frac{Kt \times P}{}$) 9 $\frac{QP1}{KKtP1}$ 10 $\frac{KKtR4}{}$ you recover P.

---

* By simply playing QP2 now, instead of this move, second player has a forced won game.

Digitized by Google

Supplementary Variation.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBP2}{P\times P}$ 3 $\frac{KBQB4}{Q+}$ 4 $\frac{KKB}{KKtP2}$ 5 $\frac{QKB3}{KKtB3}$ 6 $\frac{KKtP1}{QKR3}$ 7 $\frac{QP1*}{KtKR4}$ (if 7 $\frac{KP1}{KtKR4}$ then against 8 $\frac{QP2}{QKtB3}$ and 9 $\frac{}{QP1}$ &c. If 7 $\frac{QP2}{P\times P}$ 8 $\frac{P\times P}{QKKt3}$ If 7 $\frac{QP1}{P\times P}$ 8 $\frac{P\times P}{QKKt3}$ 9 $\frac{KP1}{}$ then against 9 $\frac{}{KKtKt}$ 10 $\frac{QB\times P}{}$ and against 9 $\frac{}{QP2}$ 10 $\frac{Q\times Kt\ gd\ g}{}$) 8 $\frac{KKtK2}{}$ (if 8 $\frac{KKtP1}{}$ he ought not to reply with 8 $\frac{}{KtKKt2}$ because of 9 $\frac{KRP2}{}$ but should move 8 $\frac{}{KtKB3}$ 9 $\frac{KP1}{QP2}$) 8 $\frac{}{KBQ3}$† 9 $\frac{KRP2}{}$ you force the Pawn.

FIFTEENTH OPENING.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBP2}{P\times P}$ 3 $\frac{KBQB4}{Q+}$ 4 $\frac{KKB}{KKtP2}$ 5 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKR4}$

(This mode of attack induces certain difficult combinations by no means yet exhausted; as we are about to find. The Queen cannot retire to K Kt 5, on account of 6 $\frac{B\times KBP+}{}$ nor to her K R 3, by reason of 6 $\frac{KKtK5}{}$)

6 $\frac{KRP2}{}$ (if 6 $\frac{QP2}{}$ we should not advise 6 $\frac{}{QP1}$ in order to avoid the Var 6 $\frac{QP2}{QP1}$ 7 $\frac{KRP2}{KBKt2}$ 8 $\frac{KKKt}{}$ as given presently. His correct answer is 6 $\frac{}{KBKt2}$ then 7 $\frac{KRP2}{KRP1}$ [7 $\frac{KP1}{KKtK2}$] 8 $\frac{KKKt}{QKKt3}$ as seen

---

* You would get a good game by changing P, and then advancing Q P 2.

† I observe Jaenisch frequently proposes this move, which (I say it with respect to his great talent, but in the simplicity of truth) stamps him as wanting occasionally in judgment of position. In ninety-nine cases out of the hundred, the Bishop, thus placed, causes by its nature the loss of the game, however remotely.

Digitized by Google

further on. If 6 $\frac{KBK2}{KBKt2}$ 7 $\frac{KRP2}{KKtP1}$ we enter upon a combination about to be examined) 6 $\frac{}{KBKt2\ bst}$ (if 6 $\frac{}{KKtP1}$ 7 $\frac{KKtK}{}$ and you will easily regain Gambit P) 7 $\frac{QP2}{}$ (It would be wrong now to move 7 $\frac{KKKt*}{}$ for then 7 $\frac{}{KKtP1}$ 8 $\frac{KKtKt5}{}$ [or else he plays 8 $\frac{}{QQB4+}$] 8 $\frac{}{B+}$ 9 $\frac{KKB}{KKtR3}$ 10 $\frac{QBP1}{KBKB3}$ [10 $\frac{QP1}{PKB3}$ 11 $\frac{KtKR3}{Q\times KRP\ w}$] 11 $\frac{KKKt}{B\times Kt\ w}$ and if 11 $\frac{KtKR3}{Q\times P\ w}$

If at Move 7, 7 $\frac{QKtB3}{KRP1\ bst}$ 8 $\frac{QP2}{QP1}$ see Opening XVI, and if 8 $\frac{QKtQ5}{KQ}$ 9 $\frac{QP2}{QBP1}$ 10 $\frac{QKtB3}{QP1}$ 11 $\frac{KP1}{QP1}$ [11 $\frac{QBQ2}{QBKt5}$] 12 $\frac{KBK2}{QBKt5}$ 13 $\frac{KKB2}{QKKt3}$ 14 $\frac{KKtK\ if}{B\times B}$ 15 $\frac{Q\times B}{KKtK2\ gd\ g}$

For the Move 7 $\frac{KRKR2}{}$ see Var.

If at Move 7 $\frac{KBK2}{KKtP1}$ 8 $\frac{KKtK}{KKtB3}$ [8 $\frac{KKtR2}{PKB6}$ 9 $\frac{P\times P}{Q\times KRP\ w}$] 9 $\frac{KP1}{KKtK5}$ [9 $\frac{QP1}{KBR3}$] 10 $\frac{B\times P}{KtKt6+}$ 11 $\frac{KKKt}{Q\times KP}$ 12 $\frac{KRR3}{KRP2}$ 13 $\frac{KBB3}{QP2\ bg}$

---

* Against this move, Dubois, the title of whose interesting Chess pamphlet I have quoted in another part of this volume, supplies the following beautiful moves: 7 $\frac{KKKt}{B+}$ 8 $\frac{KKR2}{KKtP1}$ 9 $\frac{Kt\times B}{P+}$ 10 $\frac{KKR3}{QP2+}$ 11 $\frac{KtKB5}{Q\times Q}$ 12 $\frac{R\times Q}{KtKR3}$ 13 $\frac{KRP1}{}$ (here if 13 $\frac{BQ3}{}$ he changes P and wins by $\frac{}{Kt\times Kt}$ If 13 $\frac{BK2}{P\times P}$ 14 $\frac{BKKt4}{Kt\times Kt}$ 15 $\frac{QP2}{KRP2\ w}$ For the move 13 $\frac{QKtB3}{}$ see Var) 13 $\frac{}{P\times P}$ 14 $\frac{KKR4}{Kt\times Kt+}$ 15 $\frac{KKKt5}{PKB6}$ 16 $\frac{KKB4}{PKB7\ w}$ Variation 13 $\frac{QKtB3}{P\times P}$ 14 $\frac{KRP1}{RKKt}$ 15 $\frac{KtQ5}{B\times Kt+}$ 16 $\frac{KKR4}{KQ}$ 17 $\frac{KtKB6}{KRKKt2}$ 18 $\frac{QP2}{KP1}$ 19 $\frac{KBQ3}{QKtQ2}$ 20 $\frac{KtQ5}{QBP1}$ 21 $\frac{QKt\times Gam\ P}{R+}$ 22 $\frac{KKR3}{R\times Kt+}$ 23 $\frac{K\times P}{RKt5+}$ 24 $\frac{KKB3}{B\times B}$ 25 $\frac{R\times B}{RKR5}$ 26 $\frac{B\times P}{R\times RP\ w}$

Digitized by Google

If at Move 9 of last, 9 $\frac{QKtB3}{QKKt3}$ 10 $\frac{QP1}{KKtR4}$ 11 $\frac{QKtQ5}{Kt+}$ 12 $\frac{KKKt}{B+}$ 13 $\frac{KKR2}{Kt\times B\ w}$)

7 $\frac{}{KRP1\ bst}$ (The play 7 $\frac{}{QP1}$ which appears at first glance so natural, would vitiate the defence, and engage him in unfavourable combinations. See Variation in proof) 8 $\frac{KP1}{}$ (We introduce this move, on account of its never hitherto having been duly analysed, although highly embarrassing. If, besides, 8 $\frac{KKKt\text{ or }RR2}{QKKt3}$ and if 8 $\frac{KBK2}{QKKt3}$ 9 $\frac{KBQ3}{QP1}$ 10 $\frac{KP1}{QBKB4}$ in both cases his defence being perfect. If 8 $\frac{QKtB3}{QP1}$ we enter upon Opening XVI. The move 8 $\frac{KKB2}{}$ would be a fault; since then 8 $\frac{}{KKtP1}$ threatening check with Pawn) 8 $\frac{}{KKtK2\ bst}$ 9 $\frac{QKtB3\ bst}{}$ (if 9 $\frac{QK}{KKtKB4}$ 10 $\frac{KKKt}{KKtP1\ w}$ If 9 $\frac{KBQ3}{QP1}$ 10 $\frac{KP\times P}{QBP\times P}$ 11 $\frac{QBP1}{QKtB3}$ 12 $\frac{KKKt}{QKKt5}$ 13 $\frac{QKtR3\text{ or }Q2}{QBKB4}$ then $\frac{}{Cas\,QR\ w}$ or if here 14 $\frac{B\times B}{Q\times B}$ and if instead 14 $\frac{KBK2}{BK5}$ If at twelfth move 12 $\frac{QKtR3\text{ or }Q2}{QBK3}$ 13 $\frac{KBK2}{QKKt3}$ 14 $\frac{QBP1}{QP1}$ then $\frac{}{Cas\,QR\ w}$ Finally, if Move 9 $\frac{KKKt}{QKKt3}$ 10 $\frac{KBQ3}{QQKt3}$ threatening $\frac{}{KKtP1}$ and if Move 10 $\frac{QKtB3}{QP1}$ 11 $\frac{KP\times P}{QBP\times P}$ 12 $\frac{QKtKt5}{KQ}$ [13 $\frac{KBQ3}{QBKB4}$] he always keeps Gambit Pawn) 9 $\frac{}{KKtB4}$ 10 $\frac{QKtK4}{QP1}$ (10 $\frac{KKKt}{KtKt6}$ 11 $\frac{KRR2}{QKKt3}$ 12 $\frac{KBQ3}{QQKt3\ w}$) 11 $\frac{KP\times P}{QBP\times P}$ 12 $\frac{QK2}{}$ (if 12 $\frac{QBP1}{KKtP1}$ 13 $\frac{KKtK}{QP1}$ 14 $\frac{KB\times P}{KtK6+}$ 15 $\frac{B\times Kt}{Q\times KB\ w}$ or if 14 $\frac{BQKt5+}{QKtB3}$ threatening $\frac{}{KtKt6+}$) 12 $\frac{}{KQ\ bst}$ * 13 $\frac{QBP1}{KRK}$

---

* At this stage of the game Jaenisch originally preferred 12 $\frac{}{Cas}$ which he pronounced to be the correct defence, and adopted it, supported by several ingenious variations, in each of which second player wins. Subsequently,

Digitized by Google

$\left(13\,\frac{QQ3}{KRK}\quad 14\,\frac{KKKt}{KKtP1\ w}\right)\quad 14\,\frac{KKKt}{KKtP1}\quad \left(14\,\frac{QQ3\ or\ KRR2}{R\times Kt}\right)$

You now have three principal moves. First, $15\,\frac{KKtR2}{PKB6\ bst}$

$16\,\frac{QQB2}{\quad}\quad \left(16\,\frac{P\times P}{P\times P\ w}\ \text{if}\ 16\,\frac{QQ3}{QP1}\ 17\,\frac{KB\times P}{P\times KKtP}\ 18\,\frac{K\times P}{Kt\times KRP+\ w}\right)$

$16\,\frac{\quad}{QP1}\quad 17\,\frac{KB\times QP}{Kt\times QP}\quad 18\,\frac{QBP\times Kt}{B\times P+}\quad \left(18\,\frac{QQ3}{Q\times KB\ w}\ \text{and}\right.$

$\left.18\,\frac{B\times KBP}{Kt\times Q}\quad 19\,\frac{B\times Q}{R\times Kt\ w}\right)\ 19\,\frac{KKB}{P\times P+}$ and then $\frac{\quad}{Q\times KB\ w}$ Your

second move at $15\,\frac{KKtK}{QP1\ bst}\ 16\,\frac{KB\times P}{KtKt6}\ 17\,\frac{QQB4}{R\times Kt}\ \left(17\,\frac{Kt\times Kt}{Q\times KB\ w}\right)$

$18\,\frac{B\times R}{Kt\times R}\ \left(18\,\frac{B\times KBP}{R\times Kt+}\ 19\,\frac{KKB2}{Kt\times R+}\ 20\,\frac{K\times R}{Q\times P+\ w}\right)\ 19\,\frac{K\times Kt}{Q\times P+\ w}$

Finally, if at Move $15\,\frac{KKtQ2\ bst}{PKB6\ bst}\quad 16\,\frac{QQ3}{P\times P}\quad 17\,\frac{K\times P}{QP1}$

$18\,\frac{KB\times P}{Kt\times KRP+\ bg}$

*Variation on Seventh Move of Second Player.**

$1\,\frac{KP2}{KP2}\quad 2\,\frac{KBP2}{P\times P}\quad 3\,\frac{KBQB4}{Q+}\quad 4\,\frac{KKB}{KKtP2}\quad 5\,\frac{K\ KtB3}{QKR4}$

Jaenisch discovers a flaw in his analysis, and very properly throwing castling overboard, substitutes in a note at the end of his volume, the move in our text $12\,\frac{\quad}{KQ}$ If $12\,\frac{\quad}{Cas}\ 13\,\frac{QBP1}{KRK}$ these moves are given by Jaenisch as bst, but his "flaw" now consisted in overlooking your simple move of $14\,\frac{Kt\,KB6+}{\quad}$ which proves the fallacy of $12\,\frac{\quad}{Cas}$ It shows the difficulties of Chess analysis, and the liberality and moderation required of us in forming critical opinions of authors, when we find so eminent an analyst as Jaenisch, on the point before us, blind at first to the palpable check of Knight, and considering in detail for first player these three moves: $14\,\frac{KKKt}{\quad}\ 14\,\frac{QQ3}{\quad}$ and $14\,\frac{KRR2}{\quad}$.

* Jaenisch at a later time admits the fallacy of certain trains of play in this Variation, which he originally thought sound. The translator considers, however, the whole of this analysis so beautiful and instructive, that he prefers giving it complete, to supplying merely Jaenisch's corrected version, which follows under the name of "Note upon Opening XV." The student will therefore go through the Variation before us, in context with our author's corrected "Note."

Digitized by Google

6 $\frac{KRP2}{KBKt2}$ 7 $\frac{QP2}{QP1}$ 8 $\frac{KKKt\ bst}{}$ We believe this move enables you to recover Gambit Pawn. (The move 8 $\frac{KRR2}{}$ is less advantageous, as see in Var. The move 8 $\frac{QKtB3}{KRP1}$ forms Opening XVI. The move 8 $\frac{KBK2}{}$ is weak, and has been examined by Messrs. Lewis and Walker, as thus: 8 $\frac{KBK2}{KKtP1}$ 9 $\frac{KKtK}{KKtB3}$ 10 $\frac{QKtB3}{QKKt3}$ 11 $\frac{KBQ3\ bst}{}$ [11 $\frac{QQ3}{KKtR4}$ 12 $\frac{QKtQ5}{Kt+}$ 13 $\frac{KKKt}{B\times P+}$ 14 $\frac{KKR2}{QKR4\ w}$] 11 $\frac{}{KKtR4}$ 12 $\frac{QKtQ5}{Kt+}$ [12 $\frac{QKtK2\ bd}{QKB3}$] 13 $\frac{KKKt}{B\times P+}$ 14 $\frac{KKR2}{QKR4}$ 15 $\frac{BQKt5+}{QKtB3\ bst}$ 16 $\frac{Q\times B}{Q\times P+}$ 17 $\frac{KKKt}{Q\times R+}$ 18 $\frac{KKB2}{QKB8+}$ 19 $\frac{B\times Q}{Kt\times Q}$ 20 $\frac{Kt\times P+}{KQ}$ 21 $\frac{Kt\times R}{KKt\times P+}$ 22 $\frac{KKKt}{QKtP1}$ 23 $\frac{QB\times P}{QBKt2}$ 24 $\frac{QRQ}{QKtKB4}$ 25 $\frac{Kt\times QKtP}{P\times Kt}$ 26 $\frac{KBQ3}{KQB2}$ he maintains P) 8 $\frac{}{QBKt5}$ 9 $\frac{QKtB3\ bst}{}$ (if 9 $\frac{P\times P}{B\times Kt}$ 10 $\frac{P\times B}{Q\times P+}$ 11 $\frac{KKB}{QKB3}$ 12 $\frac{QBP1}{KKtK2}$ 13 $\frac{KRKt}{KKtKt3}$ 14 $\frac{QQKt3}{QKtP1}$ 15 $\frac{QKtR3}{QBP1}$ 16 $\frac{QP1}{Cas\ b\ g}$ If, again, 9 $\frac{QBP1}{B\times Kt}$ 10 $\frac{P\times B}{KKtK2}$ 11 $\frac{P\times P}{Q\times P+}$ 12 $\frac{KKB}{QKB3}$ 13 $\frac{QQKt3}{QKtP1}$ * 14 $\frac{QKtR3}{QBP1}$ 15 $\frac{QP1}{Cas}$ &c, as before) 9 $\frac{}{B\times Kt\ bst}$ 10 $\frac{P\times B}{KKtK2}$ 11 $\frac{P\times P}{Q\times P+}$ 12 $\frac{KKB}{QKtB3}$ 13 $\frac{QKtK2}{KKtKt3}$ (if 13 $\frac{KRKt\ bd}{QKB3}$) 14 $\frac{QBP1}{}$ (if 14 $\frac{KRKt}{QKB3}$ 15 $\frac{QBP1}{Cas\ Q\ R\ bst}$ if now 16 $\frac{Kt\times P}{Kt\times Kt}$ 17 $\frac{B\times Kt}{Q\times B}$ 18 $\frac{R\times B}{QRKKt}$ 19 $\frac{R\times KBP}{QKR7\ w}$ and if instead 19 $\frac{R\times R+}{R\times R}$ 20 $\frac{KK2}{R+}$ [20 $\frac{QK2}{QKR5\ w}$] 21 $\frac{KQ3}{R\times QKtP\ w}$) 14 $\frac{}{Cas\ K\ R\ bst}$ 15 $\frac{QQ2\ bst}{KKR}$ (if 15 $\frac{}{KKtR5}$ 16 $\frac{Kt\times P}{Kt\times P}$ 17 $\frac{QKB2\ w}{}$)

---

* In both cases before us, I cannot see the use of placing Queen on this square; and should prefer combining her operations with those of King's Rook. Second player has, it is true, the Pawn; but his Pawns are badly arrayed and broken.

Digitized by Google

16 $\frac{Kt \times P}{Kt \times Kt}$ (if 16 $\frac{}{Q \times Kt}$ 17 $\frac{Q\,K\,Kt\,2}{Q\,K\,B\,3}$ 18 $\frac{Q\,K\,R\,3}{Kt\,K\,R\,5}$ 19 $\frac{Q \times Kt}{Q \times P+}$ 20 $\frac{K\,K\,w}{}$) 17 $\frac{Q\,K\,R\,2\ bst}{}$ (17 $\frac{Q \times Kt\ bd}{Q \times Q}$ 18 $\frac{B \times Q}{K\,B\,P\,2\ b\,g}$) 17 $\frac{}{Q\,K\,Kt\,3}$ 18 $\frac{B \times Kt}{K\,B\,P\,2}$ 19 $\frac{K\,P\,1}{P \times P}$ 20 $\frac{B \times P}{B\ \ B}$ 21 $\frac{P \times B\ b\,g}{}$

Variation on Eighth Move of last Variation.

1 $\frac{K\,P\,2}{K\,P\,2}$ 2 $\frac{K\,B\,P\,2}{P \times P}$ 3 $\frac{K\,B\,Q\,B\,4}{Q+}$ 4 $\frac{K\,K\,B}{K\,K\,t\,P\,2}$ 5 $\frac{K\,K\,t\,B\,3}{Q\,K\,R\,4}$ 6 $\frac{K\,R\,P\,2}{K\,B\,K\,t\,2}$ 7 $\frac{Q\,P\,2}{Q\,P\,1}$ 8 $\frac{K\,R\,R\,2}{Q\,B\,K\,t\,5}$ 9 $\frac{K\,K\,K\,t}{}$ (Ponziani here directs second player to take P with K Kt P, then 10 $\frac{Q\,B \times P}{P\,K\,R\,6}$ and, according to that author, he has the preferable game. Von der Lasa appears to us to have successfully proved the weakness of this defence in the following analysis. 9 $\frac{}{P \times P}$ 10 $\frac{Q\,B \times P}{P\,K\,R\,6}$ 11 $\frac{Q\,B\,P\,1}{Q\,K\,K\,t\,3}$ 12 $\frac{K\,K\,t\,P\,1}{K\,R\,P\,2}$ 13 $\frac{K\,R\,K\,B\,2}{P\,K\,R\,5}$ 14 $\frac{K\,K\,R\,2}{P \times P+}$ 15 $\frac{Q\,B \times P}{}$ Second player has here indubitably played the best moves, and yet you have the better game. This communication of M. Heydebrand having caused us to think deeply over the Var 8 $\frac{K\,R\,K\,R\,2}{}$ we have elaborated therefrom the following defence, which we consign to the judgment of the amateur) 9 $\frac{}{K\,K\,t\,K\,2\ bst}$ 10 $\frac{Q\,B\,P\,1\ bst}{B \times Kt}$ (10 $\frac{Q\,K\,t\,B\,3\ wk}{Q\,K\,t\,B\,3\ bst}$ If 10 $\frac{R\,P \times P}{B \times Kt}$ 11 $\frac{P \times B}{Q \times P+}$ 12 $\frac{K\,R\,K\,K\,t\,2}{Q\,K\,B\,3}$ 13 $\frac{Q\,B\,P\,1}{K\,K\,t\,K\,t\,3}$ you can have no hopes of regaining Gambit Pawn) 11 $\frac{P \times B}{K\,R\,K\,t\ bst}$ 12 $\frac{P \times P}{Q \times P+}$ (if 12 $\frac{K\,K\,R}{Q\,K\,t\,Q\,2}$ or if 12 $\frac{Q\,Q\,K\,t\,3}{Q\,K\,t\,P\,1}$) 13 $\frac{K\,K\,B\ bst}{}$ (if 13 $\frac{K\,R\,K\,t\,2}{B \times P+w}$ If 13 $\frac{K\,K\,R}{}$ your situation would be much worse; adversary attacking absolutely the same as upon the move given) 13 $\frac{}{Q\,K\,t\,Q\,2}$ 14 $\frac{R \times P}{}$ (if 14 $\frac{R\,K\,K\,t\,2}{Q\,K\,B\,3}$ 15 $\frac{R\,K\,K\,t\,4}{K\,K\,t\,K\,t\,3}$ he maintains Pawn. If 14 $\frac{Q\,Q\,K\,t\,3}{K\,B \times P}$ 15 $\frac{K\,B \times P+}{K\,Q}$

Digitized by Google

16 $\frac{B \times R}{Q K Kt 8+}$ [16 $\frac{Q B P \times B}{Q K Kt 8+}$ 17 $\frac{K K 2}{Q \times R+ w}$] 17 $\frac{K K 2}{Q \times R+}$ 18 $\frac{K Q}{Q K Kt 8+}$ 19 $\frac{K Q B 2}{K B Q Kt 3}$ 20 $\frac{K B K 6}{Q K B 7+}$ 21 $\frac{Q Kt Q 2}{Q Kt K 4}$ 22 $\frac{K B K Kt 4}{Kt \times K B}$ 23 $\frac{P \times Kt}{K Q 2 w}$)

14 $\frac{}{Q Kt K B 3 bst}$ 15 $\frac{K R K R 2 bst}{Q Kt K R 4}$ 16 $\frac{K K 2}{}$ (if 16 $\frac{K R K Kt 2}{Kt+}$ 17 $\frac{K K}{Q K R 5}$ 18 $\frac{K Q 2}{K B \times P}$ 19 $\frac{Q B P \times B}{Q Kt \times K P+}$ 20 $\frac{P \times Kt}{R \times R+}$ 21 $\frac{K Q B 3}{Q K R 6+}$ 22 $\frac{K B Q 3}{Q P 1}$ 23 $\frac{K P 1}{Q B P 2}$ [23 $\frac{K P \times P bd}{Kt \times P+ w}$] 24 $\frac{Q Q R 4+}{Kt Q B 3}$ 25 $\frac{Q P \times P}{P+}$ 26 $\frac{K Q B 4}{Cas w}$) 16 $\frac{}{Kt+}$ 17 $\frac{K Q 2}{}$ (if 17 $\frac{K K}{}$ or 17 $\frac{K K B 2}{}$ or 17 $\frac{K Q 3}{}$ 17 $\frac{}{Kt \times P}$) 17 $\frac{}{Q P 1}$ 18 $\frac{K B Q 3}{P \times P}$ 19 $\frac{P \times P}{Cas}$ or else at Move 18 $\frac{P \times P}{Kt \times P}$ 19 $\frac{K B \times Kt}{Q \times B}$ 20 $\frac{K Q B 2}{Cas}$ (20 $\frac{Q K+}{K Q 2}$) (now if 21 $\frac{Q B \times P}{Q K B 4+}$) In either case he has lost Gambit Pawn back; but has superior game.

Variation on Seventh Move of First Player.

1 $\frac{K P 2}{K P 2}$ 2 $\frac{K B P 2}{P \times P}$ 3 $\frac{K B Q B 4}{Q+}$ 4 $\frac{K K B}{K K t P 2}$ 5 $\frac{K K t B 3}{Q K R 4}$ 6 $\frac{K R P 2}{K B K t 2}$ 7 $\frac{K R R 2}{K K t P 1}$ 8 $\frac{K t K}{}$ (We owe this Variation to the kindness of M. Petroff. Hitherto authors have only offered the move of 8 $\frac{K t K t 5}{}$ of which the following are the consequences: 8 $\frac{K K t K t 5}{K K t R 3}$ 9 $\frac{Q P 2 bst}{}$ [if 9 $\frac{Q K 2}{}$ $\frac{Q K t B 3}{}$ $\frac{K B K 2}{}$ or $\frac{K R R}{}$ 9 $\frac{}{P K B 3}$ 10 $\frac{K K t R 3}{Q \times P w}$] 9 $\frac{}{Q P 2 bst}$ [if 9 $\frac{}{P K B 3}$ 10 $\frac{Q B \times P}{P \times K t}$ 11 $\frac{P \times P b g}{}$ and if 9 $\frac{}{P K K t 6}$ 10 $\frac{K B \times P+ bst}{K K t \times B}$ 11 $\frac{Q \times Q}{P \times R}$ 12 $\frac{Q \times K t+}{K Q}$ 13 $\frac{Q \times K B}{P K R 8 Q+}$ 14 $\frac{K K B 2}{Q K R 5+}$ 15 $\frac{K K 2}{Q K K t 5+}$ 16 $\frac{K Q 3}{Q K K t 6+}$ 17 $\frac{K Q B 4 b g}{}$] If now 10 $\frac{K P \times Q P}{P K K t 6}$ 11 $\frac{Q K+}{K Q}$ 12 $\frac{K R K R}{K R K}$ 13 $\frac{Q Q 2}{K K t K t 5}$ 14 $\frac{K B K 2}{K K t R 7+}$ 15 $\frac{K K}{Q B K t 5}$

Digitized by Google

[15 $\frac{R \times Kt\ bd}{R \times KB}$] 16 $\frac{QKtB3}{KB \times P}$ 17 $\frac{Q \times B}{B \times B}$ 18 $\frac{KQ2}{KtKB8+w}$ If, again,

10 $\frac{KB \times P}{PKKt6}$ 11 $\frac{KB \times P+}{Q \times B}$ [11 $\frac{Q \times Q}{P \times R}$ 12 $\frac{Kt \times KBP}{PQ+}$ 13 $\frac{KKB2}{B \times QP+}$

14 $\frac{KK2}{QBKt5\ w}$] 12 $\frac{Kt \times Q}{QBKt5}$ 13 $\frac{QK}{P \times R}$ [13 $\frac{Q \times B}{Kt \times Q\ w}$] 14 $\frac{KKB2}{KB \times P+\ w}$

Lastly, if 10 $\frac{KBK2}{PKB3}$ 11 $\frac{QB \times P}{P \times Kt}$ 12 $\frac{KRP \times P}{QKB2\ w}$) 8 $\frac{}{QQB4\ bst}$

9 $\frac{QK2}{KKtB3\ bst}$ Play as you may now, you will lose the game.

(if 10 $\frac{QBP1}{KKtR4}$ 11 $\frac{QP2}{Kt+}$ 12 $\frac{KKB2}{Kt \times Q}$ 13 $\frac{P \times Q}{KKtP1+w}$) (If 10 $\frac{KKtP1}{PKB6}$

11 $\frac{QQ3}{KtKR4}$ he wins a piece) 10 $\frac{QP1}{KKtR4}$ 11 $\frac{QB \times P}{Kt \times B}$ 12 $\frac{Q \times P}{QKR4}$

13 $\frac{Q \times Kt}{}$ (if 13 $\frac{Q \times KB}{}$ he mates in two; and if 13 $\frac{Q \times Q}{Kt \times Q\ w}$)

13 $\frac{}{KBK4}$ 14 $\frac{KB \times P+}{Q \times B}$ 15 $\frac{Q \times Q+}{K \times Q}$ 16 $\frac{KRR}{B \times QKtP\ w}$

NOTE UPON THE FIFTEENTH OPENING.

Since publishing our original analysis of this Opening, we find that certain deductions we thought sound are fallacious, and proceed consequently to correct our earlier views. The variation given by us upon Move 7 of second player (see p. 239) does not, as we supposed, prove that you can forcedly recover Gambit Pawn. In effect 1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$

2 $\frac{KBP2}{P \times P}$ 3 $\frac{KBQB4}{Q+}$ 4 $\frac{KKB}{KKtP2}$ 5 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKR4}$ 6 $\frac{KRP2}{K'BKt2}$

7 $\frac{QP2}{QP1}$ 8 $\frac{KKKt}{QBKt5}$ 9 $\frac{QKtB3}{B \times Kt}$ (he might equally move 9 $\frac{}{QKtB3}$

bringing it to the same thing) 10 $\frac{P \times B}{}$ His correct move now is

not as we supposed KKtK2, but 10 $\frac{}{QKtB3}$ then you must play

as best 11 $\frac{KBQKt5}{}$ (if 11 $\frac{QP1}{QKtK4}$ 12 $\frac{KBK2}{Cas}$ 13 $\frac{P \times P}{Q \times P+}$

14 $\frac{KKB}{KKtK2}$ now if 15 $\frac{QQ2}{KKtKt3}$ and if 15 $\frac{KRKt}{QKB3}$ 16 $\frac{QB \times P}{Q \times B}$

17 $\frac{R \times B}{QRKKtw}$ Moreover, if at Move 11 $\frac{P \times P}{KB \times P+\ w}$) 11 $\frac{}{Cas}$

Digitized by Google

12 $\frac{B \times Kt}{P \times B}$ 13 $\frac{P \times P}{Q \times P+}$ 14 $\frac{K K B}{K B P 2}$ This is the move which gives him the attack, as well as insures his maintaining Gambit P. If now 15 $\frac{Q Kt K 2}{P \times P}$ 16 $\frac{Q B \times P}{Q K B 3 w}$ If, again, 15 $\frac{K R Kt}{Q K B 3}$ 16 $\frac{K P \times P}{Q \times Q P}$ $\left(16 \frac{Q B \times P}{Q \times Q P w}\right)$ 17 $\frac{Q \times Q}{B \times Q}$ then 18 $\frac{}{B \times Kt}$ and 19 $\frac{}{Kt K 2}$ winning If, also, 15 $\frac{P \times P}{K Kt K 2}$ now if 16 $\frac{Kt K 2}{Q \times P}$ 17 $\frac{Kt \times P}{Kt K Kt 3}$ $\left(17 \frac{Q B \times P}{Kt K Kt 3 w}\right)$ 18 $\frac{Kt \times Kt}{R P \times Kt w}$; and moving instead 16 $\frac{K R Kt}{Q K B 3}$ 17 $\frac{B \times P}{Q \times Q P}$ $\left(17 \frac{Q Kt K 2}{Kt \times P w}\right)$ 18 $\frac{B K Kt 5}{}$ $\left(18 \frac{Q \times Q}{B \times Q}\right.$ 19 $\frac{R K Kt 5}{B \times Kt}$ 20 $\frac{P \times B}{Q R K B w}\Big)$ 18 $\frac{}{Kt \times P}$ 19 $\frac{Q \times Q}{B \times Q}$ 20 $\frac{B \times R}{B \times R}$ 21 $\frac{B \times Q B P}{B Q B 4}$ 22 $\frac{B Q R 5}{Kt K 6+}$ 23 $\frac{K K 2}{Kt \times Q B P w}$

This observation, first made after printing our former views of the subject, proves that against the attack 7 $\frac{Q P 2}{}$, there are two defences possible; viz. 7 $\frac{}{K R P 1}$ and 7 $\frac{}{Q P 1}$ the latter of which you can only avoid by moving 7 $\frac{Q Kt B 3}{K R P 1}$ thus forming the Sixteenth Opening. We will here take occasion to correct the error into which Ponziani has fallen relative to this Opening*, and which Mr. G. Walker has reproduced.† 1 $\frac{K P 2}{K P 2}$ 2 $\frac{K B P 2}{P \times P}$ 3 $\frac{K B Q B 4}{Q+}$ 4 $\frac{K K B}{K Kt P 2}$ 5 $\frac{K Kt B 3}{Q K R 4}$ 6 $\frac{K R P 2}{K B Kt 2}$ 7 $\frac{Q P 2}{Q P 1}$ 8 $\frac{K K Kt}{Q B Kt 5}$ Ponziani now pretends that if 9 $\frac{P \times P}{B \times Kt}$ 10 $\frac{P \times B}{Q \times P+}$ 11 $\frac{K K B}{}$ he should now play 11 $\frac{}{K Kt B 3}$ threatening $\frac{}{Kt K R 4}$ which would give him a

* I have chosen to give this note intact, just as it stands at the end of Jaenisch's second volume. The student will apply it to the point in question.

† In my last edition I have thankfully corrected my fault.

Digitized by Google

fine game. Now, on the contrary, the move 11 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{}$ would at once allow you to regain Pawn, by moving 12 $\frac{\text{KRKt}}{}$ and 13 $\frac{\text{QB}\times\text{P}}{}$ His correct eleventh move should in reality be 11 $\frac{\text{QKB3}}{}$ of which the consequences would be 12 $\frac{\text{QBP1}}{\text{QKtQ2 bst}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{QQ2}}{\text{KBR3}}$ (13 $\frac{\text{KRKt}}{\text{KBR3}}$) 14 $\frac{\text{QKR2}}{\text{Cas}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{QKR5}}{\text{QRKB}}$ 16 $\frac{\text{QKB5 if}*}{\text{Q}\times\text{Q}}$ 17 $\frac{\text{P}\times\text{Q}}{\text{BKKt4}}$ Moreover, against 9 $\frac{\text{QBP1}}{\text{B}\times\text{Kt}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{P}\times\text{B}}{\text{QKtQ2 bst}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{P}\times\text{P}}{\text{Q}\times\text{P}+}$ 12 $\frac{\text{KKB}}{\text{QKB3}}$ the defence we have actually given is feeble, on account of 9 $\frac{\text{QBP1}}{\text{B}\times\text{Kt}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{P}\times\text{B}}{\text{KKtK2}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{P}\times\text{P}}{\text{Q}\times\text{P}+}$ 12 $\frac{\text{KKB}}{\text{QKB3}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{QQKt3}}{\text{QKtP1}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{QKtR3}}{\text{QBP1}}$ (14 $\frac{}{\text{QRP1}}$ is useless) 15 $\frac{\text{QP1}}{\text{Cas}}$ 16 $\frac{\text{QQB2}}{\text{KRP1}}$ 17 $\frac{\text{QKR2}}{\text{KKtKt3}}$ 18 $\frac{\text{QKtQB2}}{}$ Now, do what he may, you reconquer Gambit P, by seating this Kt on KKt2. For example, 18 $\frac{}{\text{QKtQ2}}$ 19 $\frac{\text{QP}\times\text{P}}{\text{QKtK4}}$ 20 $\frac{\text{BK2}}{\text{QKt}\times\text{P}}$ 21 $\frac{\text{QKtK}}{}$ and then 22 $\frac{\text{QKtKKt2}}{}$ In the case of 9 $\frac{\text{KRR2}}{}$, equally arising as 8 $\frac{\text{KRR2}}{\text{QBKt5}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{KKKt}}{}$ the best defence is not that given in our text, but the following: 9 $\frac{}{\text{B}\times\text{Kt}}$ (to avoid the combination 10 $\frac{\text{P}\times\text{P}}{\text{B}\times\text{Kt}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{Q}\times\text{B}}{}$) 10 $\frac{\text{P}\times\text{B}}{\text{QKtQ2}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{P}\times\text{P}}{\text{Q}\times\text{P}+}$ 12 $\frac{\text{KRKt2}}{\text{QKB3}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{QBP1}}{\text{KBR3}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{QQKt3}}{\text{QKtKt3}}$ or if 11 $\frac{\text{QBP1}}{\text{KBR3}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{P}\times\text{P}}{\text{Q}\times\text{P}+}$ 13 $\frac{\text{KRKt2}}{\text{QKB3}}$ Lastly, if 11 $\frac{\text{QKtB3}}{\text{QKtKt3}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{KBQKt3}}{\text{KKtK2}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{P}\times\text{P}}{\text{Q}\times\text{P}+}$

* This is throwing away a game, in which, although minus a Pawn, you have a strong position. Your aim should be to get out Q B and Q Kt, so as to bring Q R round to co-operate with K R.

Digitized by Google

$\left(13\ \frac{\text{Q Kt Q Kt 5}}{\text{K Q 2}^{*}}\right)$ $14\ \frac{\text{K R Kt 2}}{\text{Q K B 3}}$ $15\ \frac{\text{Q Kt K 2}}{\text{K Kt Kt 3}}$ he now preserves Pawn, with liberty of castling with Q R; for example, $16\ \frac{\text{Q B P 1}}{\text{Cas Q R}}$ $17\ \frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{P}}{\text{Kt} \times \text{Kt}}$ $18\ \frac{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{Q} \times \text{B}}$ $19\ \frac{\text{R} \times \text{B}}{\text{Q R K Kt w}}$

SIXTEENTH OPENING.

$1\ \frac{\text{K P 2}}{\text{K P 2}}$ $2\ \frac{\text{K B P 2}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ $3\ \frac{\text{K B Q B 4}}{\text{Q} +}$ $4\ \frac{\text{K K B}}{\text{K Kt P 2}}$ $5\ \frac{\text{Q Kt B 3 bst}}{}$

profiting by the withdrawal of his Queen, you menace the weak point Q B 7, for you will still have always time to move out K Kt B 3, or what is frequently stronger, Q K B 3.

In the actual situation of the game, it would seem at first view to be necessary that he should now play $5\ \frac{}{\text{K Kt K 2}}$ or $5\ \frac{}{\text{Q B P 1}}$ to preserve, intact, his faculty of castling. Both these moves are, however, incorrect; the right play being, as long since taught, $5\ \frac{}{\text{K B K Kt 2}}$ yet, nevertheless, authors have not hitherto shown the precise faults of the two modes of defence, $5\ \frac{}{\text{Q B P 1}}$ and $5\ \frac{}{\text{K Kt K 2}}$ The truth is, that both these moves infallibly allow your recovering Gambit Pawn; and that by a combination altogether novel of the modern attack $5\ \frac{\text{Q Kt B 3}}{}$ with that of Cozio $5\ \frac{\text{Q K B 3}}{}$ Before developing this, we must state that the late Mr. M'Donnell invented in reply to the moves $5\ \frac{}{\text{K Kt K 2}}$ and $5\ \frac{}{\text{Q B P 1}}$ an ingenious manœuvre, which consists in playing $6\ \frac{\text{K Kt P 1}}{}$ and then in the event of $6\ \frac{}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ $7\ \frac{\text{K K Kt 2}}{}$† This gives you in exchange for

---

* The King seems here much exposed, and you remain with a strong attack; moving now Q B P 2. Several of Jaenisch's assertions throughout this note must be more maturely digested, before they can be suffered to stand unchallenged.

† See my "Art of Chess Play."

Digitized by Google

one or two Pawns a tolerably powerful attack; and may yet be strengthened by substituting 7 $\frac{QKB3}{}$ for 7 $\frac{KKKt2}{}$ Nor is the capture of Pawn 6 $\frac{}{P\times P}$ imprudent, as assumed by many amateurs, but morally forced; since in case of 6 $\frac{}{QKR3}$ you would easily regain Gambit Pawn by moving 7 $\frac{QKB3}{}$ falling then into one of the Variations about to pass before us in review. The attack 6 $\frac{KKtP1}{P\times P}$ 7 $\frac{QKB3}{}$ or 7 $\frac{KKKt2}{}$ is in truth pretty, but we shall not dwell on it, since by its means the Gambit Pawn is only recovered by you with difficulty, and that all you could expect from its difficult and complicated Variations (at least in the case of the defence 5 $\frac{}{KKtK2}$ so much better than 5 $\frac{}{QBP1}$) would be to force a drawn game.* Moreover, since there exists in case of 5 $\frac{}{KKtK2}$ or 5 $\frac{}{QBP1}$ a sure and simple method, as about to be proved, of recovering Pawn; such plan should decidedly have the preference. In return we will apply the manœuvre of 6 $\frac{KKtP1}{}$ to the real system of defence 5 $\frac{QKtB3}{KBKt2}$ first observing that if 5 $\frac{QKtB3}{KRP1}$ 6 $\frac{KBK2\ bst}{}$ embarrassing the retreat of his Queen.

---

* It is much to be regretted that Jaenisch should thus pass over one of the finest attacking Openings extant, without offering the slightest proof in support of his deprecation. He owns, at the same time, that it is "difficult and complicated," and appears to admit that by its means you are sure to regain Pawn; and have a legitimate drawing game in consequence. But the draw being nearly secure, are not the larger number of chances of success all in your favour, the Variations being so allowedly "difficult and complicated?"

Digitized by Google

First Defence.

5 $\frac{}{\text{QBP 1}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{QKB 3 bst}}{}$ threatening to push KKtP 1. 6 $\frac{}{\text{QP 1}}$ (if 6 $\frac{}{\text{KKtK 2}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{KKtP 1}}{\text{QKR 3}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{QP 2}}{\text{KtKKt 3}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{QKtK 2}}{\text{KBKt 2}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{QBP 1}}{}$ you recover P) (If 6 $\frac{}{\text{KBKt 2}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{KKtP 1}}{\text{QKR 3}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{QKtK 2}}{}$ If 6 $\frac{}{\text{KBQ 3}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{KKtP 1}}{\text{QKR 3}}$ [if 7 $\frac{}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q} \times \text{P}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{KBP} +}{\text{KQ}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{R} \times \text{KRP}}{}$ winning a piece] 8 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{B} \times \text{P}}$ [8 $\frac{}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{QP 2}}{}$] 9 $\frac{\text{QKtK 2 bst}}{\text{KKtK 2}}$ [if 9 $\frac{\text{QP 1}}{\text{KKtK 2}}$ and you will not recover Pawn] 10 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{B}}{\text{P} \times \text{Kt}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{QP 2}}{}$ then $\frac{\text{KKtK 2}}{}$ and you regain Pawn. If 6 $\frac{}{\text{KKtB 3}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{KKtP 1}}{\text{QKR 3}}$ [7 $\frac{}{\text{QKR 4 or QKKt 5}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{KP 1}}{}$ you win Pawn] 8 $\frac{\text{QP 1}}{\text{KKtR 4}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{KKtK 2}}{\text{KBQ 3}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{KRP 2}}{}$ you win P) 7 $\frac{\text{KKtP 1}}{\text{QKKt 5}}$ [7 $\frac{}{\text{QKR 3}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{QKtK 2}}{}$] 8 $\frac{\text{QP 1 bst}}{\text{Q} \times \text{Q}}$ (if 8 $\frac{}{\text{KBR 3}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{Q}}{\text{B} \times \text{Q}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{KRP 2}}{}$ you win P) 9 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{Q}}{\text{KBR 3}}$ (9 $\frac{}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{KtP \&c}}{}$) 10 $\frac{}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{QKtK 2}}{}$ you win P.

Second Defence.

5 $\frac{}{\text{KKtK 2}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{QKB 3}}{\text{QKtB 3}}$ (For 6 $\frac{}{\text{QP 1}}$ see Var. For 6 $\frac{}{\text{KBKt 2}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{KKtP 1}}{\text{QKR 3}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{KKtK 2}}{}$ then against 9 $\frac{}{\text{KKtKt 3}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{QP 2}}{}$ his Pawn is lost. If 6 $\frac{}{\text{KKtKt 3}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{KKtP 1}}{\text{QKR 3}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{QP 2}}{\text{QKtB 3}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{QKtK 2}}{\text{KBKt 2}}$ [9 $\frac{}{\text{KKtP 1}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{QKB 2}}{}$] 10 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{KKt} \times \text{P}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{QB} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{P} \times \text{B}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{QBP}}{}$ you win P) 7 $\frac{\text{KKtP 1}}{\text{QKR 3}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{QP 1}}{\text{KKtKt 3}}$ (9 $\frac{}{\text{KtQ 5}}$

Digitized by Google

10 $\frac{Q \times P}{}$) 10 $\frac{K\,Kt\,K\,2\text{ bst}}{}$ (if 10 $\frac{Q\,Kt\,Q\,5}{K\,B\,Q\,3}$ 11 $\frac{K\,Kt\,K\,2}{Q\,Kt\,K\,4}$ 12 $\frac{Q\,K\,B\,2}{Q\,Kt\,K\,Kt\,5}$ you do not regain P. And if 12 $\frac{Q\,B \times P}{K\,Kt \times B}$ 13 $\frac{Q \times Kt}{Q\,K\,R\,6+}$ he wins Q) 10 $\frac{}{K\,B\,Q\,3*}$ (10 $\frac{}{Q\,Kt\,K\,4}$ 11 $\frac{Q\,B \times P}{}$) 11 $\frac{Q\,P\,1\text{ bst}}{K\,B\,P\,1\dagger}$ (if 11 $\frac{}{K\,B\,Kt\,5}$ 12 $\frac{Q\,Kt\,Q\,5}{}$) (if 11 $\frac{}{K\,Kt\,R\,5}$ 12 $\frac{Q\,K\,B\,2}{P\,K\,B\,3}$ [12 $\frac{}{K\,R\,Kt}$ 13 $\frac{K\,P\,1}{R\,Kt\,7}$ 14 $\frac{Q \times P\text{ \&c}}{}$] 13 $\frac{Q\,Kt\,Q\,5\ddagger}{}$ you win P) 12 $\frac{Q\,Kt\,Q\,5\S}{K\,R\,K\,B}$ (12 $\frac{}{K\,Kt\,R\,5}$ 13 $\frac{Q\,K\,B\,2}{}$) 13 $\frac{Q\,B\,P\,1}{}$ you must regain Pawn.

Variation.

6 $\frac{Q\,K\,B\,3}{Q\,P\,1}$ 7 $\frac{K\,Kt\,P\,1}{Q\,K\,Kt\,5}$ (if 7 $\frac{}{Q\,K\,R\,3}$ 8 $\frac{P \times P}{P \times P}$ 9 $\frac{Q\,P\,1}{}$) 8 $\frac{Q\,P\,1\text{ bst}}{Q \times Q}$ (if 8 $\frac{}{K\,B\,R\,3}$ 9 $\frac{Q \times Q}{B \times Q}$ 10 $\frac{K\,R\,P\,2}{}$ you win P) 9 $\frac{Kt \times Q}{K\,B\,R\,3}$ (9 $\frac{}{P \times P}$ 10 $\frac{Kt \times P}{}$) 10 $\frac{P \times P}{P \times P}$ 11 $\frac{K\,Kt\,K\,R\,4\text{ bst}}{}$ and you will now regain Pawn as shown in a Variation of Opening XIII; for example 11 $\frac{}{K\,R\,Kt}$ 12 $\frac{K\,R\,Kt}{R \times R+}$ 13 $\frac{K \times R}{Q\,B\,K\,3}$ 14 $\frac{Q\,Kt\,K\,2}{}$

THIRD DEFENCE.

5 $\frac{}{Q\,P\,1}$ This defence, which is not better than the preceding, has never been examined before. The following are the means by which you recover Pawn: 6 $\frac{K\,Kt\,B\,3}{Q\,K\,R\,4}$ (6 $\frac{}{Q\,K\,Kt\,5}$ 7 $\frac{K\,B\,K\,2}{}$) 7 $\frac{K\,R\,P\,2}{Q\,B\,Kt\,5}$

---

* Suppose, instead of this "ill-looking" move, second player should move Q P 2, in order to check with Q B at K R 6? The Bishop posted on Q 3 can rarely be profitable in the long run, when Q P is unmoved.

† Can Jaenisch seriously suppose this game capable of defence in real play, taken up at this position?

‡ I should prefer advancing Q Kt Q Kt 5.

§ It were better to move this Kt to Q Kt 5, threatening to demoralize his game irredeemably by capturing K B.

Digitized by Google

(if 7 $\frac{\text{KRP1}}{}$ 8 $\frac{\text{KBK2}}{\text{QBKt5}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{KKKt}}{}$ and the same situation is attained)

8 $\frac{\text{KBK2}}{\text{KRP1}}$ (8 $\frac{}{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{B}}{\text{QKKt3}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q} \times \text{P}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{QKtQ5}}{\text{QKtR3}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{}$)

9 $\frac{\text{KKKt}}{\text{QKKt3}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{B}}{\text{Q} \times \text{P}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{QKtQ5}}{\text{QKtR3}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{}$ &c.

TRUE DEFENCE OF THIS GAMBIT.

5 $\frac{}{\text{KBKKt2}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{}$ (For 6 $\frac{\text{KKtP1}}{}$ see Var. The move 6 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{QP1}}$

7 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{\text{QKR4}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{KRP2}}{\text{KRP1}}$ would come to the same thing. If 6 $\frac{\text{QKtQ5}}{\text{KQ}}$

7 $\frac{\text{QKB3}}{\text{QBP1}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{QKtQB3}}{\text{KKtB3}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{KBP if}}{\text{KKtKt5 w}}$) (If you play 6 $\frac{\text{QKB3}}{}$ he has but

one correct move 6 $\frac{}{\text{KKtB3}}$ for if 6 $\frac{}{\text{QKtB3}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{KKtP1}}{\text{QKR3}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$

9 $\frac{\text{QKtQ5}}{\text{KBK4}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{KKtK2}}{}$ the Pawn is lost, and if 6 $\frac{}{\text{KKtK2}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{KKtP1}}{\text{QKR3}}$

8 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{KKtK2}}{\text{KKtKt3}}$ [9 $\frac{}{\text{KBK4}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{}$] 10 $\frac{\text{QKtQ5 \&c}}{}$ If 6 $\frac{}{\text{QP1}}$

7 $\frac{\text{KKtP1}}{\text{QKKt5}}$ [7 $\frac{}{\text{QKR3}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{QKtQ5}}{}$] 8 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{Q}}{\text{B} \times \text{Q}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$

10 $\frac{\text{QKtQ5}}{}$ the Pawn is forced. His real defence then is 6 $\frac{\text{QKB3}}{\text{KKtB3}}$

7 $\frac{\text{KKtP1}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ [7 $\frac{\text{KP1}}{\text{KKtKt5 w}}$] 8 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{QKKt5}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{QP1}}{\text{KRP1}}$ [9 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{Q}}{\text{Kt} \times \text{Q}}$

10 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{\text{KRP1 b g}}$] 10 $\frac{\text{KP1}}{\text{Q} \times \text{Q}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{Q}}{\text{KtKt5}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{QKtQ5}}{\text{KQ}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{QP1}}{\text{KBP1 gd g}}$)

6 $\frac{}{\text{QKR4}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{KRP2}}{\text{KRP1}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{QP1}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{KP1}}{}$ (this is better than 9 $\frac{\text{QKtQ5}}{}$

to which he replies by 9 $\frac{}{\text{KQ}}$) 9 $\frac{}{\text{QP} \times \text{P}}$ (to avoid $\frac{\text{KP} \times \text{QP}}{}$ and

then $\frac{\text{QKtKt5 or K4}}{}$) 10 $\frac{\text{QKtQ5}}{\text{KQ}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{QP} \times \text{KP}}{\text{QBQ2}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{KKKt}}{}$

(12 $\frac{\text{KKB2}}{}$ less strong. He answers 12 $\frac{}{\text{QKKt3}}$) 12 $\frac{}{\text{QKKt3}}$ (if

12 $\frac{}{\text{KKtP1}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{QKt} \times \text{P}}{\text{QKB4}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{KBQ3 w}}{}$ If 12 $\frac{}{\text{B} \times \text{KP}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{RP} \times \text{P}}{\text{QKKt5}}$

14 $\frac{\text{KBK2}}{\text{QK3}}$ [14 $\frac{}{\text{KBQ3}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{KRR4 w}}{}$] 15 $\frac{\text{KKt} \times \text{KB}}{\text{Q} \times \text{KKt}}$ 16 $\frac{\text{QB} \times \text{P w}}{}$)

Digitized by Google

13 $\frac{P \times P}{P \times P}$ 14 $\frac{R \times R}{B \times R}$ (In this situation M'Donnell proposed to play 15 $\frac{QK}{\ }$. If, then, 15 $\frac{\ }{Q\,Kt\,B\,3}$ [to prevent 16 $\frac{Q\,Q\,Kt\,4}{\ }$] then 16 $\frac{Q\,B \times P}{P \times B}$ 17 $\frac{Q\,K\,R\,4+}{\ }$ regaining Pawn. But his correct move is 15 $\frac{\ }{K\,B\,Kt\,2}$ which maintains the advantage of Gambit Pawn with fine game; for if then 16 $\frac{Q\,Q\,Kt\,4}{Q\,Kt\,P\,1}$ and afterwards $\frac{\ }{Q\,Kt\,B\,3}$ Instead of the move 15 $\frac{QK}{\ }$ Petroff has communicated to us the following system of attack; hazardous, it is true, but offering great resource, and the defensive moves of which are extremely hidden and difficult *) 15 $\frac{K\,Kt \times P}{Q \times Kt}$ (if 15 $\frac{\ }{K\,B \times P}$ 16 $\frac{Q\,Kt \times K\,B\,P}{B \times Kt}$ [16 $\frac{\ }{Q \times Q\,Kt}$ 17 $\frac{Kt\,K\,6+}{\ }$ and if 16 $\frac{\ }{Q\,Q\,Kt\,3+}$ 17 $\frac{K\,K\,B}{\ }$] 17 $\frac{K\,Kt \times K\,B\,P+}{\ }$ then $\frac{Q\,B \times B\,bg}{\ }$) 16 $\frac{Q\,B \times P}{Q\,K\,B\,4\ inf}$ (His best move is 16 $\frac{\ }{Q\,K\,Kt\,3}$ as in Var. If 16 $\frac{\ }{Q\,K\,Kt\,5}$ 17 $\frac{Q \times Q}{Q\,B \times Q}$ 18 $\frac{Kt \times Q\,B\,P}{Q\,Kt\,B\,3}$ 19 $\frac{Kt \times R\,bg}{\ }$ and if 18 $\frac{\ }{K \times Kt}$ 19 $\frac{P\,1+w}{\ }$ If, again, 16 $\frac{\ }{Q\,K\,Kt\,2}$ 17 $\frac{Kt \times Q\,B\,P}{K \times Kt}$ 18 $\frac{K\,P\,1+}{K\,Q\,B\ or\ Q}$ 19 $\frac{P \times P}{K\,Kt\,K\,2}$ [19 $\frac{\ }{K\,Kt\,R\,3}$ 20 $\frac{B\,K\,5}{Q\,K\,B}$ 21 $\frac{B\,Q\,6\,w}{\ }$ If, also, 19 $\frac{\ }{K\,Kt\,B\,3}$ 20 $\frac{Q\,Q\,6}{K\,Kt\,R\,2}$ 21 $\frac{Q\,Q\,B\,7+}{K\,K\,2}$ 22 $\frac{B\,Q\,6+}{K\,K\,B\,3}$ 23 $\frac{B\,K\,5+w}{\ }$] 21 $\frac{Q\,Q\,6}{Q\,Q\,5+}$ 21 $\frac{K\,K\,R\,2}{Q \times Q\,if}$ 22 $\frac{P\,Q+w}{\ }$ Likewise, if 16 $\frac{\ }{Q\,K\,Kt\,2}$ 17 $\frac{Kt \times Q\,B\,P}{Q\,Kt\,B\,3}$ 18 $\frac{K\,B\,K\,6\ bst}{Q\,Kt\,Q\,Kt}$ [18 $P\,K\,B\,3$ 19 $\frac{B \times Kt}{Q \times B}$ 20 $\frac{K\,P\,1\,w}{\ }$ for if, too, 19 $\frac{\ }{K \times Kt}$ 20 $\frac{P \times P+w}{\ }$ and if 19 $\frac{\ }{Kt \times P}$ 20 $\frac{Kt\,K\,6+w}{\ }$] 19 $\frac{B \times B}{Q\,Kt \times B}$ 20 $\frac{K\,P\,1}{Q\,Q\,5+}$ 21 $\frac{K\,K\,R}{Q\,R\,Q\,B\,if}$ 22 $\frac{P \times K\,B\,P\,w}{\ }$ Finally, if 16 $\frac{\ }{Q\,K\,Kt\,2}$ 17 $\frac{Q\,Kt \times P}{Q\,Kt\,B\,3}$ 18 $\frac{K\,B\,K\,6}{K\,B\,P\,2}$ 19 $\frac{Kt \times R}{\ }$ then $\frac{Q \times B+}{\ }$ $\frac{B \times Q}{\ }$ $\frac{K\,P\,K\,6+}{\ }$ $\frac{Kt\,Q\,B\,7\,w}{\ }$) 17 $\frac{K\,P\,1\ bst}{P \times P}$ (if 17 $\frac{\ }{Q \times K\,P}$ 18 $\frac{B \times P+}{K\,Q\,B}$ 19 $\frac{Kt\,Q\,Kt\,6+w}{\ }$ and if

* It is certain that, whether sound or not, this attack of M. Petroff is one of the finest things I have ever seen in Chess.

Digitized by Google

18 $\frac{}{KK}$ 19 $\frac{B \times QKt\ w}{}$) 18 $\frac{Kt \times QBP}{QQB4+\ bst}$ (Pushing K P would expose him to grave danger by reason of 19 $\frac{QQ6}{}$ If 18 $\frac{}{QKtB3}$ 19 $\frac{Kt \times P+}{KK}$ [19 $\frac{}{KQB}$ 20 $\frac{QQ6\ w}{}$] 20 $\frac{KtQB7+}{KKB}$ 21 $\frac{QQ6+}{}$ then $\frac{Kt \times R\ w}{}$) 19 $\frac{KKR}{Q \times KB}$ 20 $\frac{QQ6}{KP1\ bst}$ (if 20 $\frac{}{KBKt2}$ 21 $\frac{Kt \times R}{QKtB3}$ 22 $\frac{QRQ}{QKtQ5}$ [22 $\frac{}{KKtB3}$ 23 $\frac{BKKt5\ w}{}$] 23 $\frac{BKKt5+}{KKtB3}$ [23 $\frac{}{KQB}$ 24 $\frac{R \times Kt\ w}{}$] 24 $\frac{B \times Kt+}{KB \times B}$ 25 $\frac{QKB8+\ w}{}$) 21 $\frac{Kt \times R\ bst}{P \times B}$ 22 $\frac{Q \times QKt+}{QQB}$ 23 $\frac{Q \times QRP^*}{}$ ev.

Variation on Sixteenth Move of Second Player.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBP2}{P \times P}$ 3 $\frac{KBQB4}{Q+}$ 4 $\frac{KKB}{KKtP2}$ 5 $\frac{QKtB3}{KBKt2}$ 6 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKR4}$ 7 $\frac{KRP2}{KRP1}$ 8 $\frac{QP2}{QP1}$ 9 $\frac{KP1}{QP \times P}$ 10 $\frac{QKtQ5}{KQ}$ 11 $\frac{P \times P}{QBQ2}$ 12 $\frac{KKKt}{QKKt3}$ 13 $\frac{P \times P}{P \times P}$ 14 $\frac{R \times R}{B \times R}$ 15 $\frac{KKt \times P}{Q \times Kt}$ 16 $\frac{QB \times P}{QKKt3}$ This is the right move; and ought to give him the game. 17 $\frac{KP1}{}$ (You can no longer employ the attack 17 $\frac{Kt \times QBP}{}$ on account of 17 $\frac{}{QQKt3+}$) 17 $\frac{}{KBP \times P}$ 18 $\frac{Kt \times QBP}{KP1\ bst}$ 19 $\frac{Kt \times R\ bst}{KP \times B}$ (if 19 $\frac{KtK6+}{KK2}$) 20 $\frac{B \times Kt}{}$ (if 20 $\frac{QQ5}{KKtK2}$ 21 $\frac{Q \times QKtP}{QQ3\ bst}$ [if 21 $\frac{}{BQ5+}$ 22 $\frac{KKB}{QKtB3}$ We formerly considered your game here would become dangerous, but have subsequently discovered that you would play 23 $\frac{QQB7+}{KK}$ 24 $\frac{Q \times KBP\ gdg}{}$]

---

* Surely it were much better to take K B P with Queen, and let him have Knight if he likes.

Digitized by Google

he now threatens you with $\frac{QQB4+}{}$ and also with $\frac{QBB3}{}$ and it does not appear to us you can save the game. If, for example, 21 $\frac{}{QQ3}$ 22 $\frac{QQKt3 \text{ or } QRK}{KB+}$ 23 $\frac{KKB}{KKtKB4}$ he wins) 20 $\frac{}{Q \times B}$ 21 $\frac{QQ6}{QKtR3 \text{ bst}}$ 22 $\frac{QRQ}{}$ (if 22 $\frac{Q \times P}{KB \times P}$ 23 $\frac{QRQKt}{KBQR6}$ 24 $\frac{QR \times P}{KB+}$ 25 $\frac{KKB}{QQ4 \text{ w}}$) 22 $\frac{}{QKB2}$. 23 $\frac{QKtP2}{}$ (threatening $\frac{PQKt5}{}$) 23 $\frac{}{QK2}$ 24 $\frac{Q \times P}{Q \times P}$ 25 $\frac{QKB7}{QK2 \text{ bst}}$ 26 $\frac{QKKt8+}{QK}$ 27 $\frac{QKKt5+}{KQB \text{ w}}$

Variation from your Sixth Move.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBP2}{KP \times P}$ 3 $\frac{KBQB4}{QKR5+}$ 4 $\frac{KKB}{KKtP2}$ 5 $\frac{QKtB3}{KBKt2}$ 6 $\frac{KKtP1}{P \times P \text{ bst}}$ (if 6 $\frac{}{QKR3}$ 7 $\frac{P \times P}{P \times P}$ [7 $\frac{}{B \times Kt}$ 8 $\frac{P \times P \text{ \&c}}{}$] 8 $\frac{QKtQ5}{KQ}$ [if 8 $\frac{}{BK4}$ 9 $\frac{QP2}{}$] 9 $\frac{QP2}{}$ you regain Pawn) 7 $\frac{KKKt2}{}$ (if 7 $\frac{QKB3}{QKB5}$ 8 $\frac{P \times P \text{ bst}*}{Q \times Q}$ [8 $\frac{QP2}{Q \times Q}$ 9 $\frac{Kt \times Q}{PKKt7+}$ 10 $\frac{K \times P}{KRP1 \text{ w}}$] 9 $\frac{Kt \times Q}{KRP1}$ 10 $\frac{QP2}{QP1}$ he keeps P) 7 $\frac{}{B \times Kt}$

(This move is comparatively weak, though not causing the loss of the game. The following is his soundest scheme of defence here: 7 $\frac{}{QP1}$ 8 $\frac{P \times P}{QKKt5}$ [8 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKR6+ \text{ w}}$] 9 $\frac{QKB}{QQ2}$ [9 $\frac{KKtB3}{QBK3}$ 10 $\frac{QK2}{QBP1}$ 11 $\frac{QKtQ}{QB \times B}$ 12 $\frac{Q \times B}{KRP1}$ 13 $\frac{QKtK3}{QK3 \text{ w}}$] 10 $\frac{KKtB3}{KRP1}$ 11 $\frac{QKB2}{QBP1}$ [11 $\frac{QP2}{KKtP1 \text{ w}}$] 12 $\frac{QP2}{QQB2}$ 13 $\frac{QBQ2}{QBK3 \text{ w}}$) 8 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKKt5 \text{ wk}}$ (If 8 $\frac{}{QKB5}$ 9 $\frac{QP \times B}{QKB3}$ [9 $\frac{}{QQ3}$ 10 $\frac{Q \times Q}{QBP \times Q}$ 11 $\frac{Kt \times P \text{ bg}}{}$]

---

* Jaenisch calls this your best move. I should prefer taking Queen, and advancing Kt Q 5. Or, again, you may at once advance Q Kt Q 5.

Digitized by Google

10 $\frac{QB \times P}{}$ then $\frac{KRP \times P\ b\ g}{}$ To defend himself suitably, he had, however, the choice of two moves. First 8 $\frac{}{QKR4}$ the consequences of which are 9 $\frac{RP \times P}{QKKt3}$ 10 $\frac{QP \times B}{KBP1}$ [10 $\frac{}{PKKt5}$ 11 $\frac{KKtKt5\ b\ g}{}$] Now if 11 $\frac{QK2}{QP1}$ and if instead 11 $\frac{KP1}{KKtP1}$ The other mode of play is 8 $\frac{}{QKR3}$ 9 $\frac{P \times P}{QKKt2}$ 10 $\frac{QP \times B}{KRP1}$ 11 $\frac{QQ4\ bst}{KBP1\ bst}$ 12 $\frac{QBK3}{QKtB3}$ 13 $\frac{QQ3}{QP1}$ he keeps Pawn in both cases) 9 $\frac{KB \times P+}{KK2\ bst}$ (if 9 $\frac{}{KQ}$ 10 $\frac{QP \times B}{P \times RP+}$ 11 $\frac{K \times P}{KRP1\ if}$ 12 $\frac{KRK\ Kt\ b\ g}{}$) (if 9 $\frac{}{KKB}$ 10 $\frac{QP \times B}{P \times KRP+}$ 11 $\frac{K \times P}{QP1\ bst}$ 12 $\frac{QKB\ \&c}{}$) 10 $\frac{QP \times B}{P \times RP+}$ 11 $\frac{K \times P}{QP1\ bst}$ 12 $\frac{QKB\ bst}{KRP1}$ 13 $\frac{KRKKt}{QQ2}$ You have a fine attacking game; if instead 13 $\frac{}{Q \times KP}$ 14 $\frac{QBQ2\ b\ g}{}$

SEVENTEENTH OPENING.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBP2}{P \times P}$ 3 $\frac{KBQB4}{Q+}$ 4 $\frac{KKB}{KKtP2}$ 5 $\frac{QKtB3}{KBKKt2}$ 6 $\frac{QP2}{QP1}$ (if 6 $\frac{}{KRP1}$ 7 $\frac{KBK2}{}$ and his Queen would have no good place of retreat against $\frac{KKtKB3}{}$) 7 $\frac{KBK2}{}$ (This move was played by M'Donnell, in his celebrated games with La Bourdonnais, but has never yet been analysed. It appears to us to be tolerably advantageous. If 7 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKR4}$ 8 $\frac{KRP2}{KRP1}$ Opening XVI) 7 $\frac{}{QKR3}$ (He has no better move. If 7 $\frac{}{KRP1}$ 8 $\frac{KKtB3}{if\ QKKt5}$ 9 $\frac{KtK5}{QK3}$ 10 $\frac{KBKt4\ or\ QB4\ w}{}$ or if 7 $\frac{}{KRP1}$ 8 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKR4}$ 9 $\frac{KKtK5}{QKR5}$ 10 $\frac{KtKB3}{}$ and you propose to draw by perpetually attacking Queen;

Digitized by Google

a result which second player should not admit) 8 $\frac{KRP2}{PKB3}$ (if 8 $\frac{KKtB3}{PKB3}$ but if 8 $\frac{KRP2}{P\times P}$ 9 $\frac{QKtQ5}{}$ you regain Pawns) 9 $\frac{KKtB3}{QBKt5\ bst}$ (if 9 $\frac{}{QKKt3}$ 10 $\frac{KKt\times P}{}$ then $\frac{KBKR5\ w}{}$) 10 $\frac{KKB2}{}$ 10 $\frac{KKKt}{}$ is less advantageous; for then 10 $\frac{}{QKKt3}$ 11 $\frac{P\times P}{P\times P}$ 12 $\frac{KKtP1}{P\times P}$ 13 $\frac{KKt\times P}{B\times B}$ 14 $\frac{QKt\times B}{KRP1}$ 15 $\frac{KKtB3}{Q\times KP}$ 16 $\frac{QKt\times P}{QKKt5}$ 17 $\frac{KKKt2}{QKtB3}$ 18 $\frac{QK2+}{KKtK2}$ then he $\frac{}{Cas\ QR\ gd\ g}$) 10 $\frac{}{QKKt3}$ 11 $\frac{P\times P\ bst}{}$ (if otherwise 11 $\frac{}{KRP1}$ and against 12 $\frac{RP\times P}{RP\times P}$ and your attack is nullified) 11 $\frac{}{P\times P}$ 12 $\frac{KP1}{}$ (if 12 $\frac{QKtQ5}{KQ}$ 13 $\frac{KP1}{KRP1}$ [13 $\frac{KBQ3}{KRP1}$] 14 $\frac{QBP2}{QKtQ2}$ [14 $\frac{KBQ3}{QKB2}$ 15 $\frac{KBQB4}{QKB}$] 15 $\frac{KBQ3}{BKB4}$ and if 15 $\frac{QQKt3}{QKtP1}$) 12 $\frac{}{KRP1\ bst}$ (if 12 $\frac{}{QP\times P}$ 13 $\frac{KKt\times KP}{B\times B}$ 14 $\frac{Q\times B}{QK3\ if}$ 15 $\frac{QQKt5+\ b\ g}{}$ and if 14 $\frac{}{KB\times Kt}$ 15 $\frac{Q\times B+\ b\ g}{}$) 13 $\frac{QKtQ5}{KQ}$ 14 $\frac{QBQ2}{}$ (if 14 $\frac{KBQ3}{BKB4\ gd\ g}$ or if 14 $\frac{KP\times P}{Q\times P\ gd\ g}$) 14 $\frac{}{QKtQ2}$ 15 $\frac{QBQB3}{QBP1}$ (if 15 $\frac{QBKt4}{QP\times P}$ he wins Pawn) 16 $\frac{QKtQKt4}{QP1\ b\ g}$

ON EVADING THE ATTACK OF BISHOP'S GAMBIT.

The defence of this Gambit is so difficult and complicated, that up to the present time the surplus Pawn was not seriously even attempted to be preserved by second player; and it was considered fortunate if its voluntary abandonment yielded in return a good position, In general, the best defence was assumed to be a Counter-gambit on which we are about to enter; but this opinion has been rectified by recent authors. The following is a different combination, indicated already by Ruy Lopez; which may be equally applied, if the party wishes to evade altogether the attack of this Gambit. 1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBP2}{P\times P}$ 3 $\frac{KBB4}{QBP1}$

Digitized by Google

4 $\frac{QP2}{QP2}$ 5 $\frac{KP\times P}{QBP\times P}$ 6 $\frac{BQKt3}{}$ (if 6 $\frac{B+}{QKtB3}$ 7 $\frac{B\times Kt+}{P\times B}$ 8 $\frac{QB\times Pev}{}$) 6 $\frac{}{KBQ3}$ (6 $\frac{}{QKR5+}$ would revive first player's Gambit attack) 7 $\frac{QKB3}{QBK3}$ 8 $\frac{QB\times P}{QKtB3}$ 9 $\frac{KKtK2}{}$ Neither on this move, nor any of the preceding, could you take P at Q5 without loss. The game is now about equal; nevertheless by advancing presently $\frac{QBP2}{}$ you will have some advantage, considering the isolated Pawn of the second player.

EIGHTEENTH OPENING.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KB\ 2}{KP\times P}$ 3 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBP2}$ This is the ancient classical defence against the Bishop's Gambit. It may still be employed with some advantage, although that system of defence alone exposed in our preceding Openings, is adapted to preserve in every case the Gambit Pawn. It is in error, that, basing their theory upon an analysis by Mr. Lewis, writers have of late years propagated the opinion that the ancient defence was disadvantageous for second player. (Observe, in the first place, that if 4 $\frac{KP\times P}{QKR5+}$ 5 $\frac{KKB}{PKB6}$ 6 $\frac{B\times Kt}{P\times P+}$ 7 $\frac{K\times P}{R\times Kt\ b\ g}$ If, again, 4 $\frac{B\times Kt}{R\times B}$ 5 $\frac{P\times P}{QKR5+\ b\ g}$ and if 5 $\frac{Q+}{KKtP1}$ 6 $\frac{Q\times KRP}{RKKt2}$ then $\frac{}{P\times KP\ b\ g}$ If, also, 4 $\frac{QP1}{QKR5+}$ 5 $\frac{KKB}{P\times KP}$ 6 $\frac{QP\times P}{KBQB4}$ 7 $\frac{QK2}{QP1\ b\ g}$ Your best move in truth is 4 $\frac{QK2}{Q+\ bst}$ 5 $\frac{KQ\ bst}{P\times P}$ 6 $\frac{Q\times P+}{KBK2}$ 7 $\frac{QP2}{KKtB3}$ 8 $\frac{Q\times P}{}$ ev; but you have lost the faculty of castling. For if 7 $\frac{}{KKtP2}$ 8 $\frac{QK5}{KKtB3}$ 9 $\frac{KKtB3}{}$ then 10 $\frac{Q\times KKtP\ b\ g}{}$ Should you vary your seventh move of this last Var thus 7 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKR4\ bst}$ 8 $\frac{if\ QP2}{KKtB3}$ For if 7 $\frac{}{QKB3}$ 8 $\frac{QP2}{if\ KKtP2}$ 9 $\frac{KRP2}{KRP1}$ 10 $\frac{KRP\times P}{P\times P}$ 11 $\frac{R\times R}{Q\times R}$ 12 $\frac{QKKt6+\ w}{}$ and if 7 $\frac{}{QKKt5}$ 8 $\frac{QP2}{KKtP2}$ [8 $\frac{}{Q\times P}$ 9 $\frac{KRKt}{QKR6}$ 10 $\frac{R\times P\ w}{}$] 9 $\frac{KRP1}{QKR4}$

Digitized by Google

[9 $\frac{}{Q \times KKtP}$ 10 $\frac{KRR2\ w}{}$] 10 $\frac{QK5}{KKtB3}$ 11 $\frac{Q \times KKtP\ b\ g}{}$)

4 $\frac{QKtB3\ wk}{}$ (This is the move which, according to the English School, ought to give the advantage to the first player) 4 $\frac{}{QKR5+}$ (if 4 $\frac{}{P \times P}$ 5 $\frac{QKR5+}{}$ If, also, 4 $\frac{}{KKtB3}$ 5 $\frac{KP1}{}$) 5 $\frac{KKB}{P \times P\ bst}$ Here occurs the error in the analysis of MM. Lewis* and G. Walker (These authors cause him to play 5 $\frac{}{KKtB3}$ then 6 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKR4}$ 7 $\frac{KP1}{KKtK5}$ 8 $\frac{QKtQ5}{KtKt6+}$ [8 $\frac{}{KQ}$ 9 $\frac{Kt \times PB4}{}$] 9 $\frac{KKKt}{Kt \times R}$ 10 $\frac{Kt \times P+}{KQ}$ 11 $\frac{Kt \times R}{KtKKt6}$ 12 $\frac{P \times Kt}{P \times P}$ 13 $\frac{QP2}{KBK2}$ 14 $\frac{QBKB4}{QKKt5}$ [14 $\frac{}{BKR5}$ 15 $\frac{KKtKt5}{}$] 15 $\frac{KKtKt5}{Q \times B}$ 16 $\frac{KtKB7+}{KK}$ 17 $\frac{QQ3}{KBQ}$ 18 $\frac{KKt+}{KKB}$ 19 $\frac{RKB\ b\ g}{}$) 6 $\frac{Kt \times P}{QBP1}$ 7 $\frac{QK2\ bst}{KQ\ bst}$ (7 $\frac{}{QK2\ or\ KBK2}$ 8 $\frac{KtQ6+\ w}{}$) 8 $\frac{B \times Kt}{R \times B}$ (8 $\frac{KKtB3}{QK2}$) 9 $\frac{KKtB3}{QK2\ bst}$ 10 $\frac{QP2}{QP2}$ 11 $\frac{QKtKKt5}{KRP1}$ 12 $\frac{Q \times Q+}{KB \times Q}$ (12 $\frac{}{K \times Q}$ 13 $\frac{KtKR7}{}$) 13 $\frac{KtKB7+}{KK}$ 14 $\frac{QKtK5}{KKtP2}$ he keeps P

SECTION III.

King's Knight's Gambit.

It does not enter into the plan of our work to treat of the King's Knight's Gambit at equal length with many other leading Openings. We shall however be careful to omit nothing essential; and the student will even find certain details not given elsewhere. The most complete

---

* There is no doubt Jaenisch is here perfectly right. In the last edition of Mr. Lewis's Treatise, certain moves are brought forward to the rescue, and a "forcibly feeble" attempt made, and made in vain, to prove Jaenisch in error. See my "Art of Chess Play."

Digitized by Google

and satisfactory analysis of the King's Knight's Gambit, will be found in the forthcoming Treatise on Chess from Von Der Lasa.*

NINETEENTH OPENING.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBP2}{P \times P}$ 3 $\frac{KKtB3}{KKtP2}$ (This is his correct move; the only one which can indeed be properly played. The move 3 $\frac{}{KBK2}$ forming the Cunningham Gambit is imperfect by reason of 4 $\frac{KBQB4}{KB+}$ 5 $\frac{KKB\ bst}{}$ advancing presently $\frac{QP2}{}$ and regaining Gambit Pawn on account of the feeble position of his Bishop. If 3 $\frac{}{KKtK2}$ 4 $\frac{QP2}{KKtKKt3}$ 5 $\frac{KBQB4}{QP1}$ 6 $\frac{Cas}{QBKt5}$ 7 $\frac{QKtB3}{}$ you will recover Gambit Pawn with superior game. Lastly, if 3 $\frac{}{QP1}$ 4 $\frac{KBQB4\ bst}{KKtP2\ if}$ 5 $\frac{KRP2}{}$ he falls into First Opening of this Book, and if 4 $\frac{}{QBK3}$ 5 $\frac{B \times B}{P \times B}$ 6 $\frac{QP2}{KKtP2}$ [6 $\frac{}{QKB3}$ 7 $\frac{Cas\ gd\ g}{}$] 7 $\frac{KRP2}{}$ he cannot save Gambit Pawn) 4 $\frac{KRP2}{}$ (This attack is inferior to 4 $\frac{KBQB4}{}$ which will be examined further on) 4 $\frac{}{KKtP1}$ 5 $\frac{KKtK5\ bst}{}$ (The move now 5 $\frac{KKtKt5}{}$ constitutes the Allgaier Gambit) 5 $\frac{}{KRP2\ bst}$ (if 5 $\frac{}{QK2}$ 6 $\frac{QP2}{}$ [6 $\frac{Kt \times P}{KBP2\ b\ g}$] 6 $\frac{}{QP1}$ [if 6 $\frac{}{KBP2}$ 7 $\frac{KBQB4}{KKtB3}$ 8 $\frac{Cas\ b\ g}{}$] 7 $\frac{Kt \times Kt\ P}{KBP2}$ [7 $\frac{}{Q \times P+}$ 8 $\frac{QK2}{KBP2}$ 9 $\frac{KtKB2\ gd\ g}{}$] 8 $\frac{KtKB2}{KKtB3}$ 9 $\frac{QB \times P}{KBP \times P}$ 10 $\frac{KBK2}{QP1}$ 11 $\frac{KBR5+}{KQ}$ 12 $\frac{BKKt5}{QBKB4\ ev}$ He may also play 5 $\frac{}{QP1}$ or 5 $\frac{}{KKtB3}$ neither of which shall we here discuss) 6 $\frac{KBQB4}{}$

---

* This work has been since published at Berlin; and merits truly the highest encomiums under every point of view. The European Chess circle are deeply indebted to M. Von Der Lasa, not only for the Chess Treatise in question, the joint composition of the late M. Von Bilguer and himself, but also for the spirited manner in which he supports that excellent miscellany, "The Berlin Monthly Chess Magazine." (SCHACHZEITUNG.)

Digitized by Google

(if 6 $\frac{QP2}{QP1}$ 7 $\frac{KKtQ3}{PKB6}$ 8 $\frac{P \times P}{KBK2}$ he will come off with surplus Pawn and fine game) 6 $\frac{}{KRKR2}$ (he may also play $\frac{}{KKtR3}$*) 7 $\frac{QP2}{PKB6\,bst}$ (This move as well as the following have been given by Von der Lasa in the Palamede for June, 1842. The old method of play was 7 $\frac{}{QP1}$ 8 $\frac{KKtQ3}{PKB6}$ on which if 9 $\frac{KtP \times P}{KBK2}$ as his best move, and he has the advantage. On this M. Kieseritzky observes that by pushing 9 $\frac{KKtP1}{}$ you would acquire a fine game although minus Pawn) 8 $\frac{KKtP1}{}$ (if 8 $\frac{P \times P}{QP1}$ 9 $\frac{KtQ3}{KBK2\,bg}$ or else if 9 $\frac{KB \times P+}{R \times B}$ 10 $\frac{Kt \times R}{K \times Kt\,bg}$) 8 $\frac{}{QKtB3\,bst}$ 9 $\frac{Kt \times Kt}{QP \times Kt}$ 10 $\frac{QBKB4}{QK2}$ 11 $\frac{QKtB3}{QBK3}$ 12 $\frac{B \times}{P \times B}$ (12 $\frac{QP1}{Cas\,bg}$†) 13 $\frac{BKKt5}{QKB2}$ he then plays KBK2 and Cas, preserving P with fine game.

ALLGAIER GAMBIT.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBP2}{P \times P}$ 3 $\frac{KKtB3}{KKtP2}$ 4 $\frac{KRP2}{KKtP1}$ 5 $\frac{KKtKt5}{}$

This Gambit, proclaimed invincible by its author, is now abandoned, theoretically speaking; since first player sacrifices a piece without any

---

* I much prefer 6 $\frac{}{KKtR3}$ See my note in the latter pages of this volume on this subject.

† The following is here the best continuation: 13 $\frac{QQ4\,bst}{P \times P\,bst}$ (if 13 $\frac{}{QBP1}$ you answer 14 $\frac{QK3}{}$ and then if 14 $\frac{}{BQ2}$ 15 $\frac{QKtP2}{}$ if instead he play 13 $\frac{}{KQKt}$ 14 $\frac{Cas\,QR}{}$) 14 $\frac{CasQR\,bst}{}$ (if 14 $\frac{KB \times P}{QBP2}$ 15 $\frac{QQR4}{KBR3\,bg}$) 14 $\frac{}{QQB4}$ stronger than Kieseritzky's move $\frac{}{KQKt}$ and leaving him with the better game.

Digitized by Google

equivalent. We shall consequently only dwell upon the correct defence, discovered first by HORNY, and pass over all descriptions of attack directed against weak and inferior systems of reply. 5 $\frac{\text{KRP1 bst}}{}$ 6 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{KBP}}{\text{K} \times \text{Kt}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{P}}{\text{KKtB3}}$ (His strongest move: though he may also play 7 $\frac{}{\text{QKB3}}$) 8 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{P}}{}$ (if 8 $\frac{\text{KB}+}{\text{QP2}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{P}+}{\text{Q} \times \text{B}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{QB}}{\text{Q} \times \text{KP}+}$ 11 $\frac{\text{KQ}}{\text{Q} \times \text{KKtP}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{QBP}+}{\text{QKtQ2 b g}}$) 8 $\frac{}{\text{KBQ3 bst}}$ (His correct move; allowing him to seize the attack, through gaining time upon you. When one has the advantage of a piece, we may sometimes break through ordinary rules as to position) 9 $\frac{\text{QKB2}}{}$ if 9 $\frac{\text{KP1 bd}}{\text{KB} \times \text{P}}$ If 9 $\frac{\text{QKB3}}{\text{QKtB3 b g}}$ If 9 $\frac{\text{KB}+}{\text{KKKt2}}$ this is still better for him) 9 $\frac{}{\text{QK2}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{QKtB3}}{\text{QKtB3}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{KB}+}{\text{KKKt2}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{QP1}}{}$ (12 $\frac{\text{Cas bd}}{\text{QK4}}$) 12 $\frac{}{\text{QKtK4 b g}}$

TWENTIETH OPENING.

1 $\frac{\text{KP2}}{\text{KP2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{KBP2}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{\text{KKtP2}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{KBQB4 bst}}{\text{KBKt2}}$ (if 4 $\frac{}{\text{KRP1}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{KKtK5}}{}$) We must observe that 4 $\frac{}{\text{KKtP1}}$ were highly imprudent, since it would open up to you an immense field of attack. Not that we hold that 4 $\frac{}{\text{KKtP1}}$ would absolutely cause the loss of his game; but it would engage him in combinations, which, even if they ought ultimately to give him the advantage, (which we deny,) would surely expose him to dangers numberless and incessant. On the contrary 4 $\frac{}{\text{KBKt2}}$ indubitably preserves him the Gambit Pawn. Against the Move 4 $\frac{}{\text{KBKt2}}$ you have a choice between three different systems of attack, which we proceed to develope *seriatim*; showing in either case the correct defence.

Digitized by Google

FIRST SYSTEM OF ATTACK.

5 $\frac{KRP2}{KRP1}$ (if 5 $\frac{}{KKtP1}$ 6 $\frac{KKtKt5}{KKtR3}$ 7 $\frac{QP2}{PKB3}$ 8 $\frac{QB\times P}{P\times Kt}$ [8 $\frac{}{QP1}$ 9 $\frac{Cas}{P\times Kt}$ 10 $\frac{B\times P}{QQ2}$ 11 $\frac{QQ2\ w}{}$] 9 $\frac{QB\times P}{KBKB3}$ 10 $\frac{B\times Kt}{KB\times P+}$ 11 $\frac{KK2\ bg}{}$) 6 $\frac{QP2}{QP1}$ (if 6 $\frac{}{KKtP1}$ 7 $\frac{KtK5}{B\times Kt}$ 8 $\frac{P\times B\ bg}{}$) 7 $\frac{QBP1}{}$ (This move is essential in the Knight's Gambit, to prevent by $\frac{QQKt3}{}$ the sortie of adverse Q B, and its opposition to your B on his K 3. If, besides, 7 $\frac{P\times P}{P\times P}$ 8 $\frac{R\times R}{B\times R}$ 9 $\frac{KtKR2}{KKtB3}$ 10 $\frac{QQ3\text{ or }KB3}{QK2}$ 11 $\frac{QKtB3}{QBK3\ bg}$) 7 $\frac{}{QKtQ2}$ (Previous writers finish their analysis of this Gambit with the move 7 $\frac{QBP1}{}$ and although they habitually recommend 7 $\frac{}{QBP1}$ in reply, it is clear that this last is an insignificant move, which in no way advances the interests of the defence.* We believe that the most solid reply is 7 $\frac{}{QKtQ2}$ the consequences of which we here present by way of essay. For the move 7 $\frac{}{KKtP1}$ which is equally good†, see Var) 8 $\frac{QQKt3}{}$ (if 8 $\frac{Cas}{QKtKt3}$ 9 $\frac{KBQKt3}{QBK3}$ the defence is complete) 8 $\frac{}{QK2}$ 9 $\frac{Cas}{}$ (if 9 $\frac{KRP\times P}{P\times P\ bst}$ 10 $\frac{R\times R}{B\times R\ bg}$ but would do wrong on either of these moves to take K P) 9 $\frac{}{QKtQKt3}$ 10 $\frac{KRP\times P‡}{P\times P}$ (if 10 $\frac{}{Kt\times B}$ 11 $\frac{P\times KRP}{R\times P}$

---

* This requires more proof. The move of Q B P 1 for the defence prepares for the advance of Q P 1 under certain circumstances. I do not, nevertheless, find fault with 7 $\frac{}{QKtQ2}$

† I doubt whether 7 $\frac{}{KKtP1}$ be "equally good."

‡ I should fancy your game presented far more resource in several other modes of play, rather than plunging headlong into an attack, which, although

Digitized by Google

12 $\frac{Q \times Kt \text{ gd } g}{}$) 11 $\frac{Kt \times P}{}$ hazardous, but we see no other move equally good for you to attempt. 11 $\frac{}{Kt \times B}$ 12 $\frac{Q \times Kt}{}$ (if 12 $\frac{Kt \times KBP}{Q \times Kt}$ 13 $\frac{R \times P}{KKtB3\,w}$) 12 $\frac{}{Q \times Kt}$ 13 $\frac{R \times P}{QBR6}$ 14 $\frac{QQR4+}{}$ (if 14 $\frac{Q \times BP+}{KQ\,w}$ and if 14 $\frac{QK2}{Cas\,w}$) 14 $\frac{}{QBP1}$ 15 $\frac{QQB2}{QKKt3\,w}$

Variation on Seventh Move of Second Player.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBP2}{P \times P}$ 3 $\frac{KKtB3}{KKtP2}$ 4 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBKt2}$ 5 $\frac{KRP2}{KRP1}$ 6 $\frac{QP2}{QP1}$ 7 $\frac{QBP1}{KKtP1}$ This forms an interesting description of Muzio Gambit. 8 $\frac{QB \times P}{P \times Kt}$ 9 $\frac{Q \times P}{QBK3}$ (if 9 $\frac{}{QK2}$ 10 $\frac{Cas}{QBK3}$ 11 $\frac{QKtQ2}{B \times B}$ 12 $\frac{Kt \times B}{QKtQ2}$ 13 $\frac{KB \times QP}{P \times B}$ 14 $\frac{Kt \times P+}{KQ}$ 15 $\frac{Kt \times KBP+}{KQB}$ 16 $\frac{KP1}{}$ you have a fine game. We are indebted for this pretty Variation to M. Von Der Lasa) 10 $\frac{QKtQ2}{KKtK2}$ 11 $\frac{Cas\,KR}{KRKB}$ 12 $\frac{QRK\,bg}{}$ His correct moves should be, we believe, 11 $\frac{}{B \times B}$ 12 $\frac{Kt \times B}{Cas}$ then if 13 $\frac{QKKt3 \text{ or } QKR5}{KKtKt3\,bg}$

We close this system of attack with one of the most brilliant conceptions of Greco.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBP2}{P \times P}$ 3 $\frac{KKtB3}{KKtP2}$ 4 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBKt2}$ 5 $\frac{KRP2}{KRP1}$ 6 $\frac{QP2}{QP1}$ 7 $\frac{QKtB3}{QBP1}$ 8 $\frac{P \times P}{P \times P}$ 9 $\frac{R \times R}{B \times R}$ 10 $\frac{KtK5}{P \times Kt}$ 11 $\frac{QKR5}{QKB3}$ 12 $\frac{P \times P}{QKKt2}$ 13 $\frac{PK6}{KKtB3}$ 14 $\frac{P \times P+}{KKB}$ 15 $\frac{QB \times P}{Kt \times Q}$ 16 $\frac{B\,m}{}$

---

fairly enough risked, if giving the Rook to a very inferior player, is palpably vicious against an equal in skill.

Digitized by Google

His main fault was Move 14, instead of which he should play 14 $\frac{}{KK2}$ 15 $\frac{QK2}{QBKt5}$ 16 $\frac{QQ3}{QKtQ2}$ 17 $\frac{QQ4}{KKtR4\ w}$

SECOND SYSTEM OF ATTACK.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBP2}{P\times P}$ 3 $\frac{KKtB3}{KKtP2}$ 4 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBKt2}$ 5 $\frac{\text{Cas (better than KRP2)}}{QP1}$ 6 $\frac{QBP1}{}$ (You play thus to defeat the menaced opposition of QB) 6 $\frac{}{KRP1\ bst}$ 7 $\frac{QP2}{QKtQ2\ bst}$ 8 $\frac{KKtP1}{QKtKt3}$ 9 $\frac{KBQKt3}{KKtP1}$ 10 $\frac{QB\times P}{P\times Kt}$ 11 $\frac{Q\times P}{QBK3}$ (if 11 $\frac{}{QK2}$ 12 $\frac{KP1}{}$) 12 $\frac{B\times B}{P\times B}$ 13 $\frac{QKR5+}{KQ2}$ 14 $\frac{BK3}{KKtB3}$ (if 14 $\frac{QKKt6\text{ or }KB7+}{QK2}$) 15 $\frac{QKKt6}{KRKKt}$ 16 $\frac{KP1}{QK}$ 17 $\frac{Q\times Q}{Kt\times Q}$ (17 $\frac{QQ3}{KKtKt5}$) 18 $\frac{R+}{KQB3}$ 19 $\frac{QKtR3}{P\times P}$ 20 $\frac{P\times P}{KRKB}$ 21 $\frac{QRKB}{R\times R}$ (21 $\frac{KRK7\ bd}{KtQ4}$) 22 $\frac{R\times R}{KtQ4}$ 23 $\frac{BQ4}{QRQ\ w}$.

THIRD SYSTEM OF ATTACK.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBP2}{P\times P}$ 3 $\frac{KKtB3}{KKtP2}$ 4 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBKt2}$ 5 $\frac{QP2}{QP1}$ (At this point Jaenisch gives the following as the moves consequent upon second player's advancing P on Kt 5 $\frac{}{KKtP1}$ but subsequently appears to change his opinion, and tells us in a note at the end of his volume that 5 $\frac{}{QP1}$ is best; and that 5 $\frac{}{KKtP1}$ is not to be recommended. Jaenisch's original Variation runs then thus: 5 $\frac{}{KKtP1}$ 6 $\frac{KKtK5}{}$ [6 $\frac{\text{if QB}\times P}{P\times Kt}$ 7 $\frac{Q\times P}{QP2}$ 8 $\frac{KB\times P}{KKtB3\ bst}$ If 9 $\frac{BKKt5}{Cas}$ and if 9 $\frac{QKtB3}{Kt\times KB}$ then $\frac{}{Cas\ w}$ If 9 $\frac{KB\times P+}{K\times B}$ 10 $\frac{KP1}{KRK\ w}$] 6 $\frac{}{QKR5+}$ 7 $\frac{KKB}{KKtB3\ bst}$ The game is now resolved by

Digitized by Google

him into a complicated species of Salvio Gambit; which appears to us to be to the advantage of second player*) 6 Cas / K R P 1 (The move 6 K R P 1 is essential to the defence, in order to prevent your acquiring a violent attack by the sacrifice Kt × P / Q × Kt Q B × P) 7 Q B P 1 (if 7 K Kt P 1 / K Kt P 1 8 Q B × P / P × Kt [8 Kt K R 4 or K / P K B 6] 9 if Q × P / B × P + w) 7 ... Q Kt Q 2 bst he then plays Q Kt Q Kt 3 and Q B K 3 having a perfect defence.

MUZIO GAMBIT. — TWENTY-FIRST OPENING.

1 K P 2 / K P 2 2 K B P 2 / P × P 3 K Kt B 3 / K Kt P 2 4 K B Q B 4 / K Kt P 1 5 Cas The sacrifice of K Kt at Move 5, far from presenting any danger, is decidedly the best move you can play, assuring you, as we shall prove, at least an equal game, by castling on Move 5. Two other attacks have been recently introduced, which may be perhaps even preferable to castling, viz. that of M'Donnell 5 Q Kt B 3 and 5 Q P 2 (for the hazardous move 5 B × K B P + see Var) At least up to the present time we have not been enabled to find any defence in either of these two Openings which gives the advantage to the second player. We shall here, however, abstain from passing a definitive judgment upon 5 Q Kt B 3 and 5 Q P 2 leaving that task to MM. Lewis and Der Lasa, who are much occupied therewith, and are about to publish their researches on the subject.† We shall only observe, that if 5 Q Kt B 3 / K Kt P × Kt 6 Q × P / Q P 2

---

* It is with justice that Jaenisch subsequently recognizes the fallacy of his mode of conducting your game in these Variations.

† The books of Der Lasa and Lewis have since appeared, but are both equally incomplete and unsatisfactory on this head; leaving the two Variations in question almost as they found them. See my defence of this Opening in "Art of Chess Play." I consider 5 Q P 2 much weaker than 5 Cas

Digitized by Google

7 $\frac{KB \times P}{QBP1}$ 8 $\frac{KBQKt3}{QBK3}$ 9 $\frac{B \times B}{P \times B}$ 10 $\frac{QKR5+}{KQ2}$ 11 $\frac{QP2}{QKB3}$ defence given by De la Bourdonnais, but you do not now play as he does 12 $\frac{KP1}{QKB4}$ 13 $\frac{QKB3}{\quad}$ leaving second player with better game, but you move 12 $\frac{Cas}{Q \times QP+}$ 13 $\frac{KKR\ gd\ g}{\quad}$ As to 5 $\frac{QP2}{P \times Kt}$ 6 $\frac{Q \times P}{QP2}$ 7 $\frac{KB \times P}{QBP1}$ 8 $\frac{BQKt3\ bst}{\quad}$ (8 $\frac{B \times KBP+}{\quad}$ would lose on account of 8 $\frac{\quad}{K \times B}$ 9 $\frac{QB \times P}{KKtB3}$ 10 $\frac{QBP1}{QBKt5}$ 11 $\frac{QK3}{KBKt2}$ [11 $\frac{QKKt3}{KRKKt}$] 12 $\frac{Cas}{KRK}$ 13 $\frac{BKKt5}{KKKt\ w}$ and if 10 $\frac{KP1}{Q \times QP}$ 11 $\frac{P \times Kt}{BQKt5+w}$) 8 $\frac{\quad}{Q \times P}$ 9 $\frac{QB \times P}{KKtB3}$ (if 9 $\frac{\quad}{Q \times QKtP}$ 10 $\frac{QKR5}{\quad}$) 10 $\frac{QKtQ2\ bst}{if\ QBKt5}$ 11 $\frac{QKKt3}{if\ QKtQ2}$ 12 $\frac{QBP1}{\quad}$ and then 13 $\frac{KP1}{\quad}$ If at Move 11 $\frac{\quad}{Kt \times P}$ 12 $\frac{Kt \times Kt\ bst}{Q \times Kt+}$ 13 $\frac{KQ2\ b\ g}{\quad}$

The Muzio Gambit is the most brilliant and instructive of all Openings. It proves that in Chess a sacrifice is frequently the correct move; and that the superiority in position does not depend on the number of men on the board, but on the amount of those in an active state. Thus, in order to learn well the art of attack, the Muzio Gambit is of all Openings the one most deserving of study. We resume our Opening.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBP2}{P \times P}$ 3 $\frac{KKtB3}{KKtP2}$ 4 $\frac{KBQB4}{KKtP1}$ 5 $\frac{Cas}{P \times Kt}$ 6 $\frac{Q \times P}{\quad}$ (if, instead of directly retaking, you push 6 $\frac{QP2}{\quad}$ then 6 $\frac{\quad}{QP2\ bst}$ 7 $\frac{KB \times P}{QBKt5\ b\ g}$ for if 6 $\frac{\quad}{P \times KKtP}$ 7 $\frac{B \times KBP+}{K \times B}$ 8 $\frac{R \times P+w}{\quad}$) 6 $\frac{\quad}{QKB3\ bst}$ 7 $\frac{KP1}{\quad}$ (This is your best attack, if 7 $\frac{QKtB3}{KKtK2}$) 7 $\frac{\quad}{Q \times KP\ bst}$ (if 7 $\frac{\quad}{QQKt3+}$ 8 $\frac{KKR}{KBR3}$ 9 $\frac{QKtB3}{QQB4}$ [9 $\frac{\quad}{QBP1}$ 10 $\frac{QKtK4\ b\ g}{\quad}$] 10 $\frac{QP1}{Q \times KP}$ 11 $\frac{QKtQ5\ b\ g}{\quad}$ threatening $\frac{QB \times P}{\quad}$ and $\frac{QRK}{\quad}$ If 7 $\frac{\quad}{QKB4}$ 8 $\frac{QP2}{KBR3}$ 9 $\frac{QKtB3}{KKtK2}$ [9 $\frac{\quad}{QBP1}$ 10 $\frac{QKtK4}{\quad}$] 10 $\frac{QKtK4}{Cas}$ [10 $\frac{\quad}{KBKKt2}$ 11 $\frac{QB \times P\ b\ g}{\quad}$]

Digitized by Google

11 $\frac{\text{Kt K B 6+}}{\text{K K R}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{K B Q 3}}{\text{Q K 3}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{Q K R 5}}{\text{K Kt Kt}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{Q B} \times \text{P w}}{}$) 8 $\frac{\text{Q P 1}}{\text{K B R 3 bst}}$

(if 8 $\frac{}{\text{K B+}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{K K R}}{\text{B K 6}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{B}}{\text{Q} \times \text{B}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{Q K R 5}}{\text{Q K 2}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{Q Kt B 3}}{\text{K Kt B 3}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{Q K R 6}}{\text{Q P 1}}$

14 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{P}}{\text{K Kt Kt 5}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{Q Kt Q 5}}{\text{Q Q 2}}$ 16 $\frac{\text{Q R+}}{\text{K Q}}$ 17 $\frac{\text{Q R K 7}}{\text{Q Q R 5}}$ 18 $\frac{\text{Q R} \times \text{Q B P w}}{}$)

9 $\frac{\text{Q B Q 2}}{\text{K Kt K 2}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Q Kt B 3}}{\text{Q B P 1 bst}}$ (It has been proposed to play here

10 $\frac{}{\text{Q Kt B 3}}$ but then you answer 11 $\frac{\text{Q R K}}{\text{Q Q B 4+}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{K K R}}{}$ if now

12 $\frac{}{\text{Q Kt Q 5}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{Q K R 3}}{\text{B K Kt 4}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{Q Kt K 4}}{\text{Q P 2}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{Q K R 5 w}}{}$ and if 12 $\frac{}{\text{Q P 1}}$

13 $\frac{\text{Q Kt Q 5}}{}$ [13 $\frac{\text{Q B} \times \text{P}}{}$ is equally good for you] 13 $\frac{}{\text{Q Kt K 4}}$

14 $\frac{\text{R} \times \text{Kt bst}}{\text{Q P} \times \text{R}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{Q B Q Kt 4}}{\text{Q Q 5}}$ [15 $\frac{}{\text{Q Q B 3}}$ 16 $\frac{\text{K B Q Kt 5}}{}$] 16 $\frac{\text{Q B P 1}}{}$

[or else 16 $\frac{\text{B Q B 3}}{\text{Q Q B 4}}$ 17 $\frac{\text{B Kt 4}}{}$ you have perpetual attack] 16 $\frac{}{\text{K P 1}}$

17 $\frac{\text{Q K R 5}}{\text{Q K Kt 2}}$ 18 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{Kt gd g}}{}$) 11 $\frac{\text{Q R K}}{\text{Q Q B 4+}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{K K R}}{\text{Q P 2}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{Q K R 5}}{\text{Q Q 3}}$

14 $\frac{\text{K B} \times \text{P bst}}{\text{Cas}}$ (The moves for both the attack and defence given from Move 7 to Move 14 are allowed to be strongest for both parties. It is useless, therefore, to point out other resources. If 14 $\frac{}{\text{P} \times \text{B}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q Kt B 3}}$

[if 15 $\frac{}{\text{Q B K 3}}$ 16 $\frac{\text{R} \times \text{B w}}{}$] 16 $\frac{\text{Q B Q B 3 bst}}{\text{K R K B}}$ [if 16 $\frac{}{\text{Q K Kt 3}}$

17 $\frac{\text{R} \times \text{Kt+}}{\text{Kt} \times \text{R}}$ 18 $\frac{\text{Q K 5 w}}{}$ and if 17 $\frac{}{\text{K K B}}$ 18 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{Q}}{\text{R P} \times \text{Q}}$ 19 $\frac{\text{Q R Q B 7}}{\text{B K Kt 2}}$

20 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{P gd g}}{}$ for if 19 $\frac{}{\text{R K Kt or R R 2}}$ 20 $\frac{\text{Kt K B 6}}{\text{R K Kt 2}}$ 21 $\frac{\text{R} \times \text{Kt w}}{}$]

17 $\frac{\text{Kt K B 6+}}{\text{K Q}}$ 18 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{B}}{\text{Kt K Kt 3}}$ 19 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{K R P}}{}$ You at least force "rémise."

16 $\frac{\text{B Q Kt 5}}{}$ instead of 16 $\frac{\text{B Q B 3}}{}$ is ill played on account of 16 $\frac{}{\text{Kt} \times \text{B}}$

17 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{Q B K 3 b g}}$ or 16 $\frac{}{\text{Kt} \times \text{B}}$ 17 $\frac{\text{R} \times \text{Kt+}}{\text{K Q b g}}$

If at Move 14 $\frac{}{\text{Q K Kt 3}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{Q K 5}}{\text{Cas}}$ 16 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{K Kt}}{\text{P} \times \text{B}}$ 17 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q Kt B 3}}$ 18 $\frac{\text{Kt+}}{\text{K K R}}$

[18 $\frac{}{\text{K K Kt 2}}$ 19 $\frac{\text{Kt K 8+}}{}$] 19 $\frac{\text{Q Q 6}}{\text{Q B K 3}}$ [19 $\frac{}{\text{K R Q}}$ 20 $\frac{\text{B Q B 3}}{\text{if R} \times \text{Q}}$

Digitized by Google

21 $\frac{R K 8+}{}$] 20 $\frac{Q B B 3}{B K K t 2}$ 21 $\frac{Q \times P}{}$ you will then play a Rook round to K Kt 3 which will give you the advantage) 15 $\frac{R \times K t \text{ bst}}{P \times B}$ (if 15 $\frac{}{Q \times R}$ 16 $\frac{Q \times K B}{P \times B}$ 17 $\frac{K t \times P \text{ w}}{}$) 16 $\frac{K t \times P}{Q K t B 3 \text{ bst}}$ 17 $\frac{Q B \times P \text{ bst}}{}$ (if 17 $\frac{B Q B 3}{B K K t 2}$ 18 $\frac{Q K K t 5}{Q K K t 3}$ 19 $\frac{Q \times P}{Q B K 3}$ 20 $\frac{B \times B}{K \times B}$ if now 21 $\frac{K R K B 3}{B \times K t}$ 22 $\frac{R K K t 3}{K t \times R}$ 23 $\frac{R \times Q+}{K B P \times R \text{ w}}$) 17 $\frac{}{B \times B}$ 18 $\frac{R \times B}{}$ (In this situation his Q is lost. If he play 18 $\frac{}{K t \times R}$ 19 $\frac{K t K B 6+}{Q \times K t}$ 20 $\frac{R \times Q}{K t K K t 3}$ 21 $\frac{K R P 2}{K K K t 2}$ Now the game is about equal, since he has Rook, Bishop, and Kt against Q and two P) 18 $\frac{}{Q \times K R}$ 19 $\frac{K t \times Q}{K t \times R}$ 20 $\frac{Q K K t 5+}{K t K K t 3}$ 21 $\frac{K t K R 5}{K B P 2 \text{ bst}}$ (if 21 $\frac{}{K B P 1}$ 22 $\frac{K t \times P+}{K K K t 2}$ [if 22 $\frac{}{K K B 2}$ 23 $\frac{K t \times K R P \text{ gd g}}{}$ or if 22 $\frac{}{K K R}$ 23 $\frac{K R P 2}{}$ and 24 $\frac{K R P 1 \text{ gd g}}{}$ winning at least a second Pawn] 23 $\frac{K t R 5+}{K K B 2}$ [if 23 $\frac{}{K K R}$ 24 $\frac{Q K 3}{K K K t}$ 25 $\frac{Q Q 4}{K R K B 2}$ 26 $\frac{K t B 6+ \text{ gd g}}{}$] 24 $\frac{Q Q 5+}{}$ &c. or else you may play 24 $\frac{Q K B 6+}{K K}$ 25 $\frac{K t+}{K Q 2}$ you rest with Q and three Pawns against two Rooks and a Bishop; but certainly with the advantage of position, and therefore even) 22 $\frac{K t K B 6+}{}$ (You have also the resource 22 $\frac{K t K B 4}{}$ threatening perpetual check after changing Knights Then if 22 $\frac{}{K K B 2}$ 23 $\frac{K t K R 5}{K K 3}$ [23 $\frac{}{K K}$ 24 $\frac{K t K B 6+}{}$] 24 $\frac{Q K 3+}{K Q 3}$ 25 $\frac{Q Q 4+}{}$ your attack is interminable. And observe if 22 $\frac{}{K K K t 2}$ 23 $\frac{K t R 5+}{}$ now if 23 $\frac{}{K K B 2}$ 24 $\frac{Q K B 6+}{}$; and if 23 $\frac{}{K K R}$ 24 $\frac{Q K 3}{}$ It were difficult here indeed to exhaust all the Variations) 22 $\frac{}{K K R}$ (If 22 $\frac{}{K K B 2}$ 23 $\frac{K t \times P \text{ gd g}}{}$ If 22 $\frac{}{K K K t 2}$ 23 $\frac{K t R 5+}{}$ then if 23 $\frac{}{K K R}$ 24 $\frac{Q K 3}{K K K t}$ 25 $\frac{Q Q 4}{R K B 2}$

Digitized by Google

26 $\frac{\text{Kt K B 6 +}}{\text{K K B}}$ [26 $\frac{\quad}{\text{K K R}}$ 27 $\frac{\text{Kt R 5 +}}{\text{K K Kt}}$ 28 $\frac{\text{Kt B 6 +}}{\text{K K R \&c.}}$ and if 26 $\frac{\quad}{\text{K K Kt 2}}$ 27 $\frac{\text{Kt Kt 4 +}}{\text{K K B}}$ 28 $\frac{\text{Q Q 8 +}}{\text{K K Kt 2}}$ 29 $\frac{\text{Q Q 4 +}}{\text{K K B}}$ 30 $\frac{\text{Q Q 8 +}}{\quad}$] 27 $\frac{\text{Q Q 8 +}}{\text{K K Kt 2}}$ 28 $\frac{\text{Kt K 8 +}}{\text{K K R 3}}$ 29 $\frac{\text{K R P 2 bst}}{\quad}$ now if 29 $\frac{\quad}{\text{R K 2}}$ 30 $\frac{\text{Kt Q 6 gd g}}{\quad}$ and if 29 $\frac{\quad}{\text{Kt K 2}}$ you may draw the game several different ways, persisting in the same train of moves: for example: 30 $\frac{\text{Kt Q 6}}{\text{R K Kt 2}}$ 31 $\frac{\text{Kt K 8}}{\text{Kt Q B 3}}$ [31 $\frac{\quad}{\text{R K B 2}}$ 32 $\frac{\text{Kt Q 6}}{\quad}$] 32 $\frac{\text{Q Q 6 +}}{\text{R Kt 3}}$ 33 $\frac{\text{Q K B 4 +}}{\text{K K R 4}}$ 34 $\frac{\text{Q K B 3 +}}{\quad}$ or else may play 30 $\frac{\text{Q Q 6 +}}{\text{Kt Kt 3}}$ [$\frac{\quad}{\text{K K R 4}}$ 31 $\frac{\text{Q K B 6 + w}}{\quad}$] 31 $\frac{\text{Q Q 8}}{\quad}$ or 31 $\frac{\text{Kt Q B 7}}{\quad}$ But if 23 $\frac{\quad}{\text{K K B 2}}$ 24 $\frac{\text{Q K B 6 +}}{\text{K K}}$ 25 $\frac{\text{Kt Kt 7 +}}{\text{K Q 2}}$ 26 $\frac{\text{Q K 6 +}}{\text{K Q B 2}}$ 27 $\frac{\text{Q Q 5 bst}}{\text{K R Q}}$ [if 27 $\frac{\quad}{\text{Q B Q 2}}$ 28 $\frac{\text{Q Q B 5 +}}{\text{K Q}}$ 29 $\frac{\text{Q Q 5 gd g}}{\quad}$] 28 $\frac{\text{Q Q B 5 +}}{\text{K Q Kt}}$ 29 $\frac{\text{K R P 2}}{\text{Q Kt P 1}}$ 30 $\frac{\text{Q K 3}}{\text{K B P 1}}$ 31 $\frac{\text{Q K B 3}}{\quad}$ threatening to push K R P, and having a certain drawn game. Finally if 22 $\frac{\text{Kt +}}{\text{R × Kt}}$ 23 $\frac{\text{Q × R}}{\text{Q B Q 2}}$ you keep Q and two Pawns against Rook, Bishop, and Kt, which makes equal game) 23 $\frac{\text{K R P 2}}{\text{Q B K 3 bst}}$ (if 23 $\frac{\quad}{\text{Q Kt P 1}}$ 24 $\frac{\text{K R P 1}}{\text{Kt K 4}}$ [24 $\frac{\quad}{\text{Kt K 2}}$ 25 $\frac{\text{Kt × P}}{\text{K × Kt}}$ 26 $\frac{\text{Q × Kt +}}{\text{K K Kt}}$ 27 $\frac{\text{K R P 1 w}}{\quad}$] 25 $\frac{\text{Q K R 6}}{\text{R K B 2}}$ 26 $\frac{\text{Kt × P}}{\text{Kt K Kt 5}}$ 27 $\frac{\text{Q Q B 6}}{\text{Q R Kt}}$ 28 $\frac{\text{Q K 8 +}}{\quad}$) 24 $\frac{\text{K R P 1}}{\text{Kt K 4}}$ (if 24 $\frac{\quad}{\text{Kt K 2}}$ 25 $\frac{\text{Kt × P}}{\text{K × Kt}}$ 26 $\frac{\text{Q × Kt +}}{\text{B K B 2}}$ 27 $\frac{\text{Q × Q Kt P ev}}{\quad}$) 25 $\frac{\text{Q K R 6}}{\quad}$ (Now if 25 $\frac{\quad}{\text{K R K B 2}}$ 26 $\frac{\text{Kt × P}}{\text{R × Kt}}$ 27 $\frac{\text{Q K B 6 +}}{\text{R K Kt 2}}$ 28 $\frac{\text{Q × B}}{\text{Kt K Kt 5}}$ 29 $\frac{\text{Q × K B P gd g}}{\quad}$) 25 $\frac{\quad}{\text{B K Kt bst}}$ 26 $\frac{\text{Kt × B}}{\text{K × Kt}}$ (26 $\frac{\text{Q K Kt 5}}{\text{R K B 2}}$) 27 $\frac{\text{Q K 6 +}}{\text{Kt K B 2}}$ 28 $\frac{\text{Q × P}}{\quad}$ ev; since you have Q and three Pawns against two Rooks and Kt.

Digitized by Google

Variation on Fifth Move of First Player.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBP2}{P\times P}$ 3 $\frac{KKtB3}{KKtP2}$ 4 $\frac{KBQB4}{KKtP1}$ 5 $\frac{P+}{K\times B}$

(This attack, of early origin, is hazardous but yet interesting) 6 $\frac{KtK5+}{KK}$

(if 6 $\frac{}{KK3}$ 7 $\frac{Q\times P}{K\times Kt}$ 8 $\frac{QKB5+}{KQ3}$ 9 $\frac{QP2\,w}{}$) 7 $\frac{Q\times P}{KKtB3}$

(Mr. George Walker appears to us to be right in preferring this defence to 7 $\frac{}{QKB3}$ In the latter case 8 $\frac{QKR5+}{KK2}$ 9 $\frac{QKtB3\,bst}{QBP1}$ [if 9 $\frac{KtKB7}{Q\times Kt}$ 10 $\frac{QK5+}{QK3}$ 11 $\frac{Q\times R}{KKtB3}$ you have a bad game] 10 $\frac{QP2}{QP1}$ 11 $\frac{QB\times P}{Q\times B}$ 12 $\frac{KRKB}{QK6+}$ 13 $\frac{QKtK2}{}$ his situation is dangerous)

8 $\frac{Q\times KBP}{QP1}$ 9 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKtB3}$ 10 $\frac{QP2}{QK2}$ 11 $\frac{Cas}{QBQ2}$ He may then Castle with QR, and preserve the piece. If, now 12 $\frac{KtKt5}{KBKt2}$ and if, instead 12 $\frac{KP1}{P\times P}$ 13 $\frac{P\times P}{KtQ4}$ 14 $\frac{QK4}{QQB4+}$ 15 $\frac{KKR}{Cas\,QR\,w}$

TWENTY-SECOND OPENING.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBP2}{P\times P}$ 3 $\frac{KKtB3}{KKtP2}$ 4 $\frac{KBQB4}{KKtP1}$ 5 $\frac{KtK5}{}$

In thus avoiding the loss of Knight, you permit second player to maintain Gambit Pawn; or to obtain in its place a very potent counter-attack. 5 $\frac{}{QKR5+}$ 6 $\frac{KKB}{}$ (He has now the choice of several different systems of counter-attack; almost all of which are the invention of the illustrious Salvio. For the moves 6 $\frac{}{PKB6}$ and 6 $\frac{}{KKtB3}$ see further on. The most simple mode of play is as follows:)

6 $\frac{}{KKtR3}$ 7 $\frac{QP2}{}$ (if 7 $\frac{QK}{QKB3}$ 8 $\frac{KtQ3}{PKB6\,w}$ and if 8 $\frac{QP2}{QP1}$

Digitized by Google

9 $\frac{\text{Kt Q 3}}{\text{Q} \times \text{Q P w}}$) 7 $\frac{}{\text{Q P 1}}$ (This is a great fault; his correct move is 7 $\frac{}{\text{P K B 6}}$ which resolves the game into a well-known Variation of the Cochrane and Salvio Gambits) 8 $\frac{\text{Kt Q 3}}{\text{P K B 6}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{K Kt P 1 bst}}{}$ (To change Pawns were highly dangerous, as you would be open to $\frac{}{\text{Q B +}}$) 9 $\frac{}{\text{Q K R 6 +}}$ (This move of his is inferior to retreating 9 $\frac{}{\text{Q K 2}}$ but in that case 9 $\frac{\text{Q Kt B 3}}{\text{Q B P 1}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{K R P 1}}{}$ and you could not fail to recover Gambit Pawn with the better situation. For example, if 11 $\frac{}{\text{K B P 2}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{B} \times \text{B}}$ [12 $\frac{}{\text{P} \times \text{K P}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{Q Q 2}}{}$] 13 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{K B P}}{\text{Q B} \times \text{P}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{R P} \times \text{P}}{\text{B} \times \text{Kt +}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{B w}}{}$ and if 11 $\frac{}{\text{P} \times \text{K R P}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{B} \times \text{B}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{P}}{\text{K R Kt}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{Kt K B 2}}{\text{R K Kt 3}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{Q Kt K 2}}{}$ you will regain Pawn with superior game) 10 $\frac{\text{K K bst}}{\text{Q K R 4}}$ (if 10 $\frac{}{\text{Q K Kt 7}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{Kt K B 2}}{}$ and 12 $\frac{\text{K B B}}{}$ you win Q) 11 $\frac{\text{Kt K B 4}}{\text{Q Q R 4 +}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{Q B Q 2}}{\text{Q Q R 5}}$ (12 $\frac{}{\text{Q Q Kt 3}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{Kt Q 5}}{\text{Q} \times \text{Q P}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{K B Q 3 b g}}{}$) 13 $\frac{\text{Q Kt R 3}}{\text{Q Q 2}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{K Kt Q 5 b g}}{}$ His correct move at Move 11 was 11 $\frac{}{\text{Q K Kt 4}}$ but you may then play with advantage 12 $\frac{\text{Kt K 6}}{\text{Q K 2}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{K B}}{\text{Q} \times \text{Kt}}$ (13 $\frac{}{\text{Q} \times \text{P +}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{K K B 2 w}}{}$) 14 $\frac{\text{K R P 1 b g}}{}$

SALVIO GAMBIT.

This name is given, improperly enough, to the début arising from the move 6 $\frac{}{\text{K Kt B 3}}$ in the Opening before us; since Salvio has equally indicated the consequences of the best move 6 $\frac{}{\text{K Kt R 3}}$ The sortie 6 $\frac{}{\text{K Kt B 3}}$ allows of your at least equalising the party

Digitized by Google

as shown by Philidor. (If 7 $\frac{Kt \times KBP \text{ bd } g}{QP2}$ If, again, 7 $\frac{B \times P+}{KK2 \text{ bst}}$ 8 $\frac{KBQKt3 \text{ bst}}{QP1}$ 9 $\frac{KtQ3}{KtKR4}$ 10 $\frac{QK}{KKtP1}$ 11 $\frac{KKKt}{KBKt2 \text{ bd } g}$) 7 $\frac{QK \text{ bst}}{Q \times Q+}$ 8 $\frac{K \times Q}{Kt \times KP}$ 9 $\frac{B \times P+}{KK2}$ 10 $\frac{KBQKt3}{KtKB3 \text{ bst}}$ 11 $\frac{QP2}{QP1}$ 12 $\frac{KtQ3}{}$ ev.

THE COCHRANE GAMBIT.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBP2}{P \times P}$ 3 $\frac{KKtB3}{KKtP2}$ 4 $\frac{KBQB4}{KKtP1}$ 5 $\frac{KtK5}{Q+}$ 6 $\frac{KKB}{PKB6}$

(The advance of this Pawn on second player's sixth move constitutes the game known as the Cochrane Gambit. Salvio played this Pawn forwards only on the following move; yet all the merit of the discovery reverts to that celebrated author, who had already indicated, as about to be shown, the sole good method of continuing the attack; while the writers of our own time have erred on this point. In truth, Salvio had already given the combination 6 $\frac{KKB}{KKtR3}$ 7 $\frac{QP2}{PKB6}$ 8 $\frac{KKtP1}{QKR6+}$ which by a simple transposition of moves becomes 6 $\frac{KKB}{PKB6}$ 7 $\frac{QP2}{KKtR3}$ 8 $\frac{KKtP1}{QKR6+}$ &c, being the best continuation of the Cochrane Gambit for second player) 7 $\frac{QP2}{}$ (This move is generally regarded as best. If 7 $\frac{Kt \times KBP}{KKtB3 \text{ bst}}$ 8 $\frac{Kt \times R}{Kt \times KP}$ [8 $\frac{KKtP \times P}{QP2}$ then $\frac{}{KtP \times P}$ and $\frac{}{QBKR6+w}$] 9 $\frac{QK}{P \times KtP+}$ 10 $\frac{K \times P}{QKR6+}$ 11 $\frac{KKKt}{KBQB4+w}$ And if at Move 7 $\frac{B \times P+}{KK2 \text{ bst}}$ 8 $\frac{KKtP1}{QKR6+}$ [8 $\frac{B \times Kt}{P \times P+}$ 9 $\frac{K \times P}{QKR6+}$ 10 $\frac{KKKt}{R \times Kt}$ 11 $\frac{QKB}{QKR4}$ 12 $\frac{QKB4}{KBR3}$ 13 $\frac{QKKt3}{QP1 \text{ bg}}$] 9 $\frac{KKB}{KKtB3}$ 10 $\frac{KBQKt3}{QP1}$ 11 $\frac{KtKB7}{Kt \times KP+}$ 12 $\frac{KK3}{QBKB4 \text{ w}}$ If at Move 7 $\frac{KKtP \times P}{KKtB3 \text{ bst}}$ 8 $\frac{Kt \times KtP}{Kt \times Kt}$ [8 $\frac{Kt \times KBP}{QP2}$] 9 $\frac{P \times Kt}{QP2}$ 10 $\frac{KP \times P}{QKR6+}$ [10 $\frac{KB \times P}{QB \times P}$] 11 $\frac{KKB2}{KBK2 \text{ bst}}$ 12 $\frac{QKB3}{KBQB4+}$ 13 $\frac{QP2}{B \times P+w}$ Instead of 8 $\frac{Kt \times P}{}$ in this Var, you would have done better to move 8 $\frac{QK2}{}$ then

Digitized by Google

8 $\frac{}{\text{Q P1}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{Kt P}}{\text{Kt} \times \text{Kt}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{Q B} \times \text{P}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{Q K B2}}{\text{B R6+}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{K K}}{\text{Q} \times \text{P+}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{Q K2}}{\text{Q} \times \text{Q+}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{K} \times \text{Q}}{\text{Q Kt B3}}$ he remains with Pawn surplus. If at Move 7, again, 7 $\frac{\text{K Kt P1}}{\text{Q K R6+}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{K K B2}}{\text{K Kt B3}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Q Kt B3}}{\text{Q K Kt7+}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{K K3}}{\text{K B R8+}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{K Q3}}{\text{Q Kt B3 bg}}$ Lastly, if 7 $\frac{\text{Q K}}{\text{P} \times \text{P+}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{K} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q K R6+}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{K K B2}}{\text{K B Kt2}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Q P2}}{\text{Q P1}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{P+}}{\text{K K2}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{R} \times \text{B}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{Kt Q B4}}{\text{Q K B6+}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{K K Kt}}{\text{B} \times \text{P+}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{Q B K3}}{\text{K Kt P1 w}}$

The analysis of Messrs. Cochrane and Lewis had caused this Gambit to be received as advantageous for the second player, when the move 7 $\frac{\text{Q P2}}{}$ to which Lewis had attached but slight importance, appeared so decisive to Messrs. G. Walker and De la Bourdonnais, that they declared the Cochrane Gambit hazardous. The following is an abridgment of their analysis : 7 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{}$

7 $\frac{}{\text{P} \times \text{P+}}$ this is his best move, according to Walker, Lewis, and La Bourdonnais. 8 $\frac{\text{K} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q K R6+}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{K K Kt}}{\text{K Kt B3}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{K B P bst}}{\text{K Kt P1}}$ [10 $\frac{\text{Q P2}}{}$ 11 $\frac{\text{K B B}}{\text{Q K R5}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{R}}{}$] 11 $\frac{\text{Kt Kt5}}{\text{Q K R5}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{K K Kt2}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{R} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q K Kt5+}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{Q}}{\text{Kt} \times \text{Q}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{R} \times \text{RP bg}}{}$ To this we may add that if 7 $\frac{}{\text{K Kt B3}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Q Kt B3 bst}}{\text{Q P1}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{K B P}}{\text{P} \times \text{P+}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{K} \times \text{P}}{\text{K R K Kt}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{Q B K B4}}{}$ you have the better game.* Still, we maintain that the conclusions of Walker and La Bourdonnais relative to the Cochrane Gambit were much too precipitate; for the correct move for second player, and which will preserve him the advantage, is that which we are now about to give) 7 $\frac{}{\text{K Kt R3 bst}}$ (By this move he reduces the game to a well-known Gambit of Salvio. The order of the moves 6 $\frac{}{\text{K Kt R3}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Q P2}}{\text{P K B6}}$ seems to us, moreover, preferable to 6 $\frac{}{\text{P K B6}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Q P2}}{\text{K Kt R3}}$ because the second player thereby avoids those difficult combinations, however really safe, of the Cochrane Gambit, strictly speaking. Mr.

* My readers will study with advantage the beautiful Variations on this branch of Cochrane Gambit, composed by Calvi, in Palamede, 1844, p. 243, &c. Signor Calvi ranks second to none, as to talent for Chess illustration.

Digitized by Google

G. Walker, in the third edition of his Chess Treatise, pp. 162 and 163, presents the following observation of a member of the Bristol Club, which seems equally to establish the perfect validity of the Cochrane defence. 6 $\frac{\text{P K B 6}}{}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Q P 2}}{\text{P} \times \text{P} +}$ 8 $\frac{\text{K} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q K R 6} +}$ 9 $\frac{\text{K K Kt}}{\text{K Kt R 3 bst}}$ In this case to take Kt with Q B would be evidently bad play. If 10 $\frac{\text{Q Kt B 3}}{\text{Q Kt B 3}}$ he will conserve Gambit Pawn. If 10 $\frac{\text{K B K B}}{\text{Q K R 5}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{B} \times \text{B}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{P}}{\text{B} +}$ 13 $\frac{\text{K K Kt 2}}{\text{Q} \times \text{Q}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{Q}}{\text{B} \times \text{Q P w}}$ Again, if 10 $\frac{\text{Q Q 3}}{\text{Q} \times \text{Q}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{Q}}{\text{Q P 1}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{B} \times \text{B}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{K B P}}{\text{B} +}$ 14 $\frac{\text{K K Kt 2}}{\text{K R K B}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{K R K B}}{\text{B} \times \text{Q P b g}}$ Actually your best tenth move in this Var appears to us to be 10 $\frac{\text{Q B K B 4}}{}$ then 10 $\frac{}{\text{Q P 1}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{Kt Q 3}}{\text{Q Kt B 3 b g}}$) 8 $\frac{\text{K Kt P 1}}{}$ (if 8 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q P 1}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{Kt P}}{\text{Kt} \times \text{Kt}}$ [9 $\frac{\text{Kt Q 3}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ then $\frac{}{\text{Q B} + \text{b g}}$] 10 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{Q B} \times \text{P}}$ then $\frac{}{\text{B R 6} + \text{b g}}$ If 8 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{P} \times \text{P} + \text{bst}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{K} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q K R 6} +}$ 10 $\frac{\text{K K B 2}}{\text{B} \times \text{B}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{Kt P}}{\text{Q P 2}}$ [11 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{Kt P}}{\text{B K 6} +}$ 12 $\frac{\text{K K 2}}{\text{Q} \times \text{Q} +}$ 13 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{Q}}{\text{B} \times \text{Q P b g}}$] 12 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{K B}}{\text{Q K R 5} +}$ 13 $\frac{\text{K K Kt}}{\text{Q} \times \text{Kt}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{K B} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q K 6} + \text{w}}$ Even if at Move 8 $\frac{\text{Q B K B 4 bst}}{\text{P} \times \text{P} +}$ 9 $\frac{\text{K} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q P 1}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{K Kt Q 3}}{\text{Q Kt B 3 b g}}$) 8 $\frac{}{\text{Q K R 6} +}$ (if 8 $\frac{}{\text{Q K 2 or K B 3}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{B} \times \text{B}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{K B P or Kt P}}{}$) 9 $\frac{\text{K K B 2}}{}$ (if 9 $\frac{\text{K K}}{\text{Q K Kt 7 w}}$) 9 $\frac{}{\text{Q K Kt 7} +}$ 10 $\frac{\text{K K 3}}{\text{K B P 2 bst}}$ (This appears to be resistless. If 10 $\frac{}{\text{Q P 1 bd}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{Kt Q 3}}{\text{K Kt Kt}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{Kt K B 4}}{\text{K B K R 3}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{K B K B}}{\text{Q} \times \text{R}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{B} +}{\text{Q B P 1}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{P} +}{\text{P} \times \text{B}}$ 16 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{Q w}}{}$ You might equally reply thus: 10 $\frac{}{\text{Q P 1 if}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{K B K B}}{\text{Kt} +}$ 12 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{B} +}$ 13 $\frac{\text{K K 4}}{\text{Q P} +}$ 14 $\frac{\text{K} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q B P 1} +}$ 15 $\frac{\text{K K 4}}{\text{Q} \times \text{R}}$ 16 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{B}}{\text{Q} \times \text{K R P}}$ 17 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{Kt P}}{\text{Q} \times \text{Kt P}}$ 18 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q} \times \text{Q} +}$ 19 $\frac{\text{K} \times \text{Q}}{\text{Q B} \times \text{P}}$ 20 $\frac{\text{Q B P 1 b g}}{}$ Ponziani) 11 $\frac{\text{Q Kt B 3}}{}$ (if 11 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q P 1}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{B K B}}{\text{Kt} \times \text{P} +}$ [if 12 $\frac{\text{Kt Q 3}}{\text{Kt} \times \text{P} +}$ 13 $\frac{\text{K K 4}}{\text{P K B 7} +}$ 14 $\frac{\text{K K B 4}}{\text{B K R 3} +}$ 15 $\frac{\text{K} \times \text{Kt P}}{\text{Kt K 6} +}$ 16 $\frac{\text{K K R 4}}{\text{Q m}}$] 13 $\frac{\text{K K 4}}{\text{Q P 1} +}$

Digitized by Google

[if 13 $\frac{K K B 4}{\text{he mates in five}}$] 14 $\frac{K K B 4}{Kt \times QP}$ 15 $\frac{Kt \times KtP}{Kt K 7+}$ 16 $\frac{B \times Kt}{B K R 3+}$ 17 $\frac{Kt \times B}{P \times B}$ 18 $\frac{Q K}{Q K 5+}$ and mates in four. Lastly, if 11 $\frac{Kt Q 3 \text{ bst}}{K B P \times P}$ 12 $\frac{Kt K B 4}{Kt+}$ 13 $\frac{K \times P}{Q K B 7 w}$) 11 $\frac{}{QBP1 \text{ bst}}$ (He plays thus to intercept your check with KB without which he cannot advance QP1) 12 $\frac{KBQ3}{QP1}$ 13 $\frac{K KtQB4}{P \times KP}$ 14 $\frac{KB \times P}{}$ (if 14 $\frac{QKt \times P}{Kt+}$ 15 $\frac{K K B 4}{B+}$ 16 $\frac{Kt K Kt5}{K R K B}$ 17 $\frac{B \times Kt}{R \times B+}$ 18 $\frac{K K 3}{B \times Kt+}$ 19 $\frac{K Q 3}{K Q 2 w}$) 14 $\frac{}{Kt+}$ 15 $\frac{B \times Kt}{B \times B}$ 16 $\frac{K K B 4}{B \times QBP}$ 17 $\frac{QK+}{KQ2}$ 18 $\frac{K \times P}{R+}$ 19 $\frac{K K R 4}{K B+}$ 20 $\frac{QB Kt5}{B \times B+}$ 21 $\frac{K K Kt4}{\text{Mates in 2}}$ These last Variations, from Move 10, are by M. Silberschmidt. Instead of 10 $\frac{}{KBP2}$ which is decisive in favour of second player, the classics make him play 10 $\frac{}{KBP1}$ which allows of your regaining, finally, the Gambit Pawn. (See Ponziani.)

MEANS OF AVOIDING THE ATTACK OF THE KING'S KNIGHT'S GAMBIT.

The attack of this Gambit is more hazardous than that of the King's Bishop; but it is also much more powerful. Another advantage it possesses is, that it cannot safely be eluded. 1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBP2}{P \times P}$ 3 $\frac{K KtB3}{}$ (3 $\frac{}{K KtB3}$ and 3 $\frac{}{KBB4}$ would cause him a loss of time by reason of 4 $\frac{KP1}{}$ and 4 $\frac{QP2}{}$ so also of 3 $\frac{}{QP2}$ on account of 4 $\frac{KP \times P}{Q \times P}$ 5 $\frac{QKtB3}{QQ}$ 6 $\frac{KBQB4 \text{ bg}}{}$ &c, and if 5 $\frac{}{QK3+}$ 6 $\frac{K K B 2 \text{ bg}}{}$ The move 3 $\frac{}{KBP2}$ is dangerous, for then as best 4 $\frac{KP1}{}$ If 4 $\frac{}{K KtP2}$ 5 $\frac{KBQB4}{K KtP1}$ [5 $\frac{}{QP2}$ 6 $\frac{KP \times P \text{ en p}}{KB \times P}$ 7 $\frac{Cas}{K KtP1}$

Digitized by Google

8 $\frac{\text{QP2 bg}}{}$] 6 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{\text{P} \times \text{Kt}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{P}}{}$ the attack in this Muzio is irresistible.

And if 4 $\frac{}{\text{QP2}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{KP} \times \text{P en p}}{\text{KB} \times \text{P}}$ [5 $\frac{}{\text{Q} \times \text{P}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{KBQB4}}{\text{if QBK3}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{QK2}}{}$]

6 $\frac{\text{KBQB4}}{}$ and then you castle, and he has a bad game, and if 6 $\frac{}{\text{QK2+}}$

7 $\frac{\text{KKB2}}{}$) 3 $\frac{}{\text{QBP1}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{QP2}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{KP} \times \text{P bst}}{\text{QBP} \times \text{P}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{QB} \times \text{P}}{\text{QKtB3}}$

and if instead 6 $\frac{}{\text{QQKt3}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{QKtP1}}{}$ Then advancing presently

$\frac{\text{QBP2}}{}$ you cannot fail acquiring the more advantageous position.

You would not do well at Move 5 to advance 5 $\frac{\text{KP1}}{\text{QBKt5}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{QB} \times \text{P}}{\text{QQKt3}}$

and if 6 $\frac{\text{QKtB3}}{\text{KBKt5}}$ &c.

To present the student with a recent example of a King's Gambit, played by correspondence, we choose a game of the two match games between Hamburg and Breslau, commenced in 1840, in which Breslau had the move. These games were both interrupted at Move 37, by the great fire of Hamburg, but had then reached a stage sufficiently advanced to show that each club would win one game. 1 $\frac{\text{KP2}}{\text{KP2}}$

2 $\frac{\text{KBP2}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{\text{KKtP2}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{KBQB4}}{\text{KBKt2}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{QP1}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{QBP1}}{\text{KRP1}}$

7 $\frac{\text{QQKt3}}{\text{QK2}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{\text{QBP1}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{KRP2}}{\text{QKtP2}}$ this move virtually lost the game for Hamburg. It is not a rare thing, in matches by correspondence, thus to behold a committee made up of cool and calculating men, suddenly suffer themselves to be carried away by an inexplicable vertigo. 10 $\frac{\text{KBQ3}}{\text{QKtQ2}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{QRP2}}{\text{QKtP} \times \text{P}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{P}}{\text{BQKt2}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{QQKt3}}{\text{QBB}}$

14 $\frac{\text{QRR5}}{\text{KBP1}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{QQR4}}{\text{QBKt2}}$ 16 $\frac{\text{R} \times \text{QRP}}{\text{KtQKt3}}$ 17 $\frac{\text{R R+}}{\text{Kt} \times \text{R}}$ 18 $\frac{\text{QP1}}{\text{QQB2}}$

19 $\frac{\text{KKtQ4}}{\text{KKtK2}}$ 20 $\frac{\text{KKR}}{\text{KBB}}$ 21 $\frac{\text{QQ}}{\text{KKtKt3}}$ 22 $\frac{\text{QP} \times \text{P}}{\text{QBB}}$ 23 $\frac{\text{KBQB4}}{\text{KKtK4}}$

24 $\frac{\text{KBQ5}}{\text{QQKt3}}$ 25 $\frac{\text{QKtP2}}{\text{QKtB2}}$ 26 $\frac{\text{QKtP1}}{\text{Kt} \times \text{B}}$ 27 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{KRR2}}$ 28 $\frac{\text{KtQR3}}{\text{KBK2}}$

Digitized by Google

29 $\frac{QQKt3}{KBQ}$ 30 $\frac{KtQB4}{Kt \times Kt}$ 31 $\frac{Q \times Kt}{QQR2}$ 32 $\frac{QQ3}{KRKKt2}$ 33 $\frac{PQB4}{BQKt3}$

34 $\frac{BQKt2}{QKB2}$ 35 $\frac{KtKB5}{B \times Kt}$ 36 $\frac{Q \times B}{BQ}$ 37 $\frac{PQKt6}{\quad}$ &c.*

---

* After the fire of Hamburg the match was resumed, and both games played out, each Club winning one game. The games stand Nos. 413 and 414 of my "Chess Studies." The following were the closing moves of the game before us.

37 $\frac{\quad}{QKR4}$ 38 $\frac{QK6+}{KKB}$ 39 $\frac{PQB7}{Q \times KRP+}$ 40 $\frac{KKKt}{R \times P}$ 41 $\frac{P \times R}{B \times P}$

42 $\frac{Q \times KBP+}{KK}$ 43 $\frac{QKKt6+}{KQ}$ 44 $\frac{B+}{KQB}$ 45 $\frac{QK8+}{KQKt2}$ 46 $\frac{QQB6+}{KQB}$

47 $\frac{RQR\ w}{\quad}$

END OF ANALYSIS OF OPENINGS.

Digitized by Google

CONCLUDING THESES BY JAENISCH.

We do not pretend that the following Theses should be implicitly received as truths, without further analysis; but we give them as an abstract of the general results and deductions to be drawn from our researches on the Openings; and as such they are here offered to the critical examination and judgment of later writers.

No. 1.

For the player who has not the move, the only means of obtaining a safe and ready defence is to open on his Queen's side.* For example:

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP1}$ 2 $\frac{QP2}{QP2}$ 3 $\frac{P\times P}{P\times P}$ 4 $\frac{KKtB3}{Same}$ 5 $\frac{KBQ3}{QBP2\ bst}$

$\left(5\ \frac{}{KBQ3\ wk}\right.$ 6 $\frac{Cas}{Same}$ 7 $\frac{QBP2}{Same}$ 8 $\frac{QP\times P}{KB\times P}$ 9 $\frac{QBP\times QP}{Q\times P}$

$\left.10\ \frac{QKtB3\ bg}{}\right)$ 6 $\frac{Cas}{QBP\times P}$ 7 $\frac{BQKt5+}{QKtB3}$ 8 $\frac{KKt\times QP}{QBQ2}$

9 $\frac{KRK+}{KBK2\ ev}$ The Royal Opening 1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ does not offer, in the existing state of Chess theory, any defence completely satisfactory.

No. 2.

Neither of these two forms of attack are favourable for first player.

First Attack.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP1}$ 2 $\frac{QP2}{QP2}$ 3 $\frac{P\times P\ bst}{P\times P}$ $\left(3\ \frac{KP1\ bd}{}\right)$ &c.

Second Attack.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP1}$ 2 $\frac{KBP2}{QP2}$ 3 $\frac{KP1}{}$ &c.

* Against this doctrine I protest; believing that I have proved in my "Art of Chess Play" that second player may safely answer your first move of K P 2, by adopting the same.

Digitized by Google

No. 3.

The player moving first opening on Queen's side, the defence is simple and well established. The Queen's Gambit 1 $\frac{QP2}{QP2}$ 2 $\frac{QBP2}{}$ ought not to be accepted, but should be answered by 2 $\frac{}{KP1}$

No. 4.

The Opening of the two King's Knights 1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{KKtB3}$ permits the second player sensibly to weaken in appearance all subsequent forms of his adversary's attacks, by resolving them into a species of Queen's Gambit. Only, the loss of time consequent on this line of strategy for second player will be found finally detrimental to his Opening. Ex.: 1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{KKtB3}$ 3 $\frac{KKt\times P}{QP1}$ 4 $\frac{KKtB3}{KKt\times P}$ 5 $\frac{QP2}{QP1}$ &c.

No. 5.

The Central Counter-gambit 1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{QP2}$ 3 $\frac{KP\times P \text{ bst}}{}$ presents no satisfactory defence for second player.

No. 6.

In Philidor's Counter-gambit 1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{QP1}$ 3 $\frac{QP2}{KBP2}$ 4 $\frac{QP\times KP}{KBP\times P}$ 5 $\frac{KKtKt5}{QP1}$ 6 $\frac{KP1}{KKtR3}$ the move suggested by Von Heydebrand Der Lasa is of itself decisive in favour of first player: 7 $\frac{KBP1}{}$

No. 7.

The strongest possible attack in the Giuoco Piano 1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKtB3}$ is 3 $\frac{QP2}{}$ forming the Scottish Gambit, or Queen's

Digitized by Google

Pawn Two Opening. (if 3 $\frac{\text{KP}\times\text{P}}{}$ 4 $\frac{\text{KBQB4}}{\text{B}+}$ 5 $\frac{\text{QBP1}}{\text{P}\times\text{QBP}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{}$ &c. Your 4th and 6th moves are the correct resources for first player) Up to the present time no satisfactory defence to this Opening has been discovered.*

No. 8.

The Giuoco Piano 1 $\frac{\text{KP2}}{\text{KP2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{\text{QKtB3}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{KBQB4}}{\text{Same bst}}$ is not in our opinion a decisive attack. The Variation 4 $\frac{\text{QBP1}}{\text{KKtB3}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{KP}\times\text{P}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{KP1}}{\text{KtK5}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{BQ5 bst}}{}$ (7 $\frac{\text{QK2}}{}$ and 7 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{}$ are both hazardous) 7 $\frac{}{\text{Kt}\times\text{KBP}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{K}\times\text{Kt}}{\text{P}\times\text{P}+}$ 9 $\frac{\text{KK or KKB or KKKt3}}{\text{P}\times\text{QKtP}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{QB}\times\text{P}}{}$ may be defended in either case by second player.† The several defences 4 $\frac{}{\text{QKB3}}$ 4 $\frac{}{\text{QK2}}$ 4 $\frac{}{\text{KKtK2}}$ and 4 $\frac{}{\text{QP1}}$ the last of which is best of the four, are not to be recommended.

No. 9.

The Central Gambit 1 $\frac{\text{KP2}}{\text{KP2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{}$ is hazardous. The attacks 1 $\frac{\text{KP2}}{\text{KP2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{QKtB3}}{}$ and 1 $\frac{\text{KP2}}{\text{KP2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{QBP1}}{\text{QP2 bst}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{KKtB3}}{\text{KKtB3 bst}}$ are weak; although they do not compromise the assailant.

No. 10.

The most satisfactory defence to the King's Bishop's Opening is

---

* Jaenisch afterwards changes his mind on this point. (See Appendix.) I have thought it right to retain his first opinions nevertheless; however faulty, when modified by increased experience. The Queen's Pawn Two Opening is not unfavourable to second player. See my "Art of Chess Play."

† Dissentient George Walker; believing first player has a slight advantage.

Digitized by Google

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KKtB3}$* All immediate temptation to continue the attack, as 3 $\frac{KKtB3}{\bullet}$ 3 $\frac{QP2}{}$ 3 $\frac{KBP2}{}$ 3 $\frac{QP1}{KBQB4}$ 4 $\frac{KBP2}{}$ should only result in failure for first player.

No. 11.

The Counter-gambit of King's Bishop 1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBP2}$ and those Variations which spring from it, as 1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBP2}$ 3 $\frac{KKtB3}{QP1}$ 4 $\frac{QP2\ bst}{}$ or 1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBP2}$ 3 $\frac{KKtB3}{QKtB3}$ 4 $\frac{QP2\ bst}{}$ (which are equally Variations of the King's Knight's Opening) are dangerous for second player. However, all modes of continuing the game 1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBP2}$ are feeble, except 3 $\frac{KKtB3}{}$ which reduces the game to known positions; and also 3 $\frac{QP1}{KKtB3}$ 4 $\frac{KBP2}{}$

No. 12.

The Opening of the Two Kings' Bishops 1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{Same}$ presents but a feeble defence.† The best move for the attack will then be 3 $\frac{KKtB3}{}$ then 3 $\frac{}{QP1}$ 4 $\frac{QBP1}{QK2}$ 5 $\frac{Cas}{}$

---

* Here I am again directly at issue with our learned friend; believing 2 $\frac{}{KKtB3}$ to be comparatively weak, though not fatal. See my "Art of Chess Play."

† Here once more I differ, and believe constantly in the validity of 2 $\frac{}{KBQB4}$

Digitized by Google

(5 $\frac{QP2}{}$ is hazardous) 5 $\frac{}{QBK3}$ the only way to equalise the game. 4 $\frac{QP2}{}$ is also a good attacking move, as recommended in Chess Player's Chronicle.

No. 13.

The best defence against 1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBQB4}{Same}$ 3 $\frac{QBP1}{}$ is 3 $\frac{}{QKKt4}$ in preference to 3 $\frac{}{QK2}$ The Counter-gambit of Lewis 3 $\frac{}{QP2}$ is hazardous; for then 4 $\frac{B\times QP}{KKtB3}$ 5 $\frac{QKB3 \text{ bst}}{}$

No. 14.

In all forms of King's Gambit 1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBP2}{}$ second player may, after accepting the Gambit by 2 $\frac{}{P\times P}$ defend his surplus Pawn; and finally win the game thereby. To refuse the Gambit, always turns against second player. The best moves of refusal are 2 $\frac{}{QBP1}$ and 2 $\frac{}{KKtB3}$

No. 15.

The King's Bishop's Gambit 1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBP2}{P\times P}$ 3 $\frac{KBQB4}{}$ allows but of one correct defence 3 $\frac{}{Q+}$ 4 $\frac{KKB}{KKtP2}$ fitted to assure second player of the winning the game through the acquired Pawn. The ancient classic defence 3 $\frac{}{KBP2}$ without fulfilling that end, may however be played without disadvantage.

No. 16.

All other systems of defence in the Bishop's Gambit, as 3 $\frac{}{QKB3}$

Digitized by Google

3 $\frac{}{\text{QP 1}}$ &c, are more or less fruitless. The decisive attack against 3 $\frac{}{\text{QP 1}}$ is that of Cozio 4 $\frac{\text{QKB 3}}{}$

No. 17.

After the moves 1 $\frac{\text{KP 2}}{\text{KP 2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{KBP 2}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{KBQB 4}}{\text{Q}+}$ 4 $\frac{\text{KKB}}{\text{KKtP 2}}$ the correct defence against 5 $\frac{\text{QKB 3}}{}$ is 5 $\frac{}{\text{QKtB 3}}$ against 5 $\frac{\text{KKtB 3}}{\text{QKR 4}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{KRP 2}}{\text{KBKt 2}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{QP 2}}{}$ 7 $\frac{}{\text{KRP 1}}$ or 7 $\frac{}{\text{QP 1}}$ (against 5 $\frac{\text{QKtB 3}}{}$ 5 $\frac{}{\text{KBKKt 2}}$) All other, as for example 5 $\frac{\text{QKB 3}}{\text{KKtB 3 or QP 1}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{QKtB 3}}{\text{QP 1 or KKtK 2 or QBP 1}}$ would infallibly allow you to regain Pawn.

No. 18.

The attack of the King's Knight's Gambit 1 $\frac{\text{KP 2}}{\text{KP 2}}$ 2 $\frac{\text{KBP 2}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ 3 $\frac{\text{KKtB 3}}{}$ cannot be eluded by 3 $\frac{}{\text{KBP 2}}$ as that of King's Bishop's Gambit.* Its only correct defence is 3 $\frac{}{\text{KKtP 2}}$ then against 4 $\frac{\text{KBQB 4}}{\text{KBKt 2}}$ and against 4 $\frac{\text{KRP 2}}{\text{KKtP 1}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{KtK 5 bst}}{\text{KRP 2}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{KBQB 4}}{\text{KRR 2}}$† 7 $\frac{\text{QP 2}}{\text{PKB 6}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{KKtP 1}}{\text{QKtB 3}}$

---

* Jaenisch correctly separates the terms "eluding" and "defending."

† I much prefer the following defence, invented by Mr. Knight, of the St. George's Club, London, and not known to me when I published my "Art of Chess Play:"— 6 $\frac{}{\text{KKtR 3}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{QP 2}}{\text{QP 1}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{KtQ 3}}{\text{PKB 6}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{KKtP 1}}{\text{QP 1}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{P}}{\text{QBP 1}}$ (10 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{KKtKB 4}}$) 11 $\frac{\text{KBQKt 3}}{\text{Q} \times \text{P bg}}$

See "Les Principales Ouvertures du Jeu des Echecs, &c. par Seraphin Dubois. Rome. Monaldi, 1845, 4to. pp. 52.

Digitized by Google

No. 19.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBP2}{P\times P}$ 3 $\frac{KKtB3}{KKtP2}$ 4 $\frac{KBQB4}{KKtP1}$ is at least to be characterised as hazardous and imprudent for him. 5 $\frac{Cas}{\quad}$ (probably also 5 $\frac{QKtB3}{\quad}$ or 5 $\frac{QP2}{\quad}$) will always then give you an even game.

No. 20.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KBP2}{P\times P}$ 3 $\frac{KKtB3}{KKtP2}$ 4 $\frac{KBQB4}{KKtP1}$ 5 $\frac{KKtK}{\quad}$ would be bad play, allowing your opponent to preserve the Gambit Pawn; or else, in renouncing it, to acquire a powerful counter-attack. He should reply with 5 $\frac{\quad}{QKR5+}$ 6 $\frac{KKB}{KKtR3}$ 7 $\frac{QP2}{PKB6}$ 8 $\frac{KKtP1 \text{ if}}{QKR6+}$ 9 $\frac{KKB2}{QKKt7+}$ 10 $\frac{KK3 \text{ bd g}}{KBP2 \text{ bst}}$ or else, changing the order of the moves, 5 $\frac{\quad}{QKR5+}$ 6 $\frac{KKB}{PKB6}$ 7 $\frac{QP2}{KKtR3}$ the move 7 $\frac{\quad}{KKtR3}$ is therefore the correct reply to 7 $\frac{QP2}{\quad}$ in Cochrane Gambit.

END OF JAENISCH'S TREATISE.

Digitized by Google

APPENDIX BY JAENISCH.*

ON THE EXACT DEFENCE OF THE ROYAL OPENING, OR GIUOCO PIANO.

WITHOUT the Royal Opening, no game of Chess! If, theoretically speaking, we were reduced to the two modes of defence 1 $\frac{KP2}{KP1}$ and 1 $\frac{KP2}{QBP2}$ and forced to renounce all those ingenious and magnificent combinations arising from the opening 1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ better at once seek to change and modify the rules of the game, and the primitive position of the pieces. After many years of fruitless researches, we had, however, finally despaired of preserving and saving this début; and have expressed ourselves to this effect in our 1st, 4th, and 7th Theses, (pp. 277–8): but at the very moment of issuing our work, after all its sheets were printed off, the idea of a new combination has all at once struck us,—a combination hitherto neglected, and which overcomes all difficulty. We hasten to place it before the connoisseur, with all necessary development; which will thus constitute the exact defence to the King's Knight's game, contradicting our previous assertions in Theses 1 and 7.

1 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 2 $\frac{KKtB3 \text{ bst}}{}$ It is this attack alone which involves difficulty. 2 $\frac{}{QKtB3 \text{ bst}}$ 3 $\frac{QP2}{}$ We have already given at great length, sound methods of defence in all other Variations. (If 3 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4 \text{ bst}}$ 4 $\frac{QBP1}{KKtB3 \text{ bst}}$ 5 $\frac{QP2}{P \times P \text{ bst}}$ 6 $\frac{KP1}{KtK5 \text{ or } QP2}$ as see in our theory of Giuoco Piano. If 3 $\frac{KBQB4}{KBQB4}$ 4 $\frac{Cas}{}$ they may play 4 $\frac{}{QP1}$

* This Appendix follows the second volume of Jaenisch. As showing the author's latest convictions, I have preferred printing it as issued by him, to incorporating it, as I could have done, in his previous analysis of the Opening in question. It is so interesting to mark the slow and painful labour, step by step, through which alone truth can ever be elicited in objects of scientific research.

Digitized by Google

5 $\frac{\text{QBP1}}{\text{KKtB3}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{KBQKt3 ev}}$ as see in preceding pages; but still their best answer to 4 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{\quad}$ is 4 $\frac{\quad}{\text{KKtB3}}$ which would force you to adopt the defensive move 5 $\frac{\text{QP1}}{\quad}$ For if then 5 $\frac{\text{QBP1}}{\text{Kt} \times \text{KP bst}}$ [5 $\frac{\quad}{\text{QP1}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{BQKt3}}$ reduces it to foregone Var] 6 $\frac{\text{BQ5}}{\quad}$ [6 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{KP} \times \text{P}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{if QBP} \times \text{P bd}}{\text{BK2}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{KRK}}{\text{QP2}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{QBP} \times \text{P bd}}{\text{KBK2}}$] 6 $\frac{\quad}{\text{Kt} \times \text{KBP bst}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{R} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{B} \times \text{R}+}$ 8 $\frac{\text{K} \times \text{B}}{\text{QKtK2 bst}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{QQKt3}}{\text{Kt} \times \text{B}}$ [9 $\frac{\text{BQKt3}}{\text{KP1}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{KtKt5}}{\text{QP2 bg}}$] 10 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{QP1}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{QP1}}{\text{QBP1}}$ [11 $\frac{\text{QP2}}{\text{QBP1}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{QQKt3}}{\text{KP1 bg}}$] 12 $\frac{\text{QQKt3}}{\text{QK2 bg}}$

The defence 3 $\frac{\text{KBQB4}}{\text{KBK2}}$ seems to us weak by reason of 4 $\frac{\text{QP2 bst}}{\text{QP1}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{QBP1}}{\text{KKtB3}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{QQB2}}{\text{Cas}}$ [if 6 $\frac{\quad}{\text{QBKt5}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{KBQKt5}}{\quad}$ and if 6 $\frac{\quad}{\text{KP} \times \text{P}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{QBP} \times \text{P}}{\text{QP1}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{KP} \times \text{P}}{\text{KKt} \times \text{P}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{KB} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{Q} \times \text{B}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{QKtB3 bg}}{\quad}$] 7 $\frac{\text{KBK2 bst}}{\text{if QBKt5}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{BK3 bg}}{\quad}$ [for if 7 $\frac{\text{KRP1 or Cas}}{\text{KP} \times \text{QP}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{QBP} \times \text{P}}{\text{QKtKt5}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{QQKt3}}{\text{QP1 ev}}$] The move 5 $\frac{\text{QP1 wk}}{\quad}$ would equalise the game, for then 5 $\frac{\quad}{\text{QKtQKt bst}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{KBQ3}}{\text{QBKt5}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{\text{KKtB3}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{QBP2}}{\text{QBP1}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{QKtB3}}{\text{QKtR3 ev}}$ If 5 $\frac{\text{QBP1}}{\text{KBP2 bd}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{QQKt3}}{\text{QKtR4}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{QQR4}+}{\text{QBP1}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{KB} \times \text{KKt}}{\text{R} \times \text{B}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{QP} \times \text{KP bg}}{\quad}$ To resume:—)

3 $\frac{\quad}{\text{KP} \times \text{QP bst}}$ (If 3 $\frac{\quad}{\text{QKt} \times \text{QP}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{P bst}}{\quad}$ or 4 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{Kt}}{\quad}$ See Opening 20, of Book III. If 3 $\frac{\quad}{\text{QP2}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{P}}{\text{Kt} \times \text{Kt}}$ [4 $\frac{\quad}{\text{QP} \times \text{P}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{Kt bg}}{\quad}$] 5 $\frac{\text{QP} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{QP} \times \text{KP}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{Q}+ \text{ bg}}{\quad}$ If 3 $\frac{\quad}{\text{KKtB3}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{KP}}{\text{Kt} \times \text{Kt}}$ [4 $\frac{\quad}{\text{KKt} \times \text{KP}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{QK2 bg}}{\quad}$] 5 $\frac{\text{QP} \times \text{KP}}{\text{KKt} \times \text{P}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{KBQB4}}{\text{KKtQB4}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{\text{KBK2}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{QBKB4}}{\text{Cas}}$ [8 $\frac{\quad}{\text{KKtK3}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{QBKKt3}}{\quad}$] 9 $\frac{\text{QKtB3 bg}}{\quad}$ You might also have played thus: 3 $\frac{\quad}{\text{KKtB3}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{QP} \times \text{P}}{\text{KKt} \times \text{P}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{KBQB4}}{\text{KKtQB4}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{\text{KBK2}}$

Digitized by Google

7 $\frac{\text{Q B K B 4}}{\text{Cas}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Q Kt B 3 b g}}{}$ But 3 $\frac{}{\text{K Kt B 3}}$ 4 $\frac{\text{Q P 1}}{\text{Q Kt Kt bst}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{K B Q 3}}{\text{Q P 1}}$ [5 $\frac{\text{K Kt} \times \text{K P}}{\text{Q K 2}}$ and 6 $\frac{}{\text{Q P 1 b g}}$] 6 $\frac{\text{Q B P 2}}{\text{Q B P 1}}$ were hardly advantageous for you)

4 $\frac{\text{K B Q B 4 bst}}{}$ (If 4 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q K R 5 b g}}$ as shown previously in our pages)

4 $\frac{}{\text{K B Q B 4}}$ (If 4 $\frac{}{\text{K Kt B 3}}$ 5 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q Kt} \times \text{Kt}}$ [5 $\frac{}{\text{K Kt} \times \text{K P}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{B P} +\text{ b g}}{}$] 6 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{Kt b g}}{}$ In our 3d Book we have proved that 4 $\frac{}{\text{Q K B 3}}$ is disadvantageous; and the same thing might also be said of 4 $\frac{}{\text{B} +}$ 5 $\frac{\text{Q B P 1}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{Cas bst}}{}$ although a complete analysis of this Variation has not yet appeared, owing to its extreme complication.* What has hitherto embarrassed us on this point is the following combination: 6 $\frac{}{\text{P} \times \text{Q Kt P}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Q B} \times \text{P}}{\text{K B P 1 bst}}$ [if 7 $\frac{}{\text{K B K B}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{K P 1}}{\text{K B K 2}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Q Kt R 3 b g}}{}$] 8 $\frac{\text{K P 1}}{}$ (considered your best) 8 $\frac{}{\text{K B K 2 bst}}$ Now if 9 $\frac{\text{K Kt R 4}}{\text{K K B}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Q K B 3}}{\text{Q P 1}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{K P} \times \text{K B P}}{\text{K Kt} \times \text{P}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{Q Kt Q 2}}{\text{Q B Kt 5}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{Q K B 4}}{\text{Q P 1 b g}}$ and if 9 $\frac{\text{Q Q 5}}{\text{K Kt R 3}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{K P} \times \text{P}}{\text{K B} \times \text{P}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{R} +}{\text{K K B}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{B}}{\text{K Kt P} \times \text{B b g}}$)

5 $\frac{\text{Q B P 1 bst}}{}$ (If 5 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{\text{Q P 1 bst}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{Q B P 1}}{\text{Q P} \times \text{Q B P}}$ [6 $\frac{\text{Q B Kt 5}}{\text{K Kt K 2 bst}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{K B Kt 5}}{\text{K B P 1}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{B K R 4}}{\text{Cas b g}}$] 7 $\frac{\text{Q Kt} \times \text{P}}{\text{K Kt K 2 bst}}$ [if 7 $\frac{}{\text{K Kt B 3}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Q B Kt 5}}{\text{Cas}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Q Kt Q 5}}{\text{Q B Kt 5}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{K Kt}}{\text{K Kt P} \times \text{B}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{Q Q 3}}{\text{Q Kt K 4}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{K Kt} \times \text{Kt}}{}$ and 13 $\frac{\text{Q K Kt 3 b g}}{}$]

8 $\frac{\text{Q B Kt 5}}{}$ [if 8 $\frac{\text{K P 1}}{\text{Q P} \times \text{K P}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{Q} +}{\text{Q Kt} \times \text{Q}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{K Kt} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q B K 3 b g}}$ if 8 $\frac{\text{K Kt Kt 5}}{\text{Q Kt K 4}}$ and if 8 $\frac{\text{Q Q Kt 3}}{\text{Cas}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{K Kt Kt 5}}{\text{Q K b g}}$] 8 $\frac{}{\text{Cas}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Q Kt Q 5}}{\text{K K R}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{if K P 1}}{\text{Q P} \times \text{P}}$ and he pre-

---

* The point in question is not yet satisfactorily decided; some of our best players holding the move 4 $\frac{}{\text{B} +}$ as sound; and others thinking, with me, that the check is dangerous to give.

Digitized by Google

serves Gambit P. In case of 5 $\frac{\text{Q B Kt 5}}{\text{———}}$ it were wrong to answer 5 $\frac{\text{K B P 1}}{\text{———}}$ or 5 $\frac{\text{K Kt K 2}}{\text{———}}$ since that exposes them to considerable attack [Ex.: 5 $\frac{\text{Q B Kt 5}}{\text{K Kt K 2}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{Q B P 1}}{\text{P} \times \text{Q B P}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Q Kt} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q P 1}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Q Kt Q 5}}{\text{Cas}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Q Q Kt 3 b g}}{\text{———}}$ or else 7 $\frac{\text{———}}{\text{Cas}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Q Kt Q 5}}{\text{K K R}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{K P 1 b g}}{\text{———}}$] Therefore it is we advise 5 $\frac{\text{Q B Kt 5}}{\text{K B K 2 bst}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{Q B K B 4}}{\text{Q P 1}}$ [if 6 $\frac{\text{Q B} \times \text{K B}}{\text{Q} \times \text{B}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{\text{Q Q B 4}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Q Q 3}}{\text{Q P 1}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Q Kt Q 2}}{\text{Q Kt K 4}}$ and he keeps Pawn] 7 $\frac{\text{K Kt} \times \text{P}}{\text{Kt} \times \text{Kt}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{Kt}}{\text{B K B 3}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{K P 1}}{\text{Q P} \times \text{P}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{Q} +}{\text{B} \times \text{Q bst}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{K P}}{\text{B K B 3}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{B}}{\text{Kt} \times \text{B ev}}$ The attack commonly recommended is 5 $\frac{\text{K Kt Kt 5}}{\text{K Kt R 3}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{Kt} \times \text{K B P}}{\text{Kt} \times \text{Kt}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{B} \times \text{Kt} +}{\text{K} \times \text{B}}$ 8 $\frac{\text{Q K R 5} +}{\text{K Kt P 1}}$ 9 $\frac{\text{Q} \times \text{K B}}{\text{Q P 1 bst}}$ 10 $\frac{\text{Q Q Kt 5 bst}}{\text{Q R P 1}}$ [if 10 $\frac{\text{Q Q B 4} +}{\text{Q B K 3}}$ 11 $\frac{\text{Q Q Kt 5}}{\text{Q R Q Kt}}$ and if 12 $\frac{\text{B K R 6}}{\text{Q K R 5 b g}}$] 11 $\frac{\text{Q Q 3}}{\text{K K Kt 2}}$ 12 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{\text{Q B K 3}}$ 13 $\frac{\text{Q B P 1}}{\text{Q K B 3}}$ 14 $\frac{\text{K R Q}}{\text{———}}$ here the best answer is not 14 $\frac{\text{———}}{\text{P} \times \text{P}}$ as we formerly supposed (see page 179,) but rather 14 $\frac{\text{———}}{\text{K R K B}}$ 15 $\frac{\text{Q Q 2}}{\text{P Q 6}}$ [15 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{Q} \times \text{K B P} +}$ 16 $\frac{\text{K K R}}{\text{Kt Q Kt 5 w}}$] 16 $\frac{\text{Q K R 6} +}{\text{K K Kt}}$ 17 $\frac{\text{Q B K 3}}{\text{Q Kt K 4}}$ 18 $\frac{\text{K R P 1}}{\text{Q B P 2}}$ 19 $\frac{\text{Q Kt P 1}}{\text{Q Kt P 2 b g}}$ if 19 or 20 $\frac{\text{K B P 2}}{\text{Kt K B 2 b g}}$)

5 $\frac{\text{———}}{\text{K Kt B 3}}$ Here is the correct move, sought for so long in vain, and which instantly resolves the game into the exact defence of the Giuoco Piano, as previously herein shown. (Authors have hitherto recommended 5 $\frac{\text{———}}{\text{P Q 6}}$ proved by us to be disadvantageous. [See p. 177] if 5 $\frac{\text{———}}{\text{Q P Q 3}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{P} \times \text{P}}{\text{B Q Kt 3}}$ this defence resolves the game into an Opening already considered, and which we think bad, as permitting you to establish your Pawns in the centre. 5 $\frac{\text{———}}{\text{Q K 2}}$ 6 $\frac{\text{Cas}}{\text{———}}$ is also not to be relied on. Lastly, 5 $\frac{\text{———}}{\text{K Kt K 2}}$ would be good, should your adversary succeed in drawing you on to adopt the superficial attack of 6 $\frac{\text{K Kt Kt 5}}{\text{Q P 2 bst}}$ 7 $\frac{\text{K P} \times \text{P}}{\text{K Kt} \times \text{P}}$

Digitized by Google

8 $\frac{Kt \times KBP}{QK2+}$ for continuation see preceding branches of our work. But your correct reply to 5 $\frac{}{KKtK2}$ is 6 $\frac{P \times P}{B+}$ 7 $\frac{QKtB2}{QP2}$ 8 $\frac{KP \times P}{KKt \times P}$ 9 $\frac{Cas}{B \times Kt}$ 10 $\frac{P \times B}{Cas}$ 11 $\frac{B \times Kt}{Q \times B}$ 12 $\frac{KRP1}{}$ rather in your favour; your Pawns being the better disposed)

6 $\frac{KP1}{}$ (We now enter on the situation considered at p. 193, but lest you should think you have a stronger move than 6 $\frac{KP1}{}$ we apprise you that if 6 $\frac{QBKt5}{KRP1\ bst}$ 7 $\frac{B \times Kt}{Q \times B}$ [7 $\frac{BKR4}{KKtP2}$ 8 $\frac{BKKt3}{KKt \times P}$ or if 8 $\frac{Kt \times KKtP}{P \times Kt}$ 9 $\frac{B \times KtP\ bd}{KBK2}$] 8 $\frac{KP1}{QKKt3\ bst}$ [8 $\frac{}{QKt \times KP}$ 9 $\frac{QK2}{P \times QBP}$ 10 $\frac{QKt \times P}{QP1}$ 11 $\frac{QKtQ5\ bg}{}$] 9 $\frac{QBP \times P}{Q \times KKtP}$ 10 $\frac{KRKKt}{BKt5+}$ 11 $\frac{QKtB3}{QKR6}$ you lose a Pawn. If 6 $\frac{Cas}{}$ [6 $\frac{QBP \times P}{}$ has been examined in foregone pages] 6 $\frac{}{Kt \times KP\ bst}$ 7 $\frac{KBQ5}{}$ [if 7 $\frac{QBP \times P}{KBK2}$ if 7 $\frac{KRK}{QP2}$ 8 $\frac{KBKt5 \text{ or } QKtQ2}{Cas\ bg}$ and if 9 $\frac{QBP \times P}{KBK2}$] 7 $\frac{}{KKtB3}$ 8 $\frac{B \times QKt}{QP \times B}$ 9 $\frac{QBP \times P}{KBK2}$ you equally lose a Pawn. At the same time your attack would have been irresistible if 6 $\frac{Cas}{P \times QBP}$ 7 $\frac{KP1}{QP2}$ [7 $\frac{}{KKtKt}$ 8 $\frac{B \times P+}{}$] 8 $\frac{P \times Kt}{P \times B}$ 9 $\frac{QK2+}{QB\ in}$ [9 $\frac{}{KKB}$ 10 $\frac{P \times P+}{K \times P}$ 11 $\frac{Q \times P\ bg}{}$] 10 $\frac{P \times KKtP}{RKKt}$ 11 $\frac{KKtKt5}{KtQ5}$ [11 $\frac{}{QQ2}$ 12 $\frac{Kt \times K\hat{R}P\ w}{}$] 12 $\frac{QKR5}{P \times P}$ [12 $\frac{}{R \times P}$ 13 $\frac{P \times P\ w}{}$] 13 $\frac{QB \times P}{KRP1}$ [13 $\frac{}{KR \times P}$ 14 $\frac{Kt \times B\ w}{}$] 14 $\frac{B \times Kt}{Q \times B}$ [14 $\frac{}{B \times B}$ 15 $\frac{Kt \times B}{QQ2}$ 16 $\frac{Kt \times B}{Q \times Kt}$ 17 $\frac{KR+\ w}{}$ and if 14 $\frac{}{Q \times KKt}$ 15 $\frac{Q \times Q}{P \times Q}$ 16 $\frac{B \times B\ w}{R \times P}$] 15 $\frac{Kt \times B}{Q \times QR}$ 16 $\frac{Kt \times QBP+}{KQ2}$ 17 $\frac{Q \times KB\ w}{}$) 6 $\frac{}{KtK5}$ (he might also move 6 $\frac{}{QP2}$ then 7 $\frac{BQKt5}{KtK5}$ 8 $\frac{B \times QKt+}{P \times B}$

Digitized by Google

9 $\frac{P \times P \text{ bst}}{BQKt\,3 \text{ ev}}$ as previously shown. Observe if 9 $\frac{K\,Kt \times P \text{ wk}}{BQKt\,3 \text{ bst}}$ 10 $\frac{QBK\,3}{PQB\,4}$ [10 $\frac{Cas}{PQB\,4}$ 11 $\frac{KtQKt\,3}{QP\,1 \text{ bst}}$ 12 $\frac{KBP\,1}{KtKKt\,4}$ [12 $\frac{K\,R\,K}{QBQKt\,2}$] 13 $\frac{B \times Kt}{Q \times B}$ 14 $\frac{QBP \times P}{P \times P}$ 15 $\frac{KBP\,1}{QKB\,4\,b\,g}$] 11 $\frac{KtQKt\,3}{PQB\,5 \text{ bst}}$ [11 $\frac{KtK\,2}{Cas}$ 12 $\frac{Cas}{QBR\,3}$ 13 $\frac{QKtQ\,2}{Kt \times Kt}$ 14 $\frac{Q \times Kt}{QP\,1\,b\,g}$] 12 $\frac{B \times B}{RP \times B \text{ bst}}$ [12 $\frac{KtQ\,4}{KtQB\,4\,b\,g}$] 13 $\frac{KtQ\,4}{QK\,2 \text{ bst}}$* 14 $\frac{KtQB\,6}{QQ\,2}$ [14 $\frac{KtKB\,3}{KtQB\,4}$ 15 $\frac{Q \times P}{Kt+}$ 16 $\frac{KQ\,2 \text{ bst}}{QRR\,4}$ 17 $\frac{QQB\,6+\text{bst}}{QBQ\,2}$ 18 $\frac{Q \times P \text{ at } QB\,7}{Kt \times KBP \text{ or Cas } b\,g}$ observing that if 15 $\frac{Cas}{KtQKt\,6}$ 16 $\frac{Q \times QP}{QRQR\,4}$ 17 $\frac{QQB\,6+\text{bst}}{QB \text{ in}}$ 18 $\frac{Q \times P \text{ at } QB\,4}{Kt \times R}$ 19 $\frac{QKtR\,3}{KtQB\,7}$ 20 $\frac{Kt \times Kt}{BQKt\,4\,b\,g}$] 15 $\frac{KtQKt\,4}{QBQKt\,2}$ 16 $\frac{Cas\,K\,R}{Same}$ 17 $\frac{QKtQ\,2}{Kt \times Kt}$ [17 $\frac{KBP\,1}{KtKKt\,4}$ 18 $\frac{KRP\,2}{KtK\,3}$ 19 $\frac{KBP\,1}{QBP\,2}$ 20 $\frac{KtQB\,2}{QQB\,3}$ 21 $\frac{KBP\,1}{QP\,1}$ 22 $\frac{KRKB\,2}{KtKB\,5\,b\,g}$] 18 $\frac{Q \times Kt}{QBP\,2}$ 19 $\frac{KtQB\,2}{QQB\,3}$ 20 $\frac{KBP\,2}{QRQ}$ 21 $\frac{QKB\,2}{QP\,1\,b\,g}$ Again, at Move 15, if 15 $\frac{KtQ\,4}{QBP\,2}$ 16 $\frac{KtKB\,3}{QBKt\,2}$ [16 $\frac{KtK\,2}{QBKt\,2}$ 17 $\frac{QKtQ\,2}{Kt \times Kt}$ 18 $\frac{Q \times Kt}{Cas\,K\,R}$ 19 $\frac{Cas\,K\,R}{QQB\,3}$ threatening $\frac{}{QP\,1\,b\,g}$] 17 $\frac{QKtQ\,2}{Kt \times Kt}$ 18 $\frac{Kt \times Kt}{Cas\,K\,R}$ [18 $\frac{Q \times Kt}{Cas\,K\,R}$ 19 $\frac{Cas\,K\,R}{QP\,1\,b\,g}$] 19 $\frac{Cas\,K\,R}{QQB\,3}$ 20 $\frac{QKB\,3}{QRQ}$ [20 $\frac{KBP\,1}{QKtP\,1}$] threatening $\frac{}{QP\,1\,b\,g}$) 7 $\frac{BQ\,5 \text{ bst}}{}$ (The moves 7 $\frac{QK\,2}{}$ and 7 $\frac{Cas}{}$ have been already proved disadvantageous in Book III. 7 $\frac{QBP \times P}{}$ equalises the game sooner, as hereinbefore shown)

7 $\frac{}{Kt \times KBP}$ 8 $\frac{K \times Kt}{P \times P+}$ 9 $\frac{KK}{}$ it is difficult to decide which square of refuge here is best for K, his own, KB, or KKt 3;

---

* In Palamede, 1844, Jaenisch condemns this move, which we see he once considered best; and prefers 13 $\frac{}{KtQB\,4}$ as I have shown, p. 196.

Digitized by Google

moreover, on this point you will consult the details we have previously given. We incline to prefer the retreat to KKt 3, of which the best continuation is 9 $\frac{KKKt\,3}{P\times P}$ 10 $\frac{QB\times P}{QKtK\,2\ bst}$ 11 $\frac{QQB\ 2\ bst*}{QP\,1}$ 12 $\frac{KBK\ 4}{QKtKKt\ 3\ bst}$ 13 $\frac{QKtQ\ 2}{QBP\ 1\ bst}$ 14 $\frac{KtQKt\,3}{KBQKt\,3}$ 15 $\frac{QRQ}{QP\ 1\ ev}$ (See p. 206.)† M. Petroff, on the contrary, has been always in favour of the retreat 9 $\frac{KKB}{\quad}$ which in some respects he may be said to have indeed himself created. In that case 9 $\frac{KKB}{P\times P}$ 10 $\frac{QB\times P}{Cas\ bst}$ 11 $\frac{QKtQ\,2}{QP\,1}$ 12 $\frac{QKtK\,4}{QKtK\,2}$ 13 $\frac{Kt\times B}{P\times Kt}$ 14 $\frac{KBK\,4}{QBKB\,4}$ 15 $\frac{QQB\,2}{B\times B}$ 16 $\frac{Q\times B}{QQ\,4\ ev}$ See also our previous analysis in text. The retreat 9 $\frac{KK}{\quad}$ seems to us to expose King overmuch. 9 $\frac{KK}{P\times P}$ 10 $\frac{QB\times P}{QKtK\,2\ bst}$ 11 $\frac{KBK\,4}{QP\,2}$ 12 $\frac{P\times P\ en\ p}{Q\times P}$ 13 $\frac{Q\times Q}{P\times Q}$ 14 $\frac{QKtB\,3}{QBKB\,4}$ 15 $\frac{B\times B}{Kt\times B}$ 16 $\frac{QKtQ\,5}{Cas\ KR\ gd\ g}$

SUPPLEMENT TO QUEEN'S GAMBIT.

(In dismissing the Queen's Gambit (page 34) our author, Jaenisch, presents the opening of a game commenced between him and M. Kieseritzky by correspondence, but left unfinished. Thus incomplete, the translator has deemed it fittest to place this game in Appendix.—G. W.)

---

* Here Jaenisch seems to have changed conclusions; as we have found him formerly prefer 11 $\frac{KRK}{\quad}$ as best.

† As I have said in "Art of Chess Play," I dissent from Jaenisch throughout, on this subject; not believing the Pawns adequate to the Knight surrendered; especially Queens being on the board. The defence is equally recommendable on the score of its great beauty and variety of fine positions necessarily thereby elicited.

Digitized by Google

Game played by Correspondence between MM. Jaenisch and Kieseritzky in 1838-9, *the latter having first move.*

1 $\frac{QP2}{QP2}$ 2 $\frac{QBP2}{P\times P}$ 3 $\frac{KP2}{KP2}$ 4 $\frac{QP1}{KBP2}$ 5 $\frac{KB\times P}{KKtB3}$

6 $\frac{QKtB3}{KBQB4}$ 7 $\frac{QQB2}{KKtKt5}$ (Better have changed Pawns, and second player would remain with some advantage, the Move 7 $\frac{QQB2}{}$ being rather hazardous; still his tactics cannot be exactly pronounced faulty)

8 $\frac{KKtR3}{KBP1}$ 9 $\frac{KKtP1}{KKtP2}$ 10 $\frac{KBP1}{KtK6}$ 11 $\frac{B\times Kt}{B\times B}$ 12 $\frac{KKtB2}{QRP1\ bst}$

13 $\frac{QRP2}{QKB3}$ 14 $\frac{KKtP1}{QKtQ2}$ 15 $\frac{QKtP2}{QKtKB}$ 16 $\frac{QRQ}{KRP2}$

17 $\frac{P\times P}{R\times P}$ 18 $\frac{KKtKt4}{QB\times Kt}$ 19 $\frac{P\times B}{KRR6}$ 20 $\frac{KBKB}{KRKR2}$

Here the game was discontinued. First player's best move is 21 $\frac{QKtP1}{}$ to which his adversary should answer 21 $\frac{}{QKR3}$

22 $\frac{KRP2\ bst}{QQ3\ bst}$ 23 $\frac{KRP1\ bst}{QRP1\ bst}$ The game is even. Nothing is more conducive to improvement in Chess, than to study the reasons which determine moves in games played by correspondence.

THE END.

LONDON:
SPOTTISWOODE and SHAW,
New-street-Square.

Digitized by Google

WORKS ON CHESS,

BY

MR. GEORGE WALKER.

TO BE HAD OF

MESSRS. LONGMAN, BROWN, GREEN, & LONGMANS,

PATERNOSTER-ROW, LONDON.

I.

CHESS STUDIES: comprising One Thousand Games actually played during the last half century; presenting a unique collection of classical and brilliant specimens of Chess skill in every stage of the game: and thus forming a complete Encyclopedia of reference. London, 1844, royal 8vo, price 10*s.* 6*d.* (This volume includes all the games extant, of De la Bourdonnais, M'Donnell, Philidor, &c.; as also numerous games played by MM. St. Amant, Szen, Boncourt, Des Chapelles, Cochrane, Staunton, Lewis, Evans, Selous, Perigal, Von Der Lasa, Calvi, Kieseritzky, &c.)

II.

CHESS MADE EASY; written exclusively for Beginners. London, 1836, 16mo. Price 3*s.* 6*d.*

III.

ART OF CHESS PLAY (THE). A New Treatise on the Game of Chess. London, 1846, small 8vo, pp. 400. Price 10*s.* 6*d.* Fourth edition, dedicated to the Members of the St. George's Chess Club.

Digitized by Google